FOREWORD

Dear Customer,

Thank you for selecting your new Kia vehicle.

As a global car manufacturer focused on building high-quality vehicles with exceptional value, Kia Motors is dedicated to providing you with a customer service experience that exceeds your expectations.

If technical assistance is needed on your vehicle, authorised Kia dealerships factorytrained technicians, recommended special tools, and genuine Kia replacement parts.

This Owner's Manual will acquaint you with the operation of features and equipment that are either standard or optional on this vehicle, along with the maintenance needs of this vehicle. Therefore, you may find some descriptions and illustrations not applicable to your vehicle. You are advised to read this publication carefully and follow the instructions and recommendations.

Please always keep this manual in the vehicle for your, and any subsequent owner's, reference.

All information contained in this Owner's Manual was accurate at the time of publication. However, as Kia continues to make improvements to its products, the company reserves the right to make changes to this manual or any of its vehicles at any time without notice and without incurring any obligations.

Please drive safely, and enjoy your Kia vehicle!

© 2020 Kia MOTORS Corp.

All rights reserved. Reproduction by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, or by any information storage and retrieval system or translation in whole or part is not permitted without written authorization from Kia MOTORS Corporation.

Printed in Korea

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Introduction	1
Your vehicle at a glance	2
Safety features of your vehicle	3
Features of your vehicle	4
Audio system	5
Driving your vehicle	6
What to do in an emergency	7
Maintenance	8
Specifications & Consumer information	9
Index	I

Introduction

1

How to use this manual 1-2
Fuel requirements 1-3
- **Petrol engine 1-3**
- **Diesel engine. 1-6**

Vehicle break-In process 1-9
Risk of burns when parking or stopping vehicle. . 1-9

HOW TO USE THIS MANUAL

We want to help you get the greatest possible driving pleasure from your vehicle. Your Owner's Manual can assist you in many ways. We strongly recommend that you read the entire manual. In order to minimise the chance of death or injury, you must read the WARNING and CAUTION sections in the manual.

Illustrations complement the words in this manual to best explain how to enjoy your vehicle. By reading your manual, you learn about features, important safety information, and driving tips under various road conditions.

The general layout of the manual is provided in the Table of Contents. Use the index when looking for a specific area or subject; it has an alphabetical listing of all information in your manual.

Sections: This manual has 9 chapters plus an index. Each section begins with a brief list of contents so you can tell at a glance if that section has the information you want.

You will find various WARNINGs, CAUTIONs, and NOTICEs in this manual. These WARNINGs were prepared to enhance your personal safety. You should carefully read and follow ALL procedures and recommendations provided in these WARNINGs, CAUTIONs and NOTICEs.

⚠ WARNING

A WARNING indicates a situation in which harm, serious bodily injury or death could result if the warning is ignored.

⚠ CAUTION

A CAUTION indicates a situation in which damage to your vehicle could result if the caution is ignored.

✻ NOTICE

A NOTICE indicates interesting or helpful information is being provided.

FUEL REQUIREMENTS

Petrol engine

Unleaded

For Europe

For the optimal vehicle performance, we recommend you to use unleaded petrol with an octane rating of RON (Research Octane Number) 95 / AKI (Anti Knock Index) 91 or higher.

You may use unleaded petrol with an octane rating of RON 91~94 / AKI 87~90 but it may result in slight performance reduction of the vehicle. (Do not use methanol blended fuels.)

Except Europe

Your new Kia vehicle is designed to use only unleaded fuel having an Octane Rating of RON (Research Octane Number) 91 / AKI (Anti-Knock Index) 87 or higher. (Do not use methanol blended fuels.)

Your new vehicle is designed to obtain maximum performance with UNLEADED FUEL, as well as minimise exhaust emissions and spark plug fouling.

⚠ CAUTION

NEVER USE LEADED FUEL. The use of leaded fuel is detrimental to the catalytic converter and will damage the engine control system's oxygen sensor and affect emission control.

Never add any fuel system cleaning agents to the fuel tank other than what has been specified. (Kia recommends to consult an authorised Kia dealer/service partner for details.)

⚠ WARNING

- **Do not "top off" after the nozzle automatically shuts off when refuelling.**
- **Always check that the fuel cap is installed securely to prevent fuel spillage in the event of an accident.**

Leaded (if equipped)

For some countries, your vehicle is designed to use leaded petrol. When you are going to use leaded petrol, Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner and ask whether leaded petrol in your vehicle is available or not.

Octane Rating of leaded petrol is same with unleaded one.

Petrol containing alcohol and methanol

Gasohol, a mixture of petrol and ethanol (also known as grain alcohol), and petrol or gasohol containing methanol (also known as wood alcohol) are being marketed along with or instead of leaded or unleaded petrol.

Do not use gasohol containing more than 10% ethanol, and do not use petrol or gasohol containing any methanol. Either of these fuels may cause drivability problems and damage to the fuel system, engine control system and emission control system.

Discontinue using gasohol of any kind if drivability problems occur.

Vehicle damage or drivability problems may not be covered by the manufacturer's warranty if they result from the use of:

1. Gasohol containing more than 10% ethanol.
2. Petrol or gasohol containing methanol.
3. Leaded fuel or leaded gasohol.

⚠ CAUTION

Never use gasohol which contains methanol. Discontinue use of any gasohol product which impairs drivability.

Other fuels

Using fuels such as

- Silicone (Si) contained fuel,
- MMT (Manganese, Mn) contained fuel,
- Ferrocene (Fe) contained fuel, and
- Other metalic additives contained fuels,

may cause vehicle and engine damage or cause plugging, misfiring, poor acceleration, engine stalling, catalyst melting, abnormal corrosion, life cycle reduction, etc.

Also, the Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) may illuminate.

✻ NOTICE

Damage to the fuel system or performance problem caused by the use of these fuels may not be covered by your New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Use of MTBE

Kia recommends avoiding fuels containing MTBE (Methyl Tertiary Butyl Ether) over 15.0% vol. (Oxygen Content 2.7% weight) in your vehicle.

Fuel containing MTBE over 15.0% vol. (Oxygen Content 2.7% weight) may reduce vehicle performance and produce vapour lock or hard starting.

⚠ CAUTION

Your New Vehicle Limited Warranty may not cover damage to the fuel system and any performance problems that are caused by the use of fuels containing methanol or fuels containing MTBE (Methyl Tertiary Butyl Ether) over 15.0% vol. (Oxygen Content 2.7% weight.)

Do not use methanol

Fuels containing methanol (wood alcohol) should not be used in your vehicle. This type of fuel can reduce vehicle performance and damage components of the fuel system, engine control system and emission control system.

Fuel Additives

Kia recommends that you use unleaded petrol which has an octane rating of RON (Research Octane Number) 95 / AKI (Anti Knock Index) 91 or higher (for Europe) or Octane Rating of RON (Research Octane Number) 91 / AKI (Anti-Knock Index) 87 or higher (except Europe).

For customers who do not use good quality petrols including fuel additives regularly, and have problems starting or the engine does not run smoothly, one bottle of additives added to the fuel tank at every 15,000 km (10,000 miles) (For Europe, Australia and New Zealand (Non Turbo Model)) / 10,000 km (6,500 miles) (Except Europe, Australia and New Zealand (Non Turbo Model), China, Brazil) / 5,000 km (3,000 miles) (for China, Brazil).

Additives are available from a professional workshop along with information on how to use them. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner. Do not mix other additives.

Operation in foreign countries

If you are going to drive your vehicle in another country, be sure to:

- Observe all regulations regarding registration and insurance.
- Determine that acceptable fuel is available.

Diesel engine

Diesel fuel

Diesel engine must be operated only on commercially available diesel fuel that complies with EN 590 or comparable standard. (EN stands for "European Norm"). Do not use marine diesel fuel, heating oils, or non-approved fuel additives, as this will increase wear and cause damage to the engine and fuel system. The use of non-approved fuels and / or fuel additives will result in a limitation of your warranty rights.

Diesel fuel of above cetane 51 is used in your vehicle. If two types of diesel fuel are available, use summer or winter fuel properly according to the following temperature conditions.

- Above -5°C (23°F) ... Summer type diesel fuel.
- Below -5°C (23°F) ... Winter type diesel fuel.

Watch the fuel level in the tank very carefully : If the engine stops through fuel failure, the circuits must be completely purged to restart.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not let any petrol or water enter the tank. This would make it necessary to drain it out and to bleed the lines to avoid jamming the injection pump and damaging the engine.

⚠ CAUTION - Diesel Fuel (if equipped with DPF)

It is recommended to use the regulated automotive diesel fuel for diesel vehicle equipped with the DPF system.

If you use diesel fuel including high sulfur (more than 50 ppm sulfur) and unspecified additives, it can cause the DPF system to be damaged and white smoke can be emitted.

Biodiesel

Commercially supplied Diesel blends of no more than 7% biodiesel, commonly known as "B7 Diesel" may be used in your vehicle if Biodiesel meets EN 14214 or equivalent specifications. (EN stands for "European Norm"). The use of biofuels exceeding 7% made from rapeseed methyl ester (RME), fatty acid methyl ester (FAME), vegetable oil methyl ester (VME) etc. or mixing diesel exceeding 7% with biodiesel will cause increased wear or damage to the engine and fuel system. Repair or replacement of worn or damaged components due to the use of non approved fuels will not be covered by the manufactures warranty.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Never use any fuel, whether diesel or B7 biodiesel or otherwise, that fails to meet the latest petroleum industry specification.***
- ***Never use any fuel additives or treatments that are not recommended or approved by the vehicle manufacturer.***

Biodiesel (for New Zealand)

Commercially supplied Diesel blends of no more than 7% biodiesel, commonly known as "B7 Diesel" may be used in your vehicle if Biodiesel meets EN 14214 or equivalent specifications. (EN stands for "European Norm"). The use of biofuels exceeding 7%, made from rapeseed methyl ester (RME), vegetable oil methyl ester (VME) etc. or mixing diesel exceeding 7% with biodiesel will cause increased wear or damage to the engine and fuel system. Repair or replacement of worn or damaged components due to the use of non approved fuels will not be covered by the manufactures warranty.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Never use any fuel, whether diesel or B7 biodiesel or otherwise, that fails to meet the latest petroleum industry specification.***
- ***Never use any fuel additives or treatments that are not recommended or approved by the vehicle manufacturer.***

VEHICLE BREAK-IN PROCESS

No special break-in period is needed. By following a few simple precautions for the first 1,000 km (600 miles) you may add to the performance, economy and life of your vehicle.

- Do not race the engine.
- Whilst driving, keep your engine speed (rpm, or revolutions per minute) within 3,000 rpm.
- Do not maintain a single speed for long periods of time, either fast or slow. Varying engine speed is needed to properly break-in the engine.
- Avoid hard stops, except in emergencies, to allow the brakes to seat properly.
- Don't tow a trailer during the first 2,000 km (1,200 miles) of operation.

VEHICLE MODIFICATIONS

This vehicle should not be modified. Modification of your vehicle could affect its performance, safety or durability and may even violate governmental safety and emissions regulations.

In addition, damage or performance problems resulting from any modification may not be covered under warranty.

- If you use unauthorised electronic devices, it may cause the vehicle to operate abnormally, wire damage, battery discharge and fire. For your safety, do not use unauthorised electronic devices.

RISK OF BURNS WHEN PARKING OR STOPPING VEHICLE.

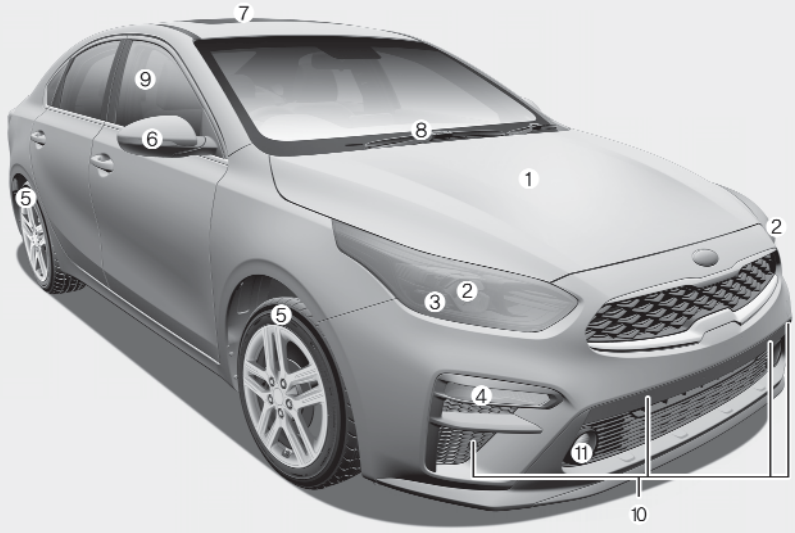
- Do not park or stop the vehicle near flammable items such as leaves, paper, oil, and tyre. Such items placed near the exhaust system can become a fire hazard.
- When an engine idles at a high speed with the rear side of the vehicle touching the wall, heat of the exhaust gas can cause discoloration or fire. Keep enough space between the rear part of the vehicle and the wall.
- Be sure not to touch the exhaust/catalytic systems whilst engine is running or right after the engine is turned off. There is a risk of burns since the systems are extremely hot.

Your vehicle at a glance

Exterior overview 2-2
Interior overview 2-5
Instrument panel overview 2-6
Engine compartment 2-7

EXTERIOR OVERVIEW

■ Front view



1. Bonnet 4-41
2. Head lamp (Features of your vehicle)..4-121
   Head lamp (Maintenance).....8-102
3. DRL lamp (Features of your vehicle) ..4-129
   DRL lamp (Maintenance) 8-102
4. Front turn signal lamp (Maintenance) .8-103
5. Wheel and tyre.....8-68, 9-6
6. Outside rearview mirror.....4-57
7. Sunroof.....4-47
8. Front windscreen wiper blades
   (Features of your vehicle).....4-131
   Front windscreen wiper blades
   (Maintenance) 8-61
9. Windows.....4-35
10. Front ultrasonic sensors.....4-113
11. Front fog lamp
    (Features of your vehicle).....4-128
    Front fog lamp (Maintenance) 8-103

❈ The actual shape may differ from the illustration.

OBD018001R

■ Rear view (4 Door)

1. Door locks 4-19
2. Fuel filler door 4-44
3. Rear combination lamp (Maintenance) 8-103
4. High mounted stop lamp (Maintenance) 8-104
5. Trunk.....4-24
6. Antenna 5-2
7. Rear view monitor 4-108
8. Rear ultrasonic sensors 4-109, 4-113
9. Rear turn signal lamp (Maintenance)..8-104
10. Back up lamp (Maintenance) 8-104

❈ The actual shape may differ from the illustration.

OBD018002L

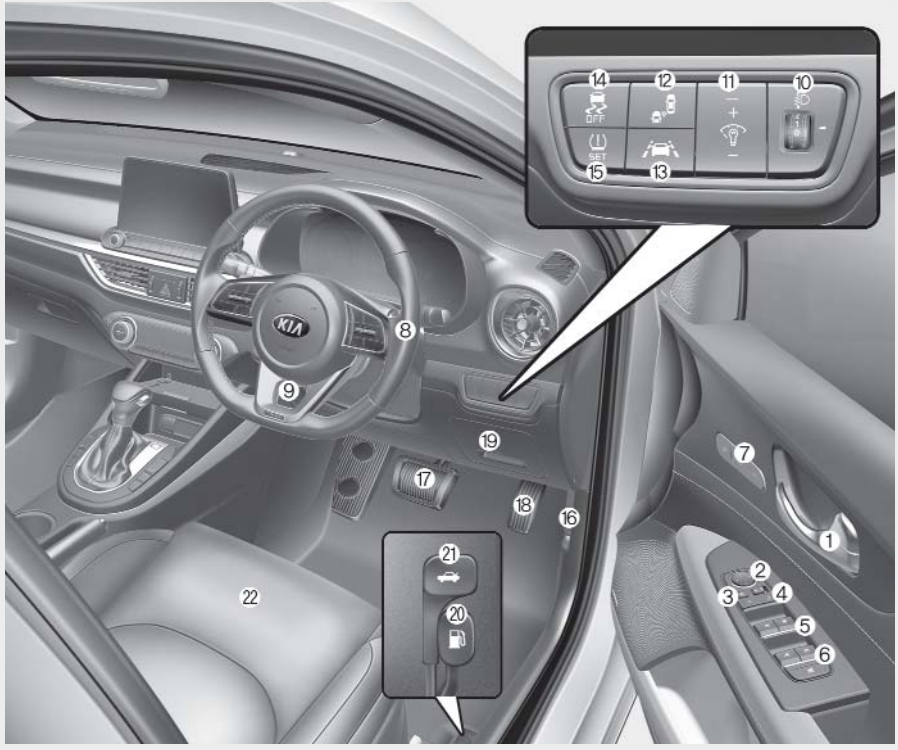
■ Rear view (5 Door)

1. Door locks 4-19
2. Fuel filler door 4-44
3. Rear combination lamp (Maintenance) 8-103
4. High mounted stop lamp (Maintenance) 8-104
5. Tailgate 4-27
6. Antenna 5-2
7. Rear view monitor 4-108
8. Rear ultrasonic sensors 4-109, 4-113
9. Rear turn signal lamp (Maintenance)..8-104
10. Back Up lamp (Maintenance).....8-104

❈ The actual shape may differ from the illustration.

OBD010006L

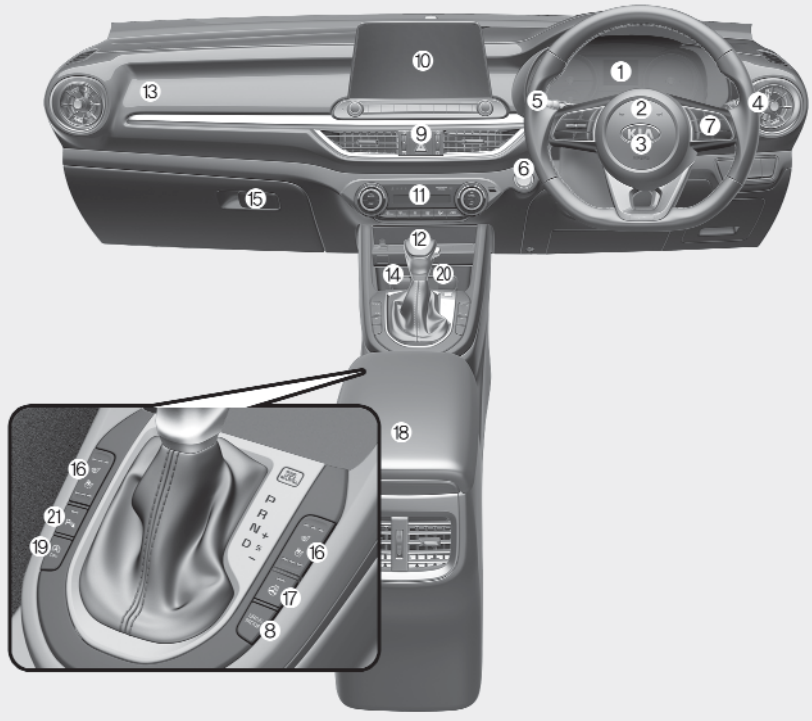
INTERIOR OVERVIEW



1. Inside door handle 4-20
2. Outside rearview mirror control 4-58
3. Outside rearview mirror folding.....4-58
4. Central door lock switch.....4-21
5. Power window switch 4-35
6. Power window lock button 4-39
7. Driver position memory button.....3-9
8. Steering wheel 4-52
9. Tilt and telescopic steering control lever 4-53
10. Headlight levelling device 4-129
11. Instrument panel illumination control switch 4-62
12. Blind-Spot Safety button 6-108
13. LKA on/off button 6-94
14. ESC OFF button 6-59
15. TPMS SET switch 7-9
16. Bonnet release lever 4-41
17. Brake pedal.....6-52
18. Accelerator pedal
19. Inner fuse panel.....8-80
20. Fuel filler door release lever 4-44
21. Trunk release lever.....4-24
22. Seat.....3-2

OBD018003R

INSTRUMENT PANEL OVERVIEW

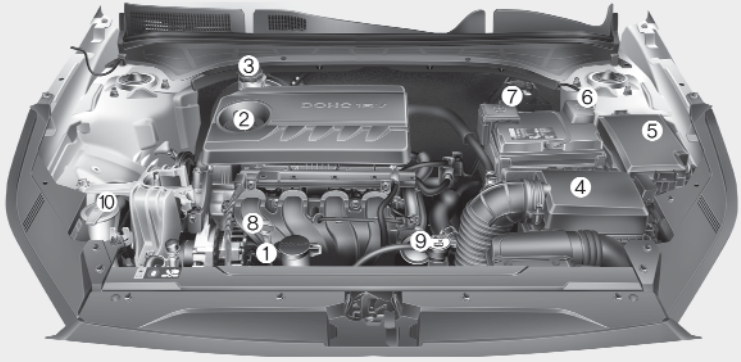


1. Instrument cluster....4-60
2. Horn 4-54
3. Driver's front air bag....3-67
4. Light control/Turn signals (Except Europe) 4-120
   Wiper/Washer (For Europe) 4-131
5. Wiper/Washer (Except Europe)....4-131
   Light control/Turn signals (For Europe)....4-120
6. Ignition switch....6-7
   ENGINE START/STOP button....6-12
7. Driving Assist button 6-121, 6-131
8. Drive mode button 6-103
9. Hazard warning flasher switch 7-2
10. Audio....5-8
11. Climate control system 4-140, 4-151
12. Shift lever....6-24, 6-28, 6-37
13. Passenger's front air bag 3-68
14. Power outlet 4-178
15. Glove box 4-170
16. Seat warmer....4-176
    Seat cooler....4-178
17. Heated steering wheel switch 4-53
18. Centre console storage....4-169
19. Idle Stop and Go system OFF button 6-20
20. USB charger....4-180
21. Parking Safety button....4-114

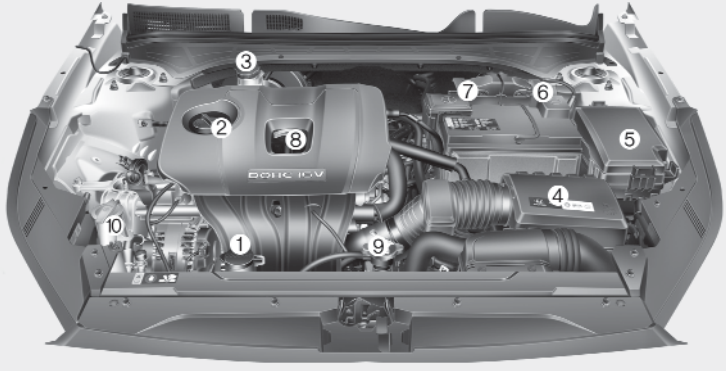
OBD018004R

ENGINE COMPARTMENT

■ (Petrol engine) 1.6 MPI



■ (Petrol engine) 2.0 MPI



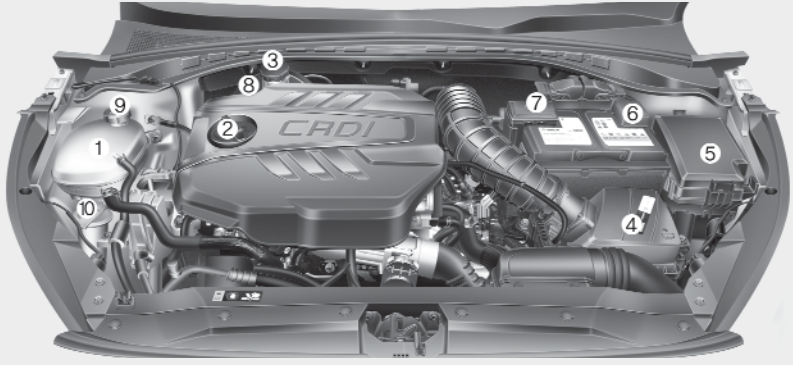
❈ The actual engine compartment in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

1. Engine coolant reservoir.....8-47
2. Engine oil filler cap.....8-43
3. Brake/clutch fluid reservoir.....8-51
4. Air cleaner.....8-56
5. Fuse box.....8-83
6. Negative battery terminal.....8-63
7. Positive battery terminal.....8-63
8. Engine oil dipstick.....8-42
9. Radiator cap.....8-49
10. Windscreen washer fluid reservoir..8-53

OBD078100R/OBD078101R

■ **(Petrol engine) 1.6 T-GDi**

■ **Smartstream D 1.6**



❈ The actual engine compartment in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

1. Engine coolant reservoir.....8-47
2. Engine oil filler cap 8-43
3. Brake/clutch fluid reservoir 8-51
4. Air cleaner 8-56
5. Fuse box.....8-83
6. Negative battery terminal 8-63
7. Positive battery terminal 8-63
8. Engine oil dipstick 8-42, 8-44
9. Radiator cap 8-49
10. Windscreen washer fluid reservoir ..8-53

OBD078135R/OBD078121R

Safety features of your vehicle

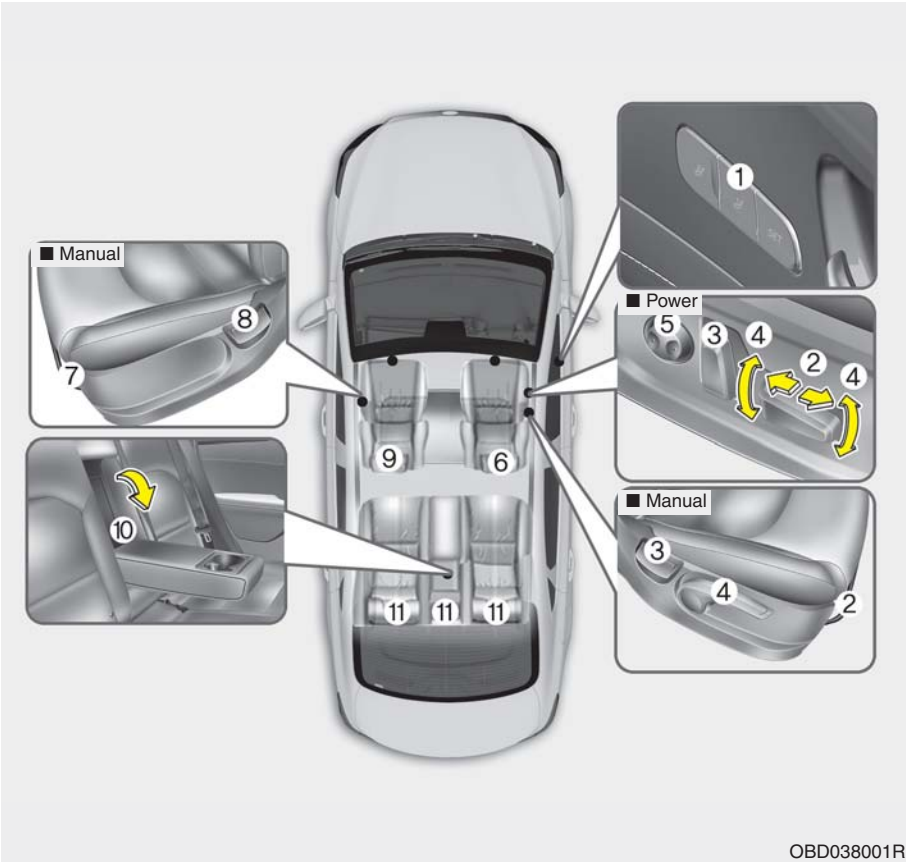
Seats 3-2
- Front seat adjustment - manual 3-6
- Front seat adjustment - power 3-7
- Driver position memory system (for power seat) 3-9
- Headrest (for front seat) 3-11
- Seatback pocket 3-15
- Rear seat adjustment 3-15

Seat belts 3-21
- Seat belt restraint system 3-21
- Pre-tensioner seat belt 3-31
- Seat belt precautions 3-34
- Care of seat belts 3-37

Child restraint system (CRS) 3-39
- Our recommendation: Children always in the rear . . 3-39
- Selecting a Child Restraint System (CRS) 3-40
- Installing a Child Restraint System (CRS) 3-42
- ISOFIX anchorage and top-tether anchorage (ISOFIX anchorage system) for children 3-44

Air bag - supplemental restraint system 3-58
- How does the air bag system operate 3-59
- Air bag warning light 3-62
- SRS components and functions 3-64
- Driver's and passenger's front air bag 3-67
- Side air bag 3-73
- Curtain air bag 3-75
- Inflation and non-inflation conditions of the airbag 3-77
- SRS Care 3-82
- Additional safety precautions 3-84
- Air bag warning label 3-85

SEATS



Driver's seat

(1) Driver position memory system*
(2) Forward and backward
(3) Seatback angle
(4) Seat cushion height
(5) Lumbar support*
(6) Headrest

Front passenger's seat

(7) Forward and backward
(8) Seatback angle
(9) Headrest

Rear seat

(10) Armrest
(11) Headrest

* : if equipped

⚠ WARNING - Loose objects

Loose objects in the driver's foot area could interfere with the operation of the foot pedals, possibly causing an accident. Do not place anything under the front seats.

⚠ WARNING - Uprighting seat

When you return the seatback to its upright position, hold the seatback and return it slowly and be sure there are no other occupants around the seat. If the seatback is returned without being held and controlled, the back of the seat could spring forward resulting in accidental injury to a person struck by the seatback.

⚠ WARNING - Driver responsibility for passengers

Riding in a vehicle with the seatback reclined could lead to serious or fatal injury in an accident. If a seat is reclined during an accident, the occupant's hips may slide under the lap portion of the seat belt applying great force to the unprotected abdomen. Serious or fatal internal injuries could result. The driver must advise the passenger to keep the seatback in an upright position whenever the vehicle is in motion.

⚠ WARNING

Do not use a sitting cushion that reduces friction between the seat and passenger. The passenger's hips may slide under the lap portion of the seat belt during an accident or a sudden stop. Serious or fatal internal injuries could result because the seat belt cannot operate normally.

⚠ WARNING - Driver's seat

- **Never attempt to adjust the seat whilst the vehicle is moving. This could result in loss of control, and an accident causing death, serious injury, or property damage.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- Do not allow anything to interfere with the normal position of the seatback. Storing items against a seatback or in any other way interfering with proper locking of a seatback could result in serious or fatal injury in a sudden stop or collision.
- Always drive and ride with your seatback upright and the lap portion of the seat belt snug and low across the hips. This is the best position to protect you in case of an accident.
- In order to avoid unnecessary and perhaps severe air bag injuries, always sit as far back as possible from the steering wheel whilst maintaining comfortable control of the vehicle. We recommend that your chest be at least 25 cm (10 inches) away from the steering wheel.

⚠ WARNING - Rear seatbacks

- The rear seatback must be securely latched. If not, passengers and objects could be thrown forward resulting in serious injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or collision.
- Luggage and other cargo should be laid flat in the cargo area. If objects are large, heavy, or must be piled, they must be secured.

  Under no circumstances should cargo be piled higher than the seatbacks. Failure to follow these warnings could result in serious injury or death in the event of a sudden stop, collision or rollover.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- No passenger should ride in the cargo area or sit or lie on folded seatbacks whilst the vehicle is moving. All passengers must be properly seated in seats and restrained properly whilst riding.
- When resetting the seatback to the upright position, make sure it is securely latched by pushing it forward and backwards.
- To avoid the possibility of burns, do not remove the carpet in the cargo area.

  Emission control devices beneath this floor generate high temperatures.

⚠ WARNING

After adjusting the seat, always check that it is securely locked into place by attempting to move the seat forward or backward without using the lock release lever. Sudden or unexpected movement of the driver's seat could cause you to lose control of the vehicle resulting in an accident.

⚠ WARNING

- **Do not adjust the seat whilst wearing seat belts. Moving the seat cushion forward may cause strong pressure on the abdomen.**
- **Use extreme caution so that hands or other objects are not caught in the seat mechanisms whilst the seat is moving.**
- **Do not put a cigarette lighter on the floor or seat. When you operate the seat, gas may gush out of the lighter and cause fire.**
- **If there are occupants in the rear seats, be careful whilst adjusting the front seat position.**
- **Use extreme caution when picking small objects trapped under the seats or between the seat and the centre console. Your hands might be cut or injured by the sharp edges of the seat mechanism.**

⚠ CAUTION - Precautions with seat covers

- ***Use caution when working on the seat cover. A short circuit or disconnection may occur, which could lead to noise, damage the ventilation system, and possible fire.***
- ***Be aware of wires or air vents when placing a seat cover or covering the seat with plastic cover. A short circuit may occur, which could lead to fire.***

Feature of Seat Leather

- Leather is made from the outer skin of an animal, which goes through a special process to be available for use. Since it is a natural substance, each part differs in thickness or density.

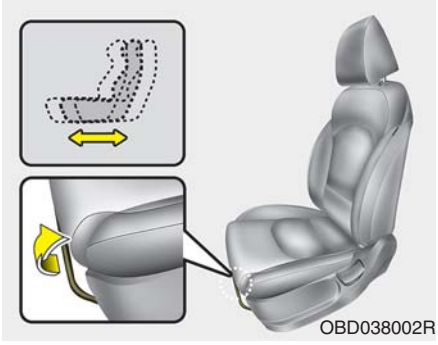
  Wrinkles may appear as a natural result of stretching and shrinking depending on the temperature and humidity.
- The seat is made of stretchable fabric to improve comfort.
- The parts contacting the body are curved and the side supporting area is high which provides driving comfort and stability.
- Wrinkles may appear naturally from usage. It is not a fault of the product.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Wrinkles or abrasions which appear naturally from usage are not covered by warranty.***
- ***Belts with metallic accessories, zippers or keys inside the back pocket may damage the seat fabric.***
- ***Make sure not to wet the seat. It may change the nature of natural leather.***
- ***Jeans or clothes which could bleach may contaminate the surface of the seat covering fabric.***

Front seat adjustment - manual

Forward and backward

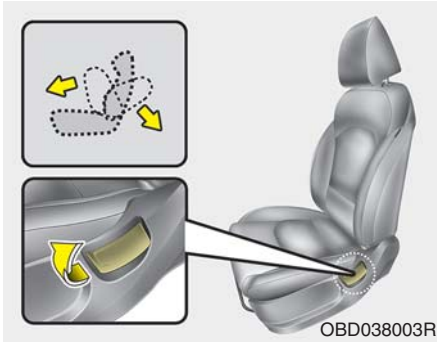

OBD038002R

To move the seat forward or backward:

1. Pull the seat slide adjustment lever up and hold it.
2. Slide the seat to the position you desire.
3. Release the lever and make sure the seat is locked in place.

Adjust the seat before driving, and make sure the seat is locked securely by trying to move forward and backward without using the lever. If the seat moves, it is not locked properly.

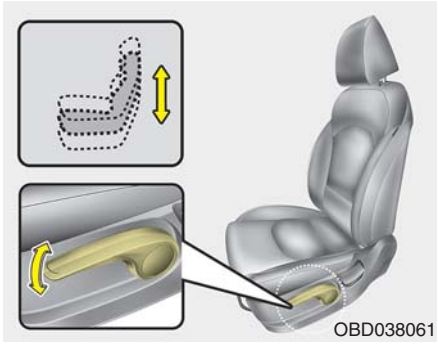
Seatback angle



To recline the seatback:

1. Lean forward slightly and lift up the seatback recline lever.
2. Carefully lean back on the seat and adjust the seatback of the seat to the position you desire.
3. Release the lever and make sure the seatback is locked in place. (The lever MUST return to its original position for the seatback to lock.)

Seat height (if equipped)



To change the height of the seat, push the lever upwards or downwards.

- To lower the seat cushion, push the lever down several times.
- To raise the seat cushion, pull the lever up several times.

Front seat adjustment - power (if equipped)

The front seat can be adjusted by using the control switches located on the outside of the seat cushion. Before driving, adjust the seat to the proper position so you can easily control the steering wheel, pedals and switches on the instrument panel.

⚠ WARNING

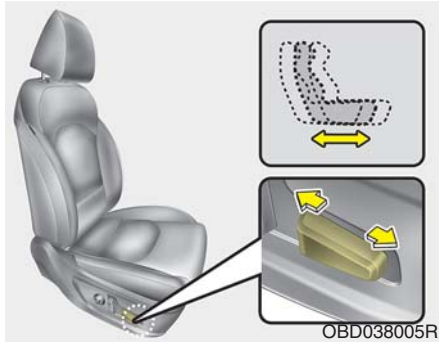
The power seat is operable with the ignition OFF.

Therefore, children should never be left unattended in the vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION

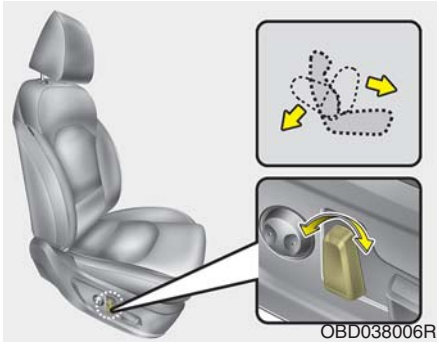
- ***The power seat is driven by an electric motor. Stop operating once the adjustment is completed. Excessive operation may damage the electrical equipment.***
- ***When in operation, the power seat consumes a large amount of electrical power. To prevent unnecessary charging system drain, don't adjust the power seat longer than necessary whilst the engine is not running.***
- ***Do not operate two or more power seat control switches at the same time. Doing so may result in power seat motor or electrical component malfunction.***

Forward and backward



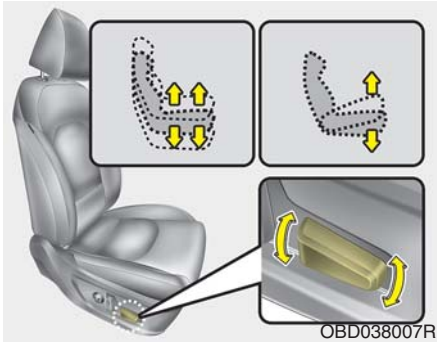
Push the control switch forward or backward to move the seat to the desired position. Release the switch once the seat reaches the desired position.

Seatback angle



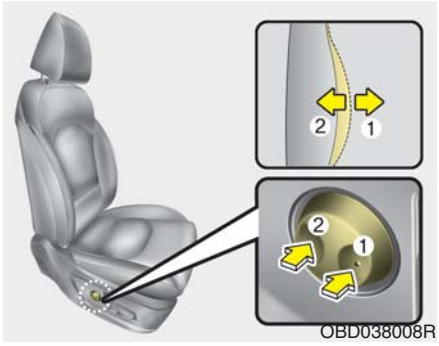
Push the control switch forward or backward to move the seatback to the desired angle. Release the switch once the seat reaches the desired position.

Seat height


OBD038007R

Pull the front portion of the control switch up to raise or press down to lower the front part of the seat cushion. Pull the rear portion of the control switch up to raise or press down to lower the seat cushion. Release the switch once the seat reaches the desired position.

Lumbar support (if equipped)



OBD038008R

The lumbar support can be adjusted by pressing the lumbar support switch on the side of the seat.

1. Press the front portion of the switch (1) to increase support, or the rear portion of the switch (2), to decrease support.
2. Release the switch once it reaches the desired position.

Driver position memory system (if equipped, for power seat)

OBD038019R

A driver position memory system is provided to store and recall the driver seat with a simple button operation. By saving the desired position into the system memory, different drivers can reposition the driver seat based upon their driving preference.

If the battery is disconnected, the position memory will be erased and the driving position should be restored in the system.

⚠ WARNING

Never attempt to operate the driver position memory system whilst the vehicle is moving.

This could result in loss of control, and an accident causing death, serious injury, or property damage.

Storing positions into memory using the buttons on the door

Storing driver's seat positions

1. Shift the shift lever into P (for Automatic transmission / Dual clutch transmission) or Neutral (for manual transmission) whilst the engine start/stop button is ON or ignition switch ON.
2. Press SET button on the control panel. The system will beep once.
3. Press one of the memory buttons (1 or 2) within 5 seconds after pressing the SET button. The system will beep twice when memory has been successfully stored.

Recalling positions from memory

1. Shift the shift lever into P (for Automatic transmission / Dual clutch transmission) or Neutral (for manual transmission) whilst the engine start/stop button is ON or ignition switch ON.
2. To recall the position in the memory, press the desired memory button (1 or 2). The system will beep once, then the driver's seat will automatically adjust to the stored position.

Adjusting the control switch for the driver's seat whilst the system is recalling the stored position will cause the movement to stop and move in the direction that the control switch is moved.

⚠ WARNING

Use caution when recalling the adjustment memory whilst sitting in the vehicle. Push the seat position control switch to the desired position immediately if the seat moves too far in any direction.

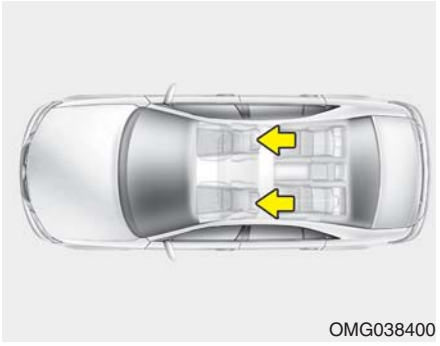
Easy access function (if equipped)

The system will move the driver's seat automatically as follows:

- Without smart key system
  - It will move the driver's seat rearward when the ignition key is removed and front driver's door is opened.
  - It will move the driver's seat forward when the ignition key is inserted.
- With smart key system
  - It will move the driver's seat rearward when the engine start/stop button is changed to the OFF position and front driver's door is opened.
  - It will move the driver's seat forward when the engine start/stop button is changed to the ACC or START position.
  - It will move the driver's seat forward when you get in your vehicle with the smart key after closing the driver's door.

You can activate or deactivate this feature. Refer to "User settings" in chapter 4.

Headrest (for front seat)



OMG038400

The driver's and front passenger's seats are equipped with a headrest for the occupant's safety and comfort.

The headrest not only provides comfort for the driver and front passenger, but also helps protect the head and neck in the event of a collision.

⚠ WARNING

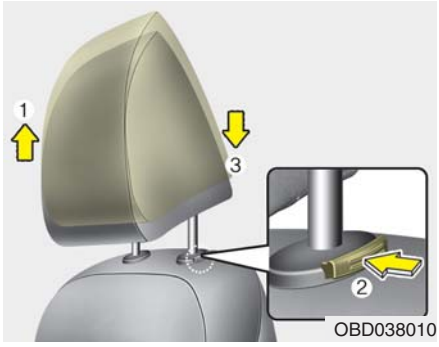
- **For maximum effectiveness in case of an accident, the headrest should be adjusted so the middle of the headrest is at the same height of the centre of gravity of an occupant's head. Generally, the centre of gravity of most people's head is similar with the height of the top of their eyes. Also, adjust the headrest as close to your head as possible. For this reason, the use of a cushion that holds the body away from the seatback is not recommended.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

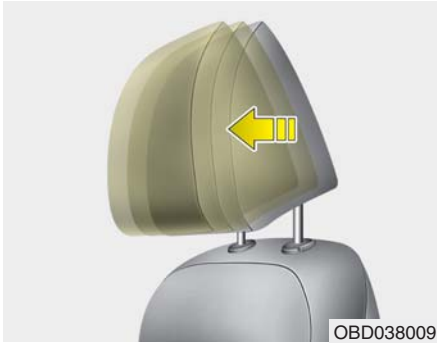
- **Do not operate the vehicle with the headrests removed. Severe injury to the occupants may occur in the event of an accident. Headrests may provide protection against neck injuries when properly adjusted.**
- **Do not adjust the headrest position of the driver's seat whilst the vehicle is in motion.**

Adjusting the height up and down



To raise the headrest, pull it up to the desired position (1). To lower the headrest, push and hold the release button (2) and lower the headrest to the desired position (3).

Forward and backward adjustment (if equipped)

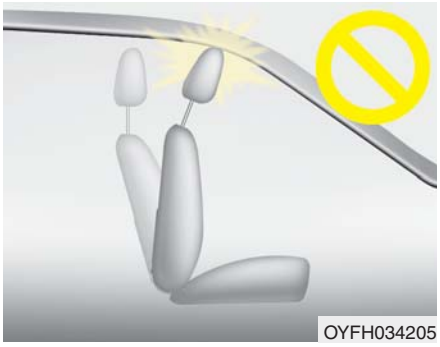


The headrest may be adjusted forward to 4 different positions by pulling the headrest forward to the desired detent.

To adjust the headrest to it's furthest backwards position,

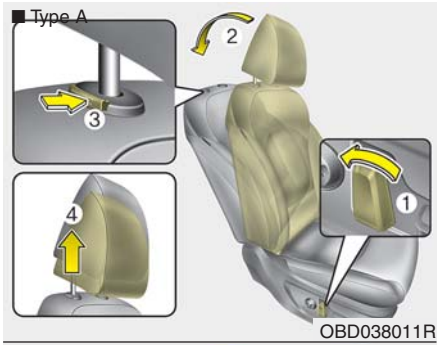
Pull the headrest fully forward to the farthest position and release it.

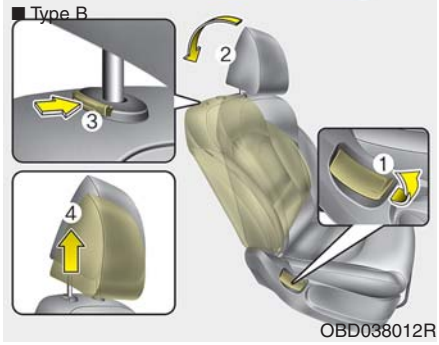
Adjust the headrest so that it properly supports the head and neck.



⚠ CAUTION

If you recline the seatback towards the front with the headrest and seat cushion raised, the headrest may come in contact with the sun visor or other parts of the vehicle.



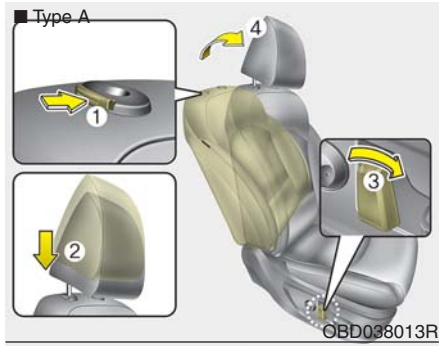


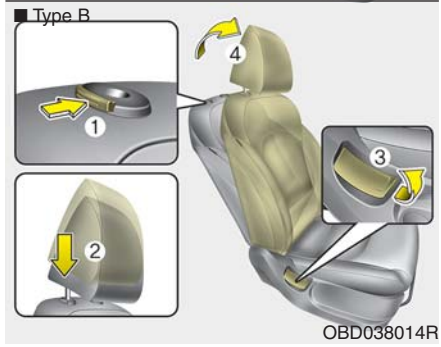
To remove the headrest:

1. Recline the seatback (2) with the recline lever or switch (1).
2. Raise headrest as far as it can go.
3. Press the headrest release button (3) whilst pulling the headrest up (4).

⚠ WARNING

NEVER allow anyone to ride in a seat with the headrest removed.





Removal/Reinstall

To reinstall the headrest:

1. Put the headrest poles (2) into the holes whilst pressing the release button or switch (1).
2. Recline the seatback(4) with the recline lever or switch (3).
3. Adjust the headrest to the appropriate height.

⚠ WARNING

Always make sure the headrest locks into position after reinstalling and adjusting it properly.

Seatback pocket (if equipped)

OBD038015

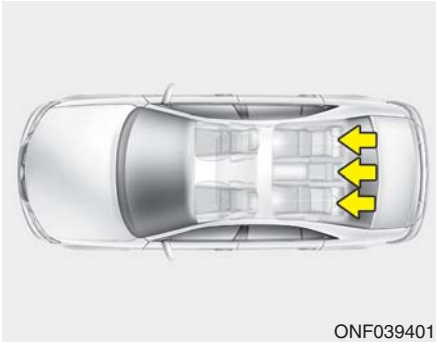
The seatback pocket is provided on the back of the front passenger's seatbacks.

⚠ WARNING - Seatback pockets

Do not put heavy or sharp objects in the seatback pockets. In an accident they could come loose from the pocket and injure vehicle occupants.

Rear seat adjustment

Headrest (if equipped)

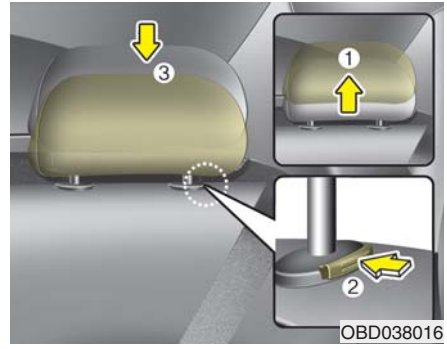

ONF039401

The rear seat is equipped with headrests for the occupant's safety and comfort.

The headrest not only provides comfort for passengers, but also helps to protect the head and neck in the event of a collision.

⚠ WARNING

- **For maximum effectiveness in case of an accident, the headrest should be adjusted so the middle of the headrest is at the same height of the centre of gravity of an occupant's head. Generally, the centre of gravity of most people's head is similar with the height of the top of their eyes. Also adjust the headrest as close to your head as possible. For this reason, the use of a cushion that holds the body away from the seatback is not recommended.**
- **Do not operate the vehicle with the headrests removed. Severe injury to an occupant may occur in the event of an accident. Headrests may provide protection against severe neck injuries when properly adjusted.**

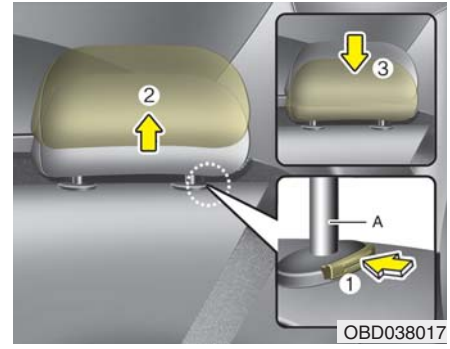


Adjusting the height up and down (if equipped)

To raise the headrest, pull it up to the desired position (1). To lower the headrest, push and hold the release button (2) on the headrest support and lower the headrest to the desired position (3).

⚠ CAUTION

When there is no occupant in the rear seats, adjust the height of the headrest to the lowest position. The rear seat headrest can reduce the visibility of the rear area.



Removal and installation (if equipped)

To remove the headrest, raise it as far as it can go then press the release button (1) whilst pulling upward (2).

To reinstall the headrest, put the headrest poles (3) into the holes whilst pressing the release button (1). Then adjust it to the appropriate height.

⚠ WARNING

Make sure the headrest locks in position after adjusting it to properly protect the occupants.

Armrest

To use the armrest, pull it forward from the seatback.

Folding the rear seat (if equipped)

The rear seatbacks may be folded to facilitate carrying long items or to increase the luggage capacity of the vehicle.

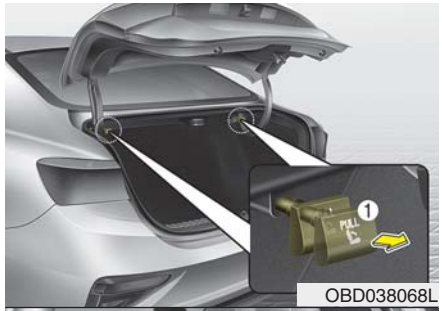
⚠ WARNING

The purpose of the fold-down rear seatbacks is to allow you to carry longer objects than could not otherwise be accommodated.

Never allow passengers to sit on top of the folded down seatback whilst the car is moving as this is not a proper seating position and no seat belts are available for use. This could result in serious injury or death in case of an accident or sudden stop. Objects carried on the folded down seatback should not extend higher than the top of the front seats. This could allow cargo to slide forward and cause injury or damage during sudden stops.

To fold down the rear seatback (4 Door) :

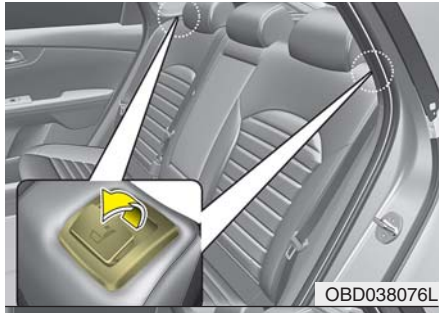
1. Set the front seatback to the upright position and if necessary, slide the front seat forward.
2. Lower the rear headrests to the lowest position.

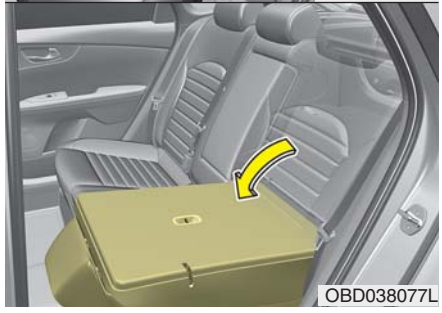


3. Pull out the seatback locking knob(1) in the trunk, then fold the seat toward the front of the vehicle.
4. To use the rear seat, lift and pull the seatback backward. Pull the seatback firmly until it clicks into place. Make sure the seatback is locked in place.
5. Return the rear seat belt to the proper position.

To fold down the rear seatback (5 Door):

1. Set the front seatback to the upright position and if necessary, slide the front seat forward.
2. Lower the rear headrests to the lowest position.





3. On rear outboard seatback: Pull the lock release lever (1) and fold the rear seatback forward and down firmly.
4. To use the rear seat, lift and pull the seatback backward. Pull the seatback firmly until it clicks into place. Make sure the seatback is locked in place.
5. Return the rear seat belt to the proper position.

⚠ WARNING

After folding the rear seat, unless the driver's position is properly set according to the driver's physical figure, do not fold the rear seat. It may increase body injuries in a sudden stop or collision.

⚠ WARNING - Uprighting seat

When you return the seatback to its upright position, hold the seatback and return it slowly. If the seatback is returned without holding it, the back of the seat could spring forward resulting in injury caused by being struck by the seatback.

⚠ WARNING

When you return the rear seatback to its upright position after being folded down:

Be careful not to damage the seat belt webbing or buckle. Do not allow the seat belt webbing or buckle to get caught or pinched in the rear seat. Ensure that the seatback is completely locked into its upright position by pushing on the top of the seatback. Otherwise, in an accident or sudden stop, the seat could fold down and allow cargo enter the passenger compartment, which could result in serious injury or death.

⚠ CAUTION - Damaging rear seat belt buckles

When you fold the rear seatback, insert the buckle between the rear seatback and cushion. Doing so can prevent the buckle from being damaged by the rear seatback.

⚠ CAUTION - Rear seat belts

When returning the rear seatbacks to the upright position, remember to return the rear shoulder belts to their proper position.

⚠ WARNING - Cargo

Cargo should always be secured to prevent it from being thrown about the vehicle in a collision and causing injury to the vehicle occupants. Do not place objects in the rear seats, since they cannot be properly secured and may hit the front seat occupants in a collision.

⚠ WARNING - Cargo loading

Make sure the engine is off, the automatic transmission/dual clutch transmission is in P (Park) or the manual transmission is in 1st, and the parking brake is securely applied whenever loading or unloading cargo. Failure to take these steps may allow the vehicle to move if the shift lever is inadvertently moved to another position.

SEAT BELTS

Seat belt restraint system

⚠ WARNING

- For maximum restraint system protection, the seat belts must always be used whenever the vehicle is moving.
- Seat belts are most effective when seatbacks are in the upright position.
- Children age 12 and under must always be properly restrained in the rear seat. Never allow children to ride in the front passenger seat. If a child over 12 must be seated in the front seat, he/she must be properly belted and the seat should be moved as far back as possible.
- Never wear the shoulder belt under your arm or behind your back. An improperly positioned shoulder belt can cause serious injuries in a crash.

(Continued)

(Continued)

The shoulder belt should be positioned midway over your shoulder across your collarbone.

- Never wear a seat belt over fragile objects. If there is a sudden stop or impact, the seat belt can damage it.
- Avoid wearing twisted seat belts. A twisted belt can't do its job well. In a collision, it could even cut into you. Be sure the belt webbing is straight and not twisted.
- Be careful not to damage the belt webbing or hardware. If the belt webbing or hardware is damaged, replace it.

⚠ WARNING - Australian design rules

Seat belts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body, and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis or the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable; wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.

Seat belts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed.

A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer.

(Continued)

(Continued)

Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. The belt should be replaced if webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged. It is essential to replace the entire assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact even if damage to the assembly is not obvious. Belts should not be worn with straps twisted. Each belt assembly must only be used by one occupant; it is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.

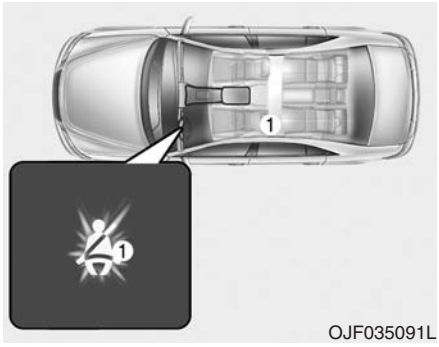
⚠ WARNING - Australian design rules

- **No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.**
- **When you fasten the seat belt, be careful not to latch the seat belt in buckles of other seat. It's very dangerous and you may not be protected by the seat belt properly.**
- **Do not unfasten the seat belt and do not fasten and unfasten the seat belt repeatedly whilst driving. This could result in loss of control, and an accident causing death, serious injury, or property damage.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **When fastening the seat belt, make sure that the seat belt does not pass over objects that are hard or can break easily.**
- **Make sure there is nothing in the buckle. The seat belt may not be fastened securely.**



OJF035091L

Driver's seat belt warning

As a reminder to the driver, the seat belt warning light will illuminate for approximately 6 seconds each time you turn the ignition switch ON regardless of seat belt fastening. At this time, if the seat belt is not fastened a warning chime will sound for 6 seconds.

If the seat belt is not fastened when the ignition switch is turned ON or if it is disconnected after the ignition switch is turned ON, the seat belt warning light will illuminate until the belt is fastened.

If you start to drive without the seat belt fastened or you unfasten the seat belt when you drive under 20km/h, the corresponding warning light will continue to illuminate until you fasten the seat belt.

If you continue to drive without the seat belt fastened or you unfasten the seat belt when you drive over 20km/h, the seat belt warning chime will sound for approximately 100 seconds and the corresponding warning light will blink.

OJF035092R

Front passenger’s seat belt warning (if equipped)

As a reminder to the front passenger, the front passenger's seat belt warning lights will illuminate for approximately 6 seconds each time you turn the ignition switch ON regardless of belt fastening. If the seat belt is not fastened when the ignition switch is turned ON or if it is disconnected after the ignition switch is turned ON, the seat belt warning light will illuminate until the belt is fastened.

If you start to drive without the seat belt fastened or you unfasten the seat belt when you drive under 20km/h, the corresponding warning light will continue to illuminate until you fasten the seat belt.

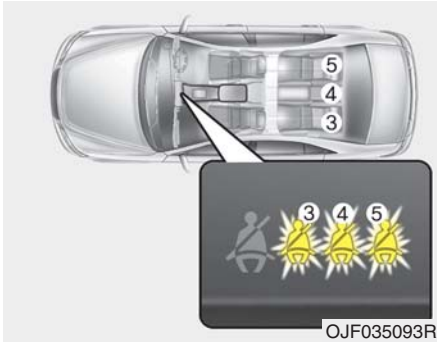
If you continue to drive without the seat belt fastened or you unfasten the seat belt when you drive over 20km/h, the seat belt warning chime will sound for approximately 100 seconds and the corresponding warning light will blink.

✻ NOTICE

- **You can find the front passenger's seat belt warning light on the centre fascia panel.**
- **Although the front passenger seat is not occupied, the seat belt warning light will blink or illuminate for 6 seconds.**
- **The front passenger's seat belt warning may operate when luggage is placed on the front passenger seat.**

⚠ WARNING

Riding in an improper position adversely affects the front passenger's seat belt warning system. It is important for the driver to instruct the passenger as to the proper seating instructions as contained in this manual.



Rear passenger's seat belt warning (if equipped)

- For rear left(3) and right(5) side seat

As a reminder to the rear passenger, the rear passenger's seat belt warning lights will illuminate for approximately 6 seconds each time you turn the ignition switch ON regardless of belt fastening.

If you start to drive without the seat belt fastened or you unfasten the seat belt when you drive under 20km/h, the corresponding warning light will continue to illuminate until you fasten the seat belt.

If you continue to drive without the seat belt fastened or you unfasten the seat belt when you drive 20 km/h (12 mph) and faster, the seat belt warning chime will sound for approximately 35 seconds and the corresponding warning light will blink.

When the seat belt is unfastened during driving, the warning lights will illuminate when the speed is under 20km/h.

When the speed is 20 km/h (12 mph) and faster, the warning light will blink and warning chime will sound for approximately 35 seconds.

- For rear centre(4) seat

As a reminder to the rear passenger, the rear passenger's seat belt warning lights will illuminate for approximately 6 seconds each time you turn the ignition switch ON regardless of belt fastening.

If the seat belt is not fastened when the ignition switch is turned ON, the seat belt warning light will illuminate for approximately 70 seconds.

If you start to drive without the seat belt fastened the corresponding warning light will continue to illuminate for approximately 70 seconds regardless of the speed.

If you unfasten the seat belt when you drive under 20km/h (12 mph), the corresponding warning light will illuminate for approximately 70 seconds.

If you unfasten the seat belt when you drive over 20km/h (12 mph), the seat belt warning chime will sound for approximately 35 seconds and the corresponding warning light will blink.

If the rear door is opened or closed under 20 km/h, warning light and warning sound does not work even if driving over 20 km/h (12 mph).

⚠ WARNING

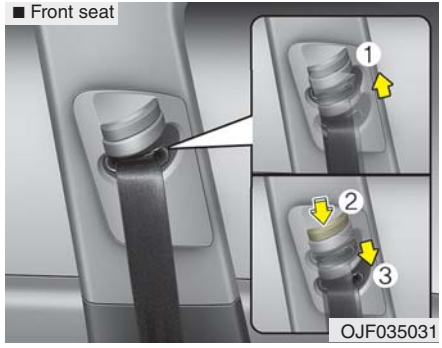
Riding in an improper position adversely affects the rear passenger's seat belt warning system.

It is important for the driver to instruct the passenger to properly be seated as instructed in this manual.

✻ NOTICE

- **Although the rear side passenger seat is not occupied, the seat belt warning light will blink or illuminate for 6 seconds.**
- **The rear side passenger's seat belt warning may operate when luggage, laptop or other electronic device is placed on the rear side passenger seat.**

Lap/shoulder belt



Height adjustment

You can adjust the height of the shoulder belt anchor to one of 4 positions for maximum comfort and safety.

The height of the adjusting seat belt should not be too close to your neck. You will not be getting the most effective protection. The shoulder portion should be adjusted so that it lies across your chest and midway over your shoulder near the door and not your neck.

To adjust the height of the seat belt anchor, lower or raise the height adjuster into an appropriate position.

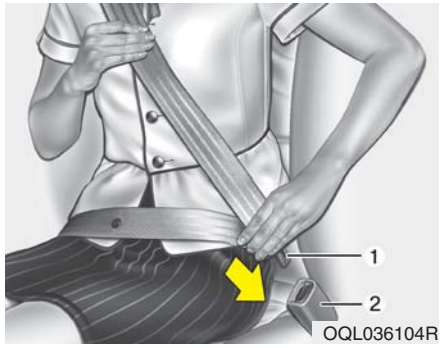
To raise the height adjuster, pull it up (1). To lower it, push it down (3) whilst pressing the height adjuster button (2).

Release the button to lock the anchor into position. Try sliding the height adjuster to make sure that it has locked into position.

Improperly positioned seat belts can cause serious injuries in an accident.

⚠ WARNING

- **Verify the shoulder belt anchor is locked into position at the appropriate height. Never position the shoulder belt across your neck or face.**
- **Failure to replace seat belts after an accident could leave you with damaged seat belts that will not provide protection in the event of another collision leading to personal injury or death. Replace your seat belts after being in an accident as soon as possible.**



To fasten your seat belt:

To fasten your seat belt, pull it out of the retractor and insert the metal tab (1) into the buckle (2). There will be an audible "click" when the tab locks into the buckle.

The seat belt automatically adjusts to the proper length only after the lap belt portion is adjusted manually so that it fits snugly around your hips. If you lean forward in a slow, easy motion, the belt will extend and let you move around. If there is a sudden stop or impact, however, the belt will lock into position. It will also lock if you try to lean forward too quickly.

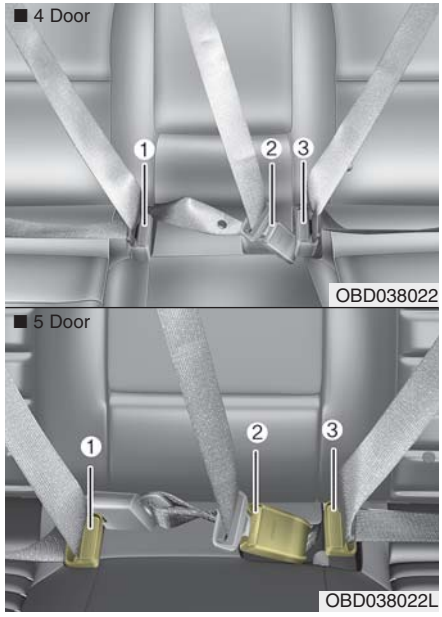
✻ NOTICE

If you are not able to pull out the seat belt from the retractor, firmly pull the belt out and release it. Then you will be able to pull the belt out smoothly.

⚠ WARNING

You should place the lap belt portion as low as possible and snugly across your hips, not on your waist. If the lap belt is located too high on your waist, it may increase the chance of injury in the event of a collision. Both arms should not be under or over the belt. Rather, one should be over and the other under, as shown in the illustration.

Never wear the seat belt under the arm near the door.

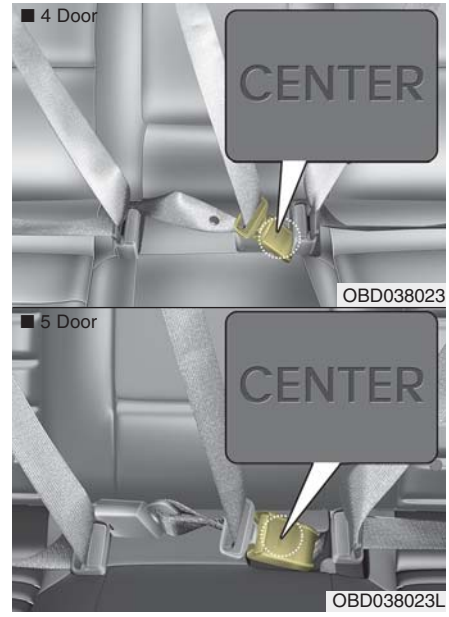


The seat belt should be locked into the buckle on each seat cushion to be properly fastened.

✻① : Rear right seat belt fastening buckle

② : Rear centre seat belt fastening buckle

③ : Rear left seat belt fastening buckle



When using the rear centre seat belt, the buckle with the “CENTER” mark must be used.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not force to lock the left or right seat belt into the centre seat belt buckle.

Make sure to lock the rear ceter seat belt into the centre seat belt buckle.

If not, the improperly fastened seat belt will not be able to provide protection.

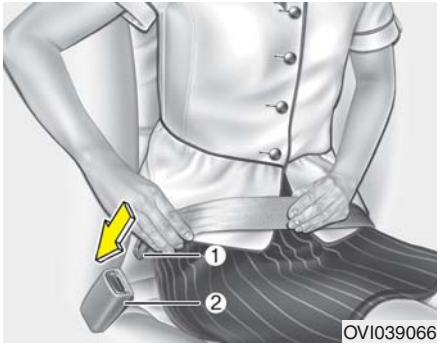
OUM036100R

To release the seat belt:

The seat belt is released by pressing the release button (A) in the locking buckle. When it is released, the belt should automatically draw back into the retractor.

If this does not happen, check the belt to be sure it is not twisted, then try again.

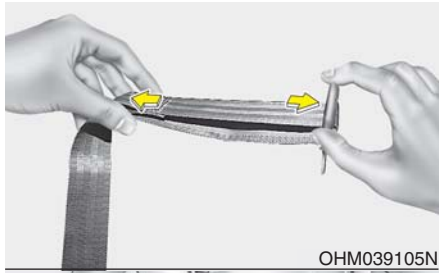
Lap belt (if equipped)



OVI039066

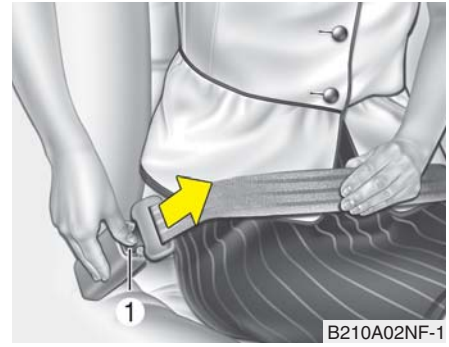
To fasten your seat belt:

To fasten a 2-point static type belt, insert the metal tab (1) into the locking buckle (2). There will be an audible "click" when the tab locks into the buckle. Check to make sure the belt is properly locked and that the belt is not twisted.



With a 2-point static type seat belt, the length must be adjusted manually so it fits snugly around your body. Fasten the belt and pull on the loose end to tighten. The belt should be placed as low as possible on your hips (1), not on your waist. If the belt is too high, it could increase the possibility of your being injured in an accident.

When using the rear centre seat belt, the buckle with the “CENTER” mark must be used.



To release the seat belt:

When you want to release the seat belt, press the button (1) in the locking buckle.

⚠ WARNING

The centre lap belt latching mechanism is different from those for the rear seat shoulder belts. When fastening the rear seat shoulder belts or the centre lap belt, make sure they are inserted into the correct buckles to obtain maximum protection from the seat belt system and assure proper operation.

Pre-tensioner seat belt (if equipped)

ODE036087R

Your vehicle is equipped with pre-tensioner seatbelts at the front and rear outboard seating positions (if equipped).

The purpose of the pre-tensioner is to make sure that the seat belts fit tightly against the occupant's body in certain collisions.

The pre-tensioner seat belts may be activated in crashes where the collision is severe enough.

When the vehicle stops suddenly, or if the occupant tries to lean forward too quickly, the seat belt retractor will lock into position. In certain frontal collisions, the pre-tensioner will activate and pull the seat belt into tighter contact against the occupant's body.

✻ NOTICE - if equipped with rollover sensor

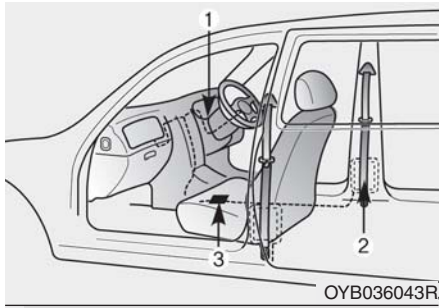
The pre-tensioner will activate not only in a frontal collision but also in a side collision or rollover, if the vehicle is equipped with a side or curtain air bag.

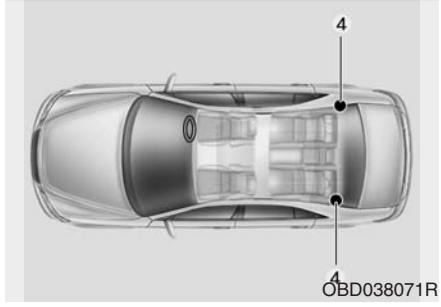
✻ NOTICE - without rollover sensor

The pre-tensioner will activate not only in a frontal collision but also in a side collision, if the vehicle is equipped with a side or curtain air bag.

⚠ WARNING

For your safety, be sure that the belt webbing is not loose or twisted and always sit properly on your seat.





The seat belt pre-tensioner system consists mainly of the following components. Their locations are shown in the illustration:

1. SRS air bag warning light
2. Retractor pre-tensioner assembly
3. SRS control module
4. Rear retractor pre-tensioner assembly (if equipped)

⚠ WARNING

To obtain maximum benefit from a pre-tensioner seat belt:

1. The seat belt must be worn correctly and adjusted to the proper position. Please read and follow all of the important information and precautions about your vehicle's occupant safety features – including seat belts and air bags – that are provided in this manual.

2. Be sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts properly.

✻ NOTICE

- **Pre-tensioners equipped at the front and rear outboard seating positions will be activated in certain collisions. The pre-tensioner seat belts can be activated, where the collision is severe enough, together with the air bags.**
- **When the pre-tensioner seat belts are activated, a loud noise may be heard and fine dust, which may appear to be smoke, may be visible in the passenger compartment. These are normal operating conditions and are not hazardous.**
- **Although it is harmless, the fine dust may cause skin irritation and should not be breathed for prolonged periods. Wash all exposed skin areas thoroughly after an accident in which the pre-tensioner seat belts were activated.**
- **Because the sensor that activates the SRS air bag is connected with the pre-tensioner seat belt, the SRS air bag warning light on the instrument panel will illuminate for approximately 6 seconds after the ignition switch has been turned to the "ON" position, and then it should turn off.**

⚠ CAUTION

If the pre-tensioner seat belt is not working properly, the SRS air bag warning light will illuminate even if there is no malfunction of the SRS air bag. If the SRS air bag warning light does not illuminate when the ignition key is turned to ON, or if it remains illuminated after illuminating for approximately 6 seconds, or if it illuminates whilst the vehicle is being driven, have the system inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

⚠ WARNING

- **Pre-tensioners are designed to operate only one time. After activation, pre-tensioner seat belts must be replaced. All seat belts, of any type, should always be replaced after they have been worn during a collision.**
- **The pre-tensioner seat belt assembly mechanisms become hot during activation. Do not touch the pre-tensioner seat belt assemblies for several minutes after they have been activated.**
- **Do not attempt to inspect or replace the pre-tensioner seat belts yourself. Have the system inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.**
- **Do not strike the pre-tensioner seat belt assemblies.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Do not attempt to service or repair the pre-tensioner seat belt system in any manner.**
- **Improper handling of the pre-tensioner seat belt assemblies, and failure to heed the warnings not to strike, modify, inspect, replace, service or repair the pre-tensioner seat belt assemblies may lead to improper operation or inadvertent activation and serious injury.**
- **Always wear the seat belts when driving or riding in a motor vehicle.**
- **If the vehicle or pre-tensioner seat belt must be discarded, contact a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.**

⚠ CAUTION

Body work on the front area of the vehicle may damage the pre-tensioner seat belt system. Therefore, have the system serviced by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

Seat belt precautions

⚠ WARNING

- **All occupants of the vehicle must wear their seat belts at all times. Seat belts and child restraints reduce the risk of serious or fatal injuries for all occupants in the event of a collision or sudden stop. Without a seat belt, occupants could be shifted too close to a deploying air bag, strike the interior structure or be thrown from the vehicle. Properly worn seat belts greatly reduce these hazards.**

  Always follow the precautions about seat belts, air bags and occupant safety contained in this manual.
- **Never wear a seat belt over fragile objects. If there is a sudden stop or impact, the seat belt can damage it.**

Infant or small child

You should be aware of the specific requirements in your country. Child and/or infant seats must be properly placed and installed in the rear seat. For more information about the use of these restraints, refer to “Child restraint system” in this section.

⚠ WARNING

Every person in your vehicle needs to be properly restrained at all times, including infants and children. Never hold a child in your arms or lap when riding in a vehicle. The violent forces created during a crash will tear the child from your arms and throw the child against the interior. Always use a child restraint appropriate for your child's height and weight.

✻ NOTICE

Small children are best protected from injury in an accident when properly restrained in the rear seat by a child restraint system that meets the requirements of the Safety Standards of your country. Before buying any child restraint system, make sure that it has a label certifying that it meets Safety Standards of your country. The restraint must be appropriate for your child's height and weight. Check the label on the child restraint for this information. Refer to “Child restraint system” in this section.

Larger children

Children who are too large for child restraint systems should always occupy the rear seat and use the available lap/shoulder belts. The lap portion should be fastened and snugged on the hips and as low as possible. Check if the belt fits periodically. A child's squirming could put the belt out of position. Children are given the most safety in the event of an accident when they are restrained by a proper restraint system in the rear seat. If a larger child (over age 12) must be seated in the front seat, the child should be securely restrained by the available lap/shoulder belt and the seat should be placed in the rearmost position. Children age 12 and under should be restrained securely in the rear seat. NEVER place a child age 12 and under in the front seat. NEVER place a rear facing child seat in the front seat of a vehicle.

If the shoulder belt portion slightly touches the child's neck or face, try placing the child closer to the centre of the vehicle. If the shoulder belt still touches their face or neck they need to be returned to a child restraint system.

⚠ WARNING - Shoulder belts on small children

- **Never allow a shoulder belt to be in contact with a child's neck or face whilst the vehicle is in motion.**
- **If seat belts are not properly worn and adjusted on children, there is a risk of death or serious injury.**

Pregnant women

The use of a seat belt is recommended for pregnant women to lessen the chance of injury in an accident. When a seat belt is used, the lap belt portion should be placed as low and securely as possible on the hips, not across the abdomen. For specific recommendations, consult a physician.

⚠ WARNING - Pregnant women

Pregnant women must never place the lap portion of the safety belt over the area of the abdomen where the fetus is located or above the abdomen where the belt could crush the fetus during an impact.

Injured person

A seat belt should be used when an injured person is being transported. When this is necessary, you should consult a physician for recommendations.

One person per belt

Two people (including children) should never attempt to use a single seat belt. This could increase the severity of injuries in case of an accident.

Do not lie down

To reduce the chance of injuries in the event of an accident and to achieve maximum effectiveness of the restraint system, all passengers should be sitting up and the front and rear seats should be in an upright position when the vehicle is moving. A seat belt cannot provide proper protection if the person is lying down in the rear seat or if the front and rea seats are in a reclined position.

⚠ WARNING

Riding with a reclined seatback increases your chance of serious or fatal injuries in the event of a collision or sudden stop. The protection of your restraint system (seat belts and air bags) is greatly reduced by reclining your seat. Seat belts must be secured against your hips and chest to work properly. The more the seatback is reclined, the greater the chance an occupant's hips will slide under the lap belt causing serious internal injuries. Also, the shoulder belt may strike the occupant's neck. Drivers and passengers should always sit well back in their seats, properly belted, and with the seatbacks upright.

Care of seat belts

Seat belt systems should never be disassembled or modified. In addition, care should be taken to assure that seat belts and belt hardware are not damaged by seat hinges, doors or other abuse.

⚠ WARNING

- **When you return the rear seatback to its upright position after the rear seatback has been folded down, be careful not to damage the seat belt webbing or buckle. Be sure that the webbing or buckle does not get caught or pinched in the rear seat. A seat belt with damaged webbing or buckle could possibly fail during a collision or sudden stop, resulting in serious injury. If the webbing or buckles are damaged, get them replaced immediately.**
- **Seatbelts can become hot in a vehicle that has been closed up in sunny weather. They could burn infants and children.**

Periodic inspection

All seat belts should be inspected periodically for wear or damage of any kind. Any damaged parts should be replaced as soon as possible.

Keep belts clean and dry

Seat belts should be kept clean and dry. If belts become dirty, they can be cleaned by using a mild soap solution and warm water. Bleach, dye, strong detergents or abrasives should not be used because they may damage and weaken the fabric.

When to replace seat belts

Entire in-use seat belt assembly or assemblies should be replaced if the vehicle has been involved in an accident. This should be done even if no damage is visible. In this case, have the system replaced by a professional workshop.

Kia recommends to consult an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

CHILD RESTRAINT SYSTEM (CRS)

Our recommendation:
Children always in the rear

⚠ WARNING

Always properly restrain children in the vehicle. Children of all ages are safer when riding in the rear seats. Never place a rearward-facing Child Restraint System on the front passenger seat, unless the air bag is deactivated.

Children under age 13 should always ride in the rear seats and must always be properly restrained to minimise the risk of injury in an accident, sudden stop or sudden manoeuvre.

According to accident statistics, children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seats than in the front seat. Children too large for a Child Restraint System must use the seat belts provided.

Most countries have regulations which require children to travel in approved Child Restraint Systems.

The laws governing the age or height/weight restrictions at which seat belts can be used instead of Child Restraint System differs among countries, so you should be aware of the specific requirements in your country, and where you are travelling.

Child Restraint Systems must be properly installed in the vehicle seat. Always use a commercially available Child Restraint System that meets the requirements of your country.

Child Restraint System (CRS)

Infants and younger children must be restrained in an appropriate rearward-facing or forward-facing CRS that has first been properly secured to the seat of the vehicle. Read and comply with the instructions for installation and use provided by the manufacturer of the Child Restraint System.

⚠ WARNING

- **Always follow the Child Restraint System manufacturer's instructions for installation and use.**
- **Always properly restrain your child in the Child Restraint System.**
- **Do not use an infant carrier or a child safety seat that "hooks" over a seatback, it may not provide adequate protection in an accident.**
- **After an accident, have the system checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.**

Selecting a Child Restraint System (CRS)

When selecting a Child Restraint System for your child, always:

- Make sure the Child Restraint System has a label certifying that it meets applicable Safety Standards of your country.

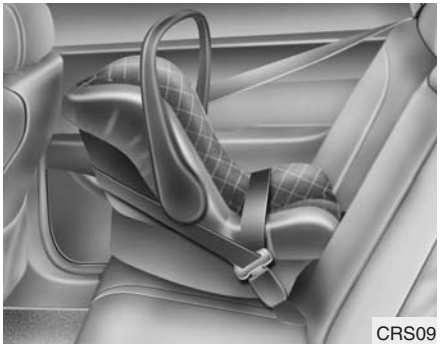
  A Child Restraint System may only be installed if it was approved in accordance with the requirements of ECE-R44, ECE-R129 or relevant regulation.
- Select a Child Restraint System based on your child's height and weight. The required label or the instructions for use typically provide this information.
- Select a Child Restraint System that fits the vehicle seating position where it will be used.

  For the suitability of Child Restraint Systems on the vehicle's seating positions, please refer to the installation tables.
- Read and comply with the warnings and instructions for installation and use provided with the Child Restraint System.

Child Restraint System types

There are three main types of Child Restraint Systems: rearward-facing, forward-facing and booster Child Restraint Systems.

They are classified according to the child's age, height and weight.


CRS09

Rearward-facing Child Restraint System

A rearward-facing Child Restraint System provides restraint with the seating surface against the back of the child. The harness system holds the child in place, and in an accident, acts to keep the child positioned in the Child Restraint Systems and reduce the stress to the fragile neck and spinal cord.

All children under the age of one year must always ride in a rearward-facing Child Restraint System. There are different types of rearward-facing Child Restraint Systems: infant-only Child Restraint Systems can only be used rearward-facing. Convertible and 3-in-1 Child Restraint Systems typically have higher height and weight limits for the rearward-facing position, allowing you to keep your child rearward-facing for a longer period of time.

Keep using Child Restraint Systems in the rearward-facing position as long as children fit within the height and weight limits allowed by the Child Restraint System's manufacturer.

OBD038024

Forward-facing Child Restraint System

A forward-facing Child Restraint System provides restraint for the child's body with a harness. Keep children in a forward-facing Child Restraint System with a harness until they reach the top height or weight limit allowed by your Child Restraint System's manufacturer.

Once your child outgrows the forward-facing Child Restraint System, your child is ready for a booster seat.

Booster seats

A booster seat is a Child Restraint System designed to improve the fit of the vehicle's seat belt system. A booster seat positions the seat belt so that it fits properly over the stronger parts of your child's body. Keep your children in booster seats until they are big enough to fit in a seat belt properly.

For a seat belt to fit properly, the lap belt must lie comfortable across the upper thighs, not the stomach. The shoulder belt should lie comfortable across the shoulder and chest and not across the neck or face. Children under age 13 must always be properly restrained to minimise the risk of injury in an accident, sudden stop or sudden manoeuvre.

Installing a Child Restraint System (CRS)

⚠ WARNING

Before installing your Child Restraint System always:

Read and follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the Child Restraint System.

Failure to follow all warnings and instructions could increase the risk of the SERIOUS INJURY or DEATH if an accident occurs.

⚠ WARNING

If the vehicle headrest prevents proper installation of a Child Restraint System, the headrest of the respective seating position shall be readjusted or entirely removed.

After selecting a proper Child Restraint System for your child and checking that the Child Restraint System fits properly on the seating position, there are three general steps for a proper installation:

- **Properly secure the Child Restraint System to the vehicle.** All Child Restraint Systems must be secured to the vehicle with the lap belt or lap part of a lap/shoulder belt or with the ISOFIX top-tether and/or ISOFIX anchorage and/or with the support leg.
- **Make sure the Child Restraint System is firmly secured.** After installing a Child Restraint System to the vehicle, push and pull the seat forward and from side-to-side to verify that it is securely attached to the seat. A Child Restraint System secured with a seat belt should be installed as firmly as possible. However, some side-to-side movement can be expected.

When installing a Child Restraint System, adjust the vehicle seat and seatback (up and down, forward and rearward) so that your child fits in the Child Restraint System in a confortable manner.

- **Secure the child in the Child Restraint System.** Make sure the child is properly strapped in the Child Restraint System according to the Child Restraint System manufacturer's instructions.

⚠ CAUTION

A Child Restraint System in a closed vehicle can become very hot. To prevent burns, check the seating surface and buckles before placing your child in the Child Restraint System.

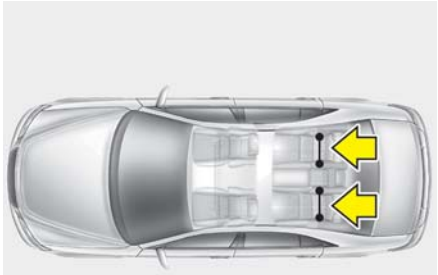
ISOFIX anchorage and top-tether anchorage (ISOFIX anchorage system) for children

The ISOFIX system holds a Child Restraint System during driving and in an accident. This system is designed to make installation of the Child Restraint System easier and reduce the possibility of improperly installing your Child Restraint System. The ISOFIX system uses anchors in the vehicle and attachments on the Child Restraint System. The ISOFIX system eliminates the need to use seat belts to secure the Child Restraint System to the rear seats.

ISOFIX anchorages are metal bars built into the vehicle. There are two lower anchors for each ISOFIX seating position that will accommodate a Child Restraint System with lower attachments.

To use the ISOFIX system in your vehicle, you must have a Child Restraint System with ISOFIX attachments.

The Child Restraint System manufacturer will provide you with instructions on how to use the Child Restraint System with its attachments for the ISOFIX anchorages.

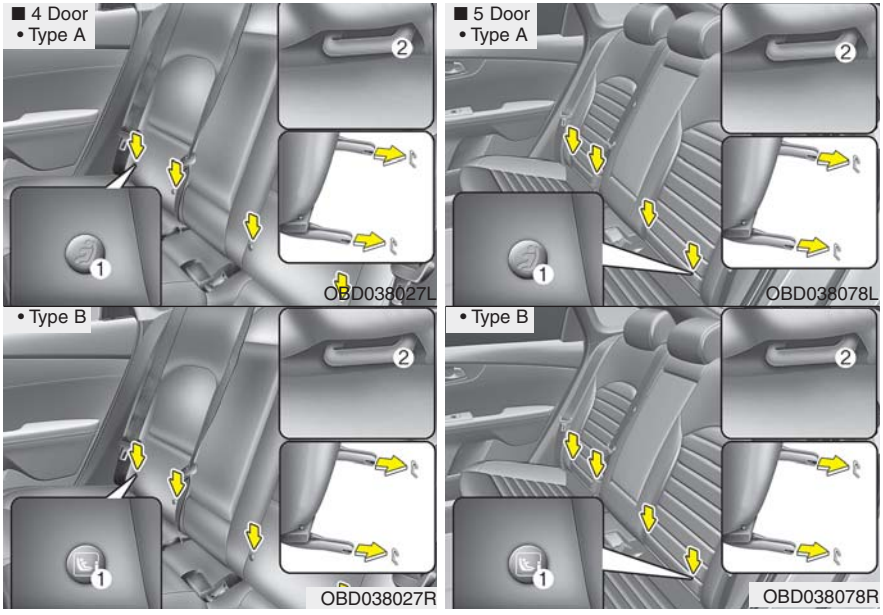


OBDM039084C

ISOFIX anchorages have been provided in the left and right outboard rear seating positions. Their locations are shown in the illustration.

⚠ WARNING

Do not attempt to install a Child Restraint System using ISOFIX anchorages in the rear centre seating position. There are no ISOFIX anchorages provided for this seat. Using the outboard seat anchorages, for the CRS installation on the rear centre seating position, can damage the anchorages.



ISOFIX anchorages are located between the seatback and the seat cushion of the rear seat left and right outboard seating positions, indicated by the symbols.

To use the ISOFIX anchorages, push the upper portion of the ISOFIX anchorage cover.

❈ (1) : ISOFIX Anchor Position Indicator (Type A- ,Type B-)

(2) : ISOFIX Anchor

Securing a Child Restraint System with the "ISOFIX Anchorage System"

To install an i-Size or ISOFIX-compatible Child Restraint System in either of the rear outboard seating positions:

1. Move the seat belt buckle away from the ISOFIX anchorages.
2. Move any other objects away from the anchorages that could prevent a secure connection between the Child Restraint System and the ISOFIX anchorages.
3. Place the Child Restraint System on the vehicle seat, then attach the seat to the ISOFIX anchorages according to the instructions provided by the Child Restraint System manufacturer.
4. Follow the instructions of the Child Restraint System's manufacturer for proper installation and connection of the ISOFIX attachments on the Child Restraint System to the ISOFIX anchorages.

⚠ WARNING

Take the following precautions when using the ISOFIX system:

- **Read and follow all installation instructions provided with your Child Restraint System.**
- **To prevent the child from reaching and taking hold of unretracted seat belts, buckle all unused rear seat belts and retract the seat belt webbing behind the child. Children can be strangled if a shoulder belt becomes wrapped around their neck and the seat belt tightens.**
- **NEVER attach more than one Child Restraint System to a single anchorage. This could cause the anchor or attachment to come loose or break.**

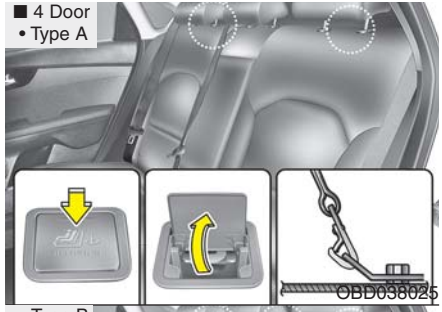
(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Always have the ISOFIX system inspected by your dealer after an accident. An accident can damage the ISOFIX system and may not properly secure the Child Restraint System.**

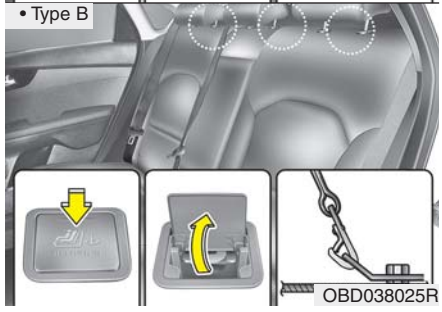
Securing a Child Restraint System seat with "Top-tether Anchorage" system (if equipped)

■ 4 Door
• Type A



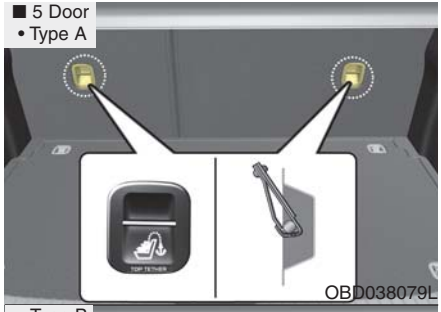
OBD038025

• Type B



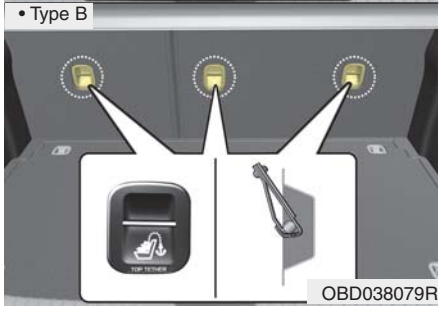
OBD038025R

■ 5 Door
• Type A



OBD038079L

• Type B



OBD038079R

Top-tether anchorages for Child Restraint Systems are located on the shelf behind the rear seats(4Door) and on the back of the rear seatbacks (5 Door).

OBD038026

1. Route the Child Restraint System top-tether strap over the seatback. Placing the top tether strap, please follow the instructions of the Child Restraint System manufacturer.
2. Connect the top-tether strap to the top-tether anchorage, then tighten the top-tether strap according to the instructions of your Child Restraint System's manufacturer to firmly attach the Child Restraint System to the seat.

⚠ WARNING

Take the following precautions when installing the top-tether:

- **Read and follow all installation instructions provided with your Child Restraint System.**
- **NEVER attach more than one Child Restraint System to a single ISOFIX top-tether anchorage. This could cause the anchorage or attachment to come loose or break.**
- **Do not attach the top-tether to anything other than the correct top-tether anchorage. It may not work properly if attached to something else.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Child Restraint System anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted Child Restraint System.**

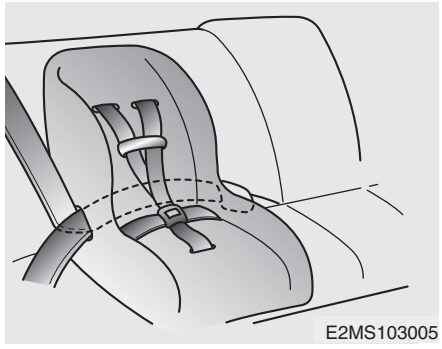
  Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts or harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING - Australian design rule

Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses, or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

Securing a Child Restraint System with a lap/shoulder belt

When not using the ISOFIX system, all Child Restraint Systems must be secured to a rear seat with the lap part of a lap/shoulder belt.

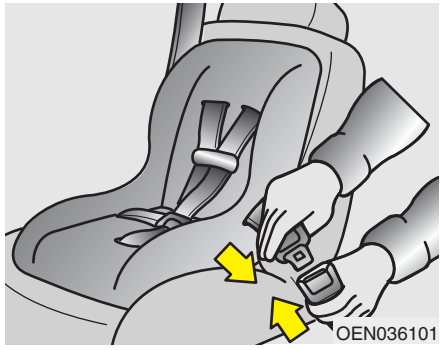

E2MS103005

Installing a Child Restraint System with a lap/shoulder belt

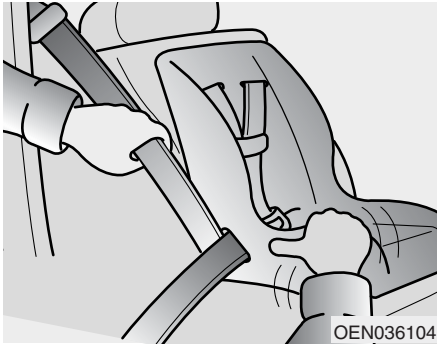
To install a Child Restraint System on the rear seats, do the following:

1. Place the Child Restraint System on a rear seat and route the lap/shoulder belt around or through the Child Restraint System, following the Child Restraint System manufacturer's instructions.

   Make sure the seat belt webbing is not twisted.


OEN036101

2. Fasten the lap/shoulder belt latch into the buckle. Listen for the distinct "click" sound. Position the release button so that it is easy to access in case of an emergency.



3. Remove as much slack from the belt as possible by pushing down on the Child Restraint System whilst feeding the shoulder belt back into the retractor.
4. Push and pull on the Child Restraint System to confirm that the seat belt is holding it firmly in place.

If your Child Restraint System manufacturer recommends the use of a top-tether with the lap/shoulder belt, see page 3-47.

To remove the Child Restraint System, press the release button on the buckle and then pull the lap/shoulder belt out of the Child Restraint System and allow the seat belt to retract fully.

Suitability of each seating position for belted & ISOFIX Child Restraint Systems (CRS) according to UN regulations (Information for vehicle users and CRS manufacturers) – For Europe

- Yes : Suitable for fitment of the designated category of CRS
- No : Not suitable for fitment of the designated category of CRS
- "-" : Not applicable

CRS categories		Seating positions						Remarks
		1	2	3	4	5	6	
Universal belted CRS		-	-	Yes F, R	Yes F, R	Yes F, R	Yes F, R	F : Forward facing R : Rearward facing
i-size CRS	ISOFIX CRF : F2, F2X, R1, R2	-	-	No	No	No	No	
Carry-cot (ISOFIX lateral facing CRS)	ISOFIX CRF: L1, L2	-	-	No	No	No	No	
ISOFIX infant* CRS (* ISOFIX CRS for a baby)	ISOFIX CRF : R1	-	-	No	Yes R	No	Yes R	
ISOFIX toddler CRS - small	ISOFIX CRF : F2, F2X, R2	-	-	No	Yes F, R	No	Yes F, R	
ISOFIX toddler CRS - large* (* : not booster seats)	ISOFIX CRF : F3, R3	-	-	No	Yes F, R[1)]	No	Yes F, R[1)]	

Note[1)] : For installation of ISOFIX Large rearward facing toddler CRS, please note below

- Driver's seat : the driver's seat should be moved to mid position and then the seat height should be adjused to the highest position.
- Front passenger seat : the forward passenger's seat should be moved forward properly.

❈ Never place a rearward facing Child Restraint System on the front passenger seat, unless the passenger air bag is deactivated.

❈ For semi-universal or vehicle specific CRS (ISOFIX or belted CRS), please see the vehicle list provided in the manual of CRS.

❈ It is recommended to remove the head restraint, when CRS is not unstable due to head restraint.

OBD038066R

Seat number	Position in the vehicle
1	Front right
2	Front centre
3	Front left
4	2nd row left
5	2nd row centre
6	2nd row right

Suitability of each seating position for belted & ISOFIX Child Restraint Systems (CRS) according to UN regulations (Information for vehicle users and CRS manufacturers) – Except Europe

- Yes : Suitable for fitment of the designated category of CRS
- No : Not suitable for fitment of the designated category of CRS
- "-" : Not applicable

CRS categories		Seating positions						Remarks
		1	2	3	4	5	6	
Universal belted CRS		-	-	Yes F	Yes F, R	No	Yes F, R	F : Forward facing R : Rearward facing
i-size CRS	ISOFIX CRF : F2, F2X, R1, R2	-	-	No	No	No	No	
Carry-cot (ISOFIX lateral facing CRS)	ISOFIX CRF: L1, L2	-	-	No	No	No	No	
ISOFIX infant* CRS (* ISOFIX CRS for a baby)	ISOFIX CRF : R1	-	-	No	Yes R	No	Yes R	
ISOFIX toddler CRS - small	ISOFIX CRF : F2, F2X, R2	-	-	No	Yes F, R	No	Yes F, R	
ISOFIX toddler CRS - large* (* : not booster seats)	ISOFIX CRF : F3, R3	-	-	No	Yes F, R[1)]	No	Yes F, R[1)]	

Note 1) For installation of ISOFIX Large rearward facing toddler CRS, please note below

- Driver's seat : the driver's seat should be moved to mid position and then the seat height should be adjusted to the highest position.
- Front passenger seat : the forward passenger's seat should be moved forward properly.

❈ Never place a rearward facing Child Restraint System on the front passenger seat.

❈ For semi-universal or vehicle specific CRS (ISOFIX or belted CRS), please see the vehicle list provided in the manual of CRS.

❈ It is recommended to remove the head restraint, when CRS is not unstable due to head restraint.

OBD038066R

Seat number	Position in the vehicle
1	Front right
2	Front centre
3	Front left
4	2nd row left
5	2nd row centre
6	2nd row right

Suitability of each seating position for belted & ISOFIX Child Restraint Systems (CRS) according to UN regulations (Information for vehicle users and CRS manufacturers) - Australia and New Zealand

- Yes : Suitable for fitment of the designated category of CRS
- No : Not suitable for fitment of the designated category of CRS
- "-" : Not applicable

CRS categories		Seating positions						Remarks
		1	2	3	4	5	6	
Universal belted CRS		-	-	Yes F	Yes F, R	Yes F, R	Yes F, R	F : Forward facing R : Rearward facing
i-size CRS	ISOFIX CRF : F2, F2X, R1, R2	-	-	No	Yes	No	Yes	
Carry-cot (ISOFIX lateral facing CRS)	ISOFIX CRF: L1, L2	-	-	No	No	No	No	
ISOFIX infant* CRS (* ISOFIX CRS for a baby)	ISOFIX CRF : R1	-	-	No	Yes R	No	Yes R	
ISOFIX toddler CRS - small	ISOFIX CRF : F2, F2X, R2	-	-	No	Yes F, R	No	Yes F, R	
ISOFIX toddler CRS - large* (* : not booster seats)	ISOFIX CRF : F3, R3	-	-	No	Yes F, R[1)]	No	Yes F, R[1)]	

Note 1) For installation of ISOFIX Large rearward facing toddler CRS, please note below

- Driver's seat : the driver's seat should be moved to mid position and then the seat height should be adjusted to the highest position.
- Front passenger seat : the forward passenger's seat should be moved forward properly

❈ Never place a rearward facing Child Restraint System on the front passenger seat.

❈ For semi-universal or vehicle specific CRS (ISOFIX or belted CRS), please see the vehicle list provided in the manual of CRS.

❈ It is recommended to remove the head restraint, when CRS is not unstable due to head restraint.

OBD038066R

Seat number	Position in the vehicle
1	Front right
2	Front centre
3	Front left
4	2nd row left
5	2nd row centre
6	2nd row right

Recommended child restraint systems – For Europe

Mass Group	Size Class	Fixture	Name	Manufacturer	Type of Fixation	ECE-R44 Approval No.
Group 0-1 (0 ~ 13kg)	E	ISO/R1	Baby Safe Plus	Britax Römer	Reward facing with ISOFIX base	E1 04301146
Group 1 (9 ~ 18kg)	B1	ISO/F2X	Duo Plus	Britax Römer	Forward facing with vehicle ISOFIX lower anchorage + Top tether	E1 04301133

CRS Manufacturer information

Britax Römer http://www.britax.com

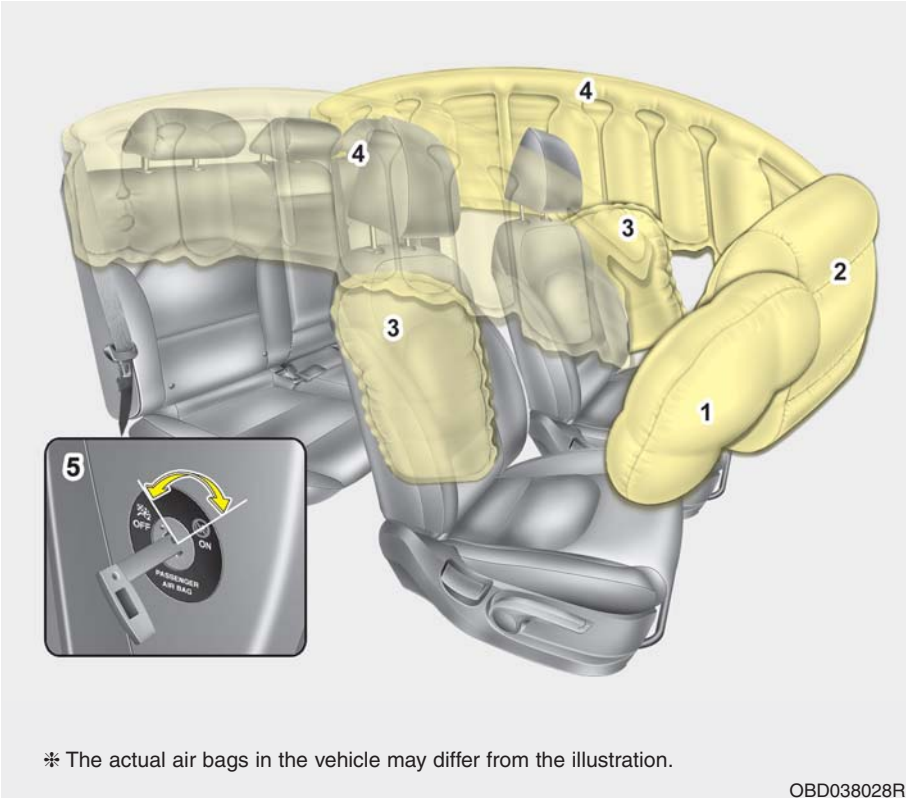
Recommended Child Restraint Systems - Australia and New Zealand

Mass Group	Name	Manufacturer	Type of Fixation
Type F (for 4~10 year)	Britax Safe-n-Sound Kid Guard PRO	Britax Römer	Vehicle Belt

CRS Manufacturer information

Britax Römer http://www.britax.com

AIR BAG - SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)



❈ The actual air bags in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

OBD038028R

(1) Driver's front air bag*
(2) Passenger's front air bag*
(3) Side air bag*
(4) Curtain air bag*
(5) Passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch*

* : if equipped

⚠ WARNING

- **Even in vehicles with air bags, you and your passengers must always wear the safety belts provided in order to minimise the risk and severity of injury in the event of a collision or rollover.**
- **SRS and pretensioners contain explosive chemicals.**

  If scrapping a vehicle without removing SRS and pretensioners from a vehicle, it may cause fire. Before scrapping a vehicle, contact a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.
- **Keep the SRS parts and wirings away from water or any liquid. If the SRS components are inoperative due to exposure to water or liquids, it may cause fire or severe injury.**

How does the air bag system operate

- Air bags are activated (able to inflate if necessary) only when the ignition switch is turned to the ON or START position.
- Air bags inflate instantly in the event of a serious frontal collision or side collision (if equipped with a side air bag or curtain air bag) in order to help protect the occupants from serious physical injury.

✻ NOTICE - If equipped with rollover sensor

Also, the air bags inflate instantly in the event of a rollover (if equipped with a side air bag or curtain air bag) in order to help protect the occupants from serious physical injury.

- There is no single speed at which the air bags will inflate.

  Generally, air bags are designed to inflate based upon the severity of a collision and its direction. These two factors determine whether the sensors produce an electronic deployment/ inflation signal.
- Air bag deployment depends on a number of factors including vehicle speed, angles of impact and the density and stiffness of the vehicles or objects which your vehicle hits in the collision. The determining factors are not limited to those mentioned above.
- The front air bags will completely inflate and deflate in an instant.

  It is virtually impossible for you to see the air bags inflate during an accident.

  It is much more likely that you will simply see the deflated air bags hanging out of their storage compartments after the collision.

- In order to help provide protection in a severe collision, the air bags must inflate rapidly. The speed of the air bag inflation is a consequence of extremely short time in which a collision occurs and the need to inflate the air bag between the occupant and the vehicle structures before the occupant impacts those structures.

  This speed of inflation reduces the risk of serious or life-threatening injuries in a severe collision and is thus a necessary part of the air bag design.

  However, air bag inflation can also cause injuries which can include facial abrasions, bruises and broken bones because the inflation speed also causes the air bags to expand with a great deal of force.
- **There are even circumstances under which contact with the steering wheel air bag can cause fatal injuries, especially if the occupant is positioned excessively close to the steering wheel.**

⚠ WARNING

- **To avoid severe personal injury or death caused by deploying air bags in a collision, the driver should sit as far back from the steering wheel air bag as possible (at least 250 mm (10 inches) away). The front passengers should always move their seats as far back as possible and sit back in their seat.**
- **Air bags inflate instantly in the event of a collision, and passengers may be injured by the air bag expansion force if they are not in a proper position.**
- **Air bag inflation may cause injuries including facial or bodily abrasions, injuries from broken glasses or burns.**

Noise and smoke

When the air bags inflate, they make a loud noise and they leave smoke and powder in the air inside of the vehicle. This is normal and is a result of the ignition of the air bag inflator. After the air bag inflates, you may feel substantial discomfort in breathing due to the contact of your chest with both the seat belt and the air bag, as well as from breathing the smoke and powder. **Open your doors and/or windows as soon as possible after the impact in order to reduce discomfort and prevent prolonged exposure to smoke and powder.**

Though the smoke and powder are non-toxic, they may cause irritation to the skin (eyes, nose and throat, etc). If this is the case, wash and rinse with cold water immediately and consult a doctor if the symptom persists.

⚠ WARNING

- **When the air bags deploy, the air bag related parts in the steering wheel, instrument panel, front seats and/or in both sides of the roof rails above the front and rear doors are very hot. To prevent injury, do not touch the air bag storage area's internal components immediately after an air bag has inflated.**
- **Do not install or place any accessories near air bag deployment areas, such as the instrument panel, windows, pillars, and roof rails.**

Front passenger's air bag warning label for child restraint system

■ Type A

OYDESA2042

■ Type B

OHM036053L

⚠ WARNING

Never place a rear facing child restraint in the front passenger seat, unless the passenger-side air bag is deactivated. An inflating passenger-side air bag could impact the rear-facing child restraint and kill the child.

In addition, we recommend that you do not place front-facing child restraints in the front passenger's seat either. If the front passenger air bag inflates, it could cause serious or fatal injuries to the child.

If your vehicle is equipped with the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch, you can activate or deactivate the front passenger's air bag when necessary.

For more details, please refer to "Passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch" in this chapter. (if equipped)

⚠ WARNING

- **Extreme Hazard! Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an air bag in front of it!**
- **NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIR BAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.**
- **When children are seated in the rear outboard seats of a vehicle equipped with side and/or curtain air bags, be sure to install the child restraint system as far away from the door side as possible, and securely lock the child restraint system in position.**

  Inflation of side and/or curtain air bags could cause serious injury or death to an infant or child.

Air bag warning light

W7-147

The purpose of the air bag warning light in your instrument panel is to alert you of a potential problem with your air bag - Supplemental Restraint System (SRS).

When the ignition switch is turned ON, the warning light should illuminate for approximately 6 seconds, then go off.

Have the system checked if:

- The light does not turn on briefly when you turn the ignition ON.
- The light stays on after illuminating for approximately 6 seconds.
- The light comes on whilst the vehicle is in motion.
- The light blinks when the ignition switch is in ON position.

Passenger's front air bag ON indicator (if equipped)

OBD038064R

The passenger's front air bag ON indicator illuminates for approximately 4 seconds after the ignition switch is turned to the ON position.

The passenger's front air bag ON indicator also comes on when the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch is set to the ON position and goes off after approximately 60 seconds.

Passenger's front air bag OFF indicator (if equipped)

OBD038065R

The passenger's front air bag OFF indicator illuminates for about 4 seconds after the ignition switch is turned to the ON position.

The passenger's front air bag OFF indicator also comes on when the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch is set to the OFF position and goes off when the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch is set to the ON position.

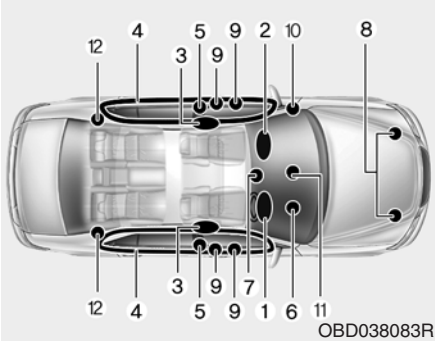
⚠ CAUTION

If the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch malfunctions, the passenger's front air bag OFF indicator will not illuminate (The passenger's front air bag ON indicator comes on and goes off after approximately 60 seconds) and the passenger's front air bag will inflate in a frontal impact even if the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch is set to the OFF position.

In this case, have the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch and the SRS air bag system inspected by a professional workshop.

Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

SRS components and functions



OBD038083R

The SRS consists of the following components:

1. Driver's front air bag module*
2. Passenger's front air bag module*
3. Side air bag modules*
4. Curtain air bag modules*
5. Retractor pre-tensioner assemblies*
6. Air bag warning light*
7. SRS control module (SRSCM)* / Rollover sensor*
8. Front impact sensors*
9. Side impact sensors*
10. Passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch*
11. Passenger's front air bag ON/OFF lamp*
12. Rear retractor pre-tensioner assemblies*

* : if equipped

The SRSCM continually monitors all SRS components whilst the ignition switch is ON to determine if a crash impact is severe enough to require air bag deployment or pre-tensioner seat belt deployment.

The SRS air bag warning light on the instrument panel will illuminate for about 6 seconds after the ignition switch is turned to the ON position, after which the SRS air bag warning light should go out.

⚠ WARNING

If any of the following conditions occurs, this indicates a malfunction of the SRS. In this case, have the system inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

- **The light does not turn on briefly when you turn the ignition ON.**
- **The light stays on after illuminating for approximately 6 seconds.**
- **The light comes on whilst the vehicle is in motion.**
- **The light blinks when the ignition switch is in ON position.**

Driver's front air bag (1) (if equipped)

The front air bag modules are located in the centre of the steering wheel, in the front passenger's panel above the glove box and/or in the driver's side knee bolster. When the SRSCM detects a sufficiently severe impact to the front of the vehicle, it will automatically deploy the front air bags.

Driver's front air bag (2) (if equipped)

Upon deployment, tear seams molded directly into the pad covers will separate under pressure from the expansion of the air bags. Further opening of the covers then allows full inflation of the air bags.

Driver's front air bag (3) (if equipped)

A fully inflated air bag, in combination with a properly worn seat belt, slows the driver's or the passenger's forward motion, reducing the risk of head and chest injury.

After complete inflation, the air bag immediately starts deflating, enabling the driver to maintain forward visibility and the ability to steer or operate other controls.

Passenger's front air bag (if equipped)

⚠ WARNING

- **Do not install or place any accessories (drink holder, sticker, etc.) on the front passenger's panel above the glove box in a vehicle with a passenger's air bag. Such objects may become dangerous projectiles and cause injury if the passenger's air bag inflates.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **When installing a container of liquid air freshener inside the vehicle, do not place it near the instrument cluster nor on the instrument panel surface.**

  It may become a dangerous projectile and cause injury if the passenger's air bag inflates.

⚠ WARNING

- **If an air bag deploys, there may be a loud noise followed by a fine dust released in the vehicle. These conditions are normal and are not hazardous - the air bags are packed in this fine powder. The dust generated during air bag deployment may cause skin or eye irritation as well as aggravate asthma for some persons. Always wash all exposed skin areas thoroughly with cold water and mild soap after an accident in which the air bags were deployed.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **The SRS can function only when the ignition key is in the ON position. If the SRS air bag warning light does not illuminate, or continuously remains on after illuminating for about 6 seconds when the ignition key is turned to the ON position, or after the engine is started, comes on whilst driving, the SRS is not working properly. In this case, have the system inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.**
- **Before you replace a fuse or disconnect a battery terminal, turn the ignition switch to the LOCK position and remove the ignition key. Never remove or replace the air bag related fuse(s) when the ignition switch is in the ON position. Failure to heed this warning will cause the SRS air bag warning light to illuminate.**

Driver's and passenger's front air bag (if equipped)

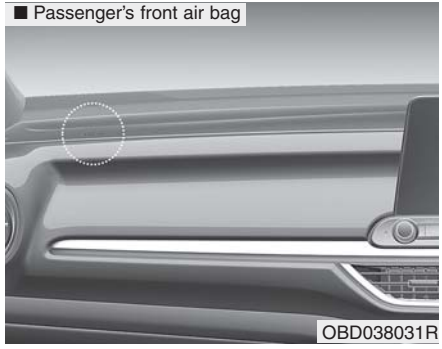
■ Driver's front air bag

OBD038029R

Your vehicle is equipped with a Supplemental Restraint (Air Bag) System and the lap/shoulder belts at both the driver and passenger seating positions.

The indications of the system's presence are the letters "AIRBAG" embossed on the air bag pad cover in the steering wheel and the passenger's side front panel pad above the glove box.

■ Passenger's front air bag



The SRS consists of air bags installed under the pad covers in the centre of the steering wheel and the passenger's side front panel above the glove box.

The purpose of the SRS is to provide the vehicle's driver and/or the front passenger with additional protection than that offered by the seat belt system alone in case of a frontal impact of sufficient severity. The SRS uses sensors to gather information about the driver's seat position, the driver's and front passenger's seat belt usage and impact severity.

⚠ WARNING

Always use seat belts and child restraints – every trip, every time, everyone! Air bags inflate with considerable force and in the blink of an eye. Seat belts help keep occupants in proper position to obtain maximum benefit from the air bag. Even with air bags, improperly and unbelted occupants can be severely injured when the air bag inflates. Always follow the precautions about seat belts, air bags and occupant safety contained in this manual.

To reduce the chance of serious or fatal injuries and receive the maximum safety benefit from your restraint system:

- **Never place a child in any child or booster seat in the front seat.**
- **ABC – Always Buckle Children in the 2nd row seat. It is the safest place for children of any age to ride.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Front and side air bags can injure occupants improperly positioned in the front seats.**
- **Move your seat as far back as practical from the front air bags, whilst still maintaining control of the vehicle.**
- **You and your passengers should never sit or lean unnecessarily close to the air bags. Improperly positioned drivers and passengers can be severely injured by inflating air bags.**
- **Never lean against the door or centre console – always sit in an upright position.**
- **Do not allow a passenger to ride in the front seat when the passenger's front air bag OFF indicator is illuminated, because the air bag will not deploy in the event of a moderate or severe frontal crash.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **No objects should be placed over or near the air bag modules on the steering wheel, instrument panel or the front passenger's panel above the glove box, because any such object could cause harm if the vehicle is in a crash severe enough to cause the air bags to deploy.**
- **Do not tamper with or disconnect SRS wiring or other components of the SRS system. Doing so could result in injury, due to accidental deployment of the air bags or by rendering the SRS inoperative.**
- **If the SRS air bag warning light remains illuminated whilst the vehicle is being driven, have the system inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Air bags can only be used once – have the system replaced by a professional workshop.**

  Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.
- **The SRS is designed to deploy the front air bags only when an impact is sufficiently severe and when the impact angle is less than 30° from the forward longitudinal axis of the vehicle. Additionally, the air bags will only deploy once. Seat belts must be worn at all times.**
- **Front air bags are not intended to deploy in side-impact, rear-impact or rollover crashes. In addition, front air bags will not deploy in frontal crashes below the deployment threshold.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **A child restraint system must never be placed in the front seat. The infant or child could be severely injured or killed by an air bag deployment in case of an accident.**
- **Children age 12 and under must always be properly restrained in the rear seat. Never allow children to ride in the front passenger seat. If a child over 12 must be seated in the front seat, he or she must be properly belted and the seat should be moved as far back as possible.**
- **For maximum safety protection in all types of crashes, all occupants including the driver should always wear their seat belts whether or not an air bag is also provided at their seating position to minimise the risk of severe injury or death in the event of a crash.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

Do not sit or lean unnecessarily close to the air bag whilst the vehicle is in motion.

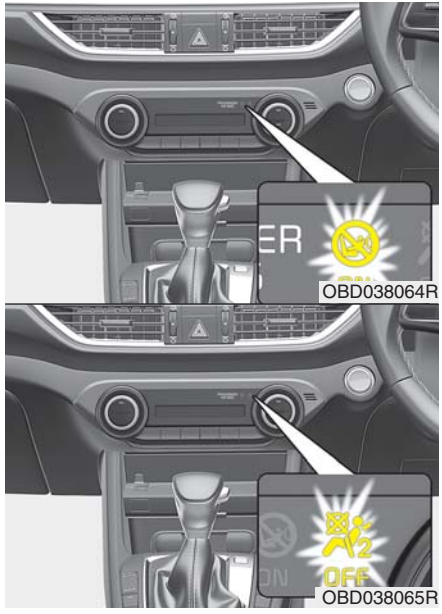
- **Sitting improperly or out of position can result in serious or fatal injury in a crash. All occupants should sit upright with the seat back in an upright position, centred on the seat cushion with their seat belt on, legs comfortably extended and their feet on the floor until the vehicle is parked and the ignition key is removed.**
- **The SRS air bag system must deploy very rapidly to provide protection in a crash. If an occupant is out of position because of not wearing a seat belt, the air bag may forcefully contact the occupant causing serious or fatal injuries.**

Passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch (if equipped)

OJF035080R

The passenger's front air bag can be deactivated by the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch if a child restraint is installed on the front passenger's seat or if the front passenger's seat is unoccupied by a person.

To ensure the safety of your child, the passenger's front air bag must be deactivated when it should be necessary to install a rearward facing child seat on the front passenger seat in exceptional circumstances.



To deactivate or reactivate the passenger's front air bag:

To deactivate the passenger's front air bag, insert the master key into the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch and turn it to the OFF position.

The passenger's front air bag OFF indicator will illuminate and stay on until the passenger's front air bag is reactivated.

To reactivate the passenger's front air bag, insert the master key into the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch and turn it to the ON position. The passenger's front air bag OFF indicator will go out.

⚠ WARNING

The front air bag ON/OFF switch could turn by using a similar small rigid device. Always check the status of the front air bag ON/OFF switch and passenger's front air bag OFF indicator.

✻ NOTICE

- **When the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch is set to the ON position, the passenger's front air bag is activated and child or infant seat should not be installed on the front passenger seat.**
- **When the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch is set to the OFF position, the passenger's front air bag is deactivated.**

⚠ CAUTION

- ***If the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch is not working properly, the air bag warning light ( )on the instrument panel will illuminate.***

(Continued)

(Continued)

And, the passenger's front air bag OFF indicator (⛐) will not illuminate (The passenger's front air bag ON indicator comes on and goes off after approximately 60 seconds), the SRS Control Module reactivates the passenger's front air bag and the passenger's front air bag will inflate in frontal impact crashes even if the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch is set to the OFF position.

In this case, have the system inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

- *If the SRS air bag warning light blinks or does not illuminate when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position, or if it illuminates whilst the vehicle is being driven, have the system inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.*

⚠ WARNING

- **The driver is responsible for the proper position of the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch.**
- **Deactivate the passenger's front air bag only when the ignition switch is switched off, or the malfunction may occur in the SRS Control Module. And there may be a danger that the driver's and/or front passenger's and/or side and curtain air bag may fail to trigger, or not trigger correctly during a collision.**
- **Never install a rearward facing child seat on the front passenger's seat unless the passenger's front air bag has been deactivated. The infant or child could be severely injured or killed by an air bag deployment in case of an accident.**

(Continued)

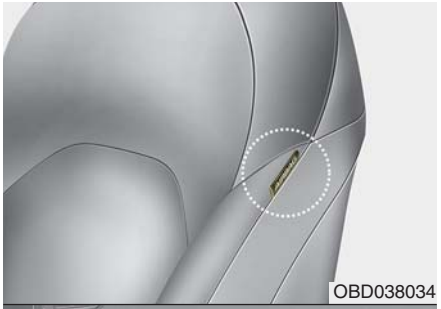
(Continued)

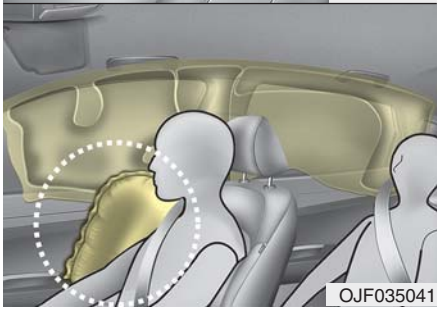
- **Even though your vehicle is equipped with the passenger's front air bag ON/OFF switch, do not install a child restraint system in the front passenger's seat. A child restraint system must never be placed in the front seat. Children who are too large for child restraint systems should always occupy the rear seat and use the available lap/shoulder belts. Children are afforded the most safety in the event of an accident when they are restrained by a proper restraint system in the rear seat.**
- **As soon as the child seat is no longer needed on the front passenger's seat, reactivate the front passenger's air bag.**

⚠ WARNING - No attaching objects

No objects (such as crash pad cover, mobile phone holder, cup holder, perfume or stickers) should be placed over or near the air bag modules on the steering wheel, instrument panel, windscreen glass, and the front passenger's panel above the glove box. Such objects could cause harm if the vehicle is in a crash severe enough to cause the air bags to deploy. Do not place any objects over the air bag or between the air bag and yourself.

Side air bag (if equipped)





❈ The actual air bags in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

Your vehicle is equipped with a side air bag in each front seat.

The purpose of the air bag is to provide the vehicle's driver and/or the front passenger with additional protection than that offered by the seat belt alone.

The side air bags are designed to deploy only during certain side-impact collisions, depending on the crash severity, angle, speed and point of impact. However, when side deployment threshold is satisfied at front-impact, side air bags may deploy. The side air bags are not designed to deploy in all side impact or rollover situations.

The side air bags may deploy on the side of the impact or on both side.

✻ **NOTICE - if equipped with rollover sensor**

- **Also, both side of the side air bags deploy in certain rollover situations.**
- **The side air bag may deploy when the rollover sensor detects the situation as a rollover.**

⚠ WARNING

Do not allow the passengers to lean their heads or bodies onto doors, put their arms on the doors, stretch their arms out of the window, or place objects between the doors and passengers when they are seated on seats equipped with side and/or curtain air bags.

⚠ WARNING

- **The side air bag is supplemental to the driver's and the passenger's seat belt systems and is not a substitute for them. Therefore your seat belts must be worn at all times whilst the vehicle is in motion. The air bags deploy only in certain side impact or rollover*1 conditions severe enough to cause significant injury to the vehicle occupants.**
- **For best protection from the side air bag system and to avoid being injured by the deploying side air bag, both front seat occupants should sit in an upright position with the seat belt properly fastened. The driver's hands should be placed on the steering wheel at the 9:00 and 3:00 positions.**

  The passenger's arms and hands should be placed on their laps.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Do not use any accessory seat covers.**
- **Use of seat covers could reduce or prevent the effectiveness of the system.**
- **To prevent unexpected deployment of the side air bag that may result in personal injury, avoid impact to the side impact sensor when the ignition switch is on.**
- **If the seat or seat cover is damaged, have the system serviced by a professional workshop.**

  Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.
- **Never place or insert any object into any small opening near side airbag labels attached to the vehicle seats.**

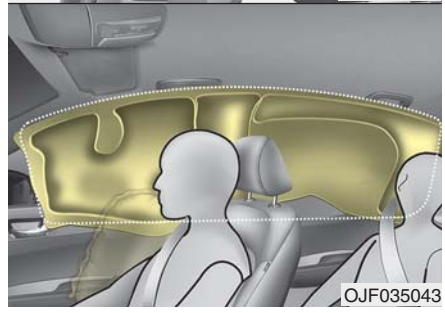
  When the air bag deploys, the object may affect the deployment and result in unexpected accident or bodily harm.

*1 Only vehicle equipped with rollover sensor.

⚠ WARNING - No attaching objects

- **Do not place any objects over the air bag or between the air bag and yourself. Also, do not attach any objects around the area the air bag inflates such as the door, side door glass, front and rear pillar.**
- **Do not place any objects between the door and the seat. They may become dangerous projectiles if the side air bag inflates.**
- **Do not install any accessories on the side or near the side air bags.**

Curtain air bag (if equipped)



❈ The actual air bags in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

Curtain air bags are located along both sides of the roof rails above the front and rear doors.

They are designed to help protect the heads of the front seat occupants and the rear outboard seat occupants in certain side impact collisions.

The curtain air bags are designed to deploy during certain side impact collisions, depending on the crash severity, angle, speed and point of impact. However, when side deployment threshold is satisfied at front-impact, side air bags may deploy.

The curtain air bags may deploy on the side of the impact or on both side.

The curtain air bags are not designed to deploy in all side impacts or rollover situations.

✻ NOTICE - if equipped with rollover sensor

- **Also, both sides of the curtain air bags deploy in certain rollover situations.**
- **The curtain air bag may deploy when the rollover sensor detects the situation as a rollover.**

⚠ WARNING - No attaching objects

- Do not place any objects over the air bag. Also, do not attach any objects around the area the air bag inflates such as the door, side door glass, front and rear pillar, roof side rail.
- Do not hang hard or breakable objects on the coat hook.
- Do not hang heavy items on the coat hooks for safety reasons.

⚠ WARNING

- In order for side and curtain air bags to provide the best protection, front seat occupants and outboard rear occupants should sit in an upright position with the seat belts properly fastened. Importantly, children should sit in a proper child restraint system in the rear seat.
- When children are seated in the rear outboard seats, they must be seated in the proper child restraint system. Make sure to position the child restraint system as far away from the door side as possible, and secure the child restraint system in a locked position.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- Do not allow the passengers to lean their heads or bodies against doors, put their arms on the doors, stretch their arms out of the window or place objects between the doors and passengers when they are seated on seats equipped with side and curtain air bags.
- Never try to open or repair any components of the side curtain air bag system. If necessary, have the system serviced by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

Failure to follow the above instructions can result in injury or death to the vehicle occupants in an accident.

Why didn't my air bag go off in a collision?

OBD038037R/OBD038036R/OBD038039R/OBD038038R/OBD038041R

Inflation and non-inflation conditions of the airbag

There are many types of accidents in which the air bag would not be expected to provide additional protection.

These include rear impacts, second or third collisions in multiple impact accidents, as well as low speed impacts.

Air bag collision sensors

1. SRS control module/ Rollover sensor (if equipped)
2. Front impact sensor
3. Side impact sensor (if equipped)
4. Side impact sensor (if equipped)

⚠ WARNING

- **Do not hit or allow any objects to impact the locations where air bag or sensors are installed.**

  This may cause unexpected air bag deployment, which could result in serious personal injury or death.
- **If the installation location or angle of the sensors is altered in any way, the air bags may deploy when they should not or they may not deploy when they should, causing severe injury or death.**

  Therefore, do not try to perform maintenance on or around the air bag sensors. Have the system serviced by a professional workshop.

  Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Problems may arise if the sensor installation angles are changed due to the deformation of the front bumper, body or front door and B pillars where side collision sensors are installed. In this case, have the system serviced by a professional workshop.**

  Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.
- **Your vehicle has been designed to absorb impact and deploy the air bag(s) in certain collisions. Installing bumper guards or replacing a bumper with non-genuine parts may adversely affect your vehicles collision and air bag deployment performance.**

⚠ WARNING - If equipped with rollover sensor

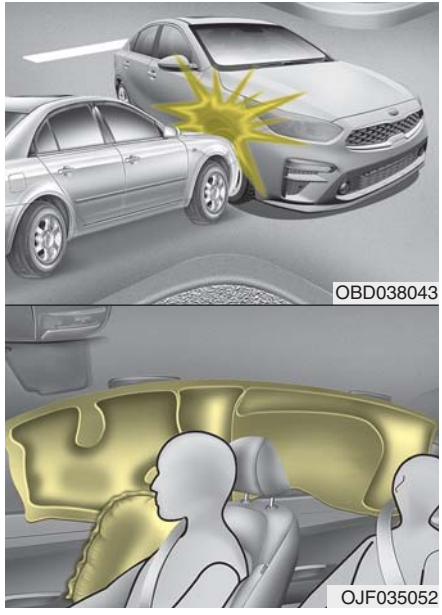
If your vehicle is equipped with side and curtain air bag, set the ignition switch to OFF or ACC position when the vehicle is being towed.

The side and curtain air bag may deploy when the ignitions is ON, and the rollover sensor detects the situation as a rollover.

Air bag inflation conditions

Front air bags

Front air bags are designed to inflate when an impact is detected by front impact sensors depending on the severity of impact resulting from front collision.



✻ The actual air bags in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

Side and curtain air bags (if equipped)

Side and curtain air bags are designed to inflate when an impact is detected by side impact sensors depending on the severity of impact resulting from side collision.

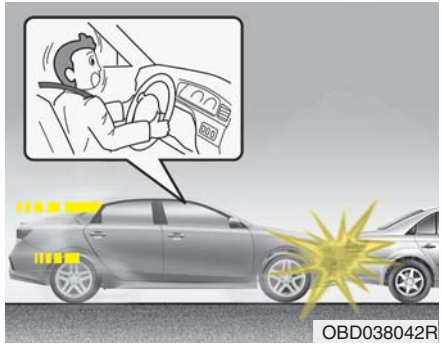
Although the front air bags (driver's and front passenger's air bags) are designed to inflate only in frontal collisions, they also may inflate in other types of collisions if the front impact sensors detect a sufficient impact. Side air bags (side and/or curtain air bags) are designed to inflate only in side impact collisions, but they may inflate in other collisions if the side impact sensors detect a sufficient impact.

If the vehicle chassis is impacted by bumps or objects on unimproved roads or sidewalks, air bags may deploy. Drive carefully on unimproved roads or on surfaces not designed for vehicle traffic to prevent unintended air bag deployment.

✻ NOTICE - If equipped with rollover sensor

Also, the side and curtain air bags are designed to inflate when a rollover is detected by a rollover sensor.

Air bag non-inflation conditions


OBD038042R

- In certain low-speed collisions the air bags may not deploy. The air bags are designed not to deploy in such cases because they may not provide benefits beyond the protection of the seat belts in such collisions.

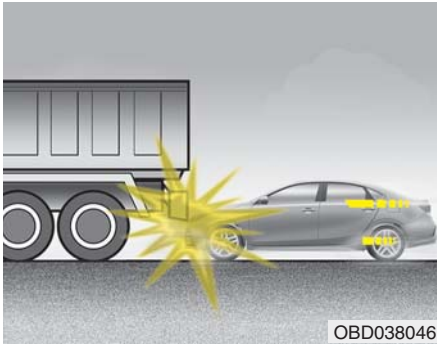
OBD038044R

- Air bags are not designed to inflate in rear collisions, because occupants are moved backward by the force of the impact. In this case, inflated air bags would not be able to provide any additional benefit.

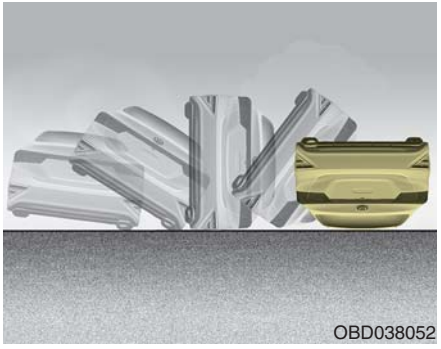
OBD038045

- Front air bags may not inflate in side impact collisions, because occupants move to the direction of the collision, and thus in side impacts, front air bag deployment would not provide additional occupant protection.
- However, if equipped with side and curtain air bags, the air bags may inflate depending on the severity of impact.

- In an angled collision, the force of impact may direct the occupants in a direction where the air bags would not be able to provide any additional benefit, and thus the sensors may not deploy any air bags.



- Just before impact, drivers often brake heavily. Such heavy braking lowers the front portion of the vehicle causing it to “ride” under a vehicle with a higher ground clearance. Air bags may not inflate in this "under-ride" situation because deceleration forces that are detected by sensors may be significantly reduced by such “under-ride” collisions.



- Front air bags may not inflate in rollover accidents because front air bag deployment would not provide additional occupant protection.

✻ NOTICE - if equipped with rollover sensor

However, if equipped with side and curtain air bags, the air bags may inflate in a rollover, when it is detected by the rollover sensor.

✻ NOTICE - without rollover sensor

However, side and/or curtain air bags may inflate when the vehicle is rolled over by a side impact collision, if the vehicle is equipped with side air bags and curtain air bags.

OBD038049

- Air bags may not inflate if the vehicle collides with objects such as utility poles or trees, where the point of impact is concentrated to one area and the full force of the impact is not delivered to the sensors.

SRS Care

The SRS is virtually maintenance-free and so there are no parts you can safely service by yourself. If the SRS air bag warning light does not illuminate, or continuously remains on, have the system inspected by a professional workshop.

Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

⚠ WARNING

- **Modification to SRS components or wiring, including the addition of any kind of badges to the pad covers or modifications to the body structure, can adversely affect SRS performance and lead to possible injury.**
- **For cleaning the air bag pad covers, use only a soft, dry cloth or one which has been moistened with plain water. Solvents or cleaners could adversely affect the air bag covers and proper deployment of the system.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **No objects should be placed over or near the air bag modules on the steering wheel, instrument panel, and the front passenger's panel above the glove box, because any such object could cause harm if the vehicle is in a crash severe enough to cause the air bags to inflate.**
- **If the air bags inflate, have the system replaced by a professional workshop.**

  Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.
- **Do not tamper with or disconnect SRS wiring, or other components of the SRS system. Doing so could result in injury, due to accidental inflation of the air bags or by rendering the SRS inoperative.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **If components of the air bag system must be discarded, or if the vehicle must be scrapped, certain safety precautions must be observed. An authorised Kia dealer knows these precautions and can give you the necessary information. Failure to follow these precautions and procedures could increase the risk of personal injury.**
- **If your car was flooded and has soaked carpeting or water on flooring, you shouldn't try to start the engine; in this case, have your vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to contact an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.**

Additional safety precautions

- **Never let passengers ride in the cargo area or on top of a folded-down back seat.** All occupants should sit upright, fully back in their seats with their seat belts on and their feet on the floor.
- **Passengers should not move out of or change seats whilst the vehicle is moving.** A passenger who is not wearing a seat belt during a crash or emergency stop can be thrown against the inside of the vehicle, against other occupants, or out of the vehicle.
- **Each seat belt is designed to restrain one occupant.** If more than one person uses the same seat belt, they could be seriously injured or killed in a collision.
- **Do not use any accessories on seat belts.** Devices claiming to improve occupant comfort or reposition the seat belt can reduce the protection provided by the seat belt and increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.
- **Passengers should not place hard or sharp objects between themselves and the air bags.** Carrying hard or sharp objects on your lap or in your mouth can result in injuries if an air bag inflates.
- **Keep occupants away from the air bag covers.** All occupants should sit upright, fully back in their seats with their seat belts on and their feet on the floor. If occupants are too close to the air bag covers, they could be injured if the air bags inflate.
- **Do not attach or place objects on or near the air bag covers.** Any object attached to or placed on the front or side air bag covers could interfere with the proper operation of the air bags.
- **Do not modify the front seats.** Modification of the front seats could interfere with the operation of the supplemental restraint system sensing components or side air bags.
- **Do not place items under the front seats.** Placing items under the front seats could interfere with the operation of the supplemental restraint system sensing components and wiring harnesses.
- **Never hold an infant or child on your lap.** The infant or child could be seriously injured or killed in the event of a crash. All infants and children should be properly restrained in appropriate child safety seats or seat belts in the rear seat.

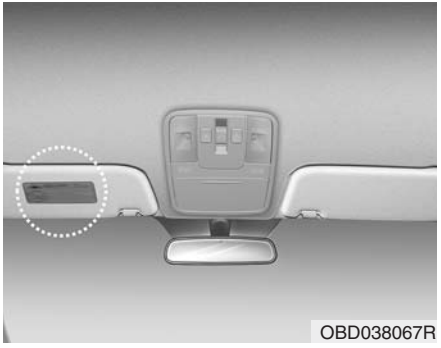
⚠ WARNING

- **Sitting improperly or out of position can cause occupants to be shifted too close to a deploying air bag, strike the interior structure or be thrown from the vehicle resulting in serious injury or death.**
- **Always sit upright with the seatback in an upright position, centred on the seat cushion with your seat belt on, legs comfortably extended and your feet on the floor.**

Adding equipment to or modifying your air bag-equipped vehicle

If you modify your vehicle by changing your vehicle's frame, bumper system, front end or side sheet metal or ride height, this may affect the operation of your vehicle's air bag system.

Air bag warning label (if equipped)



Air bag warning labels are attached to alert the passengers of the potential risk of the air bag system.

Note that these government warnings focus on the risk of children. We also want you to be aware of the risks which adults are exposed to that have been described in previous pages.

Features of your vehicle

Keys 4-4
• Record your key number 4-4
• Key operations 4-4
• Immobiliser system 4-5
Remote keyless entry 4-8
• Remote keyless entry system operations 4-8
• Transmitter precautions 4-9
• Battery replacement 4-10
Smart key 4-12
• Smart key functions 4-12
• Smart key precautions 4-13
Theft-alarm system 4-15
• Armed stage 4-15
• Theft-alarm stage 4-17
• Disarmed stage 4-17
Door locks 4-19
• Operating door locks from outside the vehicle 4-19
• Operating door locks from inside the vehicle 4-20
• Door lock/unlock features 4-22
• Child-protector rear door lock 4-23
Trunk (For 4 door) 4-24
• Opening the trunk 4-24
• Closing the trunk 4-25
• Emergency trunk safety release 4-25
Tailgate (For 5 Door) 4-27
• Opening the tailgate 4-27
• Closing the tailgate 4-28
• Emergency tailgate safety release 4-29
Smart trunk (For 4 Door) 4-31
• How to use the Smart Trunk 4-31
• How to deactivate the Smart Trunk function using the smart key 4-33
• Detecting area 4-34
Windows 4-35
• Power windows 4-36
Bonnet 4-41
• Opening the bonnet 4-41
• Bonnet open warning 4-42
• Closing the bonnet 4-42
Fuel filler door 4-44
• Opening the fuel filler door 4-44
• Closing the fuel filler door 4-45
Sunroof 4-47
• Sliding the sunroof 4-48
• Tilting the sunroof 4-49
• Sunshade 4-50
• Resetting the sunroof 4-51
• Sunroof open warning 4-51
Steering wheel 4-52
• Electronic power steering 4-52
• Tilt & telescopic steering 4-53
• Heated steering wheel 4-53

- Horn 4-54

Mirrors 4-55
- Inside rearview mirror 4-55
- Outside rearview mirror..... 4-57

Instrument cluster 4-60
- Instrument Cluster Control 4-62
- LCD Window Control..... 4-63
- Gauges 4-63
- transmission Shift Indicator..... 4-67

LCD windows 4-69
- Over view 4-69
- Trip information (Trip computer) 4-69
- Distance to empty 4-69
- LCD Modes (For type B, C, E, F cluster)..... 4-77
- Service Mode 4-78
- User Settings Mode (For type B, C, E, F cluster) .. 4-79
- Warning messages 4-84

Warning and indicator lights 4-90
- Warning lights 4-90
- Indicator lights..... 4-102

Rear View Monitor..... 4-108

Reverse Parking Distance Warning (PDW).... 4-109
- Operation of Reverse Parking Distance Warning .. 4-109
- Non-operational conditions of Reverse Parking Distance Warning 4-110
- Reverse Parking Distance Warning precautions .. 4-111
- Self-diagnosis 4-112

Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning (PDW) 4-113
- Operation of Forward/ Reverse Parking Distance Warning..... 4-114
- Non-operational conditions of Forward/ Reverse Parking Distance Warning..... 4-116
- Self-diagnosis 4-118

Lighting 4-119
- Battery saver function..... 4-119
- Headlight escort function 4-119
- Headlight welcome function..... 4-119
- Lighting control..... 4-120
- High beam operation..... 4-122
- High Beam Assist..... 4-123
- Turn signals and lane change signals 4-127
- Front fog light 4-128
- Rear fog light..... 4-128
- Daytime running light..... 4-129
- Headlight levelling device..... 4-129

Wipers and washers..... 4-131
- Windscreen wipers (front) 4-132
- Windscreen washers (front) 4-132
- Rear window wiper and washer switch 4-134

Interior light 4-135
- Map lamp 4-135

- Room lamp 4-136
- Trunk/luggage room lamp 4-136
- Vanity mirror lamp 4-137
- Glove box lamp 4-138

Defroster 4-139
- Rear window defroster 4-139

Manual climate control system 4-140
- Heating and air conditioning 4-141
- Automatic ventilation 4-145
- Sunroof inside air recirculation 4-146
- System operation 4-146
- Climate control air filter 4-148
- Air Conditioning refrigerant label 4-149
- Checking the amount of air conditioner refrigerant and compressor lubricant 4-149

Automatic climate control system 4-151
- Automatic heating and air conditioning 4-152
- Manual heating and air conditioning 4-153
- Automatic ventilation 4-158
- Sunroof inside air recirculation 4-159
- System operation 4-159
- Climate control air filter 4-161
- Air Conditioning refrigerant label 4-162
- Checking the amount of air conditioner refrigerant and compressor lubricant 4-162

Windscreen defrosting and defogging 4-164
- Manual climate control system 4-164
- Automatic climate control system 4-165
- Defogging logic 4-166

Storage compartments 4-169
- Centre console storage 4-169
- Glove box 4-170
- Sunglass holder 4-170
- Luggage net holder 4-171
- Luggage tray 4-172

Interior features 4-173
- Cigarette lighter 4-173
- Ashtray 4-173
- Cup holder 4-174
- Sliding armrest 4-175
- Sun visor 4-175
- Seat warmer 4-176
- Seat cooler (Air ventilation seat) 4-178
- Power outlet 4-178
- USB charger 4-180
- Wireless smart phone charging system 4-181
- Clothes hanger 4-184
- Cargo area cover 4-185
- Shopping bag holder 4-186

KEYS

Record your key number

The key code number is stamped on the key code tag attached to the key set. Should you lose your keys, Kia recommends to contact an authorised Kia dealer/service partner. Remove the key code tag and store it in a safe place. Also, record the key code number and keep it in a safe and handy place, but not in the vehicle.

Key operations

Folding key

■ Folding key

OBD048028L

To unfold the key, press the release button then the key will unfold automatically.

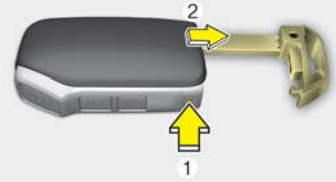
To fold the key, fold the key manually whilst pressing the release button.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not fold the key without pressing the release button. This may damage the key.

Smart key

■ Smart key



OBD048029L

To remove the mechanical key, press and hold the release button and remove the mechanical key.

To reinstall the mechanical key, put the key into the hole and push it until a click sound is heard.

⚠ WARNING - Ignition key (Smart key)

Leaving children unattended in a vehicle with the ignition key (smart key) is dangerous even if the key is not in the ignition switch or start button is ACC or ON position.

Children copy adults and they could place the key in the ignition switch or press the start button. The ignition key (smart key) would enable children to operate power windows or other controls, or even make the vehicle move, which could result in serious bodily injury or even death. Never leave the keys in your vehicle with unsupervised children, when the engine is running.

⚠ WARNING

Kia recommends to use parts for replacement from an authorised Kia dealer/service partner. If an aftermarket key is used, the ignition switch may not return to ON after START. If this happens, the starter will continue to operate causing damage to the starter motor and possible fire due to excessive current in the wiring.

Immobiliser system (if equipped)

Your vehicle may be equipped with an electronic engine immobiliser system to reduce the risk of unauthorised vehicle use.

Your immobiliser system is comprised of a small transponder in the ignition key and electronic devices inside the vehicle.

Vehicles without smart key system

With the immobiliser system, whenever you insert your ignition key into the ignition switch and turn it to ON, it checks and determines and verifies if the ignition key is valid or not.

If the key is valid, the engine will start.

If the key is invalid, the engine will not start.

To deactivate the immobiliser system:

Insert the ignition key into the key cylinder and turn it to the ON position.

To activate the immobiliser system:

Turn the ignition key to the OFF position. The immobiliser system activates automatically. Without a valid ignition key for your vehicle, the engine will not start.

Vehicles with smart key system

Whenever the engine start/stop button is changed to the ON position, the immobiliser system checks and verifies if the key is valid or not.

If the key is valid, the engine will start.

If the key is invalid, the engine will not start.

To deactivate the immobiliser system

Change the engine start/stop button to the ON position.

To activate the immobiliser system

Change the engine start/stop button to the OFF position. The immobiliser system activates automatically. Without a valid smart key for your vehicle, the engine will not start.

⚠ WARNING

In order to prevent theft of your vehicle, do not leave spare keys anywhere in your vehicle. Your immobiliser password is a customer unique password and should be kept confidential. Do not leave this number anywhere in your vehicle.

✻ NOTICE

When starting the engine, do not use the key with other immobiliser keys around. Otherwise the engine may not start or may stop soon after it starts. Keep each key separate in order to avoid a starting malfunction.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not put metal accessories near the ignition switch. Metal accessories may interrupt the transponder signal and may prevent the engine from being started.

✻ NOTICE

If you need additional keys or lose your keys, Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

⚠ CAUTION

The transponder in your ignition key is an important part of the immobiliser system. It is designed to give years of trouble-free service, however you should avoid exposure to moisture, static electricity and rough handling. Immobiliser system malfunction could occur.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not change, alter or adjust the immobiliser system because it could cause the immobiliser system to malfunction. In this case, have the system serviced by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

Malfunctions caused by improper alterations, adjustments or modifications to the immobiliser system are not covered by your vehicle manufacturer warranty.

REMOTE KEYLESS ENTRY (IF EQUIPPED)

Remote keyless entry system operations

■ Folding key

OBD048030L

■ Smart Key

OBD048031L

Lock (1)

All doors are locked if the lock button is pressed whilst all doors are closed.

The hazard warning lights will blink once to indicate that all doors are locked.

However, if any door, engine bonnet or trunk/tailgate remains open, the hazard warning lights will not operate. If all doors, engine bonnet and trunk/tailgate are closed after the lock button is pressed, the hazard warning lights will blink once.

Unlock (2)

All doors are unlocked if the unlock button is pressed.

The hazard warning lights will blink twice to indicate that all doors are unlocked.

After pressing this button, the doors will lock automatically unless you open any door within 30 seconds.

Trunk/tailgate unlock (3) (if equipped)

The trunk/tailgate is unlocked if the button is pressed for more than 1 second.

The hazard warning lights will blink twice to indicate that the trunk/tailgate is unlocked.

However, after pressing this button, the trunk/tailgate will lock automatically unless you open the trunk/tailgate within 30 seconds.

Also, once the trunk/tailgate is opened and then closed, the trunk/tailgate will lock automatically.

With the trunk/tailgate locked and the smart key in your possession, press the trunk/tailgate open switch. Then, the trunk/tailgate will be opened.

❈ The word “HOLD” is written on the button to inform you that you must press and hold the button for 1 second.

Transmitter precautions

✻ NOTICE

The transmitter will not work if any of the following occurs:

- **The ignition key is in the ignition switch.**
- **You exceed the operating distance limit (about 10 m [30 feet]).**
- **The battery in the transmitter is weak.**
- **Other vehicles or objects may be blocking the signal.**
- **The weather is extremely cold.**
- **The transmitter is close to a radio transmitter such as a radio station or an airport which can interfere with normal operation of the transmitter.**

When the transmitter does not work correctly, open and close the door with the ignition key. If you have a problem with the transmitter Kia recommends to contact an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **If the transmitter is in close proximity to your cell phone or smart phone, the signal from the transmitter could be blocked by normal operation of your cell phone or smart phone. This is especially important when the phone is active such as making call, receiving calls, text messaging, and/or sending/ receiving emails.**
  Avoid placing the transmitter and your cell phone or smart phone in the same pants or jacket pocket and maintain adequate distance between the two devices.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Keep the transmitter away from water or any liquid. If the keyless entry system is inoperative due to exposure to water or liquids, it will not be covered by your manufacturer vehicle warranty.***
- ***Keep the transmitter away from electromagnetic materials that blocks electromagnetic waves to the key surface.***

⚠ CAUTION

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. If the keyless entry system is inoperative due to changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance, it will not be covered by your manufacturer's vehicle warranty.

Battery replacement

OBD048032L

The transmitter or smart key uses a 3 volt lithium battery which will normally last for several years. When replacement is necessary, use the following procedure.

1. Insert a slim tool into the slot and gently pry open the transmitter or smart key cover.
2. Replace the battery with a new battery (CR2032). When replacing the battery, make sure the battery position.
3. Install the battery in the reverse order of removal.

For transmitter or smart key replacement, Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***The keyless entry system transmitter is designed to give you years of trouble-free use, however it can malfunction if exposed to moisture or static electricity. If you are unsure how to use or replace the battery, Kia recommends to contact an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.***
- ***Using the wrong battery can cause the transmitter or smart key to malfunction. Be sure to use the correct battery.***
- ***To avoid damaging the transmitter or smart key, don't drop it, get it wet, or expose it to heat or sunlight.***

⚠ CAUTION

An inappropriately disposed battery can be harmful to the environment and human health.

Dispose the battery according to your local law(s) or regulation.

SMART KEY (IF EQUIPPED)

OBD048031L

With a smart key, you can lock or unlock a door and even start the engine without inserting the key.

The functions of buttons on a smart key are similar to the folding key.

Smart key functions

OBD048033R

Carrying the smart key, you may lock and unlock the vehicle doors (and tailgate). Also, you may start the engine. Refer to the following, for more details.

Locking (1)

Pressing the button of the front outside door handles with all doors closed and any door unlocked, locks all the doors. If all doors and engine bonnet are closed, the hazard warning lights will blink once to indicate that all doors are locked.

The button will only operate when the smart key is within 0.7 ~ 1 m (28 ~ 40 in.) from the outside door handle. If you want to make sure that a door has locked or not, you should check the door lock button inside the vehicle or pull the outside door handle.

Even though you press the outside door handle buttons, the doors will not lock and the chime will sound for 3 seconds if any of following occur:

- The smart key is in the vehicle.
- The ENGINE START/STOP button is in the ACC or ON position.
- Any door except the tailgate is open.

Unlocking (2)

Pressing the button of the front outside door handles with all doors closed and locked, unlocks all the doors. The hazard warning lights blink twice to indicate that all doors are unlocked.

The button will only operate when the smart key is within 0.7 ~ 1 m (28 ~ 40 in.) from the outside door handle.

When the smart key is recognized in the area of 0.7 ~ 1 m (28 ~ 40 in.) from the front outside door handle, other people can also open the door without possession of the smart key.

After pressing the button, the doors will lock automatically unless you open any door within 30 seconds.

Trunk/tailgate unlocking (3)

If you are within 0.7 m ~ 1 m (28 ~ 40 in.) from the outside trunk/tailgate handle, with your smart key in possession, the trunk/tailgate will unlock and open when you press the trunk/tailgate handle switch.

The hazard warning lights will blink twice to indicate that the trunk/tailgate is unlocked.

Also, once the trunk/tailgate is opened and then closed, the trunk/tailgate will lock automatically.

Start-up

You can start the engine without inserting the key. For detailed information refer to “Starting the engine with a smart key” in chapter 6.

Smart key precautions

✻ NOTICE

- **If, for some reason, you happen to lose your smart key, you will not be able to start the engine. Tow the vehicle, if necessary, contact a professional workshop. Kia recommends to contact an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.**
- **A maximum of 2 smart keys can be registered to a single vehicle. If you lose a smart key, Kia recommends to contact an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.**
- **The smart key will not work if any of the following occurs:**
  - **The smart key is close to a radio transmitter such as a radio station or an airport which can interfere with normal operation of the smart key.**
  - **The smart key is near a mobile two-way radio system or a mobile phone.**
  - **Another vehicle’s smart key is being operated close to your vehicle.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

When the smart key does not work properly, open and close the door with the mechanical key. If you have a problem with the smart key, Kia recommends to contact an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

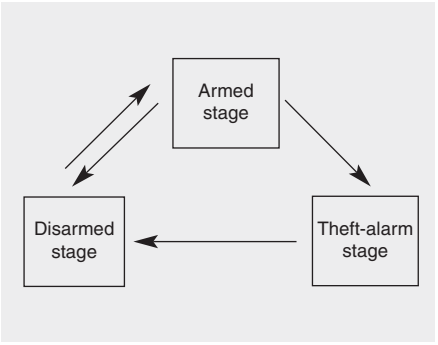
- **If the smart key is in close proximity to your cell phone or smart phone, the signal from the smart key could be blocked by normal operation of your cell phone or smart phone. This is especially important when the phone is active such as making call, receiving calls, text messaging, and/or sending/receiving emails. Avoid placing the smart key and your cell phone or smart phone in the same pants or jacket pocket and maintain adequate distance between the two devices.**

⚠ CAUTION

Keep the smart key away from water or any liquid. If the keyless entry system is inoperative due to exposure to water or liquids, it will not be covered by your manufacturer's vehicle warranty.

THEFT-ALARM SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

Vehicles equipped with a theft alarm system will have a label attached to the vehicle with the following words:
1. WARNING
2. SECURITY SYSTEM



This system is designed to provide protection from unauthorised entry into the car. This system is operated in three stages: the first is the “Armed” stage, the second is the “Theft-alarm” stage, and the third is the “Disarmed” stage. If triggered, the system provides an audible alarm with blinking of the hazard warning lights.

Armed stage

Using the smart key

Park the vehicle and stop the engine. Arm the system as described below.

1. Turn off the engine.
2. Make sure that all doors (and trunk/tailgate) and the engine bonnet are closed and latched.
3. • Lock the doors by pressing the button of the front outside door handle with the smart key in your possession.

   After completion of the steps above, the hazard warning lights operate once to indicate that the system is armed.

   If any door remains open, the doors won't lock and the chime will sound for 3 seconds. Close the door and try again to lock the doors.

   If trunk/tailgate or engine bonnet remains open, the hazard warning lights won't operate and theft-alarm will not arm. After this, if the trunk/tailgate and engine bonnet are closed, the hazard warning lights will blink once.

- Lock the doors by pressing the lock button on the smart key.

  After completion of the steps above, the hazard warning lights will operate once to indicate that the system is armed.

  If any door (and trunk/tailgate) or engine bonnet remains open, the hazard warning lights won't operate and theft-alarm will not arm. After this, if all doors (and trunk/tailgate) and engine bonnet are closed, the hazard warning lights blink once.

Using the transmitter

Park the vehicle and stop the engine. Arm the system as described below.

1. Turn off the engine and remove the ignition key from the ignition switch.
2. Make sure that all doors (and trunk/tailgate), the engine bonnet are closed and latched.
3. Lock the doors by pressing the lock button on the transmitter.

   After completion of the steps above, the hazard warning lights will blink once to indicate that the system is armed.

   If any door (and trunk/tailgate) or engine bonnet remains open, the hazard warning lights won't operate and theft-alarm will not arm. After this, if all doors (and trunk/tailgate) and engine bonnet are closed, the hazard warning lights blink once.

- **Do not arm the system until all passengers have left the vehicle. If the system is armed whilst a passenger(s) remains in the vehicle, the alarm may be activated when the remaining passenger(s) leave the vehicle. If any door, trunk/tailgate or engine bonnet is opened within 30 seconds after entering the armed stage, the system is disarmed to prevent unnecessary alarm.**

Theft-alarm stage

The alarm will be activated if any of the following occurs whilst the system is armed.

- A door is opened without using the transmitter (or smart key).
- The trunk/tailgate is opened without using the transmitter (or smart key).
- The engine bonnet is opened.

The horn will sound and the hazard warning lights will blink continuously for approximately 30 seconds. To turn off the system, unlock the doors with the transmitter (or smart key).

Disarmed stage

The system will be disarmed when:

Transmitter

- The door unlock button is pressed.
- The engine is started.
- The ignition switch is in the “ON” position for 30 seconds or more.

Smart key

- The door unlock button is pressed.
- The button of the front outside door is pressed whilst carrying the smart key.
- The engine is started.

After the doors are unlocked, the hazard warning lights will blink twice to indicate that the system is disarmed.
After pressing the unlock button, if any door (or trunk/tailgate) is not opened within 30 seconds, the system will be rearmed.

✻ NOTICE - Non-immobiliser system

- **Avoid trying to start the engine whilst the alarm is activated. The vehicle starting motor is disabled during the theft-alarm stage.**
  If the system is not disarmed with the transmitter, insert the key into the ignition switch, turn the ignition switch to the ON position and wait for 30 seconds. Then the system will be disarmed.
- **If you lose your keys, Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.**

✻ NOTICE - Immobiliser system

- **If the system is not disarmed with the transmitter, insert the key into the ignition switch and start the engine. Then the system will be disarmed.**
- **If you lose your keys, Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.**

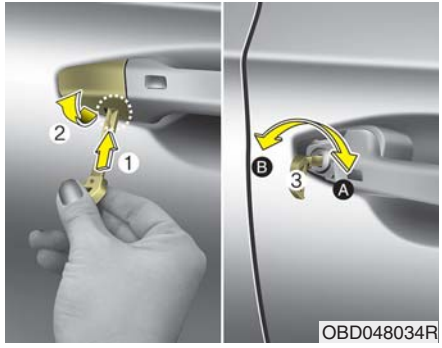
⚠ CAUTION

Do not change, alter or adjust the theft-alarm system because it could cause the theft-alarm system to malfunction. Have the system serviced by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

Malfunctions caused by improper alterations, adjustments or modifications to the theft-alarm system are not covered by your vehicle manufacturer warranty.

DOOR LOCKS

Operating door locks from outside the vehicle



To remove the cover (for smart key):

1. Pull out the door handle.
2. Press the lever (1) located inside the bottom part of the cover with a key or flat-head screwdriver.
3. Push out the cover (2) whilst pressing the lever.

- Turn the key toward the rear of the vehicle to lock and toward the front of the vehicle to unlock.
- If you Unlock (A)/Lock (B) the driver's door with a key, all vehicle doors will lock/unlock automatically.
- Doors can also be locked and unlocked with the transmitter.
- Once the doors are unlocked, they may be opened by pulling the door handle.
- When closing the door, push the door by hand. Make sure the doors are closed securely.

⚠ CAUTION

Be careful not to damage the cover whilst removing it or misplace it after removing it.

✻ NOTICE

- **In cold and wet climates, door lock and door mechanisms may not work properly due to freezing conditions.**
- **If the door is locked/unlocked multiple times in rapid succession with either the vehicle key or door lock switch, the system may stop operating temporarily in order to protect the circuit and prevent damage to system components.**

⚠ WARNING

- **If you don't close the door securely, the door may open again.**
- **Be careful that someone's body and hands are not trapped when closing the door.**

⚠ WARNING

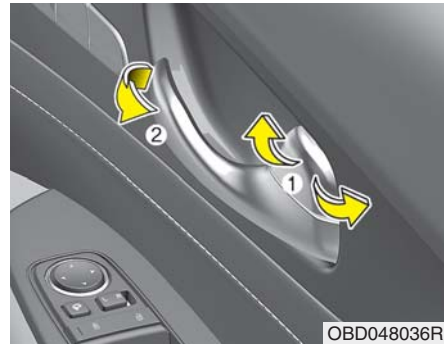
If people must spend a longer time in the vehicle whilst it is very hot or cold outside, there is risk of injuries or danger to life. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there are people in it.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not frequently repeat opening and closing of doors, or apply excessive force to a door whilst the door closer is operating.

Operating door locks from inside the vehicle

With the door lock button



- To unlock a door, push the door lock button (1) to the “Unlock” position. The red mark on the handle will be visible.
- To lock a door, push the door lock button (1) to the “Lock” position. If the door is locked properly, the red mark on the door handle will not be visible.
- To open a door, pull the door handle (2) outward.
- If the inner door handle of the driver’s (or front passenger’s) door is pulled when the door lock button is in the lock position, the button will unlock and the door will open.
- Front doors cannot be locked if the ignition key is in the ignition switch and any front door is opened.
- Doors cannot be locked if the smart key is in the vehicle and an door is open.

⚠ WARNING - Door lock malfunction

If a power door lock ever fails to function whilst you are in the vehicle, try one or more of the following techniques to exit:

- **Operate the door unlock feature repeatedly (both electronic and manual) whilst simultaneously pulling on the door handle.**
- **Operate the other door locks and handles, front and rear.**
- **Lower a front window and use the key to unlock the door from outside.**
- **Move to the cargo area and open the trunk/tailgate.**

⚠ WARNING

Do not pull the inner door handle of driver's (or passenger's) door whilst the vehicle is moving.

With central door lock switch

Operate by pressing the central door lock switch.

- When pressing the left portion (1) for driver side of the switch, all vehicle doors will lock.
- When pressing the right portion (2) for driver side of the switch, all vehicle doors will unlock.
- If the key is in the ignition switch (or if the smart key is in the vehicle) and any door is opened, the doors will not lock even though the left portion (1) for driver side of the central door lock switch is pressed.

⚠ WARNING - Doors

- **The doors should always be fully closed and locked whilst the vehicle is in motion to prevent accidental opening of the door. Locked doors will also discourage potential intruders when the vehicle stops or slows down.**
- **Be careful when opening doors and watch for vehicles, motorcycles, bicycles or pedestrians approaching the vehicle in the path of the door. Opening a door when something is approaching can cause damage or injury.**

⚠ WARNING - Unlocked vehicles

Leaving your vehicle unlocked can invite theft or possible harm to you or others from someone hiding in your vehicle whilst you are gone. Always remove the ignition key, engage the parking brake, close all windows and lock all doors when leaving your vehicle unattended.

⚠ WARNING - Unattended children

An enclosed vehicle can become extremely hot, causing death or severe injury to unattended children or animals who cannot escape the vehicle. Furthermore, children might operate features of the vehicle that could injure them, or they could encounter other harm, possibly from someone gaining entry to the vehicle. Never leave children or animals unattended in your vehicle.

Door lock/unlock features

Impact sensing door unlock system (if equipped)

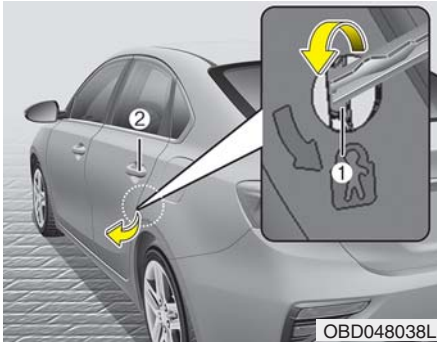
All doors will automatically unlock when an impact causes the air bags to deploy.

Speed sensing door lock system (if equipped)

All doors will automatically lock after the vehicle speed exceeds 15 km/h.

You can activate or deactivate the auto door lock/unlock features in the vehicle. Refer to “User settings mode" in this chapter.

Child-protector rear door lock



The child safety lock is provided to help prevent children from accidentally opening the rear doors from inside the vehicle. The rear door safety locks should be used whenever children are in the vehicle.

The child safety lock is located on the edge of each rear door. When the child safety lock is in the lock position (1), the rear door will not open if the inner door handle (2) is pulled.

To lock the child safety lock, insert a key (or screwdriver) into the hole and turn it to the lock position.

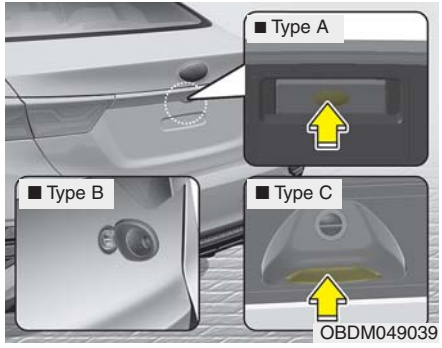
To allow a rear door to be opened from inside the vehicle, unlock the child safety lock.

⚠ WARNING - Rear door locks

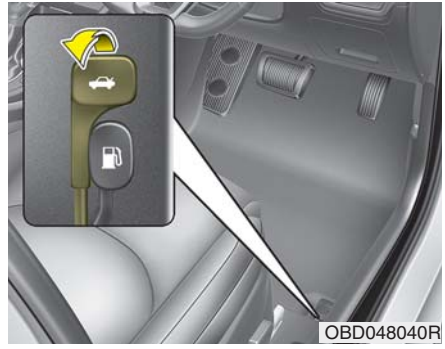
If children accidentally open the rear doors whilst the vehicle is in motion, they could fall out and be severely injured or killed. To prevent children from opening the rear doors from the inside, the rear door safety locks should be used whenever children are in the vehicle.

TRUNK (FOR 4 DOOR)

Opening the trunk



1. Make sure the shift lever is in P (Park, for automatic transmission/dual clutch transmission) or first gear or R (Reverse, for manual transmission) and set the parking brake.
2. Then do one of the following :
   - Press the Remote key or Smart Key Trunk Unlock button for more than one second.
   - Press the button on the trunk itself with the Smart Key in your possession.
   - Use the mechanical key. (if equipped with key hole)



- To open the trunk from inside the vehicle, pull the trunk release lever.

✻ NOTICE

In cold and wet climates, trunk lock and trunk mechanisms may not work properly due to freezing conditions.

⚠ WARNING

The trunk swings upward. Make sure no objects or people are near the rear of the vehicle when opening the trunk.

⚠ CAUTION

Make certain that you close the trunk before driving your vehicle. Possible damage may occur to the attached hardware if the trunk is not closed prior to driving.

Closing the trunk

To close, lower the trunk lid, then press down on it until it locks. To be sure the trunk lid is securely fastened, always check by trying to pull it up again.

⚠ WARNING

The trunk lid should be always kept completely closed whilst the vehicle is in motion. If it is left open or ajar, poisonous exhaust gases may enter the car and serious illness or death may result.

✻ NOTICE

If the trunk is closed with the smart key in it, the chime will sound for approximately 3 seconds and the trunk will reopen.

⚠ WARNING - Exhaust fumes

If you drive with the trunk open, you will draw dangerous exhaust fumes into your vehicle which can cause serious injury or death to vehicle occupants.

If you must drive with the trunk open, keep the air vents and all windows open so that additional outside air comes into the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING - Rear cargo area

Occupants should never ride in the rear cargo area where no restraints are available. To avoid injury in the event of an accident or sudden stops, occupants should always be properly restrained.

Emergency trunk safety release (if equipped)

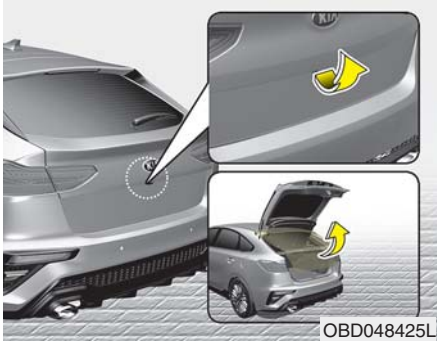
Your vehicle is equipped with an emergency trunk release lever located inside the trunk. If someone is inadvertently locked in the trunk, moving the handle in the direction of the arrow will release the trunk latch mechanism and open the trunk.

⚠ WARNING

- **For emergencies, be fully aware of the location of the emergency trunk safety release lever in this vehicle and how to open the trunk if you are accidentally locked in the trunk.**
- **No one should be allowed to occupy the trunk at any time. The trunk is a very dangerous location in the event of a crash.**
- **Use the release lever for emergencies only. Use extreme caution, especially whilst the vehicle is in motion.**

TAILGATE (FOR 5 DOOR)

Opening the tailgate


OBD048425L

- The tailgate is locked or unlocked when all doors are locked or unlocked with the transmitter (or smart key) or central door lock switch.
- If unlocked, the tailgate can be opened by pressing the handle and pulling it up.
- When all doors are locked if the tailgate unlock button on the smart key is pressed for more than 1 second, the tailgate is unlocked. Once the tailgate is opened and then closed, the tailgate is locked automatically.

❊ The tailgate has no keyhole.

✻ NOTICE

In cold and wet climates, door lock and door mechanisms may not work properly due to freezing conditions.

⚠ WARNING

The tailgate swings upward. Make sure no objects or people are near the rear of the vehicle when opening the tailgate.

⚠ CAUTION

Make certain that you close the tailgate before driving your vehicle. Possible damage may occur to the tailgate lift cylinders and attached hardware if the tailgate is not closed prior to driving.

Closing the tailgate

OBD040426L

To close the tailgate, lower and push down the tailgate firmly. Make sure that the tailgate is securely latched.

⚠ WARNING

Make sure your hands, feet and other parts of your body are safely out of the way before closing the tailgate.

⚠ CAUTION

Make sure nothing is near the tailgate latch and striker whilst closing the tailgate. It may damage the tailgate's latch.

⚠ WARNING - Exhaust fumes

If you drive with the tailgate open, you will draw dangerous exhaust fumes into your vehicle which can cause serious injury or death to vehicle occupants.

If you must drive with the tailgate open, keep the air vents and all windows open so that additional outside air comes into the vehicle.

The tailgate lid should be always kept completely closed whilst the vehicle is in motion. If it is left open or ajar, poisonous exhaust gases may enter the car and serious illness or death may result.

⚠ WARNING - Rear cargo area

Occupants should never ride in the rear cargo area where no restraints are available. To avoid injury in the event of an accident or sudden stops, occupants should always be properly restrained.

⚠ WARNING

- **For emergencies, be fully aware of the location of the emergency tailgate safety release lever in the vehicle and how to open the tailgate if you are accidentally locked in the luggage compartment.**
- **No one should be allowed to occupy the luggage compartment of the vehicle at any time. The luggage compartment is a very dangerous location in the event of a crash.**
- **Use the release lever for emergencies only. Use with extreme caution, especially whilst the vehicle is in motion.**

Emergency tailgate safety release

Your vehicle is equipped with the emergency tailgate safety release lever located on the bottom of the tailgate. When someone is inadvertently locked in the luggage compartment.

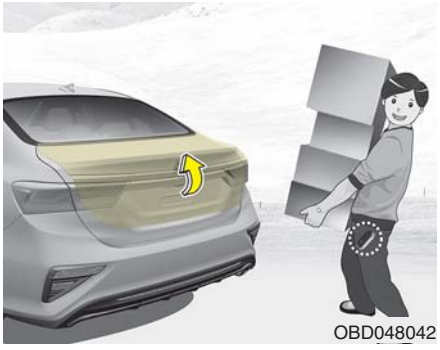
The tailgate can be opened by doing as follows:

1. Input the mechanical key into the hole.
2. Push the mechanical key to the right (1).
3. Push up the tailgate.

⚠ WARNING

Do not grasp the part supporting the tailgate (gas lifter), as this may cause serious injury.

SMART TRUNK (FOR 4 DOOR, IF EQUIPPED)



On a vehicle equipped with a smart key, the trunk can be opened with no-touch activation using the Smart Trunk system.

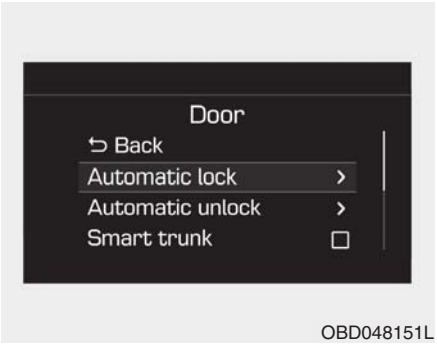
How to use the Smart Trunk

The trunk can be opened with no-touch activation satisfying all the conditions below.

- After 15 seconds when all doors are closed and locked
- Positioned in the detecting area for more than 3 seconds.

✻ NOTICE

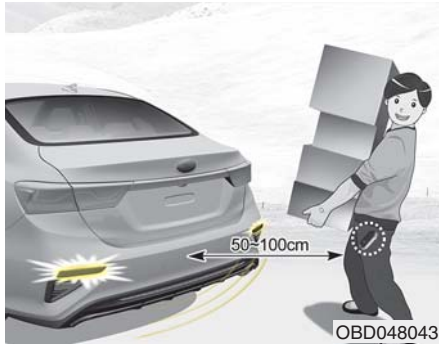
- **The Smart Trunk does not operate when:**
  - **The smart key is detected within 15 seconds after the doors are closed and locked, and is continuously detected.**
  - **The smart key is detected within 15 seconds after the doors are closed and locked, and 1.5 m from the front door handles. (for vehicles equipped with Welcome Light)**
  - **A door is not locked or closed.**
  - **The smart key is in the vehicle.**



1. Setting

To activate the Smart Trunk, go to User Settings Mode and select Smart Trunk on the LCD display.

✻ For more details, refer to “User settings mode” in this chapter.



2. Detect and Alert

If you are positioned in the detecting area (50 ~100 cm behind the vehicle) carrying a smart key, the hazard warning lights will blink and chime will sound for about 3 seconds to alert you the smart key has been detected and the trunk will open.

✻ NOTICE

Do not approach the detecting area if you do not want the trunk to open. If you have unintentionally entered the detecting area and the hazard warning lights and chime starts to operate, leave the detecting area with the smart key. The trunk will stay closed.

3. Automatic opening

The hazard warning lights will blink and chime will sound 2 times and then the trunk will slowly open.

⚠ WARNING

- **Make certain that you close the trunk before driving your vehicle.**
- **Make sure there are no people or objects around the trunk before opening or closing the trunk.**
- **Make sure objects in the rear cargo area do not come out when opening the trunk on the slope way. It may cause serious injury.**
- **Make sure to deactivate the Smart trunk function when washing your vehicle.**

  Otherwise, the trunk may open inadvertently.
- **The key should be kept out of reach of children. Children may inadvertently open the Smart Trunk whilst playing around the rear area of the vehicle.**

How to deactivate the Smart Trunk function using the smart key

1. Door lock
2. Door unlock
3. Trunk open

If you press any button of the smart key during the Detect and Alert stage, the Smart Trunk function will be deactivated.

Make sure to be aware of how to deactivate the Smart Trunk function for emergency situations.

✻ NOTICE

- **If you press the door unlock button (2), the Smart Trunk function will be deactivated temporarily. But, if you do not open any door for 30 seconds, the smart trunk function will be activated again.**
- **If you press the trunk open button (3) for more than 1 second, the trunk opens.**
- **If you press the door lock button (1) or trunk open button (3) when the Smart Trunk function is not in the Detect and Alert stage, the smart trunk function will not be deactivated.**
- **In case you have deactivated the Smart Trunk function by pressing the smart key button and opened a door, the smart trunk function can be activated again by closing and locking all doors.**

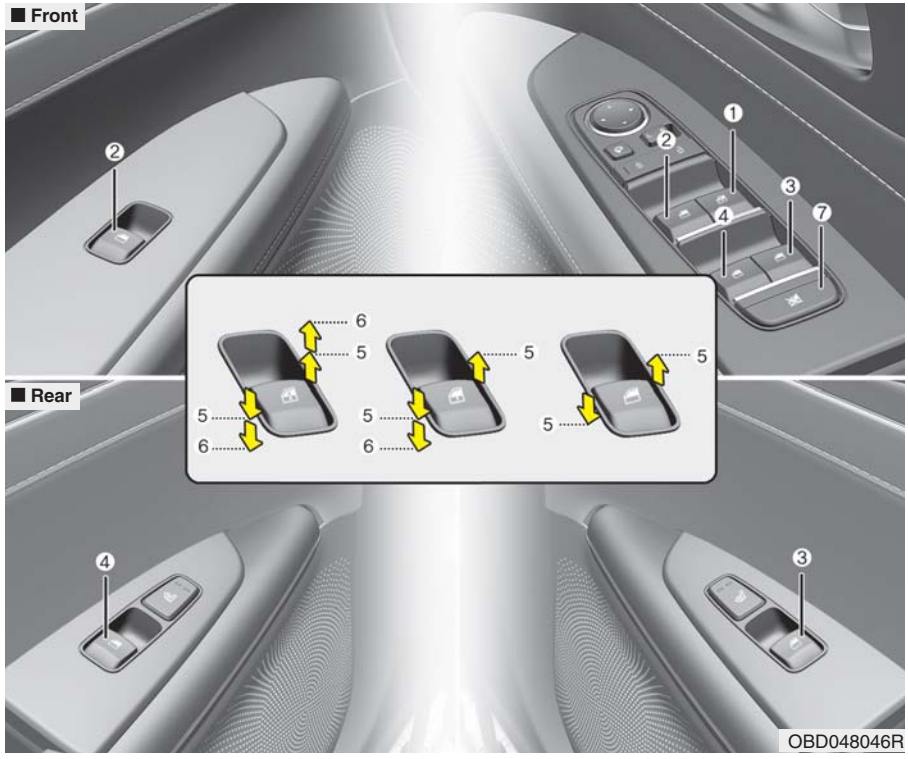
Detecting area

- The Smart Trunk operates with a welcome alert if the smart key is detected within 50~100 cm from the trunk.
- The alert stops at once if the smart key is positioned outside the detecting area during the Detect and Alert stage.

✻ NOTICE

- **The Smart Trunk function will not work if any of the following occurs:**
  - **The smart key is close to a radio transmitter such as a radio station or an airport which can interfere with normal operation of the transmitter.**
  - **The smart key is near a mobile two way radio system or a mobile phone.**
  - **Another vehicle's smart key is being operated close to your vehicle.**
- **The detecting range may decrease or increase when :**
  - **One side of the tyre is raised to replace a tyre or to inspect the vehicle.**
  - **The vehicle is slantingly parked on a slope or unpaved road, etc.**

WINDOWS



(1) Driver's door power window switch
(2) Front passenger's door power window switch
(3) Rear door (right) power window switch
(4) Rear door (left) power window switch
(5) Window opening and closing
(6) Automatic power window up*/ down*
(7) Power window lock button

* if equipped

✻ NOTICE

In cold and wet climates, power windows may not work properly due to freezing conditions.

Power windows

The ignition switch must be in the ON position for power windows to operate.

Each door has a power window switch that controls the door's window. The driver has a power window lock button which can block the operation of rear passenger windows. The power windows can be operated for approximately 10 minutes after the ignition key is removed or turned to the ACC or LOCK position. However, if the front doors are opened, the power windows cannot be operated even within the 10 minutes period.

The driver's door has a master power window switch that controls all the windows in the vehicle.

If the window cannot be close because it is blocked by objects, remove the objects and close the window.

✻ NOTICE

Whilst driving with the rear windows down or with the sunroof (if equipped) in an open (or partially open position), your vehicle may demonstrate a wind buffeting or pulsation noise. This noise is a normal occurrence and can be reduced or eliminated by taking the following actions. If the noise occurs with one or both of the rear windows down, partially lower both front windows approximately one inch. If you experience the noise with the sunroof open, slightly reduce the size of the sunroof opening.

⚠ WARNING

Do not install any accessories in the area of windows. It may impact jam protection.

Window opening and closing

Type A

To open or close a window, press down or pull up the front portion of the corresponding switch to the first detent position (5).

OBD048405R

Type B - Auto down window (if equipped)

Pressing the power window switch momentarily to the second detent position (6) completely lowers the window even when the switch is released. To stop the window at the desired position whilst the window is in operation, pull up the switch momentarily to the opposite direction of the window movement.

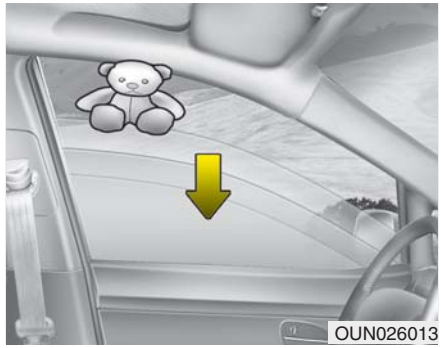
OBD048092R

Type C - Auto up/down window (if equipped)

Pressing or pulling up the power window switch momentarily to the second detent position (6) completely lowers or raises the window even when the switch is released. To stop the window at the desired position whilst the window is in operation, pull up or press down and release the switch.

If the power window does not operate normally, the automatic power window system must be reset as follows:

1. Turn the ignition switch to the ON position.
2. Close the window and continue pulling up the power window switch for at least 1 second after the window is completely closed.



Automatic reversal (For Type C)

If the upward movement of the window is blocked by an object or part of the body, the window will detect the resistance and will stop upward movement. The window will then lower approximately 30 cm (11.8 in.) to allow the object to be cleared.

If the window detects the resistance whilst the power window switch is pulled up continuously, the window will stop upward movement then lower approximately 2.5 cm (1 in.).

And if the power window switch is pulled up continuously again within 5 seconds after the window is lowered by the automatic window reversal feature, the automatic window reversal will not operate.

✻ NOTICE

The automatic reverse feature for the window is only active when the "auto up" feature is used by fully pulling up the switch. The automatic reverse feature will not operate if the window is raised using the halfway position on the power window switch.

⚠ WARNING

Always check for obstructions before raising any window to avoid injuries or vehicle damage. If an object less than 4 mm (0.16 in.) in diameter is caught between the window glass and the upper window channel, the automatic reverse window may not detect the resistance and will not stop and reverse direction.

⚠ WARNING

The automatic reverse feature doesn't active whilst resetting power window system.

Make sure body parts or other objects are safely out of the way before closing the windows to avoid injuries or vehicle damage.

Power window lock button

OBD048047R

The driver can disable the power window switches on the rear passengers' doors by pressing the power window lock button to the lock position (pressed).

When the power window lock button is pressed :

- The driver's master control can operate the front passenger's power window but cannot operate the rear passenger's power windows.
- The front passenger's control can operate the front passenger's power window.
- The rear passengers' control cannot operate the rear passenger's power window.

⚠ CAUTION

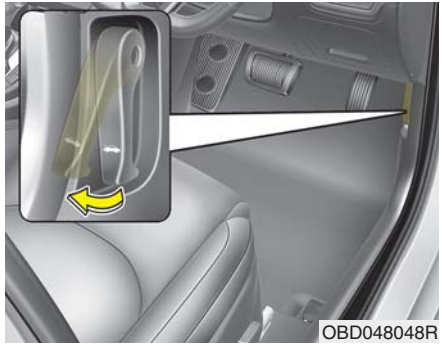
- ***To prevent possible damage to the power window system, do not open or close two windows or more at the same time. This will also ensure the longevity of the fuse.***
- ***Never try to operate the main switch on the driver's door and the individual door window switch in opposite directions at the same time. If this is done, the window will stop and cannot be opened or closed.***

⚠ WARNING - Windows

- **NEVER leave the keys in your vehicle with unsupervised children, when the engine is running.**
- **NEVER leave any child unattended in the vehicle. Even very young children may inadvertently cause the vehicle to move, entangle themselves in the windows, or otherwise injure themselves or others.**
- **Always double check to make sure all arms, hands, head and other obstructions are safely out of the way before closing a window.**
- **Do not allow children play with the power windows. Keep the driver's door power window lock button in the LOCK position (pressed). Serious injury can result from unintentional window operation by the child.**
- **Do not extend heads or any limbs outside the window whilst the vehicle is in motion.**

BONNET

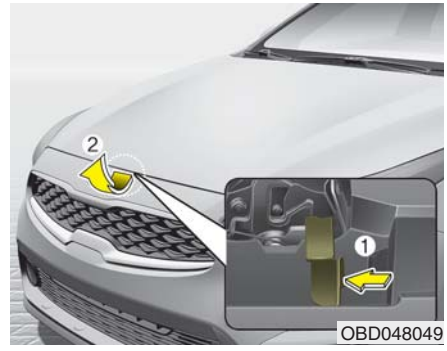
Opening the bonnet


OBD048048R

1. Pull the release lever to unlatch the bonnet. The bonnet should pop open slightly.

⚠ WARNING

Open the bonnet after turning off the engine on a flat surface, shifting the shift lever to the P(Park) position for automatic transmission/dual clutch transmission and to the 1st(First) gear or R(Reverse) for manual transmission, and setting the



OBD048049

2. Go to the front of the vehicle, raise the bonnet slightly, push the secondary latch (1) left side and lift the bonnet (2).

OBD048086

3. Pull the support rod from the bonnet.
4. Hold the bonnet open with the support rod.

⚠ WARNING - Hot parts

Grasp the support rod in the area wrapped in rubber. The rubber will help prevent you from being burned by hot metal when the engine is hot.

Bonnet open warning

OBD048051

The bonnet warning message will appear on the LCD display when bonnet is open.

The warning chime will operate when the vehicle is being driven at or above 3 km/h (2 mph) with the bonnet open.

Closing the bonnet

1. Before closing the bonnet, check the following:
   - All filler caps in the engine compartment must be correctly installed.
   - Gloves, rags or any other combustible material must be removed from the engine compartment.
2. Return the support rod to its clip to prevent it from rattling.
3. Lower the bonnet until it is about 30 cm above the closed position and let it drop. Make sure that it locks into place.
4. Check that the bonnet has engaged properly. If the bonnet can be raise slightly, it is not properly engaged. Open it again and close it with a little more force.

⚠ WARNING

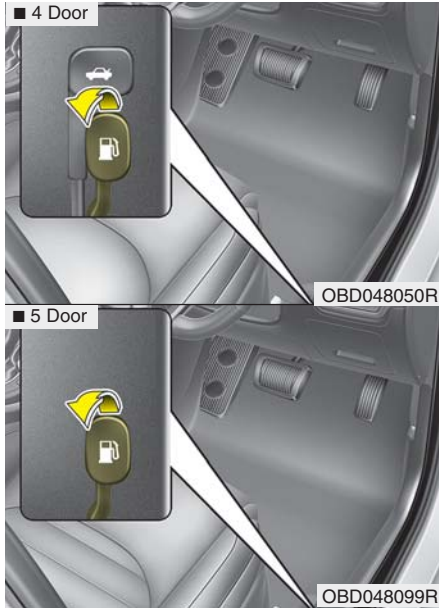
- **Before closing the bonnet, ensure that all obstructions are removed from the bonnet opening. Closing the bonnet with an obstruction present in the bonnet opening may result in property damage or severe personal injury.**
- **Do not leave gloves, rags or any other combustible material in the engine compartment. Doing so may cause a heat-induced fire.**

⚠ WARNING

- **Always double check to be sure that the bonnet is firmly latched before driving away. If it is not latched, the bonnet could open whilst the vehicle is being driven, causing total loss of visibility, which might result in an accident.**
- **Do not move the vehicle with the bonnet raised. The view will be blocked and the bonnet could fall or be damaged.**

FUEL FILLER DOOR

Opening the fuel filler door



The fuel-filler door must be opened from inside the vehicle by pulling up on the fuel-filler door opener located on the front floor area on the driver's seat.

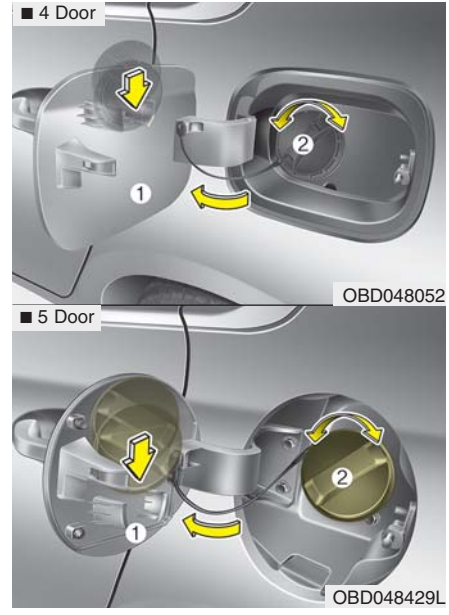
✻ NOTICE

If the fuel filler door does not open because ice has formed around it, tap lightly or push on the lid to break the ice and release the lid. Do not pry on the lid. If necessary, spray around the lid with an approved de-icer fluid (do not use radiator anti-freeze) or move the vehicle to a warm place and allow the ice to melt.

⚠ WARNING

Before refuelling, be sure to check what type of fuel is used for your vehicle.

If you put diesel fuel into a petrol-powered vehicle or petrol into a diesel-powered vehicle, it may affect the fuel system and cause serious damage to the vehicle.



1. Stop the engine.
2. To open the fuel filler door, pull up the fuel filler door opener.
3. Pull open the fuel filler door (1).
4. To remove the cap, turn the fuel filler cap (2) counterclockwise.
5. Refuel as needed.

Closing the fuel filler door

1. To install the cap, turn it clockwise until it “clicks”. This indicates that the cap is securely tightened.
2. Close the fuel filler door and push it lightly and make sure that it is securely closed.

⚠ WARNING - Refuelling

- **If pressurized fuel sprays out, it can cover your clothes or skin and subject you to the risk of fire and burns. Always remove the fuel cap carefully and slowly. If the cap is venting fuel or if you hear a hissing sound, wait until the condition stops before completely removing the cap.**
- **Do not "top off" after the nozzle automatically shuts off when refuelling.**
- **Always check that the fuel cap is installed securely to prevent fuel spillage in the event of an accident.**

⚠ WARNING - Refuelling dangers

Automotive fuels are flammable materials. When refuelling, please note the following guidelines carefully. Failure to follow these guidelines may result in severe personal injury, severe burns or death by fire or explosion.

- **Read and follow all warning posted at the gas station facility.**
- **Before refuelling note the location of the Emergency Petrol Shut-Off, if available, at the gas station facility.**
- **Before touching the fuel nozzle, you should eliminate potentially dangerous static electricity discharge by touching another metal part of the vehicle, a safe distance away from the fuel filler neck, nozzle, or other gas source.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Do not get back into a vehicle once you have begun refuelling since you can generate static electricity by touching, rubbing or sliding against any item or fabric (polyester, satin, nylon, etc.) capable of producing static electricity. Static electricity discharge can ignite fuel vapours resulting in rapid burning. If you must re-enter the vehicle, you should once again eliminate potentially dangerous static electricity discharge by touching a metal part of the vehicle, away from the fuel filler neck, nozzle or other petrol source.**
- **When using an approved portable fuel container, be sure to place the container on the ground prior to refuelling. Static electricity discharge from the container can ignite fuel vapours causing a fire.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

Once refuelling has begun, contact with the vehicle should be maintained until the filling is complete.

Use only approved portable plastic fuel containers designed to carry and store petrol.

- **Do not use mobile phones whilst refuelling. Electric current and/or electronic interference from mobile phones can potentially ignite fuel vapours causing a fire.**
- **When refuelling, always shut the engine off. Sparks produced by electrical components related to the engine can ignite fuel vapours causing a fire. Once refuelling is complete, check to make sure the filler cap and filler door are securely closed, before starting the engine.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **DO NOT use matches or a lighter and DO NOT SMOKE or leave a lit cigarette in your vehicle whilst at a gas station especially during refuelling. Automotive fuel is highly flammable and can, when ignited, result in fire.**
- **If a fire breaks out during refuelling, leave the vicinity of the vehicle, and immediately contact the manager of the gas station and then contact the local fire department. Follow any safety instructions they provide.**

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Make sure to refuel your vehicle according to the "Fuel requirements" suggested in chapter 1.***
- ***If the fuel filler cap requires replacement, please make sure that you use parts designed for replacement in your vehicle. An incorrect fuel filler cap can result in a serious malfunction of the fuel system or emission control system. For more detailed information, Kia recommends to contact an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.***
- ***Do not spill fuel on the exterior surfaces of the vehicle. Any type of fuel spilled on painted surfaces may damage the paint.***
- ***After refuelling, make sure the fuel cap is installed securely to prevent fuel spillage in the event of an accident.***

SUNROOF (IF EQUIPPED)

OBD048054

If your vehicle is equipped with a sunroof, you can slide or tilt your sunroof with the sunroof control lever located on the overhead console.

The sunroof can only be opened, closed, or tilted when the ignition switch is in the ON position.

The sunroof can be operated for approximately 10 minutes after the ignition key is removed or turned to the ACC or LOCK position. However, if the front doors are opened, the sunroof cannot be operated even within the 10 minutes period.

✻ NOTICE

- **In cold and wet climates, the sunroof may not work properly due to freezing conditions.**
- **After a vehicle is washed or in a rainstorm be sure to wipe off any water that is on the sunroof before operating it.**

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Do not continue to move the sunroof control lever after the sunroof is fully opened, closed, or tilted. Damage to the motor or system components could occur.***
- ***Make sure the sunroof is closed fully when leaving your vehicle.***

  If the sunroof is open, rain or snow may leak through the sunroof and wet the interior as well as cause theft.

✻ NOTICE

The sunroof cannot slide when it is in the tilt position nor can it be tilted whilst in an open or slide position.

⚠ WARNING

Never adjust the sunroof or sunshade whilst driving. This could result in loss of control and an accident that may cause death, serious injury, or property damage.

⚠ WARNING

- **In order to prevent accidental operation of the sunroof, especially by a child, do not let a child operate the sunroof.**
- **Do not sit on the top of the vehicle. It may cause vehicle damage.**

Sliding the sunroof (if equipped)

To open the sunroof, push the sunroof control lever backward.

To close the sunroof, push the sunroof control lever forward.

To open the sunroof automatically:

Pull the sunroof control lever backward to the second detent position and then release it. The sunroof will slide to the recommended open position (about 5 cm before the maximum slide open position).

To stop the sunroof sliding at any point, push the sunroof control lever momentarily.

To close the sunroof automatically:

Push the sunroof control lever forward to the second detent position and then release it. The sunroof will automatically close all the way.

To stop the sunroof sliding at any point, push the sunroof control lever momentarily.

✻ NOTICE

To reduce wind noise whilst driving, it is recommended that you drive with the sunroof slightly closed (stop the sunroof about 5cm(2in.) before the maximum slide open position).

⚠ WARNING

Make sure heads, other body parts or other objects are safely out of the way before closing the window to avoid injuries or vehicle damage.

Objects less than 4 mm (0.16 inch) in diameter caught between the sunroof glass and the front window channel may not be detected by the automatic reverse window and the window will not stop and reverse direction.

Automatic reversal (if equipped)

ORBC040096

If an object or part of the body is detected whilst the sunroof is closing automatically, it will reverse the direction, and then stop.

The auto reverse function does not work if a tiny obstacle is between the sliding glass and the sunroof sash. You should always check that all passengers and objects are away from the sunroof before closing it.

⚠ WARNING

- **Never try pinching any part of your body intentionally to activate the Automatic reversal function.**
- **The Automatic reversal function may not work if something gets caught just before the sunroof fully closes.**

Tilting the sunroof (if equipped)

OBD048064

To open the sunroof, push the sunroof control lever upward until the sunroof moves to the desired position.

To close the sunroof, push the sunroof lever forward until the sunroof moves to the desired position.

⚠ WARNING

- **Make sure heads, other body parts or other objects are safely out of the way before closing the sunroof to avoid injuries or vehicle damage.**
- **Never adjust the sunroof or sunshade whilst driving. This may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.**
- **To avoid serious injury or death, do not extend your head, arms or body outside the sunroof whilst driving.**

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Periodically remove any dirt that may accumulate on the guide rail.***
- ***If you try to open the sunroof when the temperature is below freezing or when the sunroof is covered with snow or ice, the glass or the motor could be damaged.***
- ***Whilst using sunroof for a long time, a dust between sunroof and roof panel can make a noise.***

  Open the sunroof and remove regularly the dust using clean cloth.
- ***The sunroof is made to slide together with sunshade. Do not leave the sunshade closed whilst the sunroof is open.***

Sunshade

The sunshade will be opened with the glass panel automatically when the glass panel is slid. You will have to close it manually if you want it closed.

Resetting the sunroof

Sunroof needs to be reset if (in the followings)

- Battery is discharged or disconnected or the related fuse has been replaced or disconnected.
- The one-touch sliding function of the sunroof does not normally operate.

1. The ignition switch must be in the ON position.
2. Close the sunroof completely.
3. Release the control lever.
4. Push the control lever forward until the sunroof tilts and slightly moves up. Then, release lever.
5. Push the control lever forward until the sunroof is operated as follows:

   TILT DOWN → SLIDE OPEN → SLIDE CLOSE

   Then, release the control lever.

If the sunroof does not operate properly after resetting, have the system checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

⚠ CAUTION

If the sunroof is not reset when the vehicle battery is disconnected or discharged, or related fuse is blown, the sunroof may operate improperly.

Sunroof open warning (if equipped)

OBD048065

If the driver removes the ignition key (smart key: turns off the engine) and opens the driver-side door when the sunroof is not fully closed, the warning chime will sound for a few seconds and a warning image will appear on the LCD display.

Close the sunroof securely when leaving your vehicle.

STEERING WHEEL

Electronic power steering

Power steering uses the motor to assist you in steering the vehicle. If the engine is off or if the power steering system becomes inoperative, the vehicle may still be steered, but it will require increased steering effort.

The motor driven power steering is controlled by the power steering control unit which senses the steering wheel torque and vehicle speed to command the motor.

The steering effort becomes heavier as the vehicle's speed increases and becomes lighter as the vehicle's speed decreases for better control of the steering wheel.

Should you notice any change in the effort required to steer during normal vehicle operation, have the system checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

✻ NOTICE

The following symptoms may occur during normal vehicle operation:

- **The EPS warning light does not illuminate.**
- **The steering effort is high immediately after turning the ignition switch on. This happens as the EPS system performs the diagnostics. When the diagnostics is completed, the steering effort will return to its normal condition.**
- **A click noise may be heard from the EPS relay after the ignition switch is turned to the ON or LOCK position.**
- **Motor noise may be heard when the vehicle is at a stop or at a low driving speed.**
- **When the abnormality is detected in the electric power steering system, a deadly accident prevention purposes, steering assist functions will be stopped. At this time, the instrument panel warning light turns on or blinks and the power to manipulate the steering of a sudden a lot you can. Please check immediately after moving the vehicle to a safe zone.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **The steering effort increases if the steering wheel is rotated continuously when the vehicle is not in motion. However, after a few minutes, it will return to its normal conditions.**
- **If the Electronic Power Steering System does not operate normally, the warning light will illuminate on the instrument cluster. The steering wheel may become difficult to control or operate abnormally. In this case, have the system inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.**
- **When you operate the steering wheel in low temperature, abnormal noise could occur. If temperature rises, the noise will disappear. This is a normal condition.**

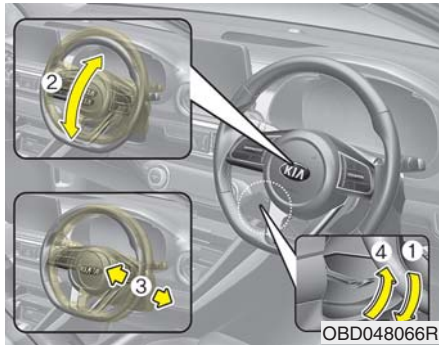
Tilt & telescopic steering

A tilt and telescopic steering wheel allows you to adjust the steering wheel before you drive. You can also raise it to give your legs more room when you exit and enter the vehicle.

The steering wheel should be positioned so that it is comfortable for you to drive, whilst permitting you to see the instrument panel warning lights and gauges.

⚠ WARNING

- **Never adjust the angle of the steering wheel whilst driving. You may lose steering control and cause severe personal injury, death or accidents.**
- **After adjusting, push the steering wheel both up and down to be certain it is locked in position.**



To change the steering wheel angle, pull down the lock release lever (1), adjust the steering wheel to the desired angle (2) and height (3), then pull up the lock-release lever to lock (4) the steering wheel in place. Be sure to adjust the steering wheel to the desired position before driving.

✻ NOTICE

After adjustment, sometimes the lock-release lever may not lock the steering wheel.
It is not a malfunction. This occurs when two gears engage. In this case, adjust the steering wheel again and then lock the steering wheel.

Heated steering wheel (if equipped)

With the ignition switch in the ON position, pressing the heated steering wheel button warms the steering wheel. The indicator on the button will illuminate.

To turn the heated steering wheel off, press the button once again. The indicator on the button will turn off.

✻ NOTICE

The heated steering wheel will turn off automatically approximately 30 minutes after the heated steering wheel is turned on.
If you turn off the ignition within 30 minutes after pressing the steering wheel heater button, from next ignition ON, the heater will be off.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not install any grip to operate the steering wheel. This causes damage to the heated steering wheel system.

Horn

OBD048068

To sound the horn, press the area indicated by the horn symbol on your steering wheel (see illustration). The horn will operate only when this area is pressed. Check the horn regularly to be sure it operates properly.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Do not strike the horn severely to operate it, or hit it with your fist. Do not press on the horn with a sharp-pointed object.***
- ***When cleaning the steering wheel, do not use an organic solvent such as thinner, benzene, alcohole and petrol. Doing so may damage the steering wheel.***

MIRRORS

Inside rearview mirror

Adjust the rearview mirror so that the centre view through the rear window is seen. Make this adjustment before you start driving.

⚠ WARNING - Rear visibility

Do not place objects in the rear seat or cargo area which would interfere with your vision through the rear window.

⚠ WARNING

Do not adjust the rearview mirror whilst the vehicle is moving. This could result in loss of control, and an accident which could cause death, serious injury or property damage.

⚠ WARNING

Do not modify the inside mirror and don't install a wide mirror. It could result in injury, during an accident or deployment of the air bag.

Day/night rearview mirror (if equipped)

Make this adjustment before you start driving and whilst the day/night lever is in the day position(1).

Pull the day/night lever toward you to reduce the glare from the headlights of the vehicles behind you during night driving.

Remember that you lose some rearview clarity in the night position.

❈ (1) : Day, (2) : Night

Electrochromic mirror (ECM) (if equipped)

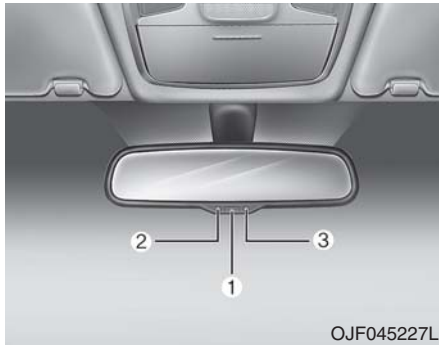
The electric rearview mirror automatically controls the glare from the headlights of the vehicles behind you in nighttime or low light driving conditions. The sensor mounted in the mirror senses the light level around the vehicle, and automatically controls the headlight glare from the vehicles behind you.

When the engine is running, the glare is automatically controlled by the sensor mounted in the rearview mirror.

Whenever the shift lever is shifted into reverse (R), the mirror will automatically go to the brightest setting in order to improve the drivers view behind the vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION

When cleaning the mirror, use a paper towel or similar material dampened with glass cleaner. Do not spray glass cleaner directly on the mirror. It may cause the liquid cleaner to enter the mirror housing.



OJF045227L

To operate the electric rearview mirror:

- The mirror defaults to the ON position whenever the ignition switch is turned on.
- Press the ON/OFF button (1) to turn the automatic dimming function off. The mirror indicator light (2) will turn off.

  Press the ON/OFF button (1) to turn the automatic dimming function on. The mirror indicator light (2) will illuminate.

❈(2) : Indicator, (3) : Sensor

Outside rearview mirror

Be sure to adjust the mirror angles before driving.

Your vehicle is equipped with both left-hand and right-hand outside rearview mirrors. The mirrors can be adjusted remotely with the remote switch. The mirror heads can be folded back to prevent damage during an automatic car wash or when passing through a narrow street.

⚠ WARNING - Rearview mirrors

- **The outside rearview mirror is convex. Objects seen in the mirror are closer than they appear.**
- **Use your interior rearview mirror or direct observation to determine the actual distance of following vehicles when changing lanes.**

⚠ CAUTION

Do not scrape ice off the mirror face; this may damage the surface of the glass. If ice should restrict the movement of the mirror, do not force the mirror for adjustment. To remove ice, use a deicer spray, or a sponge or soft cloth with warm water.

⚠ CAUTION

If the mirror is jammed with ice, do not adjust the mirror by force. Use an approved spray de-icer (not radiator antifreeze) to release the frozen mechanism or move the vehicle to a warm place and allow the ice to melt.

⚠ WARNING

Do not adjust or fold the outside rearview mirrors whilst the vehicle is moving. This could result in loss of control, and an accident which could cause death, serious injury or property damage.

Remote control

The electric remote control mirror switch allows you to adjust the position of the left and right outside rearview mirrors. To adjust the position of either mirror,move the R or L switch(1) to select the right side mirror or the left side mirror, then press a corresponding point (▲) on the mirror adjustment control (2) to position the selected mirror up, down, left or right.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***The mirrors stop moving when they reach the maximum adjusting angles, but the motor continues to operate whilst the switch is pressed. Do not press the switch longer than necessary, the motor may be damaged.***
- ***Do not attempt to adjust the outside rearview mirror by hand. Doing so may damage the parts.***

Folding the outside rearview mirror

Manual type (if equipped)

To fold the outside rearview mirror, grasp the housing of the mirror and then fold it toward the rear of the vehicle.

Electric type (if equipped)

To fold the outside rearview mirror depress the button.
To unfold it, depress the button again.

- With folding & smart key system
  - The mirror will fold or unfold when the door is locked or unlocked by the smart key. (if equipped)
- With smart key
  - The mirror will fold or unfold when the door is locked or unlocked by the button on the outside door handle. (if equipped)
  - The mirror will unfold when you approach the vehicle (all doors closed and locked) with a smart key in possession. (if equipped)

- Auto Folding function

① For type A,D cluster (segment)

If you press the outside mirror folding button(1) 5 seconds more, the function will be On or Off. When you turn on the function, the warning sound will be heard once and turn off the function, the warning sound will be heard twice

The function is On by default.

② For type B,C,E,F cluster (supervision)

You are able to turn On or Off the function in cluster user settings menu.

⚠ CAUTION

The electric type outside rearview mirror operates even though the ignition switch is in the LOCK or OFF position. However, to prevent unnecessary battery discharge, do not adjust the mirrors longer than necessary whilst the engine is not running.

⚠ CAUTION

In case it is an electric type outside rearview mirror, don't fold it by hand. It could cause motor failure.

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER

■ **Type A (Petrol)**

■ **Type B (Petrol)**

■ **Type C (Petrol)**

1. Tachometer
2. Speedometer
3. Engine coolant temperature gauge
4. Fuel gauge
5. Warning and indicator lights
6. LCD display

❈ The actual cluster in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.
For more details, refer to the “Gauges” in this chapter.

OBD048154R/OBD048100R/OBD048101R

■ **Type D (Diesel)**

■ **Type E (Diesel)**

■ **Type F (Diesel)**

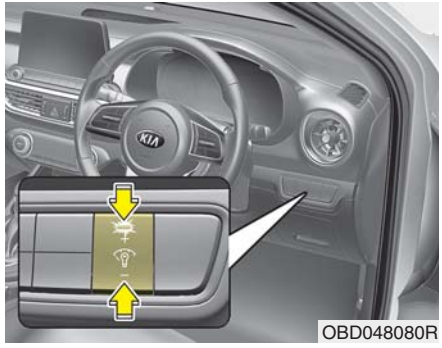
1. Tachometer
2. Speedometer
3. Engine coolant temperature gauge
4. Fuel gauge
5. Warning and indicator lights
6. LCD display

❈ The actual cluster in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.
For more details, refer to the “Gauges” in this chapter.

OBD048155R/OBD048102R/OBD048103R

Instrument Cluster Control

Adjusting Instrument Cluster Illumination (if equipped)



OBD048080R

⚠ WARNING

Never adjust the instrument cluster whilst driving. This could result in loss of control and lead to an accident that may cause death, serious injury, or property damage.

The brightness of the instrument panel illumination is changed by pressing the illumination control button (“+” or “-”) when the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop button is ON, or the tail lights are turned on.

■ Type A

OBD048161L

■ Type B

OBD048149L

- If you hold the illumination control button (“+” or “-”), the brightness will be changed continuously.
- If the brightness reaches to the maximum or minimum level, an alarm will sound.

LCD Window Control

■ Type A

OBD048088L

■ Type B

OBD048089L

■ Type C

OBD048090L

The LCD Window modes can be changed by using the control buttons on the steering wheel.

- Type A

(1) TRIP : TRIP button for changing modes.

(2) RESET : RESET button for resetting the selected item.

- Type B, C

(1) : MODE button for change the LCD MODES

(2) ∧/∨ : MOVE scroll switch for select the items

(3) OK : SET/RESET button for set the items or reset the items

❈ For the LCD modes, refer to “LCD Window” in this chapter.

Gauges

Speedometer

■ Type A (km/h)

OBD048104R

■ Type B (MPH, km/h)

OBD048162R

The speedometer indicates the speed of the vehicle and is calibrated in miles per hour (mph) and/or kilometers per hour (km/h).

Tachometer

■ Petrol

OBD048106

■ Diesel

OBD048107

The tachometer indicates the approximate number of engine revolutions per minute (rpm).

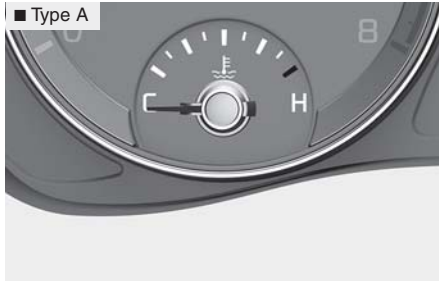
Use the tachometer to select the correct shift points and to prevent lugging and/or over-revving the engine.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not operate the engine within the tachometer's RED ZONE. This may cause severe engine damage.

Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge

■ Type A



OBD048108R

■ Type B

OBD048108L

This gauge indicates the temperature of the engine coolant when the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop button is ON.

⚠ CAUTION

If the gauge pointer moves beyond the normal range area toward the "H or 130" position, it indicates overheating that may damage the engine.

Do not continue driving with an overheated engine. If your vehicle overheats, refer to "If the Engine Overheats" in chapter 7.

⚠ WARNING

Never remove the radiator cap when the engine is hot. The engine coolant is under pressure and could severely burn. Wait until the engine is cool before adding coolant to the reservoir.

Fuel Gauge

■ Type A

OBD048109

■ Type B

OBD048109L

This gauge indicates the approximate amount of fuel remaining in the fuel tank.

✻ NOTICE

- **The fuel tank capacity is given in chapter 9.**
- **The fuel gauge is supplemented by a low fuel warning light, which will illuminate when the fuel tank is nearly empty.**
- **On inclines or curves, the fuel gauge pointer may fluctuate or the low fuel warning light may come on earlier than usual due to the movement of fuel in the tank.**

⚠ WARNING - Fuel Gauge

Running out of fuel can expose vehicle occupants to danger.

You must stop and obtain additional fuel as soon as possible after the warning light comes on or when the gauge indicator comes close to the "E or 0" level.

⚠ CAUTION

Avoid driving with a extremely low fuel level. Running out of fuel could cause the engine to misfire damaging the catalytic converter.

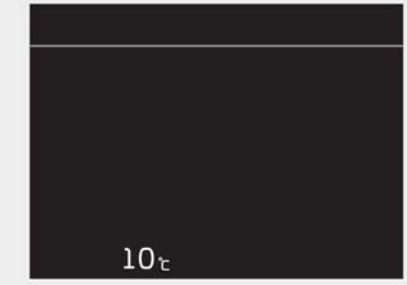
Odometer

OBD048110

The odometer Indicates the total distance that the vehicle has been driven and should be used to determine when periodic maintenance should be performed.

- Odometer range : 0 ~ 1,599,999 km or 999,999 miles.

Outside Temperature Gauge



OBD048111

This gauge indicates the current outside air temperatures by 1°C (1°F).

- Temperature range : - 40°C ~ 85°C (- 40°F ~ 211°F)

The outside temperature on the display may not change immediately like a general thermometer to prevent the driver from being inattentive.

To change the temperature unit (from °C to °F or from °F to °C)

• Type A, D Cluster

Press the TRIP button for 5 seconds and more.

• Type B, C, E, F Cluster

The temperature unit can be changed by using the “User Settings” mode of the LCD Windows.

❊ For more details, refer to “LCD Windows” in this chapter.

Transmission Shift Indicator

Automatic Transmission Shift Indicator (if equipped)

OBD048136L

This indicator displays which automatic transmission shift lever is selected.

- Park : P
- Reverse : R
- Neutral : N
- Drive : D
- Sports Mode : S, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6

Manual Transmission Shift Indicator

OBD048137L

(if equipped)

This indicator informs which gear is desired whilst driving to save fuel.

- Shifting up :
  ▲2, ▲3, ▲4, ▲5, ▲6
- Shifting down :
  ▼1, ▼2, ▼3, ▼4, ▼5

For example

▲3: Indicates that shifting up to the 3rd gear is desired (currently the shift lever is in the 2nd or 1st gear).

▼4: Indicates that shifting down to the 4th gear is desired (currently the shift lever is in the 5th or 6th gear).

When the system is not working properly, the indicator is not displayed.

Dual clutch transmission shift indicator (if equipped)

OBD048139L

This indicator displays which shift lever is selected.

- Park : P
- Reverse : R
- Neutral : N
- Drive : D1, D2, D3, D4, D5, D6, D7
- Sports Mode : S1, S2, S3, S4, S5, S6, S7

LCD WINDOWS (IF EQUIPPED)

Over view

LCD windows show the following various information to drivers.

- Trip information
- LCD modes
- Warning messages

Trip information (Trip computer)

The trip computer is a microcomputer-controlled driver information system that displays information related to driving.

✻ NOTICE

Some driving information stored in the trip computer (for example Average Fuel Economy) resets if the battery is disconnected.

Distance to empty

■ Type A

■ Type B

- The distance to empty is the estimated distance the vehicle can be driven with the remaining fuel.
  - Distance range: 1~9,999 km or 1~9,999 mi.

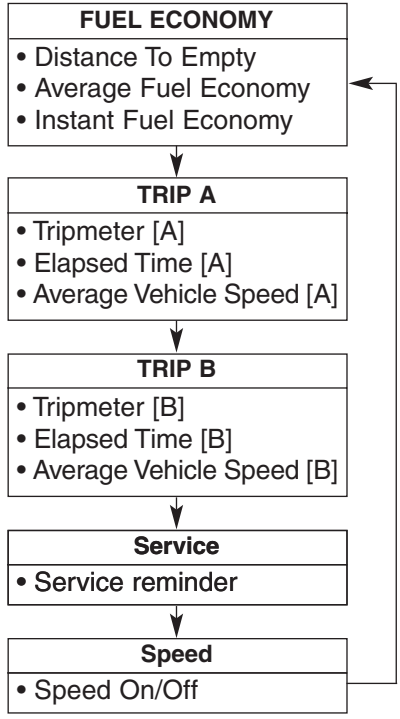
- If the estimated distance is below 1 km (1 mi.), the trip computer will display "---" as distance to empty.

✻ NOTICE

- **If the vehicle is not on level ground or the battery power has been interrupted, the distance to empty function may not operate correctly.**
- **The distance to empty may differ from the actual driving distance as it is an estimate of the available driving distance.**
- **The trip computer may not register additional fuel if less than 6 litres (1.6 gallons) of fuel are added to the vehicle.**
- **The fuel economy and distance to empty may vary significantly based on driving conditions, driving habits, and condition of the vehicle.**

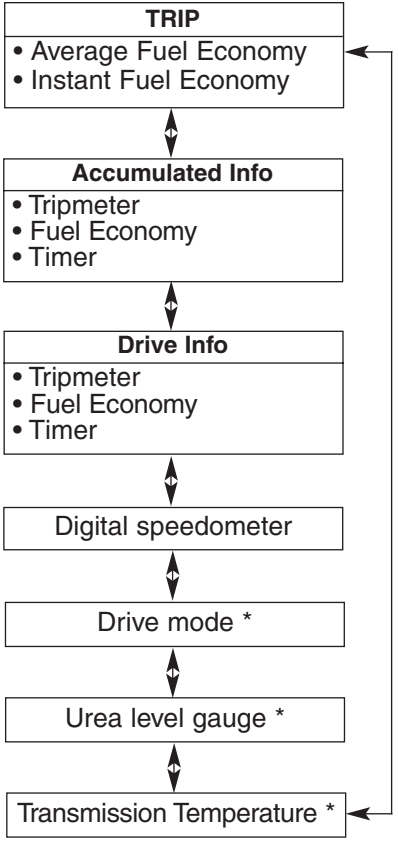
Trip Modes

- For type A,D cluster



To change the trip mode, press the TRIP button.

- For type B,C,E,F cluster



* : if equipped

To change the trip mode, scroll the MOVE scroll switch (∧/∨) or press the TRIP button in the trip computer mode.

Trip A/B (For type A,D cluster)

OBD048158L

Tripmeter (1)

- The tripmeter is the total driving distance since the last tripmeter reset.
  - Distance range : 0 ~ 1599999 km or 0 ~ 999999 mi
- To reset the tripmeter, press the RESET button on the steering wheel for more than 1 second when the tripmeter is displayed.
  - 4 hours after ignition off, tripmeter will be reset automatically.

Elapsed Time (2)

- The elapsed time is the total driving time since the last elapsed time reset.
  - Time range (hh:mm) : 00:00 ~ 99:59
- To reset the elapsed time, press the RESET button on the steering wheel for more than 1 second when the elapsed time is displayed.

✻ NOTICE

Even if the vehicle is not in motion, the elapsed time keeps going whilst the engine is running.

Average Vehicle Speed (3)

- The average vehicle speed is calculated by the total driving distance and driving time since the last average vehicle speed reset.
  - Speed range : 0 ~ 250 km/h or mph
- To reset the average vehicle speed, press the RESET button on the steering wheel for more than 1 second when the average vehicle speed is displayed.

✻ NOTICE

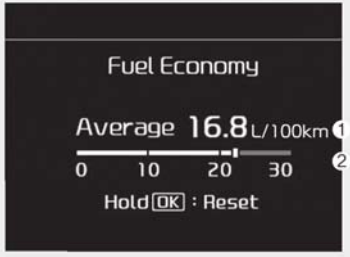
- **The average vehicle speed is not displayed if the driving distance is less than 300 meters or the driving time is less than 10 seconds since the ignition switch is turned to ON.**
- **Even if the vehicle is not in motion, the average vehicle speed keeps going whilst the engine is running.**

Fuel Economy

■ Type A

OBD048160L

■ Type B



OBD048143R

Average Fuel Economy (1)

- The average fuel economy is calculated by the total driving distance and fuel consumption since the last average fuel economy reset.
  - Fuel economy range:
    0 ~ 99.9km/L, L/100 km or MPG
- The average fuel economy can be reset both manually and automatically.

Manual reset

To clear the average fuel economy manually, press the RESET or OK button on the steering wheel for more than 1 second when the average fuel economy is displayed.

Automatic reset (For type B, C, E, F cluster)

To make the average fuel economy be reset automatically whenever refuelling, select the “Fuel economy auto reset” mode in User Setting menu of the LCD Windows (Refer to “LCD Windows”).

- OFF - You may set to default manually by using the trip switch reset button.
- After ignition - The vehicle will automatically set to default once 4 hours pass after the Ignition is in OFF.
- After refuelling - After refuelling more than 6 litres and driving over 1km/h, the vehicle will reset to default automatically.
  - 4 hours after ignition off, tripmeter will be reset automatically. (For type A,D cluster)

✻ NOTICE

The average fuel economy is not displayed for more accurate calculation if the vehicle does not drive more than 10 seconds or 50 meters (0.03 miles) since the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop button is turned to ON.

Instant Fuel Economy (2)

- This mode displays the instant fuel economy during the last few seconds when the vehicle speed is more than 10 km/h (6.2 MPH).
  - Fuel economy range:
    0.0 ~ 30km/L, L/100km or
    0.0 ~ 50.0 MPG

Accumulated driving information mode (For type B, C, E, F cluster)

OBD048145L

Displays accumulated information starting from mileage/fuel efficiency/time default point.

- Accumulated information is calculated after the vehicle has run for more than 300 meters.
- If you press "OK" button for more than 1 second after the Cumulative Information is displayed, the information will be reset.
- If the engine is running, even when the vehicle is not in motion, the information will be accumulated.

One time driving information mode (For type B, C, E, F cluster)

OBD048150L

The vehicle will display Driving Information once per one ignition cycle.

- Fuel efficiency is calculated after the vehicle has run for more than 300 meters.
- The Driving Information will be reset 4 hours after ignition has been turned off. So, when the vehicle ignition is turned on within 4 hours, the information will not be reset.
- If you press "OK" button for more than 1 second after the Driving Information is displayed, the information will be reset.
- If the engine is running, even when the vehicle is not in motion, the information will be accumulated.

Digital speedometer

OBD048146L

This mode displays the current speed of the vehicle.

Drive mode (for type B,C,E,F cluster, equipped)

OBD048165R

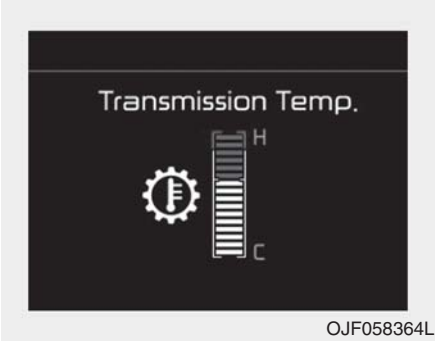
This mode displays the currently selected drive mode.

Urea level gauge (for type B,C,E,F cluster, diesel engine)

OBD078106L

This mode displays the amount of the remaining urea solution in the urea solution tank.

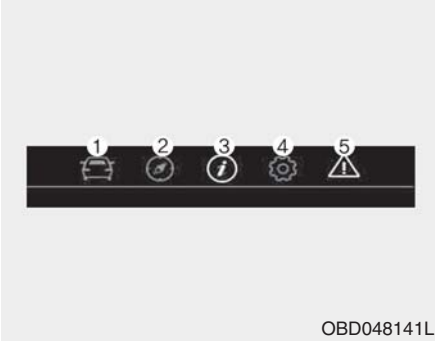
Transmission Temperature (for type B, C, E, F cluster, dual clutch transmission)



OJF058364L

This mode displays the temperature of the dual clutch transmission.

LCD Modes (For type B, C, E, F cluster)



OBD048141L

(1) Trip Computer mode

This mode displays driving information like the tripmeter, fuel economy, and so on.

❈ For more details, refer to “Trip Computer” in this chapter.

(2) Turn By Turn mode(if equipped)

This mode displays the state of the navigation.

(3) Assist mode (if equipped)

- : This mode displays the state of the below functions.
  - Smart Cruise Control (SCC)
  - Lane Keeping Assist (LKA)
  - Driver Attention Warning (DAW)
  - The state of tyre pressure.
- : This mode displays the state of tyre pressure.

(4) User Setting mode

On this mode, you can change settings of the doors, lamps and so on.

(5) Master warning mode

This mode informs of warning message related to below functions.

- Blind-Spot Collision Warning (BCW) malfunction (if equipped)
- Blind-Spot Collision Warning (BCW) radar blind (if equipped)
- Smart Cruise Control malfunction (if equipped)
- Smart Cruise Control radar blind (if equipped)
- Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction (if equipped)
- Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist radar blind (if equipped)
- High Beam Assist malfunction (if equipped)
- Lamp malfunction
- LED head lamp malfunction (if equipped)
- Engine oil shortage
- TPMS failure, low pressure (if equipped)

❈ For controlling the LCD modes, refer to “LCD window Control” in this chapter.

Service Mode

Service in

It calculates and displays when you need a scheduled maintenance service (mileage or days).

If the remaining mileage or time reaches 1,500 km (900 mi.) or 30 days, “Service in” message is displayed for several seconds each time you set the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position.

Service required

If you do not have your vehicle serviced according to the already inputted service interval, “Service required” message is displayed for several seconds each time you set the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position.

To reset the service interval to the mileage and days you inputted before:

- Press the RESET or OK button for more than 1 second.

✻ NOTICE

If any of the following conditions occurs, the mileage and days may be incorrect.

- **The battery cable is disconnected.**
- **The battery is discharged.**

User Settings Mode (For type B, C, E, F cluster)

On this mode, you can change setting of the doors, lamps, and so on.

⚠ WARNING

Do not adjust the User Setting whilst driving. You may lose your steering control and cause severe personal injury or accidents.

Shift to P to edit settings/Engage parking brake to edit settings

This warning message appears if you try to adjust the User Settings whilst driving.

- Automatic transmission/Dual clutch transmission

For your safety, change the User Settings after parking the vehicle, applying the parking brake and moving the shift lever to P (Park).

- Manual transmission

For your safety, change the User Settings after engaging the parking brake.

Driver Assistance (if equipped)

- Lane Safety (if equipped) :
  - LDW (Lane Departure Warning) : To activate the lane departure warning function.
  - LKA (Lane Keep Assist): To activate the lane keeping assist mode.

❈For more details, refer to “Lane Keeping Assist (LKA)” in chapter 6.

- DAW (Driver Attention Warning) (if equipped) :
  - Choose the alert stage (High sensitivity/Normal sensitivity/Off) of the Driver Attention Warning.

❈For more details, refer to “Driver Attention Warning (DAW)” in chapter 6.

- SCC Response (if equipped) :
  - Choose the sensitivity (fast, normal, slow) of the smart cruise control.

❈For more details, refer to “Smart Cruise Control” in chapter 6.

- FCA (Forward Collision-avoidance Assist) (if equipped) :
  - To activate or deactivate FCA.

❈For more details, refer to “Forward Collision-avoidance Assist (FCA)” in chapter 6.

- FCW (Forward Collision Warning) (if equipped) :
  - Choose the inital warning alert time of the forward collision warning. (Early/Normal/Late)

❈For more details, refer to “Forward Collision-avoidance Assist (FCA)” in chapter 6.

- BCW Sound (Blind-Spot Collision Warning) (if equipped) :
  - If this item is checked, the blind-spot collision warning sound will be activated.

❈For more details, refer to “Blind-Spot Collision Warning” in chapter 6.

- RCCW (Rear Cross-Traffic Collision Warning) (if equipped) :
  - If this item is checked, the rear cross-traffic collision Warning function will be activated.

❈For more details, refer to “Blind-spot Collision Warning” in chapter 6.

Door

- Auto Lock
  - Disable : The auto door lock operation will be deactivated.
  - Enable on Speed : All doors will be automatically locked when the vehicle speed exceeds 15 km/h (9.3 mph).
  - Enable on Shift (if equipped with Automatic transmission, Dual clutch transmission) : All doors will be automatically locked if the automatic transmission / dual clutch transmission shift lever is shifted from the P (Park) position to the R (Reverse), N (Neutral), or D (Drive) position. (With the Engine ON, it is activated.)
- Auto Unlock
  - Disable : The auto door unlock operation will be cancelled.
  - Vehicle Off/Key out (if equipped): All doors will be automatically unlocked when the ignition key is removed from the ignition switch or the Engine Star/Stop button is set to the OFF position.
  - On shift to P (if equipped with Automatic transmission, Dual clutch transmission) : All doors will be automatically unlocked if the automatic transmission/dual clutch transmission shift lever is shifted to the P (Park) position. (With the Engine ON, it is activated.)
- Smart trunk (if equipped)
  - If this item is checked, the smart trunk function will be activated.

❈For more details, refer to “Smart trunk” in this chapter.

Lights

- One Touch Turn indicator
  - Off : The one touch turn signal function will be deactivated.
  - 3, 5, 7 Flashes : The lane change signals will blink 3, 5, or 7 times when the turn signal lever is moved slightly.

❈For more details, refer to “Light” in this chapter.

- Ambient Light Brightness (if equipped) :
  - To select the brightness of the ambient light. (Level 1 ~ 4)
- Ambient Light Colour (if equipped) :
  - To select the colour of the ambient light. (White / Orange / Red / Green / Blue / Violet / Link to Driver Mode)
- Head Lamp Delay
  - If this item is checked, the head lamp delay function will be activated.

Sound

- Volume for PDW (Parking Distance Warning) (if equipped)
  - Adjust the Parking distance warning volume. (Level 1 ~ 3)

❈For more details, refer to “Parking distance warning (PDW)” in this chapter.

- Welcome Sound (if equipped) :
  - If this item is checked, the welcome sound function will be activated.

Convenience

- Seat Easy Access (if equipped)
  - Off : The seat easy access function will be deactivated.
  - Normal/Extended :When you turn off the engine, the driver’s seat will automatically move rear 7.6 cm (Enhanced) for you to enter or exit the vehicle more comfortably.
  - If you change the Engine Start/Stop Button from OFF position to the ACC position, the driver’s seat will return to the original position.

❈For more details, refer to “Driver Position Memory System” in chapter 3.

- Welcome Mirror/Light (if equipped) :
  - On door unlock: The outside rearview mirrors are unfolded and the welcome light turns on automatically when the doors are unlocked.
  - On driver approach: The outside rearview mirrors are unfolded and the welcome light turns on automatically when the vehicle is approached with the smart key.
- Wireless Charging System (if equipped) :
  - If this item is checked, the wireless charging system function will be activated.
- Wiper/Light Display (if equipped) :
  - If this is item checked, the Wiper/Light Display will be activated.
- Auto Rear Wiper (reverse, if equipped) :
  - If this item is checked, the rear wiper will automatically activated when the front wiper is in ON position and shift lever is in R (reverse) position.
- Gear Position Pop-up (if equipped) :
  - If this item is checked, the gear position pop-up display will be activated.
- Icy road warning (if equipped) :
  - If this item is checked, the Icy road warning display will be activated.

Service interval

- Service Interval

  To activate or deactivate the service interval function.

- Adjust Interval

  To adjust the interval by mileage and period.

- Reset

  To reset the service interval function.

Other Features

- Fuel Economy Auto Reset
  - If this item is checked, the average fuel economy will reset automatically after refuelling or after ignition.
- Fuel Economy Unit
  - Choose the fuel economy unit. (km/L, L/100km)
- Temperature Unit
  - Choose the temperature unit. (°C,°F)
- Tyre Pressure Unit (if equipped)
  - Choose the tyre pressure unit. (psi, kPa, bar)

Language (if equipped)

Choose the language

Reset

You can reset the menus in the User Settings Mode. All menus in the User Settings Mode are initialized, except language and service interval.

Warning messages

Warning messages appear on the LCD to warn the driver. It is located in the centre of the instrument cluster.

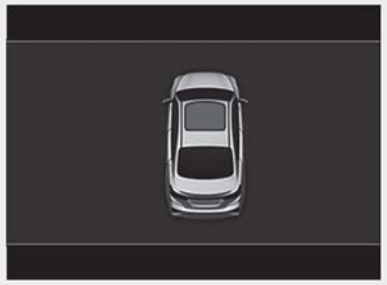
The warning message may appear differently depending on the type of instrument cluster and some may not show the warning message at all.

The warning message is shown in either symbol, symbol and text, or text type only.

OBD048123

Door, bonnet, trunk/tailgate open

- This warning is displayed indicating which door, or the bonnet, or the trunk/tailgate is open.



OBD048124

Sunroof open (if equipped)

- This warning is displayed if you turn off the engine when the sunroof is open.

Engine has overheated

- This warning message illuminates when the engine coolant temperature is above 120°C (248°F). This mean that the engine is overheated and may be damaged.

✻If your vehicle is overheated, refer to “Overheating” in chapter 7.

Low Key Battery
(for smart key system)

- This warning message illuminates if the battery of the smart key is discharged when the Engine Start/Stop Button changes to the OFF position.

Press START button whilst turning wheel (for smart key system)

- This warning message illuminates if the steering wheel does not unlock normally when the Engine Start/Stop Button is pressed.
- It means that you should press the Engine Start/Stop Button whilst turning the steering wheel right and left.

Steering wheel unlocked
(for smart key system)

- This warning message illuminates if the steering wheel does not lock when the Engine Start/Stop Button changes to the OFF position.

Check steering wheel lock system
(for smart key system)

- This warning message illuminates if the steering wheel does not lock normally when the Engine Start/Stop Button changes to the OFF position.

Shift to P(for smart key system and automatic transmission / dual clutch transmission)

- This warning message illuminates if you try to turn off the engine without the shift lever in P (Park) position.
- At this time, the Engine Start/Stop Button turns to the ACC position (If you press the Engine Start/Stop Button once more, it will turn to the ON position).

Press clutch pedal to start engine (for smart key system and manual transmission)

- This warning message illuminates if the Engine Start/Stop Button changes to the ACC position twice by pressing the button repeatedly without depressing the clutch pedal.
- It means that you should depress the clutch pedal to start the engine.

Key not in vehicle (for smart key system)

- This warning message illuminates if the smart key is not in the vehicle when you press the Engine Start/Stop Button.
- It means that you should always have the smart key with you.

Key not detected (for smart key system)

- This warning message illuminates if the smart key is not detected when you press the Engine Start/Stop Button.

Shift to P or N to start engine (for smart key system and automatic transmission / dual clutch transmission)

- This warning message illuminates if you try to start the engine with the shift lever not in the P (Park) or N (Neutral) position.

Press brake pedal to start vehicle (for smart key system and automatic transmission / dual clutch transmission)

- This warning message illuminates if the Engine Start/Stop Button changes to the ACC position twice by pressing the button repeatedly without depressing the brake pedal.
- It means that you should depress the brake pedal to start the engine

Press START button again (for smart key system)

- This warning message illuminates if you can not operate the Engine Start/Stop Button when there is a problem with the Engine Start/Stop Button system.
- It means that you could start the engine by pressing the Engine Start/ Stop Button once more.
- If the warning illuminates each time you press the Engine Start/Stop Button, have the vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

Press START button with key (for smart key system)

- This warning message illuminates if you press the Engine Start/Stop Button whilst the warning message “Key not detected” is illuminating.
- At this time, the immobiliser indicator light blinks.

Check BRAKE SWITCH fuse (for smart key system and automatic transmission/dual clutch transmission)

- This warning message illuminates if the brake switch fuse is disconnected.
- It means that you should replace the fuse with a new one. If that is not possible, you can start the engine by pressing the Engine Start/Stop Button for 10 seconds in the ACC position.

Low Washer Fluid (if equipped)

- This warning message illuminates on the service reminder mode if the washer fluid level in the reservoir is nearly empty.
- It means that you should refill the washer fluid.

Low Fuel

- This warning message illuminates if the fuel tank is nearly empty.
  - When the low fuel level warning light is illuminated add fuel as soon as possible.

Check exhaust system (for Diesel engine)

- This warning message illuminates if the DPF system has a malfunction. At this time, DPF warning light also blinks. In this case, have the DPF system checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

❈For more details, refer to "Warning lights" in this chapter.

Low urea (for diesel engine)

This warning message illuminates if the urea solution level in the urea solution tank is nearly empty.

- When the SCR warning light is illuminates.

Refill urea solution as soon as possible.

❈For more details, refer to "Selective Catalytic Reduction" in the chapter 8.

Check urea system (for diesel engine)

This warning message illuminates if the urea system has a malfunction. In this case, have the urea system checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

❈For more details, refer to "Selective Catalytic Reduction" in the chapter 8.

Check BCW (Blind-Spot Collision Warn.) (if equipped)

This warning message is displayed if there is a problem with the Blind-Spot Collision Warning (BCW). In this case, have the vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

❈For more information, refer to “Blind-Spot Collision Warning (BCW)” in chapter 6.

Check Driver Attention Warning (DAW) System (if equipped)

This warning message is displayed if there is a problem with the Driver Attention Alert System. In this case, have the vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

❈For more information, refer to “Driver Attention Warning (DAW)” in chapter 6.

Check HBA (High Beam Assist) system (if equipped)

- This warning message illuminates if the high beam assist has a malfunction.

In this case, have the vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

Check FCA (Forward Collision Avoidance Assist) (if equipped)

- This warning message illuminates if there is a malfunction with Forward Collision Avoidance Assist (FCA). In this case, have the vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

❈For more details, refer to "Forward Collision Avoidance Assist (FCA)" in chapter 6.

Device in wireless charger (if equipped)

If a smart phone is still left on the wireless charging pad unattended, even when the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop Button is in ACC OFF and the instrument panel's one time driving information mode has finished, a warning message will lit up on the instrument panel.

✻For more details, refer to "Wireless smart phone charging system" in this chapter.

Icy Road Warning (if equipped)

OBD048166R

This warning is to warn the driver the road may be icy.

When the following conditions occur, the warning light (including Outside Temperature Gauge) blinks 5 times and then illuminates, and also warning chime sounds once.

- The temperature on the Outside Temperature Gauge is below approximately 4°C (40°F).

✻ NOTICE

If the icy road warning appears whilst driving, you should drive more attentively and safely refraining from over-speeding, rapid acceleration, sudden braking or sharp turning, etc.

WARNING AND INDICATOR LIGHTS

Warning lights

✻ NOTICE - Warning lights

Make sure that all warning lights are OFF after starting the engine. If any light is still ON, this indicates a situation that needs attention.

Air bag Warning Light

This warning light illuminates:

- Once you set the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position.
  - It illuminates for approximately 6 seconds and then goes off.
- When there is a malfunction with the SRS.

  In this case, have the vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

Seat Belt Warning Light

This warning light informs the driver that the seat belt is not fastened.

❈ For more details, refer to the “Seat Belts” in chapter 3.

Parking Brake & Brake Fluid Warning Light

This warning light illuminates:

- Once you set the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position.
  - It illuminates for approximately 3 seconds
  - It remains on if the parking brake is applied.
- When the parking brake is applied.
- When the brake fluid level in the reservoir is low.
  - If the warning light illuminates with the parking brake released, it indicates the brake fluid level in reservoir is low.

If the brake fluid level in the reservoir is low:

1. Drive carefully to the nearest safe location and stop your vehicle.
2. With the engine stopped, check the brake fluid level immediately and add fluid as required (For more details, refer to “Brake Fluid” in chapter 8). Then check all brake components for fluid leaks. If any leak on the brake system is still found, the warning light remains on, or the brakes do not operate properly, do not drive the vehicle.

In this case, have the vehicle towed to a professional workshop and inspected. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

Dual-diagonal braking system

Your vehicle is equipped with dual-diagonal braking systems. This means you still have braking on two wheels even if one of the dual systems should fail.

With only one of the dual systems working, more than normal pedal travel and greater pedal pressure are required to stop the vehicle.

Also, the vehicle will not stop in as short a distance with only a portion of the brake system working.

If the brakes fail whilst you are driving, shift to a lower gear for additional engine braking and stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

⚠ WARNING - Parking Brake & Brake Fluid Warning Light

Driving the vehicle with a warning light ON is dangerous. If the Parking Brake & Brake Fluid Warning Light illuminates with the parking brake released, it indicates that the brake fluid level is low.

In this case, have the vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light

This warning light illuminates:

- Once you set the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position.
  - It illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When there is a malfunction with the ABS (The normal braking system will still be operational without the assistance of the anti-lock brake system).

  In this case, have the vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

Electronic Brake force Distribution (EBD) System Warning Light

These two warning lights illuminate at the same time whilst driving:

- When the ABS and regular brake system may not work normally.

  In this case, have the vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

⚠ WARNING - Electronic Brake force Distribution (EBD) System Warning Light

When both ABS and Parking Brake & Brake Fluid Warning Lights are on, the brake system will not work normally and you may experience an unexpected and dangerous situation during sudden braking.

In this case, avoid high speed driving and abrupt braking.

Have the vehicle inspected by a professional workshop as soon as possible. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

✻ NOTICE - Electronic Brake force Distribution (EBD) System Warning Light

When the ABS Warning Light is on or both ABS and Parking Brake & Brake Fluid Warning Lights are on, the speedometer, odometer, or trip-meter may not work. Also, the EPS Warning Light may illuminate and the steering effort may increase or decrease.
In this case, have the vehicle inspected by a professional workshop as soon as possible.
Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

Electronic Power Steering (EPS) Warning Light

This warning light illuminates:

- Once you set the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position.
  - This indicator light comes on after the ignition key is turned to the ON position and then goes out after approximately 3 seconds.
- When there is a malfunction with the EPS.

  In this case, have the vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL)

This warning light illuminates:

- Once you set the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position.

  - It remains on until the engine is started.

- When there is a malfunction with the emission control system.

  In this case, have the vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

⚠ CAUTION - Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL)

Driving with the Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) on may cause damage to the emission control systems which could effect drivability and/or fuel economy.

⚠ CAUTION - Petrol Engine

If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) illuminates, potential catalytic converter damage is possible which could result in loss of engine power.

In this case, have the vehicle inspected by a professional workshop as soon as possible.

Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

⚠ CAUTION - Diesel Engine

If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) blinks, some error related to the injection quantity adjustment occurs which could result in loss of engine power, combustion noise and poor emission.

In this case, have the engine control system inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

Charging System Warning Light

This warning light illuminates:

- Once you set the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position.
  - It remains on until the engine is started.
- When there is a malfunction with either the alternator or electrical charging system.

If there is a malfunction with either the alternator or electrical charging system:

1. Drive carefully to the nearest safe location and stop your vehicle.
2. Turn the engine off and check the alternator drive belt for looseness or breakage.

   In this case, have the vehicle inspected by a professional workshop as soon as possible.

   Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

Engine Oil Pressure Warning Light

This warning light illuminates:

- Once you set the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position.
  - It remains on until the engine is started.
- When the engine oil pressure is low.

If the engine oil pressure is low:

1. Drive carefully to the nearest safe location and stop your vehicle.
2. Turn the engine off and check the engine oil level (For more details, refer to “Engine Oil” in chapter 8). If the level is low, add oil as required.

   If the warning light remains on after adding oil or if oil is not available, have the vehicle inspected by a professional workshop as soon as possible. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

⚠ CAUTION - Engine Oil Pressure Warning Light

- ***If the engine does not stop immediately after the Engine Oil Pressure Warning Light is illuminated, severe damage could result.***
- ***If the warning light stays on whilst the engine is running, it indicates that there may be serious engine damage or malfunction. In this case,***
  1. ***Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.***
  2. ***Turn off the engine and check the oil level. If the oil level is low, fill the engine oil to the proper level.***
  3. ***Start the engine again. If the warning light stays on after the engine is started, turn the engine off immediately. In this case, have the vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.***

Engine Oil Level Warning Light (if equipped)

The engine oil level warning light illuminates when the engine oil level should be checked.

If the warning light comes on, check the engine oil level as soon as possible and add engine oil as required.

Slowly pour the recommended oil little by little into a funnel.(Oil refill capacity : Approximately 0.6 *l*~1.0 *l*)

Use only the specified engine oil.(refer to “Recommended lubricants and capacities” in chapter 9.)

Do not overfill the engine oil to ensure the oil level is not above F mark on the dipstick.

✻ NOTICE

- **If you travel approximately 50 km after adding the engine oil, the warning light will go off.**
- **Cycle the ignition from OFF to ON 3 times within 10 seconds, the warning light will go off immediately. However, when you turn off the warning light without adding the engine oil, the light will come on again after travelling approximately 50km.**

⚠ CAUTION

If the light comes on continuously after adding the engine oil and travelling approximately 50 km, have the vehicle inspected by a professional workshop as soon as possible. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner. Even if this light does not come on after the engine has started, the engine oil should be checked and supplied periodically.

Low Fuel Level Warning Light

This warning light illuminates:

When the fuel tank is nearly empty.

If the fuel tank is nearly empty:

Add fuel as soon as possible.

⚠ CAUTION - Low Fuel Level

Driving with the Low Fuel Level warning light on or with the fuel level below "0" can cause the engine to misfire and damage the catalytic converter (if equipped).

Low Tyre Pressure Warning Light (if equipped)

This warning light illuminates:

- Once you set the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position.
  - It illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When one or more of your tyres are significantly underinflated (The location of the underinflated tyres are displayed on the LCD display).

❈For more details, refer to "Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)" in chapter 7.

This warning light remains on after blinking for approximately 60 seconds or repeats blinking and off at the intervals of approximately 3 seconds:

- When there is a malfunction with the TPMS.

  In this case, have the vehicle inspected by a professional workshop as soon as possible.

  Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

❈For more details, refer to "Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)" in chapter 7.

⚠ WARNING - Safe Stopping

- **The TPMS cannot alert you to severe and sudden tyre damage caused by external factors.**
- **If you notice any vehicle instability, immediately take your foot off the accelerator pedal, apply the brakes gradually with light force, and slowly move to a safe position off the road.**

Master Warning Light (if equipped)

This indicator light illuminates:

- This warning light informs the driver the following situations

- Blind-Spot Collision Warning (BCW) malfunction (if equipped)
- Blind-Spot Collision Warning (BCW) radar blind (if equipped)
- Smart Cruise Control malfunction (if equipped)
- Smart Cruise Control radar blind (if equipped)
- Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction (if equipped)
- Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist radar blind (if equipped)
- High Beam Assist malfunction (if equipped)
- Lamp malfunction
- LED head lamp malfunction (if equipped)
- Engine oil shortage
- TPMS failure, low pressure (if equipped)

If the warning situation is solved, the master warning light will turn off.

Fuel Filter Warning Light (Diesel Engine)

This warning light illuminates:

- Once you set the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position.
  - It illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When water has accumulated inside the fuel filter.

  In this case, remove the water from the fuel filter.

❈For more details, refer to “Fuel Filter” in chapter 8.

⚠ CAUTION - Fuel Filter Warning Light

- ***When the Fuel Filter Warning Light illuminates, engine power (vehicle speed & idle speed) may decrease.***
- ***If you keep driving with the warning light on, engine parts (injector, common rail, high pressure fuel pump) may be damaged. If this occurs, have the vehicle inspected by a professional workshop as soon as possible. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.***

Exhaust system (DPF) warning light (Diesel Engine)

This warning light illuminates:

- When there is a malfunction with Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) system.
- When this warning light illuminates, it may turn off after driving the vehicle:
  - at more than 60km/h (37 mph), or
  - at more than 2nd gear with 1500 ~ 2000 engine rpm for a certain time (for about 25 minutes).

If this warning light blinks in spite of the procedure (at this time the LCD warning message will be displayed), have the DPF system checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/ service partner.

⚠ CAUTION - Diesel Engine with DPF (if equipped)

If you continue to drive with the DPF warning light blinking for a long time, the DPF system can be damaged and fuel consumption can worsen.

SCR warning light (Diesel Engine)

This warning light illuminates:

- When the urea solution tank is nearly empty.

If the urea solution tank is nearly empty:

- Refill urea solution as soon as possible.

❈For more details, refer to “Selective Catalytic Reduction” in the chapter 8.

Exhaust system (PPF) warning light (Petrol Engine) (if equipped)

This warning light illuminates:

- When there is a malfunction with Petrol Particulate Filter (PPF) system.
- When this warning light illuminates, it may turn off after driving the vehicle:
  - The vehicle should be driven for more than 30 minutes at a speed of 80k m/h (50 mph) and faster.
  - Ensure the following conditions are all met: safe road conditions, transmission 3rd gear or above, and engine speed of 1,500 - 4,000 rpm.

If this warning light blinks in spite of the procedure (at this time the LCD warning message will be displayed), have the PPF system checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/ service partner.

⚠ CAUTION - Petrol Engine with PPF (if equipped)

If you continue to drive with the PPF warning light blinking for a long time, the PPF system can be damaged and fuel consumption can worsen.

LED Headlamp Warning Light (if equipped)

This warning light illuminates:

- Once you set the Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position.
  - It illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When there is a malfunction with the LED headlamp.

In this case, Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

This warning light blinks:

- When there is a malfunction with a LED headlamp related part.

In this case, Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

✻ NOTICE

Continuous driving with the LED Headlamp Warning Light on or blinking can reduce LED headlamp (low beam) life.

Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA) Warning light (if equipped)

This indicator light illuminates:

- When there is a malfunction with the Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA) system.

In this case, have the vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

Door Ajar Warning Light (if equipped)

This warning light illuminates:

When a door is not closed securely.

Trunk/tailgate Open Warning Light (if equipped)

This warning light illuminates:

When the trunk/tailgate is not closed securely.

Washer Fluid Warning Light (if equipped)

This warning light illuminates:

- When the washer fluid level in the reservoir is nearly empty.

  In this case, you should refill the washer fluid.

Bonnet open warning light (if equipped)

This warning light blinks:

- When the bonnet warning light will appear on the LCD display when the bonnet is open.

  The warning chime will operate when the vehicle is being driven at or above 3 km/h (2 mph) with the bonnet open.

Sunroof open warning light (if equipped)

This warning light blinks:

- If the driver removes the ignition key and opens the driver-side door when the sunroof is not fully closed, the warning chime will sound for a few seconds and a warning light will appear on the LCD display.

  Close the sunroof securely when leaving your vehicle.

Ice Warning Light (if equipped)

This warning light blinks 5 times and then illuminates, and also warning chime sounds 1 time:

- When the temperature on the Outside Temperature Gauge is below approximately 4°C (39.2°F) with the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop button in the ON position.

✻ NOTICE

If the ice warning light appears whilst driving, you should drive more attentively and safely refraining from over-speeding, rapid acceleration, sudden braking or sharp turning, etc.

Indicator lights

Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Indicator Light

This indicator light illuminates:

- Once you set the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position.
  - It illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When there is a malfunction with the ESC system.

  In this case, have the vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

This indicator light blinks:

Whilst the ESC is operating.

✻For more details, refer to “Electronic Stability Control (ESC)” in chapter 6.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC) OFF Indicator Light

This indicator light illuminates:

- Once you set the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position.
  - It illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When you deactivate the ESC system by pressing the ESC OFF button.

❈For more details, refer to “Electronic Stability Control (ESC)” in chapter 6.

Auto stop indicator (if equipped)

This indicator will illuminate when the engine enters the Idle Stop mode of the ISG (Idle Stop and Go) system.

When the automatic starting occurs, the auto stop indicator on the cluster will blink for 5 seconds.

❈For more details, refer to the ISG (Idle Stop and Go) system in chapter 6.

✻ NOTICE

When the engine automatically starts by the ISG system, some warning lights (ABS, ESC, ESC OFF, EPS or Parking brake warning light) may turn on for a few seconds.
This happens because of the low battery voltage. It does not mean the system is malfunctioning.

Immobiliser Indicator Light (Without Smart Key) (if equipped)

This indicator light illuminates:

- When the vehicle detects the immobiliser in your key properly whilst the ignition switch is ON.
  - At this time, you can start the engine.
  - The indicator light goes off after starting the engine.

This indicator light blinks:

- When there is a malfunction with the immobiliser system.

  In this case, have the vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

Immobiliser Indicator Light (With Smart Key) (if equipped)

This indicator light illuminates for up to 30 seconds:

- When the vehicle detects the smart key in the vehicle properly whilst the Engine Start/Stop Button is ACC or ON.
  - At this time, you can start the engine.
  - The indicator light goes off after starting the engine.

This indicator light blinks for a few seconds:

- When the smart key is not in the vehicle.
  - At this time, you can not start the engine.

This indicator light illuminates for 2 seconds and goes off:

- When the vehicle can not detect the smart key which is in the vehicle whilst the Engine Start/Stop Button is ON.

  In this case, have the vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

This indicator light blinks:

- When the battery of the smart key is weak.
  - At this time, you can not start the engine. However, you can start the engine if you press the Engine Start/Stop Button with the smart key. (For more details, refer to “Starting the Engine” in chapter 6).
- When there is a malfunction with the immobiliser system.

  In this case, have the vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

Turn Signal Indicator Light

This indicator light blinks:

- When you turn the turn signal light on.

If any of the following occurs, there may a malfunction with the turn signal system. In this case, have the vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

- The indicator light does not blink but illuminates.
- The indicator light blinks more rapidly.
- The indicator light does not illuminate at all.

Low Beam Indicator Light (if equipped)

This indicator light illuminates:

- When the headlights are on.

High Beam Indicator Light

This indicator light illuminates:

- When the headlights are on and in the high beam position.
- When the turn signal lever is pulled into the Flash-to-Pass position.

Light ON Indicator Light

This indicator light illuminates:

- When the tail lights or headlights are on.

Front Fog Indicator Light (if equipped)

This indicator light illuminates:

- When the front fog lights are on.

Rear Fog Indicator Light (if equipped)

This indicator light illuminates:

- When the rear fog lights are on.

High Beam Assist indicator (if equipped)

This warning light illuminates :

- When the high-beam is on with the light switch in the AUTO light position.
- If your vehicle detects oncoming or preceding vehicles, the high beam assist will switch the high beam to low beam automatically.

❈For more details, refer to “High beam assist” in this chapter.

Glow Indicator Light (Diesel Engine)

This indicator light illuminates:

- When the engine is being preheated with the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop Button in the ON position.
  - The engine can be started after the glow indicator light goes off.
  - The illumination time varies with the engine coolant temperature, air temperature, and battery condition.

If the indicator light remains on or blinks after the engine has warmed up or whilst driving, there may a malfunction with the engine preheating system.

In this case, have the vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

✻ NOTICE - Engine Preheating

If the engine does not start within 10 seconds after the preheating is completed, set the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop Button to the LOCK or OFF position for 10 seconds and then to the ON position in order to preheat the engine again.

LKA(Lane Keeping Assist) indicator (if equipped)

LKA indicator will illuminate when you turn the lane keeping assistant on by pressing the Lane Safety.

If there is a problem with the system, the yellow LKA indicator will illuminate.

✻For more details, refer to “Lane Keeping Assist” in chapter 6.

ECO Mode Indicator Light (if equipped)

This indicator light illuminates:

- When you select “ECO” mode as drive mode.

❈For more details, refer to “Drive Mode Integrated Control System” in chapter 6.

SPORT Mode Indicator Light (if equipped)

This indicator light illuminates:

- When you select “SPORT” mode as drive mode.

❈For more details, refer to “Drive Mode Integrated Control System” in chapter 6.

SMART Mode Indicator (if equipped)

This indicator light illuminates:

- When you select “SMART” mode as drive mode.

❈For more details, refer to “Drive Mode Integrated Control System” in chapter 6.

Cruise Indicator Light (if equipped)

This indicator light illuminates:

- When the cruise control system is enabled.

❈For more details, refer to “Cruise Control System” in chapter 6.

KEY OUT Indicator Light (if equipped)

When the ENGINE START/STOP button is in the ACC or ON position, if any door is open, the system checks for the smart key.

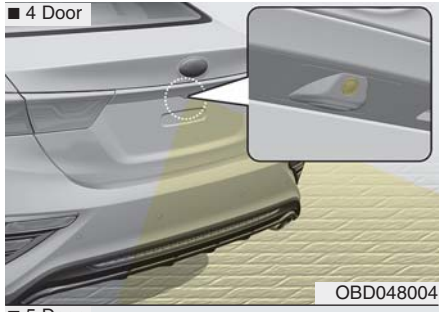
This indicator light blinks:

When the smart key is not in the vehicle and any door is open with the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop button in the ACC or ON position.

- At this time, if you close all doors, the chime will also sound for approximately 5 seconds.
- The indicator will go off whilst the vehicle is moving.

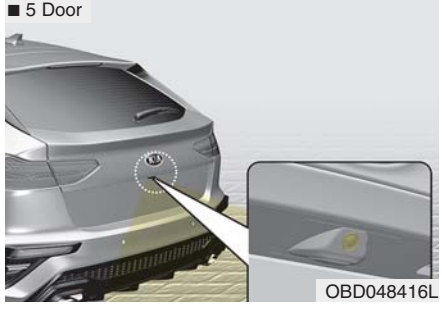
REAR VIEW MONITOR (RVM) (IF EQUIPPED)

■ 4 Door



OBD048004

■ 5 Door



OBD048416L

Rear View Monitor will activate when the back-up light is ON with the ignition switch ON and the shift lever in the R (Reverse) position.

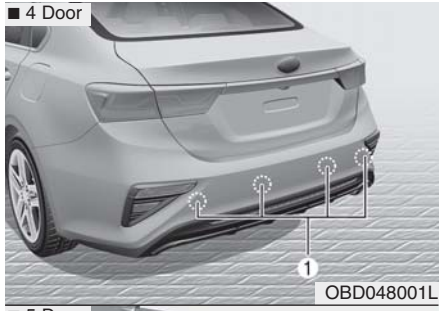
This function is a supplemental function that shows behind the vehicle through the navigation display whilst backing-up.

⚠ WARNING

- **This function is a supplementary function only. It is the responsibility of the driver to always check the inside/outside rearview mirror and the area behind the vehicle before and whilst backing up because there is a dead zone that can't be seen through the camera.**
- **Always keep the camera lens clean. If lens is covered with foreign matter, the camera**

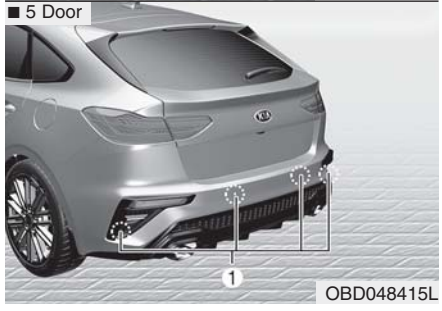
REVERSE PARKING DISTANCE WARNING (PDW) (IF EQUIPPED)

■ 4 Door



OBD048001L

■ 5 Door



OBD048415L

Reverse Parking Distance Warning assists the driver during backward movement of the vehicle by chiming if any object is sensed within a distance of 120 cm (48 in.) behind the vehicle.

This function is a supplemental function and it is not intended to nor does it replace the need for extreme care and attention of the driver. The sensing range and objects detectable by the rear ultrasonic sensors (①) are limited. Whenever backing-up, pay as much attention to what is behind you as you would in a vehicle without Reverse Parking Distance Warning.

⚠ WARNING

Reverse Parking Distance Warning is a supplementary function only. The operation of the parking distance warning-reverse can be affected by several factors (including environmental conditions). It is the responsibility of the driver to always check the area behind the vehicle before and whilst backing up.

Operation of Reverse Parking Distance Warning

Operating condition

- This function will activate when backing up with the ignition switch ON.

  If the vehicle is moving at a speed over 5 km/h (3 mph), the function may not be activated correctly.
- The sensing distance whilst Reverse Parking Distance Warningis in operation is approximately 120 cm (48 in.) at the rear bumper centre area, and 60 cm (24 in) at the rear bumper side area.
- When more than two objects are sensed at the same time, the closest one will be recognized first.

Types of warning sound	Indicator*
When an object is 120 cm to 60 cm (48 in. to 24 in.) from the rear bumper: Buzzer beeps intermittently.	
When an object is 60 cm to 30 cm (24 in. to 12 in.) from the rear bumper: Buzzer beeps more frequently.	
When an object is within 30 cm (12 in.) of the rear bumper: Buzzer sounds continuously.	

* if equipped

✻ NOTICE

The indicator may differ from the illustration as objects or sensors status.

If the indicator blinks, have the function checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

Non-operational conditions of Reverse Parking Distance Warning

Reverse Parking Distance Warning may not operate properly when:

1. Moisture is frozen to the sensor. (It will operate normally when the moisture has been cleared.)
2. The sensor is covered with foreign matter, such as snow or water, or the sensor cover is blocked. (It will operate normally when the material is removed or the sensor is no longer blocked.)
3. Driving on uneven road surfaces (unpaved roads, gravel, bumps, gradient).
4. Objects generating excessive noise (vehicle horns, loud motorcycle engines, or truck air brakes) are within range of the sensor.
5. Heavy rain or water spray exists.
6. Wireless transmitters or mobile phones are within range of the sensor.
7. The sensor is covered with snow.
8. Trailer towing

The detecting range may decrease when:

1. The sensor is stained with foreign matter such as snow or water. (The sensing range will return to normal when removed.)
2. Outside air temperature is extremely hot or cold.

The following objects may not be recognized by the sensor:

1. Sharp or slim objects such as ropes, chains or small poles.
2. Objects which tend to absorb the sensor frequency such as clothes, spongy material or snow.
3. Undetectable objects smaller than 100 cm (40 in.) in height and narrower than 14 cm (6 in.) in diameter.

Reverse Parking Distance Warning precautions

- Reverse Parking Distance Warning may not sound consistently depending on the speed and shapes of the objects detected.
- Reverse Parking Distance Warning may malfunction if the vehicle bumper height or sensor installation has been modified or damaged. Any non-factory installed equipment or accessories may also interfere with the sensor performance.
- The sensor may not recognize objects less than 30 cm (12 in.) from the sensor, or it may sense an incorrect distance. Use caution.
- When the sensor is frozen or stained with snow, dirt, or water, the sensor may be inoperative until the stains are removed using a soft cloth.
- Do not push, scratch or strike the sensor. Sensor damage could occur.

✻ NOTICE

This function can only sense objects within the range and location of the sensors; It can not detect objects in other areas where sensors are not installed. Also, small or slim objects, such as poles or objects located between sensors may not be detected by the sensors.
Always visually check behind the vehicle when backing up.
Be sure to inform any drivers of the vehicle that may be unfamiliar with the function regarding the functions capabilities and limitations.

⚠ WARNING

Pay close attention when the vehicle is driven close to objects on the road, particularly pedestrians, and especially children. Be aware that some objects may not be detected by the sensors, due to the object's distance, size or material, all of which can limit the effectiveness of the sensor. Always perform a visual inspection to make sure the vehicle is clear of all obstructions before moving the vehicle in any direction.

Self-diagnosis

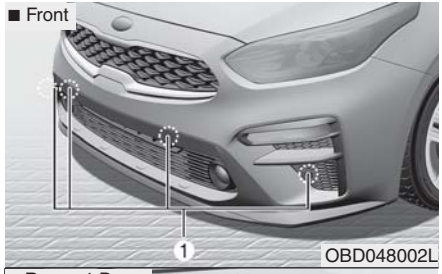
If you don't hear an audible warning sound or if the buzzer sounds intermittently when shifting the gear to the R (Reverse) position, this may indicate a malfunction in Reverse Parking Distance Warning. If this occurs, have the function checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

⚠ WARNING

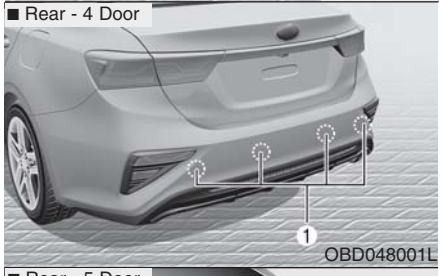
Your new vehicle warranty does not cover any accidents or damage to the vehicle or injuries to its occupants due to Reverse Parking Distance Warning malfunction. Always drive safely and cautiously.

FORWARD/REVERSE PARKING DISTANCE WARNING (PDW) (IF EQUIPPED)

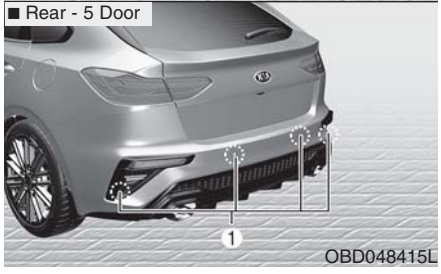
■ Front



■ Rear - 4 Door



■ Rear - 5 Door



Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning assists the driver during movement of the vehicle by chiming if any object is sensed within the distance of 100 cm (40 in.) in front and 120 cm (48 in.) behind the vehicle.

This function is a supplemental function and it is not intended to nor does it replace the need for extreme care and attention of the driver.

The sensing range and objects detectable by the sensors are limited. Whenever moving pay as much attention to what is in front and behind of you as you would in a vehicle without Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning.

⚠ WARNING

Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning should only be considered as a supplementary function. The driver must check the front and rear view. The operational function of Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning can be affected by many factors and conditions of the surroundings, so the responsibility rests always with the driver.

Operation of Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning

Operating condition

OBD048053R

- This function activates when Parking Safety button is pressed with the ignition switch ON.
- The indicator of Parking Safety button turns on automatically and activates Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning when you shift the gear to the R (Reverse) position. It will turn off automatically when you drive above 20 km/h (12 mph)
- The sensing distance whilst backing up is approximately 120 cm (48 in.) when you are driving less than 10 km/h (6 mph).
- The sensing distance whilst moving forward is approximately 100 cm (40 in.) when you are driving less than 10 km/h (6 mph).
- When more than two objects are sensed at the same time, the closest one will be recognized first.
- The front outer sensors are activated when you shift the gear to the R (Reverse) position.
- If the vehicle speed is above 10 km/h (6 mph), the function is not activate, and Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning will turn off when you drive above 20 km/h (12 mph). To activate the function again, press the Parking Safety button.

✻ NOTICE

It may not operate if it's distance from the object is already less than approximately 30 cm when the function is ON.

Type of warning indicator and sound

Distance from object		Warning indicator		Warning sound
		When driving forward	When driving backward	
100 cm ~ 60 cm	Front		-	Buzzer beeps intermittently
120 cm ~ 60 cm	Rear	-		Buzzer beeps intermittently
60 cm ~ 30 cm	Front			Buzzer beeps frequently
	Rear	-		Buzzer beeps frequently
30 cm	Front			Buzzer sounds continuously
	Rear	-		Buzzer sounds continuously

✻ NOTICE

- **The actual warning sound and indicator may differ from the illustration according to objects or sensor status.**
- **Do not wash the vehicle's sensor with high pressure water.**

⚠ CAUTION

- ***This function can only sense objects within the range and location of the sensors;***

  It can not detect objects in other areas where sensors are not installed. Also, small or slim objects, such as poles or objects located between sensors may not be detected by the sensors.

  Always visually check behind the vehicle when backing up.
- ***Be sure to inform any drivers of the vehicle that may be unfamiliar with the function regarding the functions capabilities and limitations.***

Non-operational conditions of Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning

Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning may not operate normally when:

1. Moisture is frozen to the sensor. (It will operate normally when moisture melts.)
2. Sensor is covered with foreign matter, such as snow or water, or the sensor cover is blocked. (It will operate normally when the material is removed or the sensor is no longer blocked.)
3. Sensor is stained with foreign matter such as snow or water. (Sensing range will return to normal when removed.)
4. The parking assist button is off.

There is a possibility of Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning malfunction when:

1. Driving on uneven road surfaces such as unpaved roads, gravel, bumps, or gradient.
2. Objects generating excessive noise such as vehicle horns, loud motorcycle engines, or truck air brakes can interfere with the sensor.
3. Heavy rain or water spray.
4. Wireless transmitters or mobile phones present near the sensor.
5. Sensor is covered with snow.

Detecting range may decrease when:

1. Outside air temperature is extremely hot or cold.
2. Undetectable objects smaller than 100 cm and narrower than 14 cm in diameter.

The following objects may not be recognized by the sensor:

1. Sharp or slim objects such as ropes, chains or small poles.
2. Objects, which tend to absorb sensor frequency such as clothes, spongy material or snow.

✻ NOTICE

1. The warning may not sound sequentially depending on the speed and shapes of the objects detected.
2. Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning may malfunction if the vehicle bumper height or sensor installation has been modified. Any non-factory installed equipment or accessories may also interfere with the sensor performance.
3. Sensor may not recognize objects less than 30 cm from the sensor, or it may sense an incorrect distance. Use with caution.
4. When the sensor is frozen or stained with snow or water, the sensor may be inoperative until the stains are removed using a soft cloth.
5. Do not push, scratch or strike the sensor with any hard objects that could damage the surface of the sensor. Sensor damage could occur.

✻ NOTICE

This function can only sense objects within the range and location of the sensors, it can not detect objects in other areas where sensors are not installed. Also, small or slim objects, or objects located between sensors may not be detected.
Always visually check in front and behind the vehicle when driving.
Be sure to inform any drivers in the vehicle that may be unfamiliar with the function regarding the functions capabilities and limitations.

⚠ WARNING

Pay close attention when the vehicle is driven close to objects on the road, particularly pedestrians, and especially children. Be aware that some objects may not be detected by the sensors, due to the objects distance, size or material, all of which can limit the effectiveness of the sensor. Always perform a visual inspection to make sure the vehicle is clear of all obstructions before moving the vehicle in any direction.

Self-diagnosis

When you shift the gear to the R (Reverse) position and if one or more of the below occurs you may have a malfunction in Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning.

- You don't hear an audible warning sound or if the buzzer sounds intermittently.
- is displayed. (if equipped)

(blinks)

If this occurs, have the function checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

⚠ WARNING

Your new vehicle warranty does not cover any accidents or damage to the vehicle or injuries to its occupants related to Parking Distance Warning. Always drive safely and cautiously.

LIGHTING

Battery saver function

- The purpose of this feature is to prevent the battery from being discharged. The system automatically turns off the parking lights when the driver removes the ignition key (smart key: turns off the engine) and opens the driver-side door.
- With this feature, the parking lights will be turned off automatically if the driver parks on the side of road at night.

  If necessary, to keep the lights on when the ignition key is removed, (smart key: turns off the engine) perform the following:

  1) Open the driver-side door.
  2) Turn the parking lights OFF and ON again using the light switch on the steering column.

Headlight escort function (if equipped)

The headlights (and/or taillights) will remain on for approximately 5 minutes after the ignition key is removed when the engine is turned off. However, if the driver's door is opened and closed, the headlights are turned off after 15 seconds.

The headlights can be turned off by pressing the lock button on the transmitter (or smart key) twice or turning off the light switch from the headlight or Auto light position.

⚠ CAUTION

If the driver gets out of the vehicle through other doors (except driver's door), the battery saver function does not operate and the headlight escort function does not turn off automatically. Therefore, It causes the battery to be discharged. In this case, make sure to turn off the lamp before getting out of the vehicle.

Headlight welcome function (if equipped)

When the headlight switch is in the ON or AUTO position and all doors (and trunk) are closed and locked, if you press the door unlock button on the transmitter (or smart key), the headlights will come on for about 15 seconds.

If the headlight switch is in the AUTO position, the function can only operate at night.

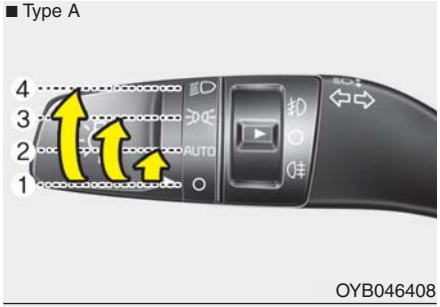
At this time, if you press the door unlock button again or door lock button on the transmitter (or smart key), the headlights will turn off immediately.

❋ Traffic Change (For Europe)

The low beam light distribution is asymmetric. If you go abroad to a country with opposite traffic direction, this asymmetric part will dazzle oncoming car driver. To prevent dazzle, ECE regulation demand several technical solutions (ex. automatic change system, adhesive sheet, down aiming). This headlamps are designed not to dazzle opposite drivers. So, you need not change your headlamps in a country with opposite traffic direction.

Lighting control

■ Type A



OYB046408

■ Type B

OYB046408R

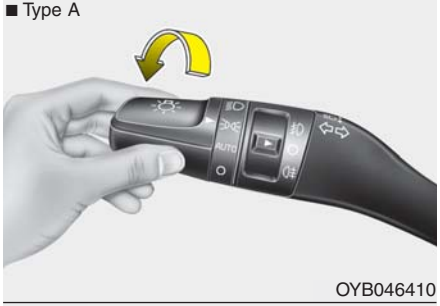
The light switch has a Headlight and a Parking light position.

To operate the lights, turn the knob at the end of the control lever to one of the following positions:

(1) Off position
(2) Auto light position (if equipped)
(3) Parking light position
(4) Headlight position

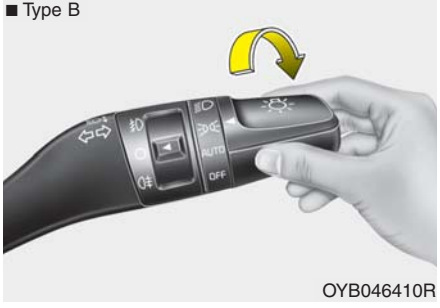
Parking light position ( )

■ Type A



OYB046410

■ Type B

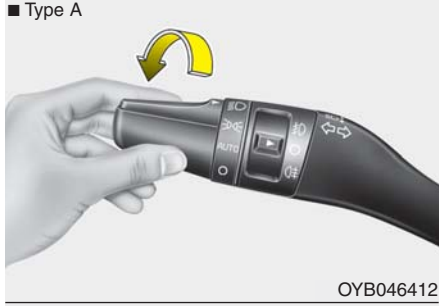


OYB046410R

When the light switch is in the parking light position (3rd position), the tail position, license and instrument panel lights will turn ON.

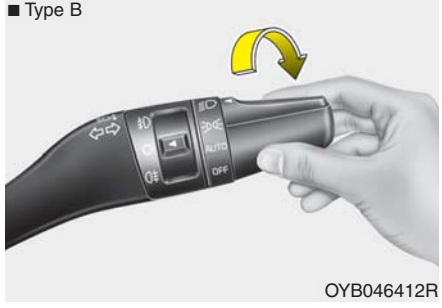
Headlight position ( )

■ Type A



OYB046412

■ Type B



OYB046412R

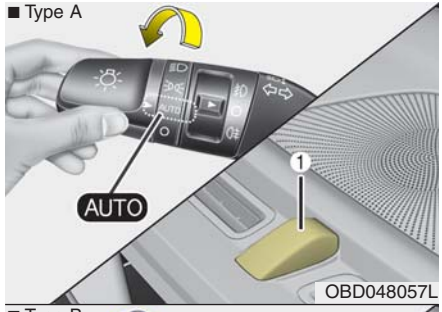
When the light switch is in the headlight position (4th position), the head, tail, position, license and instrument panel lights are ON.

✻ NOTICE

The ignition switch must be in the ON position to turn on the headlights.

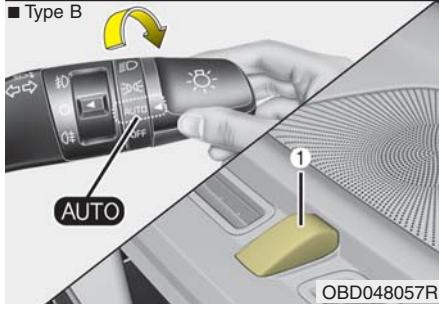
Auto light position (if equipped)

■ Type A



OBD048057L

■ Type B



OBD048057R

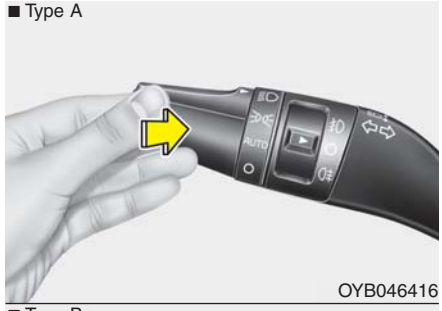
When the light switch is in the AUTO light position, the taillights and headlights will be turned ON or OFF automatically depending on the amount of light outside the vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Never place anything over sensor (1) located on the instrument panel, this will ensure better auto-light system control.***
- ***Don't clean the sensor using a window cleaner, the cleanser may leave a light film which could interfere with sensor operation.***
- ***If your vehicle has window tint or other types of metallic coating on the front windscreen, the Auto light system may not work properly.***

High beam operation

■ Type A



OYB046416

■ Type B

OUM044059R

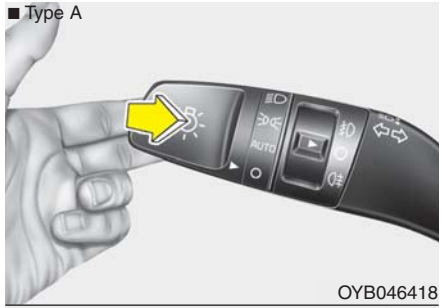
To turn on the high beam headlights, push the lever away from you. Pull it back for low beams.

The high beam indicator will light when the headlight high beams are switched on. To prevent the battery from being discharged, do not leave the lights on for a prolonged time whilst the engine is not running.

⚠ WARNING

Do not use high beam when there are other vehicles. Using high beam could obstruct the other driver's vision.

■ Type A



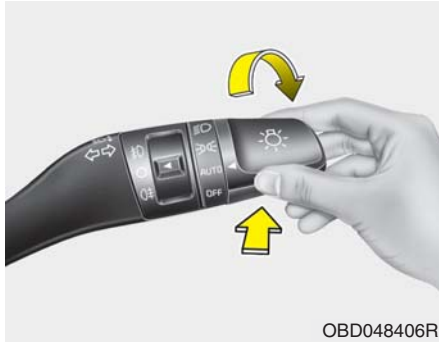
OYB046418

■ Type B

OUM044058R

To flash the headlights, pull the lever towards you. It will return to the normal (low beam) position when released. The headlight switch does not need to be on to use this flashing feature.

High Beam Assist (if equipped)



OBD048406R

The High Beam Assist is a system that automatically adjusts the headlamp range (switches between high beam and low beam) according to the brightness of other vehicles and road conditions.

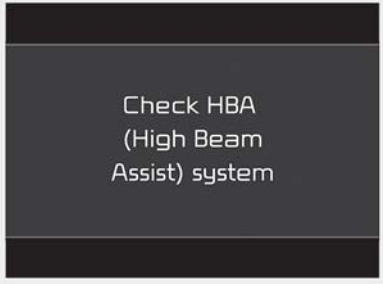
Operating condition

1. Place the light switch in the AUTO position.
2. Turn on the high beam by pushing the lever away from you.
3. The High Beam Assist (AUTO) indicator will illuminate.
4. The High Beam Assist will turn on when vehicle speed is above 40 km/h.
5. The details of operation with the light switch whilst the High Beam Assist is on are below.
   - If the light switch is pushed away, the High Beam Assist will turn off and the high beam will be on continuously.
   - If the light switch is pulled towards you when the high beam is off, the high beam will be on without cancellation of the High Beam Assist. (When you hands off, the lever will move to the middle and the high beam will turn off.)
   - If the light switch is pulled towards you when the high beam is on by the High Beam Assist, the low beam will be on and the High Beam Assist will turn off.
   - If the light switch is turned to the headlamp position ( ) from AUTO position, the High Beam Assist will turn off and the low beam will be on continuously.

When the High Beam Assist is operating, the high beam switches to low beam in the below conditions.

- When the headlamp is detected from the on-coming vehicle.
- When the tail lamp is detected from the front vehicle.
- When headlamp/tail lamp of bicycle/motorcycle is detected.
- When the surrounding is so bright that high beams are not needed.
- When streetlights or other lights are detected.
- When the light switch is not in the AUTO position.
- When the High Beam Assist is off.
- When vehicle speed is below 30 km/h.

Warning light and message



OBD048168R

When the High Beam Assist is not working properly, the warning message will come on for a few second. After the message disappears, the master warning light (⚠) will illuminate.

In this case, have the vehicle checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authoriser Kia dealer / service partner.

⚠ CAUTION

The driver must be cautious in the below situations may not work properly when recognition of light from on-coming or front vehicle is poor or limited:

- ***when the light from on-coming or front vehicle is poor***
- ***When the light from the on-coming or front vehicle is not detected because of lamp damage, hidden from sight, etc.***
- ***When the lamp of the on-coming or front vehicle is covered with dust, snow or water.***
- ***When the front vehicle's headlamps are off but the fog lamps on and etc.***
- ***When external condition is intervened***
- ***When there is a similar shape lamp with the front vehicle's lamps.***

(Continued)

(Continued)

- ***When the headlamp is not repaired or replaced at an authorised dealer.***
- ***When headlamp aiming is not properly adjusted.***
- ***When driving on a narrow curved road, rough road, downhill or uphill.***
- ***When only part of the vehicle in front is visible on a cross-road or curved road.***
- ***When there is a traffic light, reflecting sign, flashing sign or mirror ahead.***
- ***When there is a temporary reflector or flash ahead (construction area).***
- ***When the road conditions are bad such as being wet, iced or covered with snow.***
- ***When a vehicle suddenly appears from a curve.***
- ***When the vehicle is tilted from a flat tyre or being towed.***

(Continued)

(Continued)

- *When the LKA (Lane Keeping Assist) system failure indicator (yellow) illuminates (if equipped) and etc.*

▶ *When front visibility is poor*

- *When the lamp of the on-coming or front vehicle is covered with dust, snow or water.*
- *When the light from the on-coming or front vehicle is not detected because of exhaust fume, smoke, fog, snow, etc.*
- *When the front window is covered with foreign matters.*
- *When it is hard to see because of fog, heavy rain or snow and etc.*
- *Do not disassemble a front view camera temporarily for tinted window or attaching any types of coatings and accessories. If you disassemble the camera and assemble it again, have the vehicle checked by a professional workshop to need a calibration.*

(Continued)

(Continued)

Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer / service partner.

- *When you replace or reinstall the windscreen glass, front view camera, have the vehicle checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authoriser Kia dealer / service partner.*
- *Be careful that water doesn't get into the High Beam Assist unit and do not remove or damage related parts of the High Beam Assist system.*
- *Do not place objects on the crash pad that reflect light such as mirrors, white paper, etc. The system may malfunction if sunlight is reflected.*
- *At times, the High Beam Assist may not work properly. The system is for your convenience only.*

(Continued)

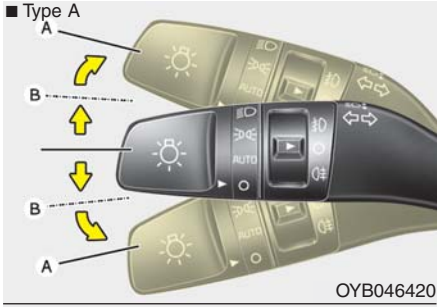
(Continued)

It is the responsibility of the driver for safe driving practices and always check the road conditions for your safety.

- *When the system does not operate normally, change the lamp position manually between the high beam and low beam.*

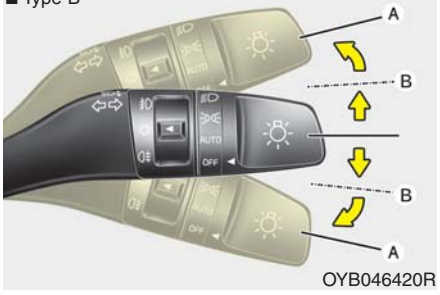
Turn signals and lane change signals

■ Type A



OYB046420

■ Type B



OYB046420R

The ignition switch must be on for the turn signals to function. To turn on the turn signals, move the lever up or down (A).

The green arrow indicators on the instrument panel indicate which turn signal is operating. They will self-cancel after a turn is completed.

If the indicator continues to flash after a turn, manually return the lever to the off position.

To signal a lane change, move the turn signal lever slightly and hold it in position (B). The lever will return to the off position when released.

If an indicator stays on and does not flash or if it flashes abnormally, one of the turn signal bulbs may be burned out and will require replacement.

One-touch lane change function

To activate an one-touch lane change function, move the turn signal lever slightly and then release it. The lane change signals will blink 3 times.

✻ NOTICE

If an indicator flash is abnormally quick or slow, a bulb may be burned out or have a poor electrical connection in the circuit.

Front fog light (if equipped)

■ Type A

OYB046422

■ Type B

OYB046422R

Fog lights are used to provide improved visibility when visibility is poor due to fog, rain or snow, etc. The fog lights will turn on when the fog light switch (1) is turned on after the parklight is turned on.

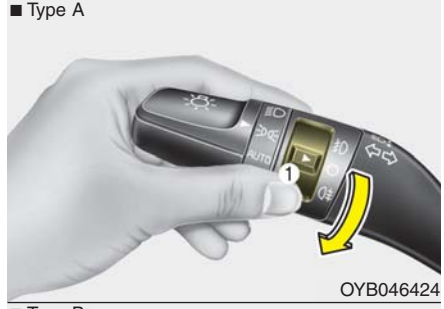
To turn off the fog lights, turn the fog light switch (1) to the ON position.

⚠ CAUTION

When in operation, the fog lights consume large amounts of vehicle electrical power. Only use the fog lights when visibility is poor.

Rear fog light (if equipped)

■ Type A



OYB046424

■ Type B

OYB046424R

To turn the rear fog lights on, turn the rear fog light switch (1) to the on position when the headlight is turned on.

Also, the rear fog lights turn on when the rear fog light switch is turned on after the front fog light switch (if equipped) is turned on and the headlight switch is in the parklight position.

To turn the rear fog lights off, turn the rear fog light switch to the on position again.

✻ NOTICE

To turn on the rear fog light switch, the ignition switch must be in the ON position.

Daytime running light (if equipped)

The Daytime Running Lights (DRL) can make it easier for others to see the front of your vehicle during the day. DRL can be helpful in many different driving conditions, and it is especially helpful after dawn and before sunset.

The DRL system turns OFF when:

1. The headlight switch is ON.
2. The engine is OFF.
3. The front fog light is on.
4. Engaging the parking brake.

Headlight levelling device (if equipped)

To adjust the headlight beam level according to the number of the passengers and loading weight in the luggage area, turn the beam levelling switch.

The higher the number of the switch position, the lower the headlight beam level. Always keep the headlight beam at the proper levelling position, or headlights may dazzle other road users.

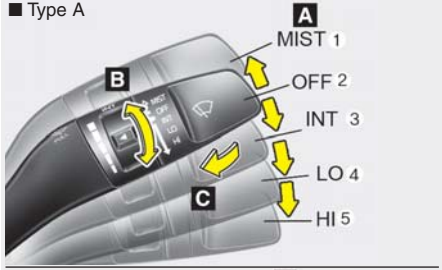
Listed below are the examples of proper switch settings. For loading conditions other than those listed below, adjust the switch position so that the beam level may be the nearest as the condition obtained according to the list.

Loading condition	Switch position
Driver only	0
Driver + Front passenger	0
Full passengers (including driver)	1
Full passengers (including driver) + Maximum permissible loading	2
Driver + Maximum permissible loading	3

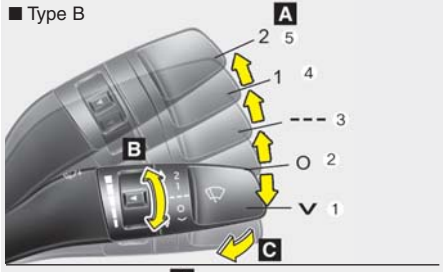
WIPERS AND WASHERS

• Front

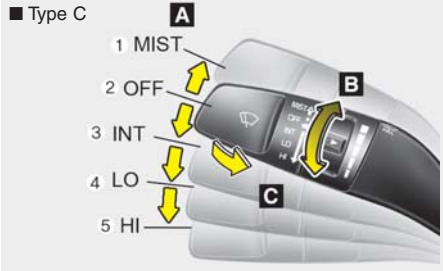
■ Type A



■ Type B

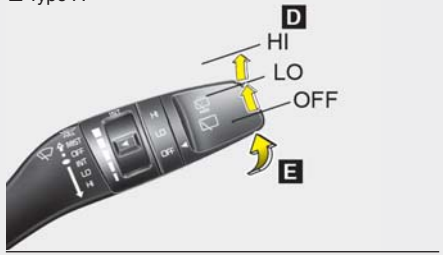


■ Type C

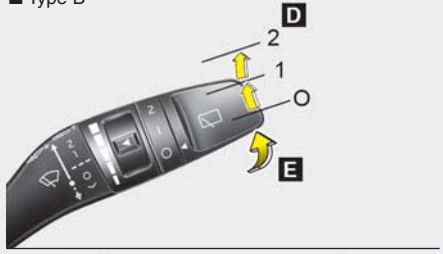


• Rear (5 door, if equipped)

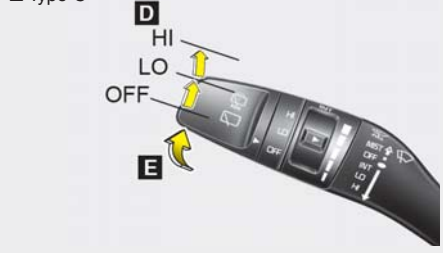
■ Type A



■ Type B



■ Type C



OBD048096L/OBD048095L/OBD048096R/OYP048182N/OCD048018/OYP048455R

A : Wiper speed control (front)

(1) MIST/ ∨ Single wipe
(2) OFF / O – Off
(3) INT / --- – Intermittent wipe
(4) LO / 1 – Low wiper speed
(5) HI / 2 – High wiper speed

B : Intermittent control wipe time adjustment

C : Wash with brief wipes (front)*

D : Rear wiper/washer control

- HI / 2 – Continuous wipe
- LO / 1 – Intermittent wipe
- OFF / O – Off

E : Wash with brief wipes (rear)

* : if equipped

Windscreen wipers (front)

Operates as follows when the ignition switch is turned ON.

(1) MIST/∨ : For a single wiping cycle, move the lever to this (MIST/∨) position and release it. The wipers will operate continuously if the lever is held in this position.

(2) OFF / O : Wiper is not in operation

(3) INT / --- : Wiper operates intermittently at the same wiping intervals. Use this mode in light rain or mist. To vary the speed setting, turn the speed control knob.

(4) LO / 1 : Normal wiper speed

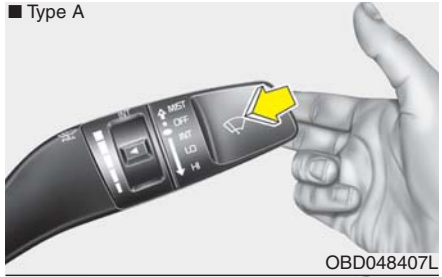
(5) HI / 2 : Fast wiper speed

✻ NOTICE

If there is heavy accumulation of snow or ice on the windscreen, defrost the windscreen for about 10 minutes, or until the snow and/or ice is removed before using the windscreen wipers to ensure proper operation. If you do not remove the snow and/or ice before using the wiper and washer, it may damage the wiper and washer system.

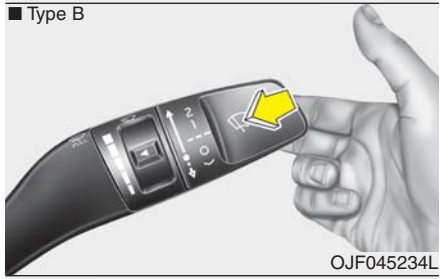
Windscreen washers (front)

■ Type A



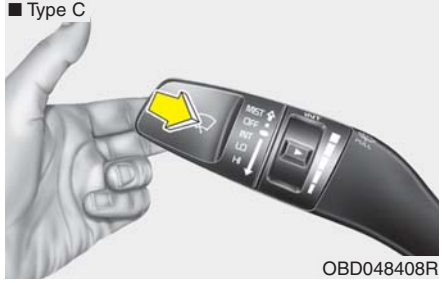
OBD048407L

■ Type B



OJF045234L

■ Type C



OBD048408R

In the O (Off) position, pull the lever gently toward you to spray washer fluid on the windscreen and to run the wipers 1-3 cycles.

Use this function when the windscreen is dirty.

The spray and wiper operation will continue until you release the lever.

If the washer does not work, check the washer fluid level. If the fluid level is not sufficient, you will need to add appropriate non-abrasive windscreen washer fluid to the washer reservoir.

The reservoir filler neck is located in the front of the engine compartment on the driver side.

⚠ CAUTION

To prevent possible damage to the washer pump, do not operate the washer when the fluid reservoir is empty.

⚠ WARNING

Do not use the washer in freezing temperatures without first warming the windscreen with the defrosters; the washer solution could freeze on the windscreen and obscure your vision.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***To prevent possible damage to the wipers or windscreen, do not operate the wipers when the windscreen is dry.***
- ***To prevent damage to the wiper blades, do not use petrol, kerosene, paint thinner, or other solvents on or near them.***
- ***To prevent damage to the wiper arms and other components, do not attempt to move the wipers manually.***
- ***To prevent possible damage to the wipers and washer system, use anti-freezing washer fluids in the winter season or cold weather.***

Rear window wiper and washer switch

■ Type A

OBD048418L

■ Type B

OCD048021

■ Type C

OYP048457R

The rear window wiper and washer switch is located at the end of the wiper and washer switch lever. Turn the switch to the desired position to operate the rear wiper and washer.

HI / 2 - Normal wiper operation
LO / 1 - Intermittent wiper operation
OFF / O - Wiper is not in operation

■ Type A

OBD048419L

■ Type B

OCD048022

■ Type C

OYP048458R

Push the lever away from you to spray rear washer fluid and to run the rear wipers 1~3 cycles. The spray and wiper operation will continue until you release the lever.

INTERIOR LIGHT

⚠ CAUTION

Do not use the interior lights for extended periods when engine is not running.

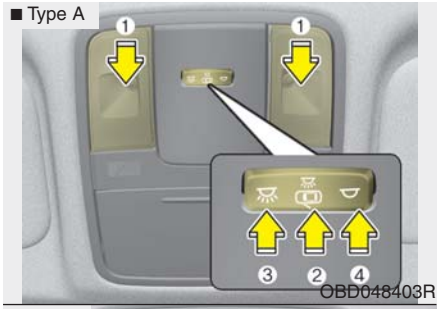
It may cause battery discharge.

⚠ WARNING

Do not use the interior lights when driving in the dark. Accidents could happen because the view may be obscured by interior lights.

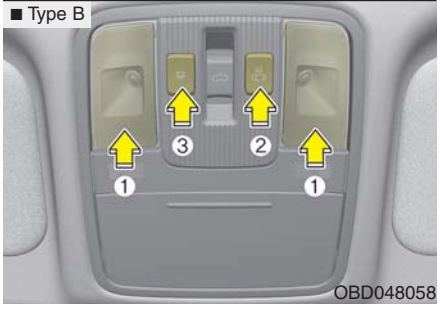
Map lamp

■ Type A



OBD048403R

■ Type B



OBD048058

• (1) : Press the lamps to turn the front map lamps on and off.

• (2) :

- The map lamp and room lamp comes on when a door is opened. The lamps go out after approximately 30 seconds.
- The map lamp and room lamp comes on for approximately 30 seconds when doors are unlocked with a transmitter or smart key as long as the doors are not opened.
- The map lamp and room lamp will stay on for approximately 20 minutes if a door is opened with the ignition switch in the ACC or LOCK/OFF position.
- The map lamp and room lamp will stay on continuously if the door is opened with the ignition switch in the ON position.
- The map lamp and room lamp will go out immediately if the ignition switch is changed to the ON position or all doors are locked.
- To turn off the DOOR mode, press the DOOR button (2) once again (not pressed).

✻ NOTICE

The DOOR mode and ROOM mode can not be selected at a time.

Front Map Lamp:

- (3): Press this switch to turn the front map lamps on.
- (4): Press this switch to turn the front map lamps off.

Room lamp

- : The light stays on at all times.

Trunk/luggage room lamp

The trunk/luggage room lamp comes on when the trunk (tailgate) is opened.

⚠ CAUTION

The trunk/luggage room lamp comes on as long as the trunk (tailgate) opens. To prevent unnecessary charging system drain, close the trunk (tailgate) securely after using the trunk/luggage room.

Vanity mirror lamp (if equipped)

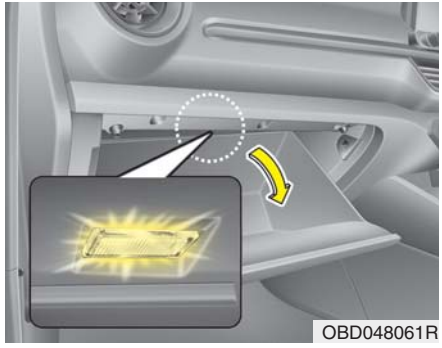
Push the switch to turn the light on or off.

- : The lamp will turn on if this button is pressed.
- ◯ : The lamp will turn off if this button is pressed.

⚠ CAUTION - Vanity mirror lamp

Always have the switch in the off position when the vanity mirror lamp is not in use. If the sun visor is closed without the lamp off, it may discharge the battery or damage the sun visor.

Glove box lamp (if equipped)



The glove box lamp comes on when the glove box is opened.

⚠ CAUTION

To prevent unnecessary charging system drain, close the glove box securely after using the glove box.

DEFROSTER

⚠ CAUTION

To prevent damage to the conductors bonded to the inside surface of the rear window, never use sharp instruments or window cleaners containing abrasives to clean the window.

✻ NOTICE

If you want to defrost and defog the front windscreen, refer to "Windscreen defrosting and defogging" in this section.

Rear window defroster

OBD048335

The defroster heats the window to remove frost, fog and thin ice from the rear window, whilst the engine is running.

To activate the rear window defroster, press the rear window defroster button.

The indicator on the rear window defroster button illuminates when the defroster is ON.

If there is heavy accumulation of snow on the rear window, brush it off before operating the rear defroster.

The rear window defroster automatically turns off after approximately 20 minutes or when the ignition switch is turned off. To turn off the defroster, press the rear window defroster button again.

Outside rearview mirror defroster (if equipped)

If your vehicle is equipped with the outside rearview mirror defrosters, they will operate at the same time you turn on the rear window defroster.

✻ NOTICE

The rear window defroster may turn off in the below conditions.

- **Engine temperature is less than 25° C and the vehicle speed is from 1 ~ 10 km/h with the gear position in "D" or "R"**
  If the vehicle stops or the vehicle speed is over 10 km/h, the rear window defroster turns on again.

MANUAL CLIMATE CONTROL SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

■ **Type A**

1. Fan speed control knob
2. Temperature control knob
3. Air conditioning button (if equipped)
4. Rear window defroster button
5. Air intake control button
6. Mode selection knob

■ **Type B**

⚠ CAUTION

Operating the blower when the ignition switch is in the ON position could cause the battery to discharge. Operate the blower when the engine is running.

OBD048300/OBD048301L

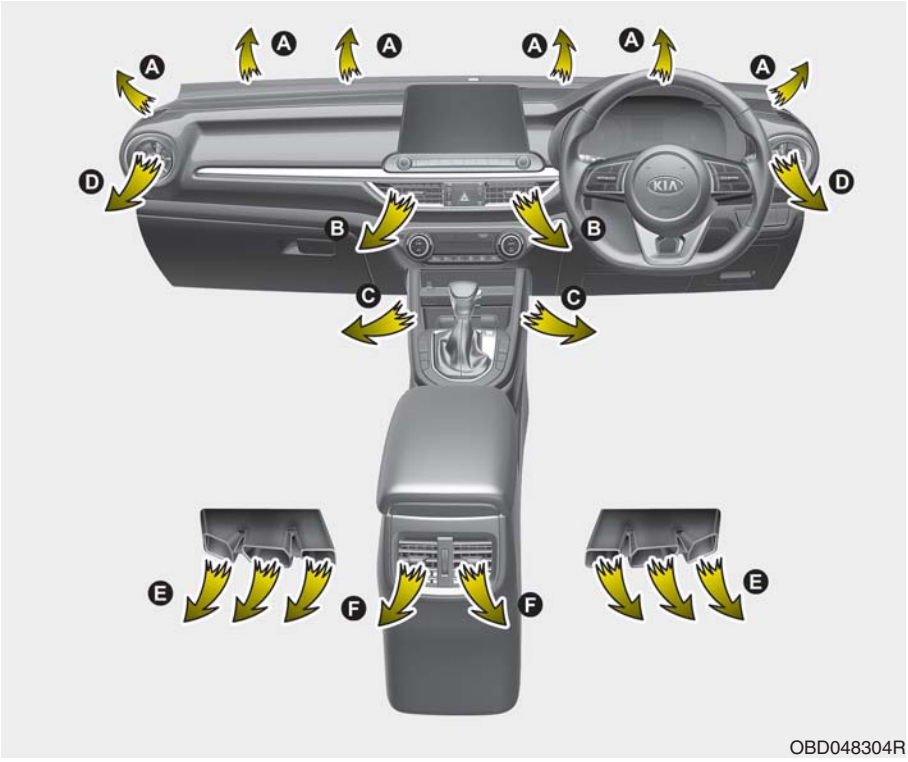
Heating and air conditioning

1. Start the engine.
2. Set the mode to the desired position.

   For improving the effectiveness of heating and cooling;

   - Heating:

   - Cooling:
3. Set the temperature control to the desired position.
4. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position.
5. Set the fan speed control to the desired speed.
6. If air conditioning is desired, turn the air conditioning (if equipped) system on.



OBD048304R

Mode selection

OBD048303

The mode selection knob controls the direction of the air flow through the ventilation system.

Air can be directed to the floor, dash-board outlets, or windscreen. Five symbols are used to represent Face, Bi-Level, Floor, Floor-Defrost and Defrost air position.

Face-Level (B, D, F)

Air flow is directed toward the upper body and face. Additionally, each outlet can be controlled to direct the air discharged from the outlet.

Bi-Level (B, D, C, E, F)

Air flow is directed towards the face and the floor.

Floor-Level (C, E, A, D, F)

Most of the air flow is directed to the floor, with a small amount of the air being directed to the windscreen and side window defrosters.

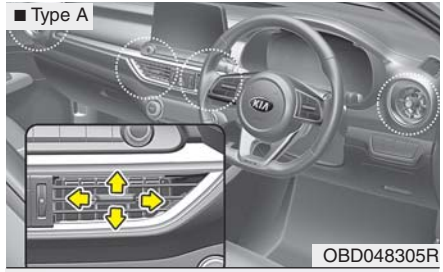
Floor/Defrost-Level (A, C, D, E, F)

Most of the air flow is directed to the floor and the windscreen with a small amount directed to the side window defrosters.

Defrost-Level (A, D)

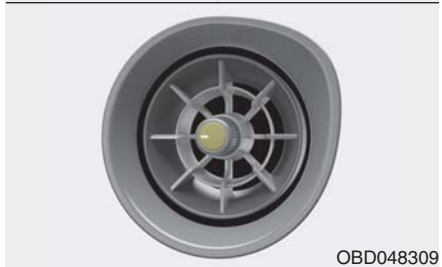
Most of the air flow is directed to the windscreen with a small amount of air directed to the side window defrosters.

■ Type A


OBD048305R

■ Type B

OBD048308


OBD048309

Instrument panel vents

- Type A

The outlet vents can be opened or closed separately using the thumb-wheel. To close the vent, rotate it downward to the maximum position.

Also, you can adjust the direction of air delivery from these vents using the vent control lever as shown.

- Type B

The outlet vents can be opened or closed separately turning the knob right or left. Also, you can adjust the direction of air delivery from these vents moving the knob freely to any directions.

Temperature control

OBD048306

The temperature control knob allows you to control the temperature of the air flowing from the ventilation system. To change the air temperature in the passenger compartment, turn the knob to the right position for warm and hot air or left position for cooler air.

Air intake control

OBD048307

The air intake control is used to select the outside (fresh) air position or recirculated air position.

To change the air intake control position, press the control button.

Recirculated air position

With the recirculated air position selected, air from the passenger compartment will be drawn through the heating system and heated or cooled according to the function selected.

Outside (fresh) air position

With the outside (fresh) air position selected, air enters the vehicle from outside and is heated or cooled according to the function selected.

✻ NOTICE

Prolonged operation of the heater in the recirculated air position (without air conditioning selected) may cause fogging of the windscreen and side windows and the air within the passenger compartment may become stale.
In addition, prolonged use of the air conditioning with the recirculated air position selected will result in excessively dry air in the passenger compartment.

⚠ WARNING

- **Continue using the climate control system in the recirculated air position may allow humidity to increase inside the vehicle which may fog the glass and obscure visibility.**
- **Do not sleep in a vehicle with the air conditioning or heating system on. It may cause serious harm or death due to a drop in the oxygen level and/or body temperature.**
- **Continue using the climate control system in the recirculated air position can cause drowsiness or sleepiness, and loss of vehicle control. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position as much as possible whilst driving.**

Fan speed control

OBD048310

The ignition switch must be in the ON position for fan operation.

The fan speed control knob allows you to control the fan speed of the air flowing from the ventilation system. To change the fan speed, turn the knob to the right for higher speed or left for lower speed.

Setting the fan speed control knob to the “0” position turns off the fan.

To turn off the blowers

OBD048310L

To turn off the blowers, turn the fan speed control knob to the “0” position.

Air conditioning (A/C)

OBD048311

Press the A/C button to turn the air conditioning system on (indicator light will illuminate). Press the button again to turn the air conditioning system off.

Automatic ventilation

The system automatically selects the outside (fresh) air position when the climate control system operates over a certain period of time (approximately 5 minutes) in low temperature with the re-circulated air position selected.

To cancel or reset the Automatic Ventilation

When the air conditioning system is on, select Face Level mode and press the re-circulated air position button more than five times within 3 seconds whilst pressing A/C button.

When the automatic ventilation is cancelled, the indicator blinks 3 times. When the automatic ventilation is activated, the indicator blinks 6 times.

Sunroof inside air recirculation

The outside (fresh) air position is automatically selected, when the sunroof is opened.

When you select the recirculated air position, the system maintains the recirculated air position for 3 minutes and then automatically converts to the outside (fresh) air position.

When the sunroof is closed, the air intake position will return to the original position that was selected.

System operation

Ventilation

1. Set the mode to the position.
2. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position.
3. Set the temperature control to the desired position.
4. Set the fan speed control to the desired speed.

Heating

1. Set the mode to the position.
2. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position.
3. Set the temperature control to the desired position.
4. Set the fan speed control to the desired speed.
5. If dehumidified heating is desired, turn the air conditioning system (if equipped) on.

- If the windscreen fogs up, set the mode to the or position.

Operation Tips

- To keep dust or unpleasant fumes from entering the vehicle through the ventilation system, temporarily set the air intake control to the recirculated air position. Be sure to return the control to the fresh air position when the irritation has passed to keep fresh air in the vehicle. This will help keep the driver alert and comfortable.
- Air for the heating/cooling system is drawn in through the grilles just ahead of the windscreen. Care should be taken that these are not blocked by leaves, snow, ice or other obstructions.
- To prevent interior fog on the windscreen, set the air intake control to the fresh air position and fan speed to the desired position, turn on the air conditioning system, and adjust the temperature control to desired temperature.

Air conditioning

Kia Air Conditioning Systems are filled with environmentally friendly refrigerant*.

1. Start the engine. Push the air conditioning button.
2. Set the mode to the position.
3. Set the air intake control to the outside air or recirculated air position.
4. Adjust the fan speed control and temperature control to maintain maximum comfort.

*: Your vehicle is filled with R-134a or R-1234yf according to the regulation in your country at the time of producing. You can find out which air conditioning refrigerant is applied your vehicle at the label inside of engine room. Refer to section 9 for more detail location of air conditioning refrigerant label.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***The refrigerant system should only be serviced by trained and certified technicians to insure proper and safe operation.***
- ***The refrigerant system should be serviced in a well-ventilated place.***
- ***The air conditioning evaporator (cooling coil) shall never be repaired or replaced with one removed from a used or salvaged vehicle and new replacement MAC evaporators shall be certified (and labeled) as meeting SAE Standard J2842.***

✻ NOTICE

- **When using the air conditioning system, monitor the temperature gauge closely whilst driving up hills or in heavy traffic when outside temperatures are high. Air conditioning system operation may cause engine overheating.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

Continue to use the blower fan but turn the air conditioning system off if the temperature gauge indicates engine overheating.

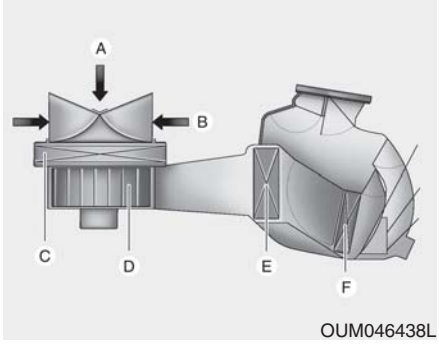
- **When opening the windows in humid weather air conditioning may create water droplets inside the vehicle. Since excessive water droplets may cause damage to electrical equipment, air conditioning should only be used with the windows closed.**

Air conditioning system operation tips

- If the vehicle has been parked in direct sunlight during hot weather, open the windows for a short time to let the hot air inside the vehicle escape.
- To help reduce moisture inside of the windows on rainy or humid days, decrease the humidity inside the vehicle by operating the air conditioning system.

- During air conditioning system operation, you may occasionally notice a slight change in engine speed as the air conditioning compressor cycles. This is a normal system operation characteristic.
- Use the air conditioning system every month only for a few minutes to ensure maximum system performance.
- When using the air conditioning system, you may notice clear water dripping (or even puddling) on the ground under the passenger side of the vehicle. This is a normal system operation characteristic.
- Operating the air conditioning system in the recirculated air position provides maximum cooling, however, continual operation in this mode may cause the air inside the vehicle to become stale.
- During cooling operation, you may occasionally notice a misty air flow because of rapid cooling and humid air intake. This is a normal system operation characteristic.

Climate control air filter (if equipped)



OUM046438L

A : Outside air
B : Recirculated air
C : Climate control air filter
D : Blower
E : Evaporator core
F : Heater core

The climate control air filter installed behind the glove box filters the dust or other pollutants that come into the vehicle from the outside through the heating and air conditioning system.

If dust or other pollutants accumulate in the filter over a period of time, the air flow from the air vents may decrease, resulting in moisture accumulation on the inside of the windscreen even when the outside (fresh) air position is selected. If this happens, have the climate control air filter replaced by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

✻ NOTICE

- **Replace the filter according to the Maintenance Schedule.**
  If the vehicle is being driven in severe conditions such as dusty or rough roads, more frequent air conditioner filter inspections and changes are required.
- **When the air flow rate suddenly decreases, have the system checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.**

Air Conditioning refrigerant label

■ Example

Type A

OCK069048L

Type B

OUMA069035

✻ The actual Air Conditioning refrigerant label in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

Each symbols and specification on air conditioning refrigerant label means as below ;

1. Classification of refrigerant
2. Amount of refrigerant
3. Classification of Compressor lubricant
4. Caution
5. Flammable Refrigerant
6. To requires Registered Technician to service Air Conditioning system
7. Service manual

You can find out which air conditioning refrigerant is applied your vehicle at the label inside of the engine room.

Refer to section 9 for more detail location of air conditioning refrigerant label.

Checking the amount of air conditioner refrigerant and compressor lubricant

When the amount of refrigerant is low, the performance of the air conditioning is reduced. Overfilling also has a bad influence on the air conditioning system.

Therefore, if abnormal operation is found, have the system inspected by a professional workshop.

Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

⚠ WARNING - Vehicles equipped with R-134a*

Because the refrigerant is at very high pressure, the air conditioning system should only be serviced by trained and certified technicians. It is important that the correct type and amount of oil and refrigerant is used.

Otherwise, it may cause damage to the vehicle and personal injury.

⚠ WARNING - Vehicles equipped with R-1234yf*

Since the refrigerant is mildly flammable and operated at high pressure, the air conditioning system should only be serviced by trained and certified technicians. It is important that the correct type and amount of oil and refrigerant is used.

All refrigerants should be reclaimed with proper equipment. Venting refrigerants directly to the atmosphere is harmful to individuals and environment.

Failure to heed these warnings can lead to serious injuries.

*: Your vehicle is filled with R-134a or R-1234yf according to the regulation in your country at the time of producing. You can find out which air conditioning refrigerant is applied your vehicle at the label inside of engine room. Refer to section 9 for more detail location of air conditioning refrigerant label.

The refrigerant label is located on the underside of the bonnet.

AUTOMATIC CLIMATE CONTROL SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

1. Passenger`s temperature control knob
2. SYNC button
3. Blower OFF button
4. A/C display
5. Front windscreen defroster button
6. Rear window defroster button
7. Fan speed control button
8. Mode selection button
9. Air intake control button
10. Driver`s temperature control knob
11. AUTO (automatic control) button
12. Air conditioning button

⚠ CAUTION

Operating the blower when the ignition switch is in the ON position could cause the battery to discharge. Operate the blower when the engine is running.

OBD048312R

Automatic heating and air conditioning

OBD048313

1. Push the AUTO button. The modes, fan speeds, air intake and air-conditioning will be controlled automatically according to the temperature setting.

OBD048333

2. Set the temperature control knob to set the desired temperature.

✻ NOTICE

- **To turn the automatic operation off, select any button or switch of the following:**
  - **Mode selection button**
  - **Air conditioning button**
  - **Front windscreen defroster button (Press the button one more time to deselect the front windscreen defroster function. The AUTO sign will illuminate on the information display once again.)**
  - **Fan speed control knob**

  The selected function will be controlled manually whilst other functions operate automatically.
- **For your convenience and to improve the effectiveness of the climate control, use the AUTO button and set the temperature to 22°C (72°F).**

✻ NOTICE

Never place anything over the sensor located on the instrument panel to ensure better control of the heating and cooling system.

Manual heating and air conditioning

The heating and cooling system can be controlled manually by pushing buttons other than the AUTO button. In this case, the system works sequentially according to the order of buttons selected.

When pressing any button (or turning any knob) except the AUTO button whilst using automatic operation, the functions not selected will be controlled automatically.

1. Start the engine.
2. Set the mode to the desired position.

   To improve the effectiveness of heating and cooling:

   - Heating:
   - Cooling:
3. Set the temperature control to the desired position.
4. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position.
5. Set the fan speed control to the desired speed.
6. If air conditioning is desired, turn the air conditioning system on.

Press the AUTO button in order to convert to full automatic control of the system.

Mode selection

OBD048314

The mode selection button controls the direction of the air flow through the ventilation system.

The air flow outlet port is converted as follows:

Refer to the illustration in the “Manual climate control system”.

Floor & Defrost (A, C, D, E, F)

Most of the air flow is directed to the floor and the windscreen with a small amount directed to the side window defrosters.

Face-Level (B, D, F)

Air flow is directed toward the upper body and face. Additionally, each outlet can be controlled to direct the air discharged from the outlet.

Bi-Level (B, D, C, E, F)

Air flow is directed towards the face and the floor.

Floor-Level (C, A, D, E, F)

Most of the air flow is directed to the floor, with a small amount of the air being directed to the windscreen and side window defrosters.

OBD048315

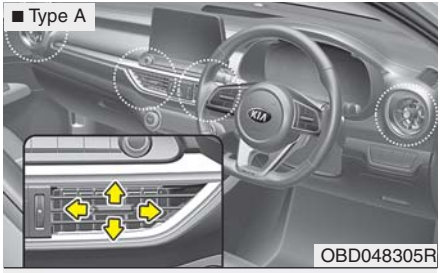
Defrost mode

When you select the defrost mode, the following system settings will be made automatically:

- The air conditioning system will be turned on.
- The outside(fresh) air position will be selected.
- The fan speed will be set to the high speed.

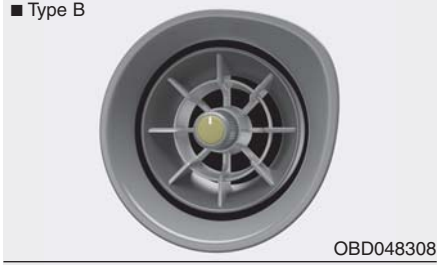
To turn the defrost mode off, press the mode button or defrost button again or AUTO button.

■ Type A

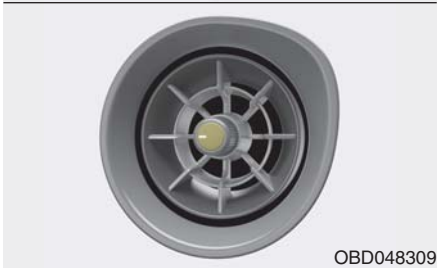


OBD048305R

■ Type B



OBD048308



OBD048309

Instrument panel vents

- Type A

The outlet port can be opened or closed separately using the horizontal thumbwheel. To close the vent, rotate it downward to the maximum position. To open the vent, rotate it upward to the desired position.

Also, you can adjust the direction of air delivered from these vents using the vent control lever as shown.

- Type B

The outlet vents can be opened or closed separately turning the knob right or left. Also, you can adjust the direction of air delivery from these vents moving the knob freely to any directions.

Temperature control

OBD048333

The temperature will increase to the maximum (HI) by turning the knob to the right extremely.

The temperature will decrease to the minimum (Lo) by turning the knob to the left extremely.

When turning the knob, the temperature will increase or decrease by 0.5°C/1°F. When set to the lowest temperature setting, the air conditioning will operate continuously.

OBD048317

Adjusting the driver and passenger side temperature equally

- Press the “SYNC” button to adjust the driver and passenger side temperature equally.

  The passenger side temperature will be set to the same temperature as the driver side temperature.
- Turn the driver side temperature control knob. The driver and passenger side temperature will be adjusted equally.
- When the third row’s seat heater button is turned ON, the third row’s climate and fan speed setting will automatically follow the first row settings.

Adjusting the driver and passenger side temperature individually

- Press the “SYNC” button again to adjust the driver and passenger side temperature individually. The illumination of button turns off.
- Operate the driver side temperature control knob to adjust the driver side temperature.
- Operate the passenger side temperature control knob to adjust the passenger side temperature.

Temperature conversion

You can switch the temperature mode between Centigrade to Fahrenheit as follows:

Whilst pressing the OFF button, press the AUTO button for 4 seconds or more.

The display will change from Centigrade to Fahrenheit, or from Fahrenheit to Centigrade.

If the battery has been discharged or disconnected, the temperature mode display will reset to Centigrade.

Air intake control

OBD048318

This is used to select the outside (fresh) air position or recirculated air position.

To change the air intake control position, press the control button.

Recirculated air position

With the recirculated air position selected, air from the passenger compartment will be drawn through the heating system and heated or cooled according to the function selected.

Outside (fresh) air position

With the outside (fresh) air position selected, air enters the vehicle from outside and is heated or cooled according to the function selected.

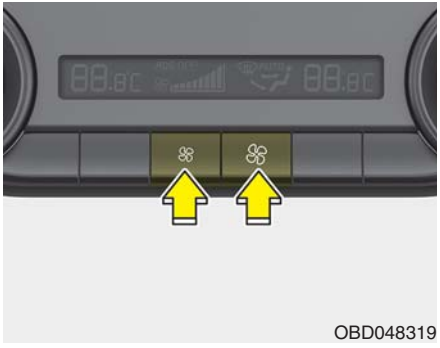
✻ NOTICE

Prolonged operation of the heater in the recirculated air position (without air conditioning selected) may cause fogging of the windscreen and side windows and the air within the passenger compartment may become stale. In addition, prolonged use of the air conditioning with the recirculated air position selected will result in excessively dry air in the passenger compartment.

⚠ WARNING

- **Continued climate control system operation in the recirculated air position may allow humidity to increase inside the vehicle which may fog the glass and obscure visibility.**
- **Do not sleep in a vehicle with the air conditioning or heating system on. It may cause serious harm or death due to a drop in the oxygen level and/or body temperature.**
- **Continued climate control system operation in the recirculated air position can cause drowsiness or sleepiness, and loss of vehicle control. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position as much as possible whilst driving.**

Fan speed control



OBD048319

The fan speed can be set to the desired speed by operating the fan speed control knob.

The higher the fan speed is, the more air is delivered.

Pressing the OFF button turns off the fan.

Air conditioning (A/C)

OBD048320

Press the A/C button to turn the air conditioning system on (indicator light will illuminate).

Press the button again to turn the air conditioning system off.

OFF mode

OBD048322

Press the OFF button to turn off the air climate control system. However, you can still operate the air intake buttons as long as the ignition switch is in the ON position.

Automatic ventilation

The system automatically selects the outside (fresh) air position when the climate control system operates over a certain period of time (approximately 5 minutes) in low temperature with the re-circulated air position selected.

To cancel or reset the Automatic Ventilation

When the air conditioning system is on, select Face Level mode and press the re-circulated air position button more than five times within 3 seconds whilst pressing A/C button.

When the automatic ventilation is cancelled, the indicator blinks 3 times. When the automatic ventilation is activated, the indicator blinks 6 times.

Sunroof inside air recirculation

The outside (fresh) air position is automatically selected, when the sunroof is opened.

When you select the recirculated air position, the system maintains the recirculated air position for 3 minutes and then automatically converts to the outside (fresh) air position.

When the sunroof is closed, the air intake position will return to the original position that was selected.

System operation

Ventilation

1. Set the mode to the position.
2. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position.
3. Set the temperature control to the desired position.
4. Set the fan speed control to the desired speed.

Heating

1. Set the mode to the position.
2. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position.
3. Set the temperature control to the desired position.
4. Set the fan speed control to the desired speed.
5. If dehumidified heating is desired, turn the air conditioning system (if equipped) on.

- If the windscreen fogs up, set the mode to the or position.

Operation Tips

- To keep dust or unpleasant fumes from entering the vehicle through the ventilation system, temporarily set the air intake control to the recirculated air position. Be sure to return the control to the fresh air position when the irritation has passed to keep fresh air in the vehicle. This will help keep the driver alert and comfortable.
- Air for the heating/cooling system is drawn in through the grilles just ahead of the windscreen. Care should be taken that these are not blocked by leaves, snow, ice or other obstructions.
- To prevent interior fog on the windscreen, set the air intake control to the fresh air position and fan speed to the desired position, turn on the air conditioning system, and adjust the temperature control to desired temperature.

Air conditioning

Kia Air Conditioning Systems are filled with environmentally friendly refrigerant*.

1. Start the engine. Push the air conditioning button.
2. Set the mode to the position.
3. Set the air intake control to the outside air or recirculated air position.
4. Adjust the fan speed control and temperature control to maintain maximum comfort.

*: Your vehicle is filled with R-134a or R-1234yf according to the regulation in your country at the time of producing. You can find out which air conditioning refrigerant is applied your vehicle at the label inside of engine room. Refer to section 9 for more detail location of air conditioning refrigerant label.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***The refrigerant system should only be serviced by trained and certified technicians to insure proper and safe operation.***
- ***The refrigerant system should be serviced in a well-ventilated place.***
- ***The air conditioning evaporator (cooling coil) shall never be repaired or replaced with one removed from a used or salvaged vehicle and new replacement MAC evaporators shall be certified (and labeled) as meeting SAE Standard J2842.***

✻ NOTICE

- **When using the air conditioning system, monitor the temperature gauge closely whilst driving up hills or in heavy traffic when outside temperatures are high. Air conditioning system operation may cause engine overheating.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

Continue to use the blower fan but turn the air conditioning system off if the temperature gauge indicates engine overheating.

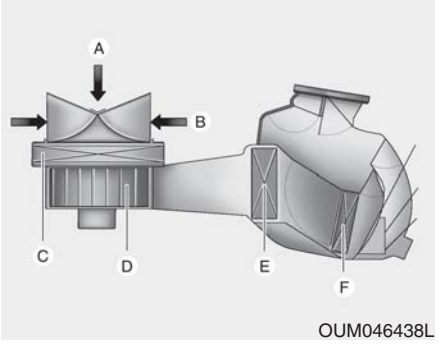
- **When opening the windows in humid weather air conditioning may create water droplets inside the vehicle. Since excessive water droplets may cause damage to electrical equipment, air conditioning should only be used with the windows closed.**

Air conditioning system operation tips

- If the vehicle has been parked in direct sunlight during hot weather, open the windows for a short time to let the hot air inside the vehicle escape.
- To help reduce moisture inside of the windows on rainy or humid days, decrease the humidity inside the vehicle by operating the air conditioning system.

- During air conditioning system operation, you may occasionally notice a slight change in engine speed as the air conditioning compressor cycles. This is a normal system operation characteristic.
- Use the air conditioning system every month only for a few minutes to ensure maximum system performance.
- When using the air conditioning system, you may notice clear water dripping (or even puddling) on the ground under the passenger side of the vehicle. This is a normal system operation characteristic.
- Operating the air conditioning system in the recirculated air position provides maximum cooling, however, continual operation in this mode may cause the air inside the vehicle to become stale.
- During cooling operation, you may occasionally notice a misty air flow because of rapid cooling and humid air intake. This is a normal system operation characteristic.

Climate control air filter (if equipped)



OUM046438L

A : Outside air
B : Recirculated air
C : Climate control air filter
D : Blower
E : Evaporator core
F : Heater core

The climate control air filter installed behind the glove box filters the dust or other pollutants that come into the vehicle from the outside through the heating and air conditioning system.

If dust or other pollutants accumulate in the filter over a period of time, the air flow from the air vents may decrease, resulting in moisture accumulation on the inside of the windscreen even when the outside (fresh) air position is selected. If this happens, have the climate control air filter replaced by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

✻ NOTICE

- **Replace the filter according to the Maintenance Schedule.**
  If the vehicle is being driven in severe conditions such as dusty or rough roads, more frequent air conditioner filter inspections and changes are required.
- **When the air flow rate suddenly decreases, have the system checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.**

Air Conditioning refrigerant label

■ Example

Type A

OCK069048L

Type B

OUMA069035

❈ The actual Air Conditioning refrigerant label in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

Each symbols and specification on air conditioning refrigerant label means as below ;

1. Classification of refrigerant
2. Amount of refrigerant
3. Classification of Compressor lubricant
4. Caution
5. Flammable Refrigerant
6. To requires Registered Technician to service Air Conditioning system
7. Service manual

You can find out which air conditioning refrigerant is applied your vehicle at the label inside of the engine room.

Refer to section 9 for more detail location of air conditioning refrigerant label.

Checking the amount of air conditioner refrigerant and compressor lubricant

When the amount of refrigerant is low, the performance of the air conditioning is reduced. Overfilling also has a bad influence on the air conditioning system.

Therefore, if abnormal operation is found, have the system inspected by a professional workshop.

Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

⚠ WARNING - Vehicles equipped with R-134a*

Because the refrigerant is at very high pressure, the air conditioning system should only be serviced by trained and certified technicians. It is important that the correct type and amount of oil and refrigerant is used.

Otherwise, it may cause damage to the vehicle and personal injury.

⚠ WARNING - Vehicles equipped with R-1234yf*

Since the refrigerant is mildly flammable and operated at high pressure, the air conditioning system should only be serviced by trained and certified technicians. It is important that the correct type and amount of oil and refrigerant is used.

All refrigerants should be reclaimed with proper equipment. Venting refrigerants directly to the atmosphere is harmful to individuals and environment.

Failure to heed these warnings can lead to serious injuries.

*: Your vehicle is filled with R-134a or R-1234yf according to the regulation in your country at the time of producing. You can find out which air conditioning refrigerant is applied your vehicle at the label inside of engine room. Refer to section 9 for more detail location of air conditioning refrigerant label.

The refrigerant label is located on the underside of the bonnet.

WINDSCREEN DEFROSTING AND DEFOGGING

⚠ WARNING - Windscreen heating

Do not use the or position during cooling operation in extremely humid weather. The difference between the temperature of the outside air and that of the windscreen could cause the outer surface of the windscreen to fog up, causing loss of visibility. In this case, set the mode selection knob or button to the position and fan speed control knob or button to the lower speed.

- For maximum defrosting, set the temperature control to the extreme right/hot position and the fan speed control to the highest speed.
- If warm air to the floor is desired whilst defrosting or defogging, set the mode to the floor-defrost position.
- Before driving, clear all snow and ice from the windscreen, rear window, outside rear view mirrors, and all side windows.
- Clear all snow and ice from the bonnet and air inlet in the cowl grill to improve heater and defroster efficiency and to reduce the probability of fogging up the inside of the windscreen.

Manual climate control system

To defog inside windscreen

1. Select any fan speed except “0” position.
2. Select desired temperature.
3. Select the or position.
4. The outside (fresh) air and air conditioning will be selected automatically.

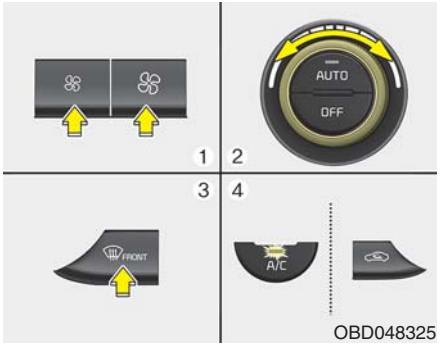
If the air conditioning and outside (fresh) air position are not selected automatically, press the corresponding button manually.

To defrost outside windscreen

1. Set the fan speed to the highest (extreme right) position.
2. Set the temperature to the extreme hot position.
3. Select the position.
4. The outside (fresh) air and air conditioning will be selected automatically.

Automatic climate control system

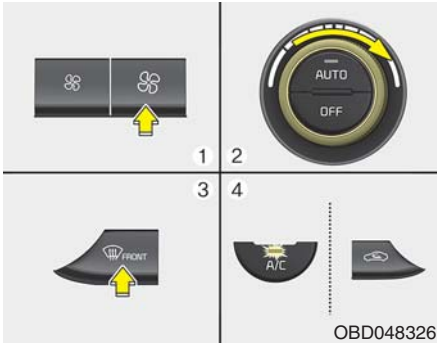
To defog inside windscreen



1. Set the fan speed to the desired position.
2. Select desired temperature.
3. Press the defrost button ( ).
4. The air conditioning will be turned on according to the detected ambient temperature and outside (fresh) air position will be selected automatically.

If the air conditioning and outside (fresh) air position are not selected automatically, adjust the corresponding button manually. If the position is selected, lower fan speed is adjusted to a higher fan speed.

To defrost outside windscreen



1. Set the fan speed to the highest (extreme right) position.
2. Set the temperature to the extreme hot (HI) position.
3. Press the defrost button ( ).
4. The air conditioning will be turned on according to the detected ambient temperature and outside (fresh) air position will be selected automatically.

If the position is selected, lower fan speed is adjusted to a higher fan speed.

Defogging logic (if equipped)

To reduce the possibility of fogging up the inside of the windscreen, the air intake or air conditioning are controlled automatically according to certain conditions such as or position. To cancel or return to the defogging logic, do the following.

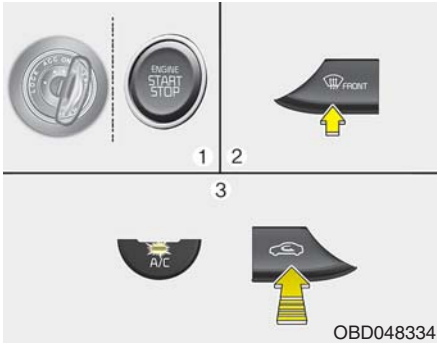
Manual climate control system

1. Turn the ignition switch to the ON position.
2. Turn the mode selection knob to the defrost position ( ).
3. Push the air intake control button at least 5 times within 3 seconds.

The indicator light in the air intake control button will blink 3 times. It indicates that the defogging logic is cancelled or returned to the programmed status.

If the battery has been discharged or disconnected, it resets to the defog logic status.

Automatic climate control system (if equipped)

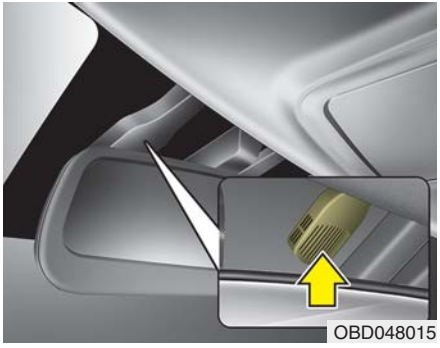


1. Turn the ignition switch to the ON position.
2. Select the defrost position pressing defrost button ( ).
3. Whilst holding the air conditioning button (A/C) pressed, press the air intake control button at least 5 times within 3 seconds.

The A/C display blinks 3 times. It indicates that the defogging logic is cancelled or returned to the programmed status.

If the battery has been discharged or disconnected, it is reset to the defog logic status.

Auto defogging system (Only for automatic climate control system, if equipped)



Auto defogging reduces the possibility of fogging up the inside of the windscreen by automatically sensing the moisture of inside the windscreen and air flow toward the windscreen can increase.

The auto defogging system operates when the AUTO mode is on.

For Europe

If your vehicle is equipped with the auto defogging system, it is automatically activated when the conditions are met.

When the auto fogging system senses moisture inside of the windscreen, air flow towards the windscreen can increase.

However, if you would like to deactivate the auto defogging system, keep the front defroster button pressed longer than 3 seconds.

The “ADS OFF” symbol will be shown in the climate display to inform you that the system is deactivated.

To re-activate the auto defogging system again, follow the procedure mentioned above and the “ADS OFF” symbol will disappear.

If the battery has been disconnected or discharged, it resets to the auto defogging status.

Except Europe

This indicator illuminates when the auto defogging system senses the moisture of inside the windscreen and operates.

If more moisture is in the vehicle, higher steps operate as follow.

Step 1 : Operating the air conditioning, Outside air position

Step 2 : Blowing air flow toward the windscreen

Step 3 : Increasing air flow toward the windscreen

If your vehicle is equipped with the auto defogging system, it is automatically activated when the conditions are met.

However, if you would like to deactivate the auto defogging system, keep the front defroster button pressed longer than 3 seconds.

The “ADS OFF” symbol will be shown in the climate display to inform you that the system is deactivated.

To re-activate the auto defogging system again, follow the procedure mentioned above and the “ADS OFF” symbol will disappear.

If the battery has been disconnected or discharged, it resets to the auto defogging status.

STORAGE COMPARTMENTS

These compartments can be used to store small items required by the driver or passengers.

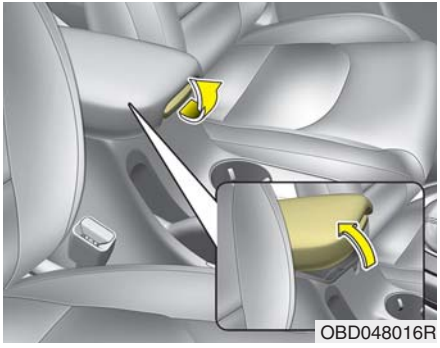
⚠ CAUTION

- ***To avoid possible theft, do not leave valuables in the storage compartments.***
- ***Always keep the storage compartment covers closed whilst driving. Do not attempt to place so many items in the storage compartment that the storage compartment cover cannot close securely.***

⚠ WARNING - Flammable materials

Do not store cigarette lighters, propane cylinders, or other flammable/explosive materials in the vehicle. These items may catch fire and/or explode if the vehicle is exposed to hot temperatures for extended periods.

Centre console storage (if equipped)



These compartments can be used to store small items required by the driver or front passenger.

To open the centre console storage pull up the lever.

Glove box

OBD048017R

To open the glove box, pull the handle and the glove box will automatically open. Close the glove box after use.

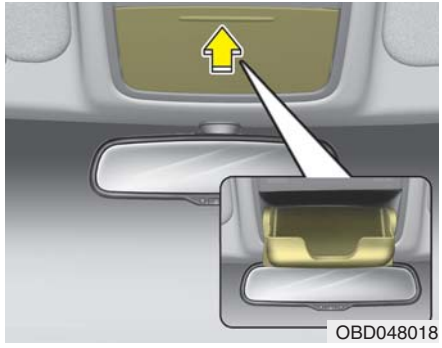
⚠ WARNING

To reduce the risk of injury in an accident or sudden stop, always keep the glove box door closed whilst driving.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not keep food in the glove box for a long time.

Sunglass holder (if equipped)


OBD048018

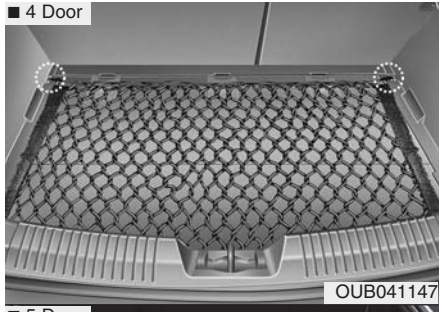
To open the sunglass holder, press the cover and the holder will slowly open. Place your sunglasses with the lenses facing out. To close the sunglass holder, push it up.

⚠ WARNING

- **Do not keep objects except sunglasses inside the sunglass holder. Such objects can be thrown from the holder in the event of a sudden stop or an accident, possibly injuring the passengers in the vehicle.**
- **Do not open the sunglass holder whilst the vehicle is moving. The rear view mirror of the vehicle can be blocked by an opened sunglass holder.**
- **Do not put the glasses forcibly into a sunglass holder to prevent breakage or deformation of the glasses. It may cause personal injury if you try to open it forcibly when the glasses are jammed in the holder.**

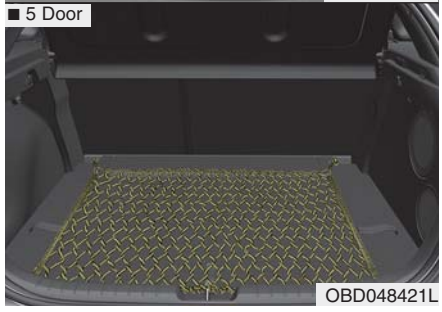
Luggage net holder (if equipped)

■ 4 Door



OUB041147

■ 5 Door



OBD048421L

To keep items from shifting in the cargo area, you can use the 4 holders located in the cargo area to attach the luggage net.

If necessary, Kia recommends to contact an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

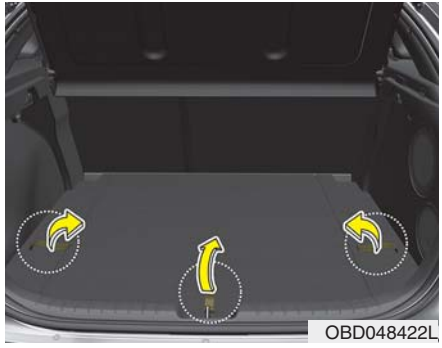
⚠ CAUTION

To prevent damage to the goods or the vehicle, care should be taken when carrying fragile or bulky objects in the luggage compartment.

⚠ WARNING

Avoid eye injury. DO NOT overstretch the luggage net, ALWAYS keep your face and body out of the luggage net's recoil path. DO NOT use when the strap has visible signs of wear or damage.

Luggage tray (if equipped)

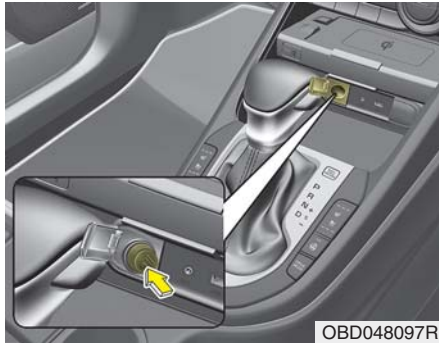

OBD048422L

You can place a first aid kit, a reflector triangle, tools, etc. in the box for easy access.

Grasp the strap on the top of the cover and lift it.

INTERIOR FEATURES

Cigarette lighter (if equipped)


OBD048097R

For the cigarette lighter to work, the ignition switch must be in the ACC position or the ON position.

To use the cigarette lighter, push it all the way into its socket. When the element has heated, the lighter will pop out to the “ready” position.

Kia recommends to use parts for replacement from an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

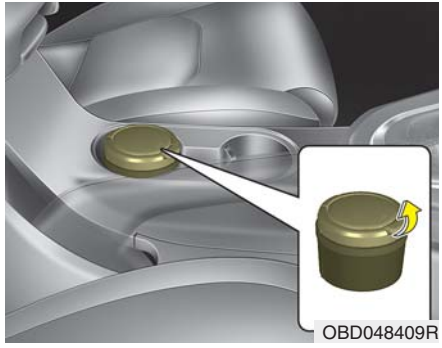
⚠ WARNING

- **Do not hold the lighter in after it is already heated because it will overheat.**
- **If the lighter does not pop out within 30 seconds, remove it to prevent overheating.**
- **Do not insert foreign objects into the socket of the cigarette lighter. It may damage the cigarette lighter.**

⚠ CAUTION

The use of plug-in accessories (shavers, hand-held vacuums, and coffee pots, etc.) may damage the socket or cause electrical failure.

Ashtray (if equipped)


OBD048409R

To use the ashtray, open the cover.

To clean or empty the ashtray, pull it out.

Use the ashtray by leaning it to the cup holder right beside.

⚠ WARNING - Ashtray use

- **Do not use the vehicle’s ashtrays as waste receptacles.**
- **Putting lit cigarettes or matches in an ashtray with other combustible materials may cause a fire.**

Cup holder

⚠ WARNING - Hot liquids

- **Do not place uncovered cups with hot liquid in the cup holder whilst the vehicle is in motion. If the hot liquid spills, you burn yourself. Such a burn to the driver could lead to loss of control of the vehicle.**
- **To reduce the risk of personal injury in the event of sudden stop or collision, do not place uncovered or unsecured bottles, glasses, cans, etc., in the cup holder whilst the vehicle is in motion.**

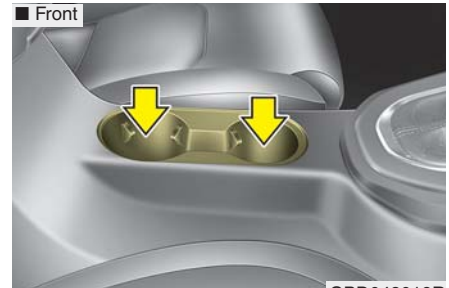
⚠ WARNING

Keep cans or bottles out of direct sun light and do not put them in a vehicle that is heated up. It may explode.

✻ NOTICE

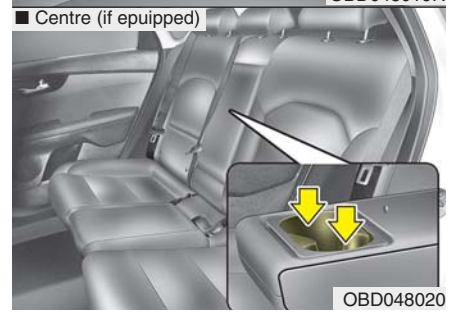
- **Keep your drinks sealed whilst driving to prevent spilling your drink. If liquid spills, it may get into the vehicle's electrical/electronic system and damage electrical/electronic parts.**
- **When cleaning spilled liquids, do not dry the cup holder at high temperature. This may damage the cup holder.**

■ Front



OBD048019R

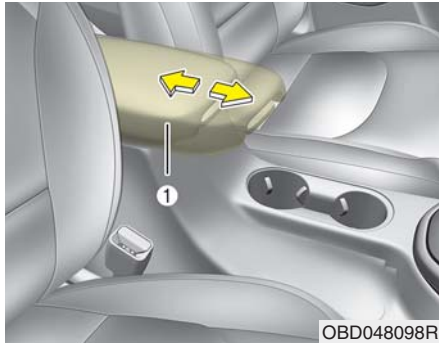
■ Centre (if epuipped)



OBD048020

Cups or small beverage cans may be placed in the cup holders.

Sliding armrest (if equipped)



To move forward

Grab the front portion of the armrest then press up the lever (1) and pull it forward

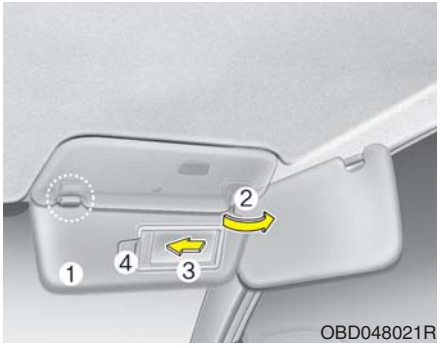
To move rearward

⚠ WARNING

Do not grab the front portion of the armrest (1) when moving the armrest rearward. It may pinch your fingers.

Push the armrest rearward with your palm.

Sun visor



Use the sun visor to shield direct light through the front or side windows.

To use the sun visor, pull it downward.

To use the sun visor for the side window, pull it downward, unsnap it from the bracket (1) and swing it to the side (2).

To use the vanity mirror, pull down the visor and slide the mirror cover (3).

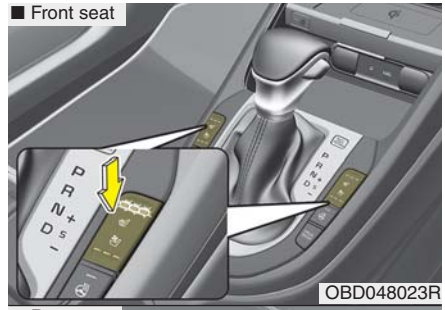
The ticket holder (4) is provided for holding a tollgate ticket. (if equipped)

⚠ WARNING

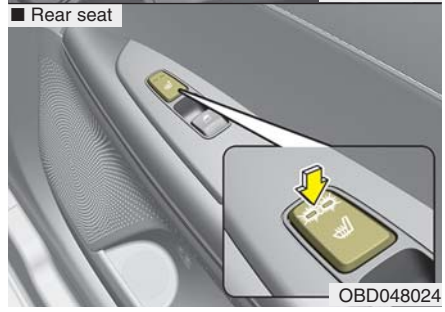
For your safety, do not obstruct your vision when using the sun visor.

Seat warmer (if equipped)

■ Front seat



■ Rear seat



The seat warmer is provided to warm the front seats during cold weather. With the ignition switch in the ON position, push either of the switches to warm the driver's seat or the front passenger's seat.

During mild weather or under conditions where the operation of the seat warmer is not needed, keep the switches in the "OFF" position.

▶ Temperature control (Manual)

- Each time you press the switch, the temperature setting of the seat will change as follows :

■ Front seat

OFF→HIGH( )→MIDDLE( )→LOW( )

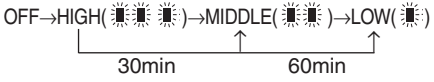
■ Rear seat

OFF→HIGH( )→LOW( )

- The seat warmer defaults to the OFF position whenever the ignition switch is turned on.

▶ Temperature control(Automatic)

The seat warmer starts to automatically control the seat temperature in order to prevent low-temperature burns after being manually turned ON.



You may manually press the button to increase the seat temperature. However, it soon returns to the automatic mode again.

- When pressing the switch for more than 1.5 seconds with the seat warmer operating, the seat warmer will turn OFF.
- The seat warmer defaults to the OFF position whenever the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position.

✻ NOTICE

With the seat warmer switch in the ON position, the heating system in the seat turns off or on automatically depending on the seat temperature.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***When cleaning the seats, do not use an organic solvent such as paint thinner, benzene, alcohol and petrol. Doing so may damage the surface of the heater or seats.***
- ***To prevent overheating the seat warmer, do not place anything on the seats that insulates against heat, such as blankets, cushions or seat covers whilst the seat warmer is in operation.***
- ***Do not place heavy or sharp objects on seats equipped with seat warmers. Damage to the seat warming components could occur.***
- ***Do not change the seat cover. It may damage the seat warmer or airventilation system.***

⚠ WARNING - Seat warmer burns

Passengers should use extreme caution when using seat warmers due to the possibility of excess heating or burns. The seat warmer may cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. In particular, the driver must exercise extreme care for the following types of passengers:

1. **Infants, children, elderly or handicapped persons, or hospital outpatients**
2. **Persons with sensitive skin or those that burn easily**
3. **Fatigued individuals**
4. **Intoxicated individuals**
5. **Individuals taking medication that can cause drowsiness or sleepiness (sleeping pills, cold tablets, etc.)**

Seat cooler (Air ventilation seat) (if equipped)

OBD048025R

The temperature setting of the seat changes according to the switch position.

- If you want to warm your seat cushion, press the switch (red colour).
- If you want to cool your seat cushion, press the switch (blue colour).
- Each time you press the button, the airflow will change as follows:
- The seat warmer (with air ventilation) defaults to the OFF position whenever the ignition switch is turned on.

⚠ CAUTION

When cleaning the seats, do not use an organic solvent such as paint thinner, benzene, alcohol and petrol. Doing so may damage the surface of the heater or seats.

Power outlet (if equipped)

OBD048022R

The power outlet is designed to provide power for mobile telephones or other devices designed to operate with vehicle electrical systems. The devices should draw less than 10 amps with the engine running.

⚠ CAUTION

- *Use the power outlet only when the engine is running and remove the accessory plug after use. Using the accessory plug for prolonged periods of time with the engine off could cause the battery to discharge.*
- *Only use 12V electric accessories which are less than 10A in electric capacity.*
- *Adjust the air-conditioner or heater to the lowest operating level when using the power outlet.*
- *Close the cover when not in use.*
- *Some electronic devices can cause electronic interference when plugged into a vehicle's power outlet. These devices may cause excessive audio static and malfunctions in other electronic systems or devices used in your vehicle.*

(Continued)

(Continued)

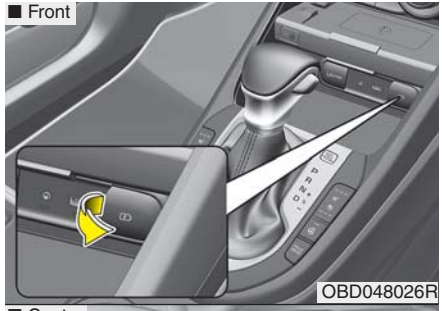
- *Using electrical products which exceed the limited capacity might cause heating to the power outlet and wiring that could lead to an electrical breakdown.*
- *Always make sure the electrical part is firmly plugged into the power outlet. Incomplete plugging may cause electrical breakdown.*
- *Electrical products with a built-in battery might cause current flow, which could lead to malfunction of the electric/electronic device in your vehicle. Only use electrical products which include reverse current prevention.*

⚠ WARNING

Do not put a finger or a foreign element (pin, etc.) into a power outlet and do not touch with a wet hand. You may get an electric shock.

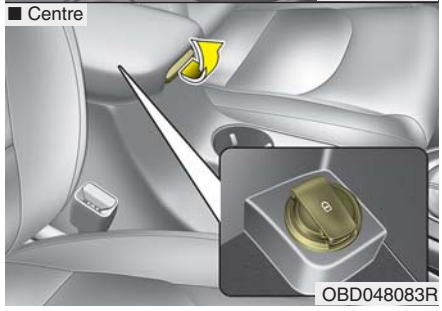
USB charger (if equipped)

■ Front



OBD048026R

■ Centre



OBD048083R

The USB car charger allows drivers to charge their digital devices like smartphone, and PC tablets. Connect the cable to the USB port, charging will begin.

The USB car charger is available with either the ACC state or the ignition on. But we recommend you to connect the USB port and digital devices with the engine starting. See the display screen of the device to check its charging process completion. Your smartphone or tablet PC could get heated up whilst charging. This is no reason to worry, as it doesn't impact life or functions of the device. For the safety reason, charging can be stopped if the battery gets heated up to a certain point of temperature that the devices can be negatively affected. Charging some digital devices is not available or requires special dedicated adapters if their charging methods don't fit the way the USB car charger works. Quick Charge 2.0 is available on the smartphone or the table PC equipped with fast charging capabilities. The applicable is as follows: (https://www.qualcomm.com/documents/quick-charge-device-list)

The smartphone or PC tablet without fast charging is charged at a regular speed.

Rated output:

Digital devices with fast charging :
- 9.0 V, 1.67 A

Digital devices with normal charging :
- 5.0 V, 2.1 A

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Used the USB car charger with the ignition on. Otherwise, Vehicle battery can be discharged.***
- ***Use the official USB cable of the manufacturer of the digital device to be charged.***
- ***Make sure that any foreign object, drinks, and water do not come into contact with the USB car charger. Water or foreign object can damage the USB charger.***
- ***Do not use the device those current consumption exceeds 2.1A.***
- ***Do not connect an electrical device that generates excessive electromagnetic noise to the USB car port. If you do so, noise can be caused or vehicle electronic devices can be interrupted whilst audio or AV is on.***

(Continued)

(Continued)

- ***If the charger is connected incorrectly, it can cause serious damage on the devices. Please note that damages due to incorrect usage are not covered by warranty service.***

Wireless smart phone charging system (if equipped)

A wireless smart phone charging system located in front of the centre console.

Firmly close all doors, and turn the ignition to ACC or IGN ON. To start wireless charging, place the smart phone equipped with wireless charging function on the wireless charging pad.

For best wireless charging results, place the smart phone on the centre of the charging pad.

The wireless charging system is designed for one smart phone equipped with QI per single usage only. Please refer to the smart phone accessory cover or the smart phone manufacturer homepage to check whether your smart phone supports QI function.

⚠ WARNING

If any metallic object such as coins is located between the wireless charging system and the smart phone, the charging may be disrupted. Also, the metallic object may heat up.

Wireless smart phone charging

1. Remove any object on the smart phone charging pad including the smart key. If there is any foreign object on the pad other than a smart phone, the wireless charging function may not operate properly.
2. Place the smart phone on the centre of the wireless charging pad.
3. The indicator light will change to orange once the wireless charging begins. After the charging is complete, the orange light will change to green.
4. You can choose to turn the wireless charging function to either ON or OFF by selecting the USM on the instrument cluster. (Please refer to “Instrument Cluster” for details).

If the wireless charging does not work, gently move your smart phone around the pad until the charging indicator light turns yellow. Depending on the smart phone, the charging indicator light may not turn green even after the charging is complete.

If the wireless charging is not functioning properly, the orange light will blink and flash for ten seconds then turn off. In such cases, remove the smart phone from the pad and replace it on the pad again, or double check the charging status.

If you leave the smart phone on the charging pad when the vehicle ignition is in OFF, the vehicle will alert you through warning messages and sound (applicable for vehicles with voice guidance function) after the ‘Good bye’ function on the instrument cluster ends.

⚠ CAUTION

- *When the interior temperature of the wireless charging system rises above a set temperature, the wireless charging will cease to function. After the interior temperature drops below the threshold, the wireless charging function will resume.*
- *If there is any metallic object between the smart phone and the wireless charging pad, immediately remove the smart phone. Remove the metallic object after it has completely cooled down.*
- *The wireless charging may not function properly when there is a heavy accessory cover on the smart phone.*
- *The wireless charging will stop when using the wireless smart key search function to prevent radio wave disruption.*

(Continued)

(Continued)

- *The wireless charging will stop when the smart key is moved out of the vehicle with the ignition in ON.*
- *The wireless charging will stop when any of the doors is opened (applicable for vehicles equipped with smart keys).*
- *The wireless charging will stop when the vehicle is turned OFF.*
- *The wireless charging will stop when the smart phone is not in complete contact with the wireless charging pad.*
- *Items equipped with magnetic components such as credit card, telephone card, bankbook, any transportation ticket and such may become damaged during wireless charging.*

(Continued)

(Continued)

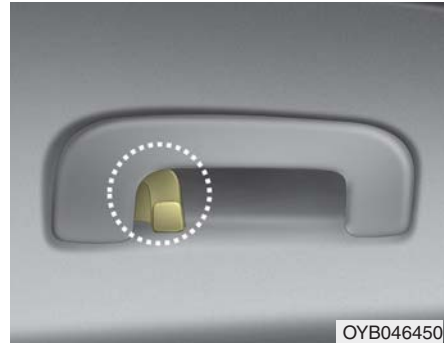
- *Place the smart phone on the centre of the charge pad for best results. The smart phone may not charge when placed near the rim of the charging pad. When the smart phone does get charged, it may heat up excessively.*
- *For smart phones without built-in wireless charging system, an appropriate accessory has to be equipped.*
- *Smart phones of some manufacturers may display messages on weak current. This is due to the particular characteristic of the smart phone and does not imply a malfunction on wireless charging function.*

(Continued)

(Continued)

- *The indicator light of some manufacturers' smart phones may still be yellow after the smart phone is fully charged. This is due to the particular characteristic of the smart phone and not a malfunction of the wireless charging.*
- *When any smart phone without a wireless charging function or a metallic object is placed on the charging pad, a small noise may sound. This small sound is due to the vehicle discerning compatibility of the object placed on the charging pad. It does not affect your vehicle or the smart phone in any way.*

Clothes hanger

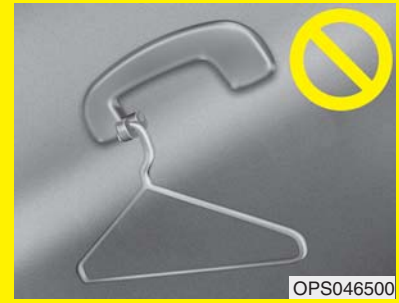

OYB046450

To use the hanger, pull down the upper portion of hanger.

⚠ CAUTION

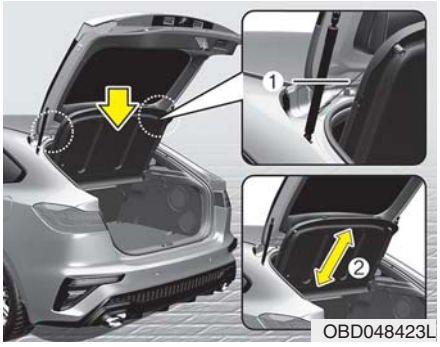
Do not hang heavy clothes, since those may damage the hook.

⚠ WARNING


OPS046500

Do not hang other objects such as hangers or hard objects except clothes. Also, do not put heavy, sharp or breakable objects in the clothe pockets. In an accident or when the curtain air bag is inflated, it may cause vehicle damage or personal injury.

Cargo area cover (if equipped)



Use the cover to hide items stored in the cargo area.

The cargo area cover will be lifted when the tailgate is opened. Disconnect the strap (1) from holder if you want to return the cover to original position. To remove the cargo area cover completely, lift the cover to a 43-degree angle and pull it out to the full (2). For installation of the cover, reverse the removal procedure.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***When you return the cargo area cover to its original position, hold the cover and lower it.***
- ***Do not operate the vehicle with the cover removed. It may damage to the cover.***
- ***The cargo area cover may be lifted when the tailgate is opened. Ensure that the luggage on the cover is moved to a safe place.***
- ***Since the cargo area cover may be damaged or malformed, do not apply excessive force to the cover or do not put the heavy loads on it.***

⚠ WARNING

- **Do not place objects on the cargo area cover whilst driving. Such objects may be thrown about inside the vehicle and possibly injure vehicle occupants during an accident or when braking.**
- **Never allow anyone to ride in the luggage compartment. It is designed for luggage only.**
- **Maintain the balance of the vehicle and locate the weight as far forward as possible.**

Shopping bag holder (if equipped)

OBD040424L

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Do not hang a bag weighing more than 3 kg (7 lbs.). It may cause damage to the shopping bag holder.***
- ***Do not hang the frail objects when you drive rough road, the objects may be damaged.***

Audio system

Audio system 5-2
- **Antenna 5-2**
- **AUX, USB port 5-3**
- **How vehicle audio works 5-4**

Audio (Without Touch Screen) 5-8
- **Feature of Your Audio 5-9**
- **Radio 5-14**
- **Media 5-15**
- **Phone 5-23**
- **Setup 5-31**

Declaration of Conformity 5-34
- **RCM for Australia 5-34**

AUDIO SYSTEM

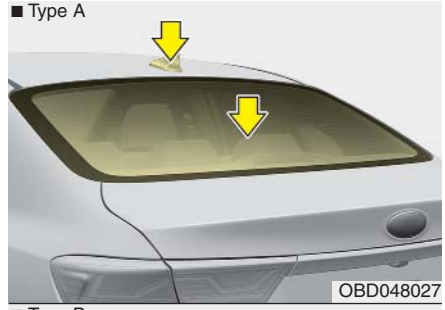
✻ NOTICE

If you install an after market HID head lamp, your vehicle's audio and electronic device may malfunction.

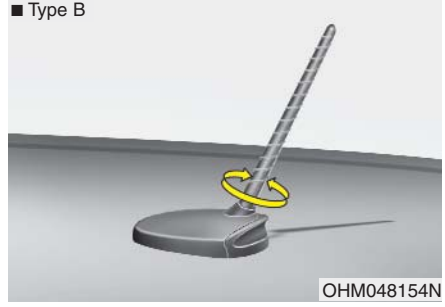
✻ If your vehicle is equipped with Infotainment (Audio, Video and Navigation) system, refer to a separately supplied manual for detailed information.

Antenna

■ Type A



■ Type B



Glass antenna

Your vehicle uses a glass antenna to receive both AM and FM signals.

Shark fin antenna (if equipped)

The shark fin antenna will receive the transmit data.

Pole type antenna (if equipped)

Your vehicle uses a roof antenna to receive both AM and FM broadcast signals. This antenna pole is removable. To remove the antenna pole, turn it counterclockwise.To install the antenna, turn it clockwise.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Do not clean the inside of the rear window glass or quarter glass with a cleaner or use a scraper to remove any foreign deposits as this may cause damage to the antenna elements.***
- ***Avoid adding metallic coating such as Ni, Cd, and so on. These can interfere with AM/FM reception.***
- ***To prevent damage to the rear glass antenna, never use sharp instruments or window cleaner containing abrasives to clean the window. Clean the inside surface of the rear glass window with a piece of soft cloth.***
- ***When putting a sticker on the inside surface of the rear window, be careful not to damage to the rear glass antenna.***
- ***Do not put sharp instruments nearby the rear glass antenna.***
- ***Tinted rear window may affect the proper functioning of the antenna.***

⚠ CAUTION - Pole type antenna

- ***Before entering a place with a low height clearance or a car wash, remove the antenna pole by rotating it counterclockwise. If not, the antenna may be damaged.***
- ***When reinstalling your antenna pole, it is important that it is fully tightened and adjusted to the upright position to ensure proper reception. But it could be removed when parking the vehicle or when loading cargo on the roof rack.***
- ***When cargo is loaded on the roof rack, do not place the cargo near the antenna pole to ensure proper reception.***

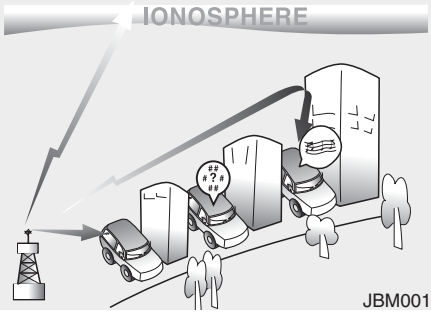
AUX, USB port

You can use the AUX port to connect audio devices and the USB port to plug in a USB device or iPod®.

* iPod® is a trademark of Apple Inc.

How vehicle audio works

FM reception

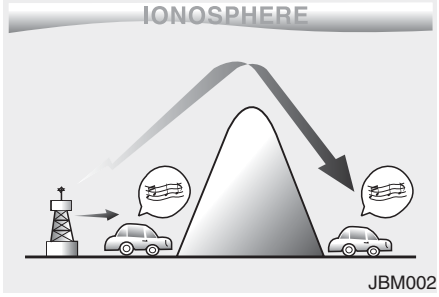


AM and FM radio signals are broadcast from transmitter towers located around your city. They are intercepted by the radio antenna on your vehicle. This signal is then received by the radio and sent to your vehicle speakers.

When a strong radio signal has reached your vehicle, the precise engineering of your audio system ensures the best possible quality reproduction. However, in some cases the signal coming to your vehicle may not be strong and clear.

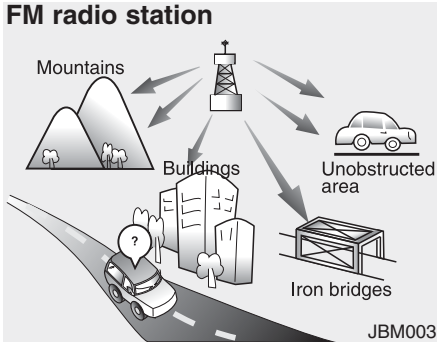
This can be due to factors, such as the distance from the radio station, closeness of other strong radio stations or the presence of buildings, bridges or other large obstructions in the area.

AM reception

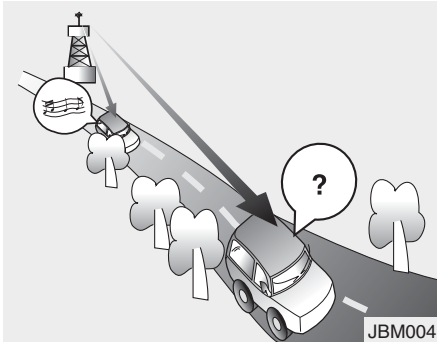


AM broadcasts can be received at greater distances than FM broadcasts. This is because AM radio waves are transmitted at low frequencies. These long, low frequency radio waves can follow the curvature of the earth rather than travelling straight out into the atmosphere. In addition, they curve around obstructions so that they can provide better signal coverage.

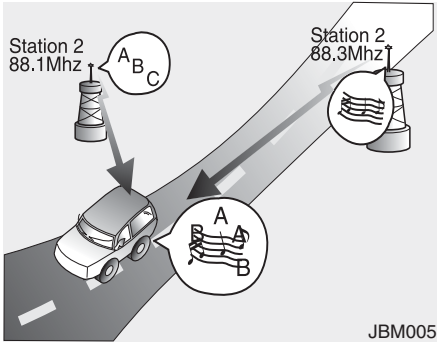
FM radio station



FM broadcasts are transmitted at high frequencies and do not bend to follow the earth's surface. Because of this, FM broadcasts generally begin to fade at short distances from the station. Also, FM signals are easily affected by buildings, mountains, or other obstructions. These can result in certain listening conditions which might lead you to believe a problem exists with your radio. The following conditions are normal and do not indicate radio trouble:



- Fading - As your vehicle moves away from the radio station, the signal will weaken and sound will begin to fade. When this occurs, we suggest that you select another stronger station.
- Flutter/Static - Weak FM signals or large obstructions between the transmitter and your radio can disturb the signal causing static or fluttering noises to occur. Reducing the treble level may lessen this effect until the disturbance clears.



- Station Swapping - As a FM signal weakens, another more powerful signal near the same frequency may begin to play. This is because your radio is designed to lock onto the clearest signal. If this occurs, select another station with a stronger signal.
- Multi-Path Cancellation - Radio signals being received from several directions can cause distortion or fluttering. This can be caused by a direct and reflected signal from the same station, or by signals from two stations with close frequencies. If this occurs, select another station until the condition has passed.

Using a mobile phone or a two-way radio

When a mobile phone is used inside the vehicle, noise may be produced from the audio system. This does not mean that something is wrong with the audio equipment. In such a case, use the mobile phone at a place as far as possible from the audio equipment.

⚠ CAUTION

When using a communication system such as a mobile phone or a radio set inside the vehicle, a separate external antenna must be fitted. When a mobile phone or a radio set is used with an internal antenna alone, it may interfere with the vehicle's electrical system and adversely affect safe operation of the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

Do not use a mobile phone whilst driving. Stop at a safe location to use a mobile phone.

iPod®

iPod® is a trademark of Apple Inc.

Bluetooth® Wireless Technology

The Bluetooth® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Kia is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

A *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology enabled cell phone is required to use *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology.

AUDIO (Without Touch Screen)

(With *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology)

M6N3H0000EA

Feature of Your Audio

Head Unit

❊ The actual features in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

(1) **SEEK/TRACK**

When pressed quickly

- Radio mode: Searches broadcast frequencies.
- Media mode: Changes the track, file or title. (except AUX)

When pressed and held (more than 1.0 seconds)

- Radio mode: Frequency is controlled by 1 step quickly. When the button is released after pressing and holding, searches broadcast frequencies.
- Media mode: Rewinds or fast-forwards the song. (except BT Audio, AUX)

(2) **RADIO**

- Plays Radio(FM/AM) mode.
- Each time the button is pressed, the radio mode popup will be displayed or closed.
- The radio mode popup will not be displayed when **[SETUP/CLOCK]** button ▶ [Display] ▶ [Mode Popup] is turned [Off].

(3) **MEDIA**

- Plays USB(iPod®), BT Audio, AUX mode.
- Each time the button is pressed, the media mode popup will be displayed or closed.
- The media mode popup will not be displayed when **[SETUP/CLOCK]** button ▶ [Display] ▶ [Mode Popup] is turned [Off].

(4) **PHONE**

- Moves to Phone screen.
- If Bluetooth® is not connected, displays Bluetooth® Pair/Connection screen.

(5) **POWER/VOL** knob

- Power knob: Turns power On/Off by pressing the knob.
- Volume knob: Sets volume by turning the knob left/right.

(6) **FOLDER**

• USB mode: Searches folders.

(7) **SETUP/CLOCK**

When pressed quickly

• Moves to Setup screen.

When pressed and held (more than 1.0 seconds)

• Moves to the Time Settings.

(8) **MENU**

• Displays menus for the current mode.

(9) **BACK**

• Moves to previous screen.

(10) **TUNE** knob

• Radio mode: Changes frequency by turning the knob left/right.

• Media mode: Searches songs(files) by turning the knob left/right.

(11) **[1] ~ [6]** (Preset)

When pressed quickly

• Radio mode: Receives saved frequencies(channels).

• Media mode(USB)

- **[1 RPT]** button: Repeat/Repeat Folder
- **[2 SHFL]** button: Shuffle Folder/ Shuffle

• Media mode(iPod®)

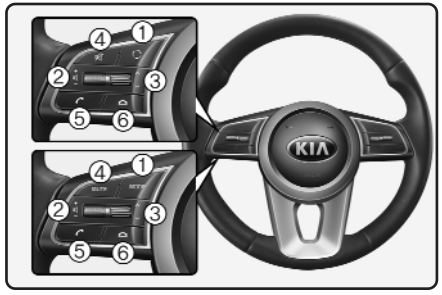
- **[1 RPT]** button: Repeat
- **[2 SHFL]** button: Shuffle

• In case of Menu popup, the number menu is selected.

When pressed and held (more than 1.0 seconds)

• Radio mode: Saves frequencies (channels).

Steering wheel remote control



❈ The actual features in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

(1) **MODE**

- Each time this is pressed, the mode is changed sequentially.
- If the media is not connected, the corresponding modes will be disabled.
- Press and hold to turn the Audio system on/off.
- When power is off, press button to turn power back on.

(2) **VOLUME**

- Adjust the volume.

(3) **SEEK/TRACK**

- When pressed quickly
  - Radio mode: Searches broadcast frequencies saved to Presets.
  - Media mode: Changes track, file or title. (except AUX)
- When pressed and held (more than 1.0 seconds)
  - Radio mode: Frequency is controlled by 1 step quickly. When the button is released after pressing and holding, searches broadcast frequencies.
  - Media mode: Rewinds or fast-forwards the song. (except BT Audio, AUX)

(4) **MUTE**

- Mutes the audio volume.
- When a call is active, mic volume is muted.

(5) **CALL**

- When pressed quickly
  - If not in Bluetooth® Handsfree mode or receiving a phone call.

    First press: Automatically display the most recently Dialed Call number.

    Second press: The most recently Dialed Call number is dialed.
  - Press in the incoming call screen, answers the call.
  - Press in Bluetooth® Handsfree mode to switch to the waiting call.
- When pressed and held (more than 1.0 seconds)
  - If not in Bluetooth® Handsfree mode or receiving a phone call, the most recently Dialed Call number is dialed.
  - When pressed in Bluetooth® Handsfree mode to switch the call to your cell phone.
  - When pressed in cell phone mode to switch to Bluetooth® Handsfree mode.
  - If Bluetooth® is not connected, displays Bluetooth® Pair/Connection screen.

(6) **END**

- When pressed during a call, ends the phone call.
- When pressed in the incoming call screen, rejects the call.

⚠ WARNING
- Audio System Safety Warnings

- **Do not stare at the screen whilst driving. Staring at the screen for prolonged periods of time could lead to traffic accidents.**
- **Do not disassemble, assemble, or modify the audio system. Such acts could result in accidents, fire, or electric shock.**
- **Using the phone whilst driving may lead to a lack of attention of traffic conditions and increase the likelihood of accidents. Use the phone feature after parking the vehicle.**
- **Exercise caution not to spill water or introduce foreign objects into the device. Such acts could lead to smoke, fire, or product malfunction.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Please refrain from use if the screen is blank or no sound can be heard as these signs may indicate product malfunction. Continued use in such conditions could lead to accidents (fires, electric shock) or product malfunctions.**
- **Do not touch the antenna during thunder or lightning because such an act may cause electric shock.**
- **Do not stop or park in parking-restricted areas to operate the product. Such acts could lead to traffic accidents.**
- **Use the system with the vehicle engine turned on. Prolonged use with the ignition turned on only could result in battery ischarge.**

⚠ WARNING
- Distracted Driving

Driving whilst distracted can result in a loss of vehicle control that may lead to an accident, severe personal injury, and death. The driver's primary responsibility is in the safe and legal operation of a vehicle, and use of any handheld devices, other equipment, or vehicle systems which take the driver's eyes, attention and focus away from the safe operation of a vehicle or which are not permissible by law should never be used during operation of the vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Operating the device whilst driving could lead to accidents due to a lack of attention to external surroundings. First park the vehicle before operating the device.***
- ***Adjust the volume to levels that allow the driver to hear sounds from outside of the vehicle. Driving in a state where external sounds cannot be heard may lead to accidents.***
- ***Pay attention to the volume setting when turning the device on. A sudden output of extreme volume upon turning the device on could lead to hearing impairment. (Adjust the volume to a suitable level before turning off the device.)***

(Continued)

(Continued)

- ***Turn on the car engine before using this device. Do not operate the audio system for long periods of time with the ignition turned off as such operations may lead to battery discharge.***
- ***Do not subject the device to severe shock or impact. Direct pressure onto the front side of the monitor may cause damage to the LCD or touch screen.***
- ***When cleaning the device, make sure to turn off the device and use a dry and smooth cloth. Never use tough materials, chemical cloths, or solvents (alcohol, benzene, thinners, etc.). As such materials may damage the device panel or cause colour/quality deterioration.***
- ***Do not place beverages close to the audio system. Spilling beverages may lead to system malfunction.***

(Continued)

(Continued)

- ***In case of product malfunction, please contact your place of purchase or After Service centre.***
- ***Placing the audio system within an electromagnetic environment may result in noise interference.***
- ***Prevent caustic solutions such as perfume and cosmetic oil from contacting the dashboard because they may cause damage or discoloration.***

Radio

Radio Mode

Change Mode: [RADIO] button

- Plays Radio(FM/AM) mode. Each time the button is pressed, the radio mode popup will be displayed or closed.
- The radio mode popup will not be displayed when **[SETUP/CLOCK]** button ▶ [Display] ▶ [Mode Popup] is turned [Off].

Search Frequency: [SEEK/TRACK] button

Searches the previous/next broadcast frequencies.

- Shortly pressing the button: Searches broadcast frequencies.
- Frequency is controlled by 1 step quickly. When the button is released after pressing and holding, searches broadcast frequencies.

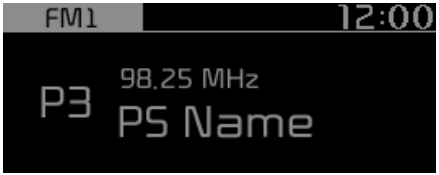
Change Frequency: TUNE knob

Changes frequency by turning the knob left/right. You can seek available frequencies manually.

Saved Frequency: [1] ~ [6] (Preset) buttons

- Shortly pressing the button: Plays the frequency saved in the corresponding button.
- Pressing and holding the button (more than 1.0 seconds): Saves the currently playing broadcast to the selected button and sound a BEEP.

FM/AM Mode



Displays Menu Popup when pressing the **[MENU]** button.

Traffic Announcement

TA(Traffic announcement) feature On/Off.

Presets

Displays saved presets.

Autostore

- Saves broadcasts with superior reception to **[1] ~ [6]** buttons.
- If no frequencies are received, then the most recently received frequency will be broadcast.

Scan

The broadcast frequency increases and previews each broadcast for 5 seconds each. After scanning all frequencies, returns and plays the current broadcast frequency.

Sound Settings

Moves to Sound settings.

Media

✻ NOTICE - Using MP3

Supported audio formats

Audio formats	WAVeform audio format
Compressed audio formats	MPEG1 Audio Layer3
	MPEG2 Audio Layer3
	MPEG2.5 Audio Layer3
	Windows Media Audio Ver 7.X & 8.X

✻ NOTICE

File formats that do not comply with the above formats may not be properly recognized or play without properly displaying file names or other information.

Range of supported file types

1. Bitrate range (Kbps)

	MPEG1	MPEG2	MPEG2.5	WMA
	Layer3	Layer3	Layer3	High Range
BIT RATE(kbps)	32	8	8	48
	40	16	16	64
	48	24	24	80
	56	32	32	96
	64	40	40	128
	80	48	48	160
	96	56	56	192
	112	64	64	
	128	80	80	
	160	96	96	
	192	112	112	
	224	128	128	
	256	144	144	
	320	160	160	

2. Bit Per Sample range (bit)

	WAV		
bit	PCM(Stereo)	IMA ADPCM	MS ADPCM
	24	4	4

3. Sampling frequency (Hz)

MPEG1	MPEG2	MPEG2.5	WMA	WAV
44100	22050	11025	32000	44100
48000	24000	12000	44100	48000
32000	16000	8000	48000	

- For MP3/WMA compression files and WAV file, differences in sound quality will occur depending on the bitrate. (Higher sound quality can be experienced with higher bitrates.)
- This device only recognizes files with MP3/WMA/WAV extensions. Other file extensions may not be properly recognized.

4. Maximum number of recognized folders and files
- Folder: 1,000 folders for USB
- File: 5,000 files for USB
- There are no limitations to the number of recognized folder levels

5. Text Display (Based on Unicode)
- Filenames: Maximum 40 English characters
- Foldernames: Maximum 40 English characters

✻ NOTICE

Using the scroll feature allows you to see the entire name of files with names that are too long to be displayed at once.

Language Support (Unicode Support)
- Korean: 2,604 characters
- English: 94 characters
- Common Chinese characters: 4,888 characters
- Special symbols: 986 characters

✻ NOTICE

Japanese/Simplified Chinese characters are not supported.

✻ NOTICE
- Using the USB Devices

- **Connect the USB device after turning on the engine. The USB device may become damaged if it is already connected when the ignition is turned on. The USB device may not operate properly if the car ignition is turned on or off with the USB device connected.**
- **Be careful for static electricity when connecting/disconnecting USB devices.**
- **Encoded MP3 Players will not be recognized when connected as an external device.**
- **When connecting an external USB device, the vehicle's audio system may not recognize the USB depending on what firmware is used by USB device or what files are on the USB.**
- **Only products formatted with byte/sectors under 64Kbyte will be recognized.**
- **This device recognizes USB devices formatted in FAT 12/16/32 file formats. This device does not recognize files in NTFS file format.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Some USB devices may not be supported due to compatibility issues.**
- **Avoid contact between the USB connector and bodily parts or foreign objects.**
- **Repeated connecting/disconnecting of USB devices within short periods of time may result in product malfunction.**
- **A strange noise may occur when disconnecting the USB.**
- **Make sure to connect/disconnect external USB devices with the audio power turned off.**
- **The amount of time required to recognize the USB device may differ depending on the type, size or file formats stored on the USB. Such differences in time are not indications of malfunctions.**
- **The vehicle audio system only supports USB devices designed to play music files.**
- **USB images and videos are not supported.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Do not use the USB interface to charge batteries or USB accessories that generate heat. Doing so may lead to worsened performance or damage to the audio system.**
- **The audio system may not recognize the USB device if separately purchased USB hubs and extension cables are being used. Connect the USB device directly with the USB port of the vehicle.**
- **When using mass storage USB devices with separate logical drives, only files saved to the root drive can be played.**
- **Files may not properly operate if application programs are installed on the USBs.**
- **The audio system may not operate normally if MP3 Players, mobile phones, digital cameras, or other electronic devices (USB devices not recognized as portable disk drives) are connected with the audio system.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Charging through the USB may not work for some mobile devices.**
- **The device may not support normal operation when using an atypical USB memory device (miniature, keychain, etc.). For best results, use a typical USB device that has a metal case.**
- **The device may not support normal operation when using formats such as HDD Type, CF, or SD Memory.**
- **The device will not support files locked by DRM (Digital Rights Management.).**
- **USB memory sticks used by connecting an Adaptor (SD Type or CF Type) may not be properly recognized.**
- **The device may not operate properly when using USB HDDs or USBs subject to connection failures caused by vehicle vibrations. (e.g. i-stick type)**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Avoid use of USB memory products that can also be used as key chains or mobile phone accessories. Use of such products may cause damage to the USB jack.**
- **Connecting an MP3 device or phone through various channels, such as AUX/BT or Audio/USB mode may result in pop noises or abnormal operation.**
- **Use USB 2.0 devices for better compatibility. Maximum device size supported is 32 GB.**

✻ NOTICE - Using an iPod®

- **iPod® is a registered trademark of Apple Inc.**
- **In order to use the iPod® with your vehicle's audio system, you must use a dedicated iPod® cable. (the cable that is supplied when purchasing iPod®/iPhone® products)**
- **If the iPod® is connected to the vehicle whilst it is playing, a high pitch sound could occur for approximately 1-2 seconds immediately after connecting. If possible, connect the iPod® to the vehicle with the iPod® stopped/paused.**
- **When the vehicle ignition is set to ACC or ON, connecting the iPod® through the iPod® cable will charge the iPod® through the car audio system.**
- **When connecting with the iPod® cable, make sure to fully insert the jack to prevent communication interference.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **When the Equalizer features of an external device, such as the iPod®, and the audio system are both active, Equalizer effects could overlap and cause sound deterioration and distortion. Whenever possible, turn off the Equalizer feature within the external device when it is connected to the audio system.**
- **Noise may occur when an iPod® or AUX device is connected. When such devices are not being used, disconnect the device for storage.**
- **When the iPod® or AUX device power is connected to the power jack, playing the external device may result in noise. In such cases, disconnect the power connection before use.**
- **Skipping or improper operation may occur depending on the characteristics of your iPod®/iPhone® device.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **If your iPhone® is connected to both the Bluetooth® and USB, the sound may not be properly played. In your iPhone®, select the Dock connector or Bluetooth® to change the sound output (source).**
- **iPod® mode cannot be operated when the iPod® cannot be recognized due to the playing of versions that do not support communication protocols, cases of iPod® abnormalities and defects.**
- **For fifth generation iPod® Nano devices, the iPod® may not be recognized when the battery level is low. Please charge the iPod® for use.**
- **The search/play orders shown within the iPod® device may differ from the orders shown within the audio system.**
- **If the iPod® malfunctions due to an iPod® device defect, reset the iPod® and try again. (To learn more, refer to your iPod® manual)**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Some iPod®s may not sync with the System depending on the version. If the Media is removed before the Media is recognized, then the system may not properly restore the previously operated mode. (iPad® charging is not supported.)**
- **Use an iPod® cable shorter than 1 meter in length such as the one originally supplied with a new iPod®, longer cables may lead to the audio system not recognizing the iPod®.**

✻ NOTICE

- Using Bluetooth® (BT) Audio

- **Bluetooth® Audio Mode can be used only when a Bluetooth® phone has been connected.**
- **Bluetooth® Audio Mode will not be available when connecting mobile phones that do not support this feature.**
- **If a Bluetooth® Phone is being used to play music and receives an incoming or outgoing phone call, then the music will stop.**
- **Moving the Track up/down whilst playing Bluetooth® audio mode may result in pop noises with some mobile phones.**
- **Bluetooth® streaming audio may not be supported in some mobile phones.**
- **When returning to Bluetooth® Audio mode after ending a call, the mode may not automatically restart in some mobile phones.**
- **Receiving an incoming call or making an outgoing call whilst playing Bluetooth® Audio may result in audio interference.**

Media Mode

Change Mode: [MEDIA] button

- Each time the button is pressed, the media mode popup will be displayed or closed.

  You can select a menu in the mode popup by using the **[1] ~ [6]** (Preset) buttons or **TUNE** knob.
- The media mode popup will not be displayed when **[SETUP/CLOCK]** button ▶ [Display] ▶ [Mode Popup] is turned [Off].
- If media device(USB, AUX) is connected, then it will automatically operate. Once it is disconnected, the previous mode will be restored.
- The Audio/BT Audio/AUX volume can also be controlled.

✻ NOTICE

When you connect an Apple device, playback does not start automatically.

Repeat: [1 RPT] button

Repeats the current song or repeats all songs within the current folder.

- iPod® mode: Repeat Song ➟ Repeat Off
- USB mode: Repeat Song ➟ Repeat Folder ➟ Off

Shuffle: [2 SHFL] button

Plays all songs within the current folder(category) or play all songs in random order.

- iPod® mode: Shuffle All ➟ Shuffle Off
- USB mode: Shuffle Folder ➟ Shuffle All ➟ Off

Change Song/File: [SEEK/TRACK] button

[∨ SEEK/TRACK] button

- Pressing the button: Plays the current song from the beginning.
- If the **[∨ SEEK/TRACK]** button is pressed again within 2 seconds, the previous song is played.
- Pressing and holding the button (more than 1.0 seconds): Rewinds the song.

[SEEK/TRACK ∧] button

- Shortly pressing the button: Plays the next song.
- Pressing and holding the button (more than 1.0 seconds): Fast-forwards the song.

✻ NOTICE

- **AUX and BT Audio don't support Rewind/Fast-forward feature.**
- **Changing the previous/next song may not be supported in some Bluetooth® devices.**

Search Song: TUNE knob

- Turning **TUNE** knob: Searches for songs(files).
- Pressing **TUNE** knob: Plays selected song(file).

✻ NOTICE

- **BT Audio, iPod® and AUX don't support playlist feature.**
- **In iPod® Mode, song (file) lists are not supported if music is played using the Music application after connecting the iPod®.**
- **Whilst BT Audio is playing, pressing the TUNE knob plays and pauses the current song.**

Search Folder: [FOLDER] button

Searches the previous/next folder. (USB)

✻ NOTICE

If a folder is selected by pressing the TUNE knob, the first file within the selected folder will be played.

USB

Displays Menu Popup when pressing the **[MENU]** button.

List

Moves to the list screen.

Information

Displays information of the current song.

Sound Settings

Moves to Sound settings.

iPod®

Displays Menu Popup when pressing the **[MENU]** button.

List

Moves to the list screen.

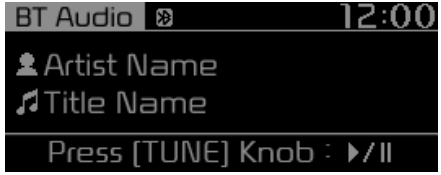
Information

Displays information of the current song.

Sound Settings

Moves to Sound settings.

Bluetooth® (BT) Audio



Displays Menu Popup when pressing the **[MENU]** button.

Sound Settings

Moves to Sound settings.

✻ NOTICE

- **Depending on the connected Bluetooth device, mobile phone, or the music player you are using, playback controls may differ.**
- **Depending on the music player you are using, streaming may not be supported.**
- **Audio may not automatically start playing in some Bluetooth® devices. If the music in the Bluetooth® device is not played after changing to audio streaming mode, press the TUNE knob. Check if the music is playing in the Bluetooth® device after changing to audio streaming mode.**
- **Audio streaming may not be supported for some Bluetooth® devices.**
- **If Bluetooth® device is disconnected, BT Audio is ended.**
- **Bluetooth® connection is required to use BT Audio. Refer to the Bluetooth® manual for more information.**

AUX

Displays Menu Popup when pressing the **[MENU]** button.

Sound Settings

Moves to Sound settings.

✻ NOTICE

- **AUX mode can be used only when an external audio player has been connected.**
- **If only a cable is connected to the AUX without an external device, the mode will be changed to AUX, but noise may occur. When an external device is not being used, remove the connector jack.**
- **When the external device power is connected to the power jack, playing the external device may output noise. In such cases, disconnect the power connection before use.**

Phone

✻ NOTICE

- Using Bluetooth® (BT) Phone

What is Bluetooth® Wireless Technology?

- Bluetooth® refers to a short-distance wireless networking technology which uses a 2.45GHz frequency to connect various devices within a certain distance.
- Supported within PCs, external devices, Bluetooth® phones, PDAs, various electronic devices, and automotive environments, Bluetooth® to be transmitted at high speeds without having to use a connector cable.
- Bluetooth® Handsfree refers to a device which allows the user to conveniently make phone calls with Bluetooth® devices through the Multimedia system.
- The Bluetooth® Handsfree feature may not be supported in some Bluetooth® devices.

⚠ WARNING

- Distracted Driving

- **Focus on the road whilst driving. The driver's primary responsibility is in the safe and legal operation of the vehicle. Drivers should not use any hand held devices or other equipment or vehicle systems that distract the driver during vehicle operation.**
- **Do not stare at the multimedia screen for long periods of time whilst driving. Staring at the screen for prolonged periods of time can lead to traffic accidents and can result in personal injuries.**
- **Pairing Bluetooth® devices and use of other Bluetooth® features are not supported when the vehicle is in motion. For safety, please first park your vehicle.**

⚠ CAUTION
- For Safe Driving

- ***Bluetooth® is a feature that enables drivers to make handsfree calls. Connecting the head unit with a Bluetooth® phone allows the user to conveniently make calls, receive calls, and manage the phonebook. Before using Bluetooth®, carefully read the contents of this user's manual.***
- ***Excessive use or operations whilst driving may lead to negligent driving practices and be the cause of accidents. Do not operate the device excessively whilst driving.***
- ***Viewing the screen for prolonged periods of time is dangerous and may lead to accidents. When driving, view the screen only for short periods of time.***

⚠ CAUTION
- For Connecting a Bluetooth® Phone

- ***Before connecting the head unit with the Bluetooth® device, check to see that the mobile device supports Bluetooth® features.***
- ***Even if the mobile device supports Bluetooth®, the device will not be found during device searches if the device has been set to hidden state or the Bluetooth® power is turned off. Disable the hidden state or turn on the Bluetooth® power prior to searching/connecting with the head unit.***
- ***If a Bluetooth® device becomes disconnected due to being out of communication range, turning the device OFF, or a Bluetooth® communication error, corresponding Bluetooth® devices are automatically searched and reconnected.***

(Continued)

(Continued)

- ***If you do not want automatic connection with your Bluetooth® device, turn the Bluetooth® feature off in the Bluetooth® device.***
- ***Only one Bluetooth® device can be connected at a time.***
- ***Bluetooth® connection may become intermittently disconnected in some Bluetooth® devices. Follow these steps to try again.***

1. ***Turn the Bluetooth® function within the Bluetooth® device OFF/ON and try again.***
2. ***Turn the Bluetooth® device power OFF/ON and try again.***
3. ***Completely remove the Bluetooth® device battery, reboot, and then again.***
4. ***Reboot the Multimedia System and try again.***
5. ***Delete all paired devices from both of Bluetooth® device and Head Unit sides and then try again.***

⚠ CAUTION
- Upon Using Bluetooth® Phone

- ***If the Bluetooth® device is not connected, it is not possible to enter Phone mode. After connecting your Bluetooth® device to your car, use the Bluetooth® features.***
- ***You will not be able to use the handsfree feature when your phone is outside of the mobile service area (e.g. in a tunnel, in a underground, in a mountainous area, etc.).***
- ***If the mobile phone signal is poor or the vehicles interior noise is too loud, it may be difficult to hear the other person's voice during a call.***
- ***Do not place the Bluetooth® device near or inside metallic objects, otherwise communications with Bluetooth® system or mobile service stations can be disturbed.***

(Continued)

(Continued)

- ***Placing the audio system within an electromagnetic environment may result in noise interference.***
- ***Some Bluetooth® devices may cause interference noise or malfunction to audio system. In this case, store the device in a different location may resolve the condition.***
- ***Whilst a device is connected through Bluetooth®, your device may discharge quicker than usual for additional Bluetooth®-related operations.***
- ***The handsfree call volume and quality may differ depending on the Bluetooth® device.***

(Continued)

(Continued)

- ***If Connection Priority is set upon vehicle ignition (IGN/ACC ON), the Bluetooth® device will be automatically connected. Even if you are outside, the Bluetooth® device will be automatically connected once you are in the vicinity of the vehicle. If you do not want to automatically connect your Bluetooth® device, turn off the Bluetooth® feature in your Bluetooth® device.***
- ***In some Bluetooth® devices, starting the ignition whilst talking through Bluetooth® enabled handsfree call will result in the call becoming disconnected due to car handsfree call transfer. If you use your phone outside the vehicle, turn off the Bluetooth® feature in your phone.***

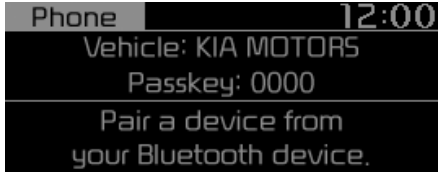
✻ NOTICE
- Bluetooth® specifications
- **Aerial power: Max 3 mW**
- **Frequency range: 2400 to 2483.5 MHz**

Bluetooth® Connection

Before you can use the Bluetooth® feature, you must first pair/connect your Bluetooth® device to your car.

Pairing a new device

- Press the **[PHONE]** button in the head unit or **[CALL]** button in the steering wheel remote control.
- Press the **[SETUP/CLOCK]** button ▶ Select [Phone] ▶ Select [Add New Device].



In your Bluetooth® device,

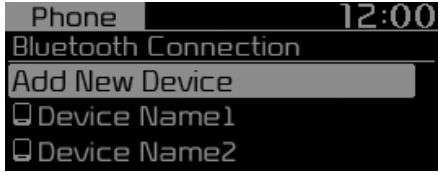
1. Pair your car after your Bluetooth® device detects the Bluetooth® device.
2. Enter the passkey(0000) or accept the authorization popup.
3. Connect Bluetooth®.

✻ NOTICE

- **Up to 5 Bluetooth® devices can be paired.**
- **The default passkey is 0000.**
- **During a Bluetooth® device connection, another device cannot be paired.**
- **The vehicle name above is an example. Check the actual information on the product.**
- **Pairing and connecting a Bluetooth® enabled Bluetooth® device will work only when the Bluetooth® option within your Bluetooth® device has been turned on. (Methods of turning on the Bluetooth® enabled feature may differ depending on the Bluetooth® device.)**
- **After pairing is complete, a contacts download request is sent to the Bluetooth® device. Some Bluetooth® devices may require confirmation upon receiving a download request. Ensure your Bluetooth® device accepts the connection. Refer to your phone's user manual for additional information regarding phone pairing and connections.**

Connecting Bluetooth® devices

Press the **[PHONE]** button in the head unit or **[CALL]** button in the steering wheel remote control ▶ Select the name of the device to connect ▶ Connect Bluetooth®.



✻ NOTICE

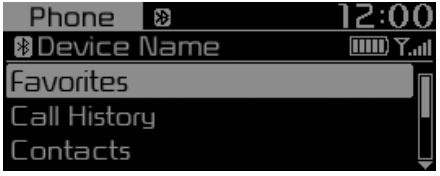
- **Only one Bluetooth® device can be connected at a time.**
- **Bluetooth® features supported within the vehicle are as follows. Some features may not be supported depending on your Bluetooth® device.**
  - **Outgoing/Incoming Handsfree calls**
  - **Operations during a call: Switch to Private, Switch to call waiting, Microphone on/off**
  - **Downloading Call history**
  - **Downloading Contacts**
  - **Bluetooth® device Auto Connection**
  - **Bluetooth® Audio streaming**

Bluetooth® Phone

Bluetooth® Phone

Press the **[PHONE]** button.

Displays Phone Menu screen. The connected device name is displayed in the top of the display.



- : Call signal strength indicator
- : Battery level of the Bluetooth® devices connected

Favorites

Press the **[PHONE]** button ▶ Select [Favorites].

Lists the phone numbers saved as favorites. Select from the list to dial the number.

Displays Menu Popup when pressing the **[MENU]** button.

- Add New Favorites: Adds a phone number to favorites.
- Delete Items: Deletes numbers that you select from favorites.
- Delete All: Deletes all of the numbers from favorites.

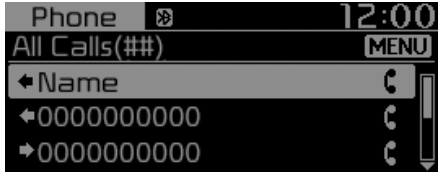
✻ NOTICE

- **Up to 20 favorites can be saved in favorites of each device.**
- **Downloading favorites in your Bluetooth® device does not be supported.**
- **To save favorite, contacts should be downloaded.**
- **Contact saved in favorites will not be automatically updated if the contact has been updated in the phone. To update favorites, delete the favorite and create a new favorite.**

Call history

Press the **[PHONE]** button ▶ Select [Call History].

Displays all of your call history. Select from the list to dial the number.



Displays Menu Popup when pressing the **[MENU]** button.

- Download: Downloads the call history information from your Bluetooth® device.
- All Calls: Lists the all call history.
- Dialed Calls: Lists the calls that you made.
- Received Calls Lists the calls that you have received.
- Missed Calls: Lists the calls you missed.

✻ NOTICE

- **Call history may not be saved in the call history list in some Bluetooth® devices.**
- **Calls from restricted ID's are not saved in the call history list.**
- **Up to 50 calls can be added in each dialed calls/Received calls/Missed calls list.**
- **The durations of each dialed/received call are not displayed in your car's call history list.**
- **Whilst the call history download is in progress, the status bar displays an icon ( ).**
- **If the call history download is turned off on the Bluetooth® device, the call history download will fail.**
- **Some devices require a device authentication for downloading your call history. If download fails, check if the Bluetooth® settings or display status are normal.**

Contacts

Press the **[PHONE]** button ▶ Select [Contacts].

Displays the list of Contacts. Select from the list to dial the number.

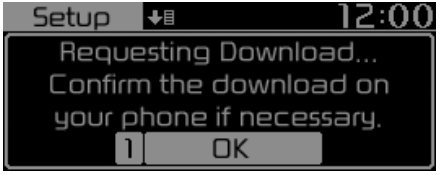
Displays Menu Popup when pressing the **[MENU]** button.

- Download: Downloads contacts from your Bluetooth® device.

Requesting download

Some devices require a device authentication for downloading your call history and contacts.

If download fails, check the Bluetooth® device settings or the screen state.



✻ NOTICE

- **Only supported contacts format can be downloaded and displayed from the Bluetooth device, contacts from some applications will not be included.**
- **Up to 2000 phone numbers can be downloaded from a single, paired Bluetooth® device.**
- **You cannot edit or delete downloaded phone numbers from your car.**
- **Contacts can be viewed only when the Bluetooth® device is connected.**
- **Even if the Bluetooth® device is disconnected, the downloaded data will remain. (Note that deleting a paired device will also delete all downloaded Contacts and call history data)**
- **Downloaded phone numbers may be lost depending on the condition of the head unit. Keep your important data in a safe place.**
- **The status bar displays a ( ) whilst downloading contacts.**

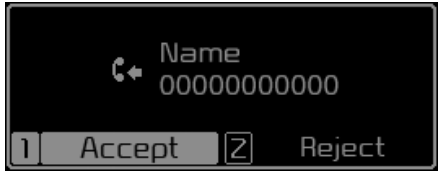
(Continued)

(Continued)

- **The download will not be available if the contacts download function is turned off on your Bluetooth® device.**
- **Phone contact names should be saved in English or they may not be displayed correctly.**
- **The time of contacts/call history download may differ depending on the Bluetooth® devices.**
- **Some devices require a device authentication for downloading your contacts. If download fails, check your phone screen and confirm the download if necessary.**

Accept/Reject Call

If there is an incoming call, a popup message will appear.



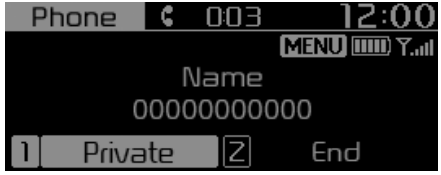
- To answer the incoming call, select [Accept] on the screen or press the **[CALL]** button on the steering wheel remote control.
- To reject the call, select [Reject] on the screen or press the **[END]** button on the steering wheel remote control.

✻ NOTICE

In some Bluetooth® devices, the caller's number may not be displayed, and the Reject feature may not be supported.

Using the Menu During a Phone Call

When making a call, you can use the following menu items.



(1) Private: Switches a voice call from the car Hands-free to the Bluetooth® device.

(2) End: Ends a call.

Displays Menu Popup when pressing the **[MENU]** button.

- Outgoing Volume: Displays the Mic Volume settings. You can adjust the in-call volume that the other party hears (level 1 - 5).

✻ NOTICE

- **Up to 2000 phone numbers can be downloaded from a single, paired Bluetooth® device.**
- **If the caller's number is listed in Contacts, the caller's name will be displayed. Otherwise, only the number will be displayed. In some Bluetooth® devices, the phone number may not be displayed.**
- **In some Bluetooth® devices, the Use Private feature may not be supported.**
- **In some Bluetooth® devices, the Switch feature may not be supported.**
- **The phone number may not be properly displayed in some Bluetooth® devices.**
- **During a phone call on a Bluetooth® Handsfree, you cannot access other modes, such as Radio and Setup.**
- **Depending on handset types, the in-call volume the other party hears may differ. If the other party hears your voice too low or too loud, adjust the mic volume.**

Phone settings

Press the **[PHONE]** button ▶ Select [Phone settings].

- Moves to a screen of Phone settings. Refer to [Setup] ▶ [Phone] manual for more information.

Setup

Display

Press the **[SETUP/CLOCK]** button ▶ Select [Display].

- Media Display: When playing an MP3 file, select the desired display info from [Folder/File] or [Artist/Title/Album].
- Mode Popup: During [On] state, press the **[RADIO]** or **[MEDIA]** button to display the mode change popup.
- Text Scroll: If MP3 file name is too long to display, the file name is scrolled from right to left.
  - Title name on USB/iPod®/BT Audio Screen.
  - Focused File/Folder name on play list.
  - Focused Contacts name on Call history/Contacts/Favourites list.
  - Focused vehicle name on Paired devices, Delete devices, Connection priority settings list.

Sound

Press the **[SETUP/CLOCK]** button ▶ Select [Sound].

- Position: Selects the sound position.
- Tone: Selects the sound tone.
- Speed Dependent Vol.: Controls the volume level automatically according to the speed of the vehicle.

Date/Time

Press the **[SETUP/CLOCK]** button ▶ Select [Date/Time].

- Set Time: Adjusts the number currently in focus to set the [hour], and press the **TUNE** knob to set the [minute] and [AM/PM].
- Time Format: Sets the 12/24 hour time format of the audio system.
- Set Date: Adjusts the number currently in focus to make the settings and press the **TUNE** knob to move to the next settings.
- Display(Power OFF): Displays time/date on screen when the audio system turns power off.

Phone

Add new device

Press the **[SETUP/CLOCK]** button ▶ Select [Phone] ▶ Select [Add New Device].

- The following steps are the same as those described in the section [Pairing a new device] on the previous page.

Connect/Disconnect device

Press the **[SETUP/CLOCK]** button ▶ Select [Phone] ▶ Select [Paired Devices].

- Displays the paired Bluetooth® device list. From the paired device list, select the device you want to connect or disconnect.

✻ NOTICE

- **Displays the icons when Bluetooth® device is connected.**
  : An icon appears when you make a Bluetooth® Audio connection.
  : An icon appears when you make a Bluetooth® Handsfree connection.
- **Only one Bluetooth® device can be connected at a time.**
- **Bluetooth® Handsfree and Bluetooth® Audio functions are supported. Handsfree and audio-supported devices, such as a Bluetooth® smartphone or audio, will function normally.**
- **If the system is not stable due to a vehicle-Bluetooth® device communication error, delete the paired device on each device and pair/connect the Bluetooth® device again.**

Delete devices

Press the **[SETUP/CLOCK]** button ▶ Select [Phone] ▶ Select [Delete Devices].

- Displays the paired Bluetooth® device list. When selecting from the list, the device is deleted.

✻ NOTICE

- **When you delete a paired device, the Call history and Contacts stored in the head unit are also deleted.**
- **To re-use a deleted device, you must pair the device again.**

Connection priority

Press the **[SETUP/CLOCK]** button ▶ Select [Phone] ▶ Select [Connection Priority].

- Select the device to want to set the connection priority of paired devices.
- If “None” is chosen, the Bluetooth® system will try to connect to the last connected device, then to all paired devices.

✻ NOTICE

- **When the engine is running, the selected Bluetooth® device is automatically connected. If you fail to connect the selected device, the previously-connected device is automatically connected, and if it also fails, then it tries to connect all paired devices sequentially.**
- **Depending on auto connection priority, connection to a device may take time.**
- **If a Bluetooth® device becomes disconnected due to being out of communication range, turning the device OFF, or a Bluetooth® communication error, corresponding Bluetooth® devices are automatically searched and reconnected.**
- **Even if you are outside, the Bluetooth® device will be automatically connected once you are in the vicinity of the vehicle. If you do not want to automatically connect your Bluetooth® device, turn off the Bluetooth® feature in your Bluetooth® device.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **In some Bluetooth® devices, starting the ignition whilst talking through Bluetooth® enabled handsfree call will result in the call becoming disconnected due to car handsfree call transfer. If you use your phone outside the vehicle, turn off the Bluetooth® feature in your phone.**

Language

Press the **[SETUP/CLOCK]** button ▶ Select [Language].

- Changes the display language.

Display Off

Press the **[SETUP/CLOCK]** button ▶ Select [Display Off].

- Audio operation is maintained and only the screen will be turned Off. In the Screen Off state, press any button to turn the Screen On again.

Declaration of Conformity

RCM for Australia

Driving your vehicle

Before driving 6-5
- Before entering vehicle 6-5
- Necessary inspections 6-5
- Before starting 6-5

Key positions 6-7
- Ignition switch position 6-7
- Starting the engine 6-8
- Stopping the petrol engine/ diesel engine (Manual Transmission) 6-11

ENGINE START/STOP button 6-12
- Illuminated engine start/stop button 6-12
- Engine start/stop button position 6-12
- Starting the engine 6-15
- Stopping the petrol engine/ diesel engine (Manual Transmission) 6-18

ISG (Idle Stop and Go) system 6-19
- Auto stop 6-19
- Auto start 6-20
- Condition of ISG system operation 6-21
- ISG system deactivation 6-22
- ISG system malfunction 6-22

Manual Transmission 6-24
- Manual transmission operation 6-24
- Good driving practices 6-26

Automatic transmission 6-28
- Automatic transmission operation 6-28
- Good driving practices 6-35

Dual clutch transmission operation 6-37
- Dual clutch transmission operation 6-37
- LCD display for transmission temperature and warning message 6-39
- Good driving practices 6-50

Brake system 6-52
- Power brakes 6-52
- Parking brake 6-54
- Anti-lock brake system (ABS) 6-57
- Electronic Stability Control (ESC) 6-59
- Hill-start assist control (HAC) 6-64
- Vehicle stability management (VSM) 6-64
- ESS : Emergency Stop Signal 6-66
- Good braking practices 6-66
- Function setting and activation 6-68

Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA) (Camera type) 6-68
- FCA warning message and function control 6-70
- Brake operation 6-71
- FCA front view camera sensor 6-72
- Function malfunction 6-73
- Limitation of the function 6-75
- Function setting and activation 6-80

Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA) (Sensor fusion) 6-80
• FCA warning message and function control 6-82
• Brake operation 6-83
• Sensor to detect the distance from the vehicle in front (front camera/radar) 6-84
• Function malfunction 6-86
• Limitation of the system 6-87
• Recognizing pedestrians 6-91
Lane Keeping Assist (LKA). 6-93
• LKA Operation 6-94
• Warning light and message 6-97
• Driver's attention. 6-99
Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist-lane-change oncoming function (FCA) 6-101
• Function operation 6-101
• Warning message and function control. 6-102
• Limitations of the function 6-102
Drive mode integrated control 6-103
Blind-spot collision warning (BCW) 6-107
• BCW (Blind-Spot Collision Warning). 6-108
• Rear Cross-Traffic Collision Warning (RCCW) . . 6-112
• Driver's Attention 6-114
Driver attention warning (DAW) 6-116
• Function setting and activation 6-116
• Resetting the function 6-118
• Function standby 6-118
• Function malfunction 6-119
Cruise Control (CC). 6-121
• Cruise Control switch 6-122
• To set Cruise Control speed 6-123
• To increase Cruise Control set speed 6-124
• To decrease the cruising speed. 6-125
• To temporarily accelerate with Cruise Control on . . 6-125
• To cancel Cruise Control, do one of the following. . 6-125
• To resume cruising speed at more than approximately 30 km/h (20 mph) 6-126
• To turn Cruise Control off, do one of the following. 6-126
• Speed limit control switch 6-127
• To set speed limit 6-127
Speed limit control 6-127
• To turn off the speed limit control, do one of the following 6-129
Smart Cruise Control (SCC). 6-131
• Smart Cruise Control switch 6-133
• Smart Cruise Control speed. 6-133
• Vehicle distance setting 6-139
• To adjust the sensitivity of Smart Cruise Control . . 6-143
• To convert to Cruise Control mode. 6-144
• Limitations of the function. 6-144

Economical operation 6-150
- Hazardous driving conditions 6-152
- Rocking the vehicle 6-152

Special driving conditions 6-152
- Smooth cornering 6-153
- Driving at night 6-154
- Driving in the rain. 6-154
- Driving in flooded areas 6-155
- Driving off-road. 6-155
- Highway driving 6-155

Winter driving 6-157
- Summer tyres 6-157
- Snowy or icy conditions 6-157
- Use high quality ethylene glycol coolant. 6-160
- Check battery and cables 6-160
- Change to "winter weight" oil if necessary 6-160
- Check spark plugs and ignition system. 6-160
- To keep locks from freezing 6-161
- Use approved window washer anti-freeze in system 6-161
- Don't let your parking brake freeze 6-161
- Don't let ice and snow accumulate underneath . . . 6-161
- Carry emergency equipment 6-161

Trailer Towing (For Australia and New Zealand). 6-162
- Hitches 6-164
- Safety chains 6-164
- Trailer brakes 6-165
- Driving with a trailer 6-165
- Maintenance when trailer towing 6-169
- If you do decide to pull a trailer 6-170

Vehicle weight. 6-173
- Base kerb weight 6-173
- Vehicle kerb weight. 6-173
- Cargo weight 6-173
- GAW (Gross axle weight) 6-173
- GAWR (Gross axle weight rating). 6-173
- GVW (Gross vehicle weight) 6-173
- GVWR (Gross vehicle weight rating) 6-173
- Overloading 6-173
- Loading Your Vehicle - For Australia 6-174

⚠ WARNING - ENGINE EXHAUST CAN BE DANGEROUS!

Engine exhaust fumes can be extremely dangerous. If, at any time, you smell exhaust fumes inside the vehicle, open the windows immediately.

- **Do not inhale exhaust fumes.**

  Exhaust fumes contain carbon monoxide, a colourless, odourless gas that can cause unconsciousness and death by asphyxiation.

- **Be sure the exhaust system does not leak.**

  The exhaust system should be checked whenever the vehicle is raised to change the oil or for any other purpose. If you hear a change in the sound of the exhaust or if you drive over something that strikes the underneath side of the vehicle, have the system checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

- **Do not run the engine in an enclosed area.**

  Letting the engine idle in your garage, even with the garage door open, is a hazardous practice. Never run the engine in your garage any longer than it takes to start the engine and back the car out.

- **Avoid idling the engine for prolonged periods with people inside the car.**

  If it is necessary to idle the engine for a prolonged period with people inside the car, be sure to do so only in an open area with the air intake set at "Fresh" and fan operating at one of the higher speeds so fresh air is drawn into the interior.

If you must drive with the trunk lid open because you are carrying objects that make this necessary:

1. Close all windows.
2. Open side vents.
3. Set the air intake control at "Fresh", the air flow control at "Floor" or "Face" and the fan at one of the higher speeds.

To assure proper operation of the ventilation system, be sure the ventilation air intakes located just in front of the windscreen are kept clear of snow, ice, leaves or other obstructions.

BEFORE DRIVING

Before entering vehicle

- Be sure that all windows, outside mirror(s), and outside lights are clean.
- Check the condition of the tyres.
- Check under the vehicle for any sign of leaks.
- Be sure there are no obstacles behind you if you intend to back up.

Necessary inspections

Fluid levels, such as engine oil, engine coolant, brake fluid, and washer fluid should be checked on a regular basis, with the exact interval depending on the fluid. Further details are provided in chapter 8, “Maintenance”.

⚠ WARNING

Driving whilst distracted can result in a loss of vehicle control, that may lead to an accident, severe personal injury, and death. The driver's primary responsibility is in the safe and legal operation of a vehicle, and use of any handheld devices, other equipment, or vehicle systems which take the driver's eyes, attention and focus away from the safe operation of a vehicle or which are not permissible by law should never be used during operation of the vehicle.

Before starting

- Close and lock all doors.
- Position the seat so that all controls are easily reached.
- Adjust the inside and outside rearview mirrors.
- Be sure that all lights work.
- Check all gauges.
- Check the operation of warning lights when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position.
- Release the parking brake and make sure the brake warning light goes out.

For safe operation, be sure you are familiar with your vehicle and its equipment.

⚠ WARNING

All passengers must be properly belted whenever the vehicle is moving. Refer to "Seat belts" in chapter 3 for more information on their proper use.

⚠ WARNING

Always check the surrounding areas near your vehicle for people, especially children, before putting a car into D (Drive) or R (Reverse).

⚠ WARNING

- Driving under the influence of alcohol or drugs

Drinking and driving is dangerous. Drunk driving is the number one contributor to the highway death toll each year. Even a small amount of alcohol will affect your reflexes, perceptions and judgment. Driving whilst under the influence of drugs is as dangerous or more dangerous than driving drunk.

You are much more likely to have a serious accident if you drink or take drugs and drive.

If you are drinking or taking drugs, don't drive. Do not ride with a driver who has been drinking or taking drugs. Choose a designated driver or call a cab.

⚠ WARNING

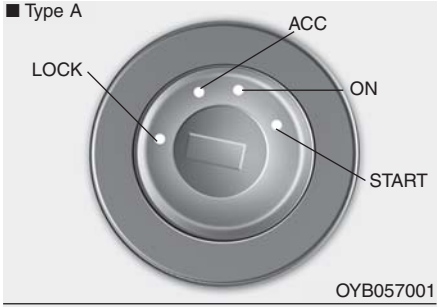
- **When you intend to park or stop the vehicle with the engine on, be careful not to depress the accelerator pedal for a long period of time. It may overheat the engine or exhaust system and cause fire.**
- **When you make a sudden stop or turn the steering wheel rapidly, loose objects may drop on the floor and it could interfere with the operation of the foot pedals, possibly causing an accident. Keep all things in the vehicle safely stored.**
- **If you do not focus on driving, it may cause an accident. Be careful when operating what may disturb driving such as audio or heater. It is the responsibility of the driver to always drive safely.**

KEY POSITIONS

Ignition switch position

LOCK

■ Type A



OYB057001

■ Type B

OYB056068

The steering wheel locks to protect against theft. The ignition key can be removed only in the LOCK position.

ACC (Accessory)

The steering wheel is unlocked and electrical accessories are operative.

✻ NOTICE

If difficulty is experienced turning the ignition switch to the ACC position, turn the key whilst turning the steering wheel right and left to release the tension.

ON

The warning lights can be checked before the engine is started. This is the normal running position after the engine is started.

Do not leave the ignition switch ON if the engine is not running to prevent battery discharge.

START

Turn the ignition switch to the START position to start the engine. The engine will crank until you release the key; then it returns to the ON position. The brake warning light can be checked in this position.

⚠ WARNING - Ignition switch

- **Never turn the ignition switch to LOCK or ACC whilst the vehicle is moving. This would result in loss of directional control and braking function, which could cause an accident.**
- **The anti-theft steering column lock is not a substitute for the parking brake. Before leaving the driver's seat, always make sure the shift lever is engaged in 1st gear for the manual transmission, set the parking brake fully and shut the engine off. Unexpected and sudden vehicle movement may occur if these precautions are not taken.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Never reach for the ignition switch, or any other controls through the steering wheel whilst the vehicle is in motion. The presence of your hand or arm in this area could cause a loss of vehicle control, an accident and serious bodily injury or death.**
- **Do not place any movable objects around the driver's seat as they may move whilst driving, interfere with the driver and lead to an accident.**

Starting the engine

⚠ WARNING

- **Always wear appropriate shoes when operating your vehicle. Unsuitable shoes (high heels, ski boots,etc.) may interfere with your ability to use the brake and accelerator pedal, and the clutch (if equipped).**
- **Do not start the vehicle with the accelerator pedal depressed. The vehicle can move and lead to an accident.**
- **Wait until the engine rpm is normal. The vehicle may suddenly move if the brake pedal is released when the rpm is high.**

Starting the petrol engine

1. Make sure the parking brake is applied.
2. **Manual Transmission -** Depress the clutch pedal fully and shift the transmission into Neutral. Keep the clutch pedal and brake pedal depressed whilst turning the ignition switch to the start position.

   Automatic transmission / Dual clutch transmission - Place the transmission shift lever in P (Park). Depress the brake pedal fully.

   You can also start the engine when the shift lever is in the N (Neutral) position.
3. Turn the ignition switch to START and hold it there until the engine starts (a maximum of 10 seconds), then release the key.

It should be started ***without depressing the accelerator pedal.***

4. Do not wait for the engine to warm up whilst the vehicle remains stationary. Start driving at moderate engine speeds. (Steep accelerating and decelerating should be avoided.)

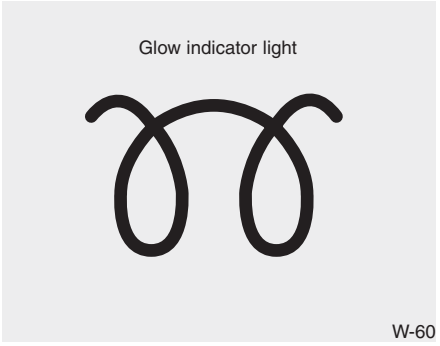
Starting the diesel engine

To start the diesel engine when the engine is cold, it has to be pre-heated before starting the engine and then have to be warmed up before starting to drive.

1. Make sure the parking brake is applied.
2. **Manual Transmission** - Depress the clutch pedal fully and shift the transmission into Neutral. Keep the clutch pedal and brake pedal depressed whilst pressing the engine start/stop button to the START position.

   Automatic Transmission / Dual clutch transmission - Place the transmission shift lever in P (Park). Depress the brake pedal fully.

   You can also start the engine when the shift lever is in the N (Neutral) position.



W-60

3. Turn the ignition switch to the ON position to pre-heat the engine. Then the glow indicator light will illuminate.
4. If the glow indicator light goes out, turn the ignition switch to the START position and hold it there until the engine starts (a maximum of 10 seconds), then release the key.

✻ NOTICE

If the engine does not start within 10 seconds after the preheating is completed, turn the ignition key once more to the LOCK position for 10 seconds, and then to the ON position, in order to preheat again.

Starting and stopping the engine for turbocharger intercooler

1. Do not race or accelerate the engine immediately after starting.

   If the engine is cold, idle for several seconds before sufficient lubrication is ensured in the turbocharger unit.
2. After high speed or extended driving, requiring a heavy engine load, idle the engine about 1 minute before turning it off.

   This idle time will allow the turbocharger to cool prior to shutting the engine off.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not turn the engine off immediately after it has been subjected to a heavy load. Doing so may cause severe damage to the engine or turbocharger unit.

⚠ CAUTION

If the engine stalls whilst you are in motion, do not attempt to move the shift lever to the P (Park) position. If traffic and road conditions permit, you may put the shift lever in the N (Neutral) position whilst the vehicle is still moving and turn the ignition switch to the START position in an attempt to restart the engine.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Do not engage the starter for more than 10 seconds. If the engine stalls or fails to start, wait 5 to 10 seconds before re-engaging the starter. Improper use of the starter may damage it.***
- ***Do not turn the ignition switch to the START position with the engine running. It may damage the starter.***

Stopping the petrol engine/ diesel engine (Manual Transmission)

1. Make sure the vehicle is completely stopped and keep the clutch pedal and brake pedal depressed.
2. Shift the transmission into Neutral whilst depressing the clutch pedal and brake pedal.
3. Engage the parking brake whilst depressing the brake pedal.
4. Turn the ignition key to the LOCK position and remove it.

ENGINE START/STOP BUTTON (IF EQUIPPED)

Illuminated engine start/stop button

OBD058001R

Whenever the front door is opened, the engine start/stop button will illuminate for your convenience. The light will go off after about 30 seconds when the door is closed. It will also go off immediately when the theft-alarm system is armed.

Engine start/stop button position

OFF

With manual transmission

To turn off the engine (START/RUN position) or vehicle power (ON position), stop the vehicle then press the engine start/stop button.

With automatic transmission / dual clutch transmission

To turn off the engine (START/RUN position) or vehicle power (ON position), press the engine start/stop button with the shift lever in the P (Park) position. When you press the engine start/stop button without the shift lever in the P (Park) position, the engine start/stop button will not change to the OFF position but to the ACC position.

Vehicles equipped with anti-theft steering column lock

The steering wheel locks when the engine start/stop button is in the OFF position to protect you against theft.

It locks when the door is opened.

If the steering wheel is not locked properly when you open the driver's door, the warning chime will sound. Try locking the steering wheel again. If the problem is not solved, have the system checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

In addition, if the engine start/stop button is in the OFF position after the driver's door is opened, the steering wheel will not lock and the warning chime will sound. In such a situation, close the door. Then the steering wheel will lock and the warning chime will stop.

✻ NOTICE

If the steering wheel doesn't unlock properly, the engine start/stop button will not work. Press the engine start/stop button whilst turning the steering wheel right and left to release the tension.

✻ NOTICE

You are able to turn off the engine (START/RUN) or vehicle power (ON), only when the vehicle is not in motion.

⚠ CAUTION

In an emergency situation whilst the vehicle is in motion, you are able to turn the engine off and to the ACC position by pressing the engine start/stop button for more than 2 seconds or 3 times successively within 3 seconds.

If the vehicle is still moving, to restart the vehicle:

- ***Manual transmission - Press the engine start/stop button with shift lever in neutral and clutch pedal depressed.***
- ***Automatic transmission / Dual clutch transmission - Press the engine start/stop button when vehicle speed is 5 km/h or over.***

ACC(Accessory)

OJF058312

With manual transmission

Press the engine start/stop button when the button is in the OFF position without depressing the clutch pedal.

With automatic transmission / dual clutch transmission

Press the engine start/stop button whilst it is in the OFF position without depressing the brake pedal.

The steering wheel unlocks and electrical accessories are operational.

If the engine start/stop button is in the ACC position for more than 1 hour, the button is turned off automatically to prevent battery discharge.

ON

With manual transmission

Press the engine start/stop button when the button is in the ACC position without depressing the clutch pedal.

With automatic transmission / dual clutch transmission

Press the engine start/stop button whilst it is in the ACC position without depressing the brake pedal.

The warning lights can be checked before the engine is started. Do not leave the engine start/stop button in the ON position for a long time. The battery may discharge, because the engine is not running.

START/RUN

With manual transmission

To start the engine, depress the clutch pedal and brake pedal, then press the engine start/stop button with the shift lever in the N (Neutral) position.

With automatic transmission / dual clutch transmission

To start the engine, depress the brake pedal and press the engine start/stop button with the shift lever in the P (Park) or the N (Neutral) position. For your safety, start the engine with the shift lever in the P (Park) position.

✻ NOTICE

If you press the engine start/stop button without depressing the clutch pedal for manual transmission vehicles or without depressing the brake pedal for automatic transmission / dual clutch transmission vehicles, the engine will not start and the engine start/stop button changes as follow:
OFF ➔ACC ➔ ON ➔ OFF or ACC

✻ NOTICE

If you leave the engine start/stop button in the ACC or ON position for a long time, the battery will discharge.

⚠ WARNING

- Never press the engine start/stop button whilst the vehicle is in motion. This would result in loss of directional control and braking function, which could cause an accident.
- The anti-theft steering column lock is not a substitute for the parking brake. Before leaving the driver's seat, always make sure the shift lever is engaged in P (Park), set the parking brake fully and shut the engine off. Unexpected and sudden vehicle movement may occur if these precautions are not taken.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- Never reach for the engine start / stop button or any other controls through the steering wheel whilst the vehicle is in motion. The presence of your hand or arm in the area could cause loss of vehicle control, an accident and serious bodily injury or death.
- Do not place any movable objects around the driver's seat as they may move whilst driving, interfere with the driver and lead to an accident.

Starting the engine

⚠ WARNING

- Always wear appropriate shoes when operating your vehicle. Unsuitable shoes (high heels, ski boots,etc.) may interfere with your ability to use the brake, accelerator and clutch pedal.
- Do not start the vehicle with the accelerator pedal depressed. The vehicle can move and lead to an accident.
- Wait until the engine rpm is normal. The vehicle may suddenly move if the brake pedal is released when the rpm is high.

✻ NOTICE - Kick down mechanism

Use the kick down mechanism for maximum acceleration. Depress the accelerator pedal beyond the pressure point. The automatic transmission will shift to a lower gear depending on the engine speed.

Starting the petrol engine

1. Carry the smart key or leave it inside the vehicle.
2. Make sure the parking brake is firmly applied.
3. **Manual Transmission -** Depress the clutch pedal fully and shift the transmission into Neutral. Keep the clutch pedal and brake pedal depressed whilst starting the engine.

   Automatic transmission / Dual clutch transmission - Place the transmission shift lever in P (Park). Depress the brake pedal fully.

   You can also start the engine when the shift lever is in the N (Neutral) position.
4. Press the engine start/stop button.

It should be started without depressing the accelerator pedal.

5. Do not wait for the engine to warm up whilst the vehicle remains stationary. Start driving at moderate engine speeds. (Steep accelerating and decelerating should be avoided.)

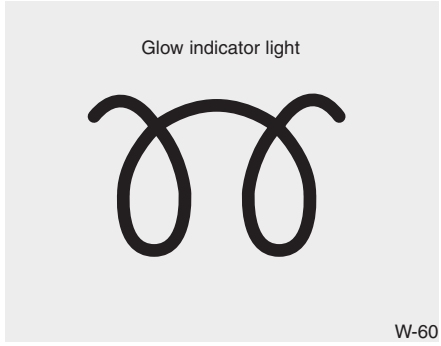
Starting the diesel engine

To start the diesel engine when the engine is cold, it has to be pre-heated before starting the engine and then have to be warmed up before starting to drive.

1. Make sure the parking brake is applied.
2. **Manual Transmission** - Depress the clutch pedal fully and shift the transmission into Neutral. Keep the clutch pedal and brake pedal depressed whilst pressing the engine start/stop button to the START position.

   Automatic Transmission / Dual clutch transmission - Place the transmission shift lever in P (Park). Depress the brake pedal fully.

   You can also start the engine when the shift lever is in the N (Neutral) position.



W-60

3. Press the engine start/stop button whilst depressing the brake pedal.
4. Continue depressing the brake pedal until the illuminated glow indicator goes off. (approximately 5 seconds)
5. The engine starts running when the glow indicator goes off.

✻ NOTICE

If the engine start/stop button is pressed once more whilst the engine is pre-heating, the engine may start.

Starting and stopping the engine for turbocharger intercooler

1. Do not race or accelerate the engine immediately after starting.

   If the engine is cold, idle for several seconds before sufficient lubrication is ensured in the turbocharger unit.
2. After high speed or extended driving, requiring a heavy engine load, idle the engine about 1 minute before turning it off.

   This idle time will allow the turbocharger to cool prior to shutting the engine off.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not turn the engine off immediately after it has been subjected to a heavy load. Doing so may cause severe damage to the engine or turbocharger unit.

Starting the engine with smart key

- Even if the smart key is in the vehicle, if it is far away from you, the engine may not start.
- When the engine start/stop button is in the ACC position or above, if any door is opened, the system checks for the smart key. If the smart key is not in the vehicle, the " " indicator and a message "Key is not in the vehicle" will appear on the instrument cluster and LCD window. And if all doors are closed, the chime will sound for 5 seconds. The indicator or warning will turn off whilst the vehicle is moving. Always have the smart key with you.

⚠ WARNING

The engine will start, only when the smart key is in the vehicle.

Never allow children or any person who is unfamiliar with the vehicle touch the engine start/stop button or related parts.

⚠ CAUTION

If the engine stalls whilst the vehicle is in motion, do not attempt to move the shift lever to the P (Park) position. If the traffic and road conditions permit, you may put the shift lever in the N (Neutral) position whilst the vehicle is still moving and press the engine start/stop button in an attempt to restart the engine.

OBD058002R

✻ NOTICE

- **If the battery is weak or the smart key does not work correctly, you can start the engine by pressing the engine start/stop button with the smart key.**
  The side with the lock button should contact the engine start/stop button directly. When you press the engine start/stop button directly with the smart key, the smart key should contact the button at a right angle.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **When the stop lamp fuse is blown, you cannot start the engine normally.**
  Replace the fuse with a new one. If it is not possible, you can start the engine by pressing the engine start/ stop button for 10 seconds whilst it is in the ACC position. The engine can start without depressing the brake pedal. But for your safety always depress the brake pedal and clutch pedal (if equipped) before starting the engine.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Do not press the engine start/stop button for more than 10 seconds except when the stop lamp fuse is blown.***
- ***Do not turn the ignition switch to the START position with the engine running. It may damage the starter.***

Stopping the petrol engine/ diesel engine (Manual Transmission)

1. Make sure the vehicle is completely stopped and keep the clutch pedal and brake pedal depressed.
2. Shift the transmission into Neutral whilst depressing the clutch pedal and brake pedal.
3. Engage the parking brake whilst depressing the brake pedal.
4. Turn the ignition key to the LOCK position and remove it.

ISG (IDLE STOP AND GO) SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

Your vehicle may be equipped with the ISG system, which reduces fuel consumption by automatically shutting down the engine, when the vehicle is at a standstill. (For example : red light, stop sign and traffic jam)

The engine starts automatically as soon as the starting conditions are met.

The ISG system is ON whenever the engine is running.

✻ NOTICE

When the engine automatically starts by the ISG system, some warning lights (ABS, ESC, ESC OFF, EPS or Parking brake warning light) may turn on for a few seconds.
This happens because of low battery voltage. It does not mean the system has malfunctioned.

Auto stop

To stop the engine in idle stop mode

OBD048152L

With manual transmission

1. Decrease the vehicle speed to less than 5 km/h (3 mph).
2. Shift into N (Neutral) position.
3. Release the clutch pedal.

With automatic transmission

1. Decrease the vehicle speed to 0 km/h.
2. Shift at D (Drive) / N (Neutral) position.
3. Press the brake pedal.

The engine will stop and the green AUTO STOP(Ⓐ) indicator on the instrument cluster will illuminate.

✻ NOTICE

- **You must reach a speed of at least 5 km/h (3 mph) since last idle stop. (With manual transmission)**
- **You must reach a speed of at least 5 km/h (3 mph) since last idle stop. (With automatic transmission)**

OBD058090R

✻ NOTICE

If you open the engine bonnet in auto stop mode, the following will happen (With automatic transmission):

- **The ISG system will deactivate (The light on the ISG OFF button will illuminate).**
- **A message "Auto Stop deactivated. Start manually" will appear on the LCD display.**

Auto start

To restart the engine from idle stop mode

With manual transmission

- Press the clutch pedal when the shift lever is in the N (Neutral) position.
- A message "Press clutch pedal before driving on" will appear on the LCD display.
- The engine will start and the green AUTO STOP (Ⓐ) indicator on the instrument cluster will go out.

With automatic transmission

- Release the brake pedal.

or

- When AUTO HOLD is operating, if you release the brake pedal, the engine keeps the stop state. But if you press the accelerator pedal, the engine will start again.

The engine will start and the green AUTO STOP indicator (Ⓐ) on the instrument cluster will go out.

The engine will also restart automatically without the driver's any actions if the following occurs:

- The brake vacuum pressure is low
- The engine has stopped for about 5 minutes
- The air conditioning is ON with the fan speed set to the highest position
- The front defroster is ON
- The battery is weak
- The cooling and heating performance of the climate control system is unsatisfactory

The green AUTO STOP (Ⓐ) indicator on the instrument cluster will blink for 5 seconds.

Condition of ISG system operation

The ISG system will operate under the following condition:

- The driver's seatbelt is fastened
- The driver's door and bonnet are closed
- The brake vacuum pressure is adequate
- The battery sensor is activated and the battery is sufficiently charged
- Outside temperature is not too low or too high
- The vehicle is driven over a constant speed and stops
- The climate control system satisfies the conditions
- The vehicle is sufficiently warmed up
- The incline is gradual
- The steering wheel is turned less than 180 degrees and then the vehicle stops

✻ NOTICE

- **If the ISG system does not meet the operation condition, the ISG system is deactivated. The light on the ISG OFF button will illuminate and the yellow AUTO STOP (Ⓐ) indicator on the instrument cluster will illuminate.**
- **If the light comes on continuously, please check the operation condition.**

ISG system deactivation

OBD058090R

- If you wish to deactivate the ISG system, press the ISG OFF button. The light on the ISG OFF button will illuminate.
- If you press the ISG OFF button again, the system will be activated and the light on the ISG OFF button will turn off.

ISG system malfunction

The system may not operate when:

OBD048152L

The ISG related sensors or system error occurs.

The following will happen:

- The yellow AUTO STOP (Ⓐ) indicator on the instrument cluster will stay on after blinking for 5 seconds.
- The light on the ISG OFF button will illuminate.

✻ NOTICE

- If the ISG OFF button light is not turned off by pressing the ISG OFF button again or if the ISG system continuously does not work correctly, have your vehicle inspected by a professional workshop as soon as possible. Kia recommends to contact an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.
- When the ISG OFF button light comes on, it may stop illuminating after driving your vehicle at approximately 80 km/h for a maximum of two hours and setting the fan speed control knob below the 2nd position. If the ISG OFF button light continues to be illuminated in spite of the procedure, have your vehicle inspected by a professional workshop as soon as possible. Kia recommends to contact an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

✻ NOTICE

If the AGM battery is reconnected or replaced, ISG function will not operate immediately.
If you want to use the ISG function, the battery sensor needs to be calibrated for approximately 4 hours with the ignition off and then, turn the engine on and off 2 or 3 times

⚠ WARNING

When the engine is in Idle Stop mode, it's possible to restart the engine without the driver taking any action.

Before leaving the car or doing anything in the engine room area, stop the engine by turning the ignition switch to the LOCK/OFF position or removing the ignition key.

MANUAL TRANSMISSION (IF EQUIPPED)

Manual transmission operation

⇨ The shift lever can be moved without pulling the button (1).

➡ The button (1) should be pressed when moving the shift lever into reverse.

OYB056058

The manual transmission has 6 forward gears.

This shift pattern is imprinted on the shift knob. The transmission is fully synchronized in all forward gears so shifting to either a higher or a lower gear is easily accomplished.

Depress the clutch pedal down fully whilst shifting, then release it slowly.

If your vehicle is equipped with an ignition lock switch, the engine will not start when starting the engine without depressing the clutch pedal. (if equipped)

The shift lever must be returned to the neutral position before shifting into R (Reverse).

Push the button located immediately below the shift knob and pull the gearshift lever to the left sufficiently, and then shift into reverse (R) gear position.

Make sure the vehicle is completely stopped before shifting into R (Reverse).

Never operate the engine with the tachometer (rpm) in the red zone.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***When downshifting from fifth gear to fourth gear, caution should be taken not to inadvertently press the shift lever sideways in such a manner that the second gear is engaged. Such a drastic downshift may cause the engine speed to increase to the point that the tachometer will enter the red-zone. Such over-revving of the engine and transmission may possibly cause engine damage.***
- ***Do not downshift more than 2 gears or downshift the gear when the engine is running at high speed (5,000 RPM or higher). Such a downshifting may damage the engine, clutch and the transmission.***

- During cold weather, shifting may be difficult until the transmission lubricant is warmed up. This is normal and not harmful to the transmission.
- If you've come to a complete stop and it's hard to shift into 1st or R(Reverse), leave the shift lever at N(Neutral) position and release the clutch. Press the clutch pedal back down, and then shift into 1st or R(Reverse) gear position.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***To avoid premature clutch wear and damage, do not drive with your foot resting on the clutch pedal. Also, don't use the clutch to hold the vehicle stopped on an uphill grade, whilst waiting for a traffic light, etc.***
- ***Do not use the shift lever as a handrest during driving, as this can result in premature wear of the transmission shift forks.***
- ***To prevent possible damage to the clutch system, do not start with the 2nd (second) gear engaged except when you start on a slippery road.***

⚠ WARNING

- **Before leaving the driver's seat, always set the parking brake fully and shut the engine off. Then make sure the transmission is shifted into 1st gear when the vehicle is parked on a level or uphill grade, and shifted into R (Reverse) on a downhill grade. Unexpected and sudden vehicle movement can occur if these precautions are not followed in the order identified.**
- **Do not use the engine brake (shifting from a high gear to lower gear) rapidly on slippery roads.**

  The vehicle may slip causing an accident.

Using the clutch

The clutch should be pressed all the way to the floor before shifting, then released slowly. The clutch pedal should always be fully released whilst driving. Do not rest your foot on the clutch pedal whilst driving. This can cause unnecessary wear. Do not partially engage the clutch to hold the vehicle on an incline. This causes unnecessary wear. Use the foot brake or parking brake to hold the vehicle on an incline. Do not operate the clutch pedal rapidly and repeatedly.

⚠ CAUTION

When operating the clutch pedal, press the clutch pedal down fully. If you don't press the clutch pedal fully, the clutch may be damaged or noise may occur.

Downshifting

When you must slow down in heavy traffic or whilst driving up steep hills, downshift before the engine starts to labour. Downshifting reduces the chance of stalling and gives better acceleration when you again need to increase your speed. When the vehicle is travelling down steep hills, downshifting helps maintain safe speed and prolongs brake life.

Good driving practices

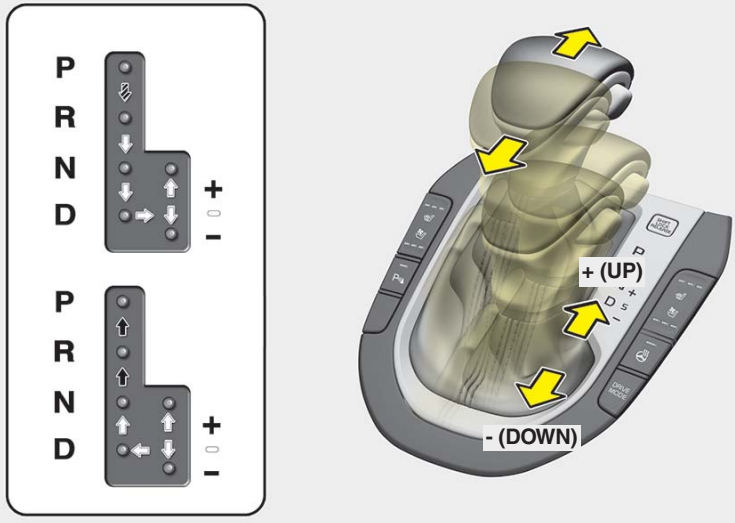
- Never take the vehicle out of gear and coast down a hill. This is extremely hazardous. Always leave the vehicle in gear.
- Don't "ride" the brakes. This can cause them to overheat and malfunction. Instead, when you are driving down a long hill, shift to a lower gear. When you do this, engine braking will help slow down the vehicle.
- Slow down before shifting to a lower gear. This will help avoid over-revving the engine, which can cause damage.
- Slow down when you encounter cross winds. This gives you much better control of your vehicle.
- Be sure the vehicle is completely stopped before you attempt to shift into reverse. The transmission can be damaged if you do not.

- Exercise extreme caution when driving on a slippery surface. Be especially careful when braking, accelerating or shifting gears. On a slippery surface, an abrupt change in vehicle speed can cause the drive wheels to lose traction and the vehicle to go out of control.

⚠ WARNING

- **Always buckle-up! In a collision, an unbelted occupant is significantly more likely to be seriously injured or killed than a properly belted occupant.**
- **Avoid high speeds when cornering or turning.**
- **Do not make quick steering wheel movements, such as sharp lane changes or fast, sharp turns.**
- **The risk of rollover is greatly increased if you lose control of your vehicle at highway speeds.**
- **Loss of control often occurs if two or more wheels drop off the roadway and the driver oversteers to reenter the roadway.**
- **In the event your vehicle leaves the roadway, do not steer sharply. Instead, slow down before pulling back into the travel lanes.**
- **Never exceed posted speed limits.**

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION (IF EQUIPPED)



Depress the brake pedal and the lock release button when shifting.

Press the lock release button when shifting.

The shift lever can be shifted freely.

OBD058005R

Automatic transmission operation

The automatic transmission has 6 forward speeds and one reverse speed. The individual speeds are selected automatically, depending on the position of the shift lever.

✻ NOTICE

The first few shifts on a new vehicle, if the battery has been disconnected, may be somewhat abrupt. This is a normal condition, and the shifting sequence will adjust after shifts are cycled a few times by the TCM (Transmission Control Module) or PCM (Powertrain Control Module).

For smooth operation, depress the brake pedal when shifting from N (Neutral) to a forward or reverse gear.

⚠ WARNING - Automatic transmission

- **Always check the surrounding areas near your vehicle for people, especially children, before shifting a car into D (Drive) or R (Reverse).**
- **Before leaving the driver's seat, always make sure the shift lever is in the P (Park) position; then set the parking brake fully and shut the engine off. Unexpected and sudden vehicle movement can occur if these precautions are not followed in the order identified.**
- **Do not use the engine brake (shifting from a high gear to lower gear) rapidly on slippery roads.**

⚠ CAUTION

- ***To avoid damage to your transmission, do not accelerate the engine in R (Reverse) or any forward gear position with the brakes on.***
- ***When stopped on an incline, do not hold the vehicle stationary with engine power. Use the service brake or the parking brake.***
- ***Do not shift from N (Neutral) or P (Park) into D (Drive), or R (Reverse) when the engine is above idle speed.***

Transmission ranges

The indicator in the instrument cluster displays the shift lever position when the ignition switch is in the ON position.

P (Park)

Always come to a complete stop before shifting into P (Park). This position locks the transmission and prevents the front wheels from rotating.

⚠ WARNING

- **Shifting into P (Park) whilst the vehicle is in motion will cause the drive wheels to lock which will cause you to lose control of the vehicle.**
- **Do not use the P (Park) position in place of the parking brake. Always make sure the shift lever is latched in the P (Park) position and set the parking brake fully.**
- **Never leave a child unattended in a vehicle.**

⚠ CAUTION

The transmission may be damaged if you shift into P (Park) whilst the vehicle is in motion.

R (Reverse)

Use this position to drive the vehicle backward.

⚠ CAUTION

Always come to a complete stop before shifting into or out of R (Reverse); you may damage the transmission if you shift into R whilst the vehicle is in motion, except as explained in "Rocking the vehicle" in this section.

N (Neutral)

The wheels and transmission are not engaged. The vehicle will roll freely even on the slightest incline unless the parking brake or service brakes are applied.

⚠ WARNING

Do not drive with the shift lever in N (Neutral).

The engine brake will not work and lead to an accident.

-Parking in N (Neutral) gear

Follow below steps when parking and you want the vehicle to move when pushed.

1. After parking your vehicle, step on the brake pedal and move the shift lever to "P" with the ignition button in "ON" or whilst the engine is running.
2. If the parking brake is applied unlock the parking brake.
3. Whilst pressing the brake pedal, turn the ignition button "OFF".
   - For smart key equipped vehicles, the ignition switch can be moved to "OFF" only when the shift lever is in "P".
4. Change the gear shift lever to "N" (Neutral) whilst pressing the brake pedal and pushing "SHIFT LOCK RELEASE" button or inserting, pressing down a tool (e.g. flathead screw-driver) into the "SHIFT LOCK RELEASE" access hole at the same time. Then, the vehicle will move when external force is applied.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***With the exception of parking in neutral gear, always park the vehicle in "P" (Park) for safety and engage the parking brake.***
- ***Before parking in "N" (Neutral) gear, first make sure the parking ground is level and flat. Do not park in "N" gear on any slopes or gradients.***

  If parked and left in "N", the vehicle may move and cause serious damage and injury.

D (Drive)

This is the normal forward driving position. The transmission will automatically shift through a 6-gear sequence, providing the best fuel economy and power.

For extra power when passing another vehicle or climbing grades, depress the accelerator fully, at which time the transmission will automatically downshift to the next lower gear.

✻ NOTICE

Always come to a complete stop before shifting into D (Drive).

Sports mode

Whether the vehicle is stationary or in motion, sports mode is selected by pushing the shift lever from the D (Drive) position into the manual gate. To return to D (Drive) range operation, push the shift lever back into the main gate.

In sports mode, moving the shift lever backwards and forwards will allow you to make gearshifts rapidly. In contrast to a manual transmission, the sports mode allows gearshifts with the accelerator pedal depressed.

Up (+) : Push the lever forward once to shift up one gear.

Down (-) : Pull the lever backwards once to shift down one gear.

✻ NOTICE

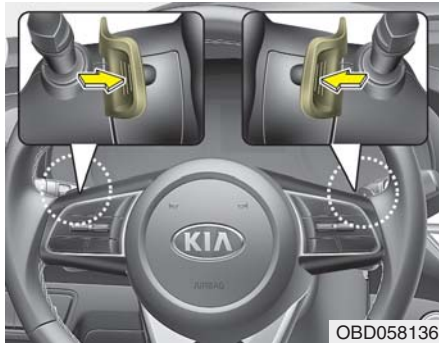
- **In sports mode, the driver must execute upshifts in accordance with road conditions, taking care to keep the engine speed below the red zone.**
- **In sports mode, only the 6 forward gears can be selected. To reverse or park the vehicle, move the shift lever to the R (Reverse) or P (Park) position as required.**
- **In sports mode, downshifts are made automatically when the vehicle slows down. When the vehicle stops, 1st gear is automatically selected.**
- **In sports mode, when the engine rpm approaches the red zone shift points are varied to upshift automatically.**
- **To maintain the required levels of vehicle performance and safety, the system may not execute certain gearshifts when the shift lever is operated.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **When driving on a slippery road, push the shift lever forward into the +(up) position. This causes the transmission to shift into the 2nd gear which is better for smooth driving on a slippery road. Push the shift lever to the -(down) side to shift back to the 1st gear.**

Paddle shifter (if equipped)



The paddle shifter is available when the shift lever is in the D position or the sport mode.

With the shift lever in the D position

The paddle shifter can operate when the vehicle speed is more than 10km/h.

Pull the [+] or [-] paddle shifter once to shift up or down one gear and the system changes from automatic mode to manual mode.

If the vehicle speed is lower than 10km/h, if you depressing the accelerator pedal for more than 5 seconds or if you shift the shift lever from D to sports mode and shift it from sports mode to D again, the system change from manual mode to automatic mode.

With the shift lever in the sports mode

Pull the [+] or [-] paddle shifter once to shift up or down one gear.

✻ NOTICE

If you pull the [+] and [-] paddle shifters at the same time, you can't shift the gear.

Shift lock system (if equipped)

For your safety, the automatic transmission has a shift lock system which prevents shifting the transmission from P (Park) into R (Reverse) unless the brake pedal is depressed.

To shift the transmission from P (Park) into R (Reverse):

1. Depress and hold the brake pedal.
2. Start the engine or turn the ignition switch to the ON position.
3. Move the shift lever.

If the brake pedal is repeatedly depressed and released with the shift lever in the P (Park) position, a chattering noise near the shift lever may be heard. This is a normal condition.

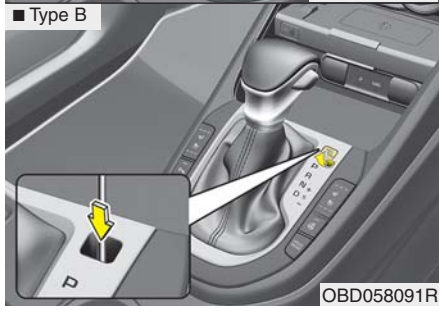
⚠ WARNING

Always fully depress the brake pedal before and whilst shifting out of the P (Park) position into another position to avoid inadvertent motion of the vehicle which could injure persons in or around the vehicle.

■ Type A

OBD058006R

■ Type B



OBD058091R

Shift-lock override

If the shift lever cannot be moved from the P (Park) position into R (Reverse) position with the brake pedal depressed, continue depressing the brake, then do the following:

Type A

1. Press the shift-lock release button.
2. Move the shift lever.
3. Have the system inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

Type B

1. Place the ignition switch in the LOCK/OFF position.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Carefully remove the cap (1) covering the shift-lock release access hole.
4. Insert a tool (e.g. flathead screwdriver) into the access hole and press down on the tool.
5. Move the shift lever.
6. Remove the tool from the shiftlock override access hole then install the cap.
7. Have the system inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

Ignition key interlock system (if equipped)

The ignition key cannot be removed unless the shift lever is in the P (Park) position.

Good driving practices

- Never move the shift lever from P (Park) or N (Neutral) to any other position with the accelerator pedal depressed.
- Never move the shift lever into P (Park) when the vehicle is in motion.
- Be sure the vehicle is completely stopped before you attempt to shift into R (Reverse) or D (Drive).
- Never take the vehicle out of gear and coast down a hill. This may be extremely hazardous. Always leave the vehicle in gear when moving.
- Do not "ride" the brakes. This can cause them to overheat and malfunction. Instead, when you are driving down a long hill, slow down and shift to a lower gear. When you do this, engine braking will help slow down the vehicle.
- Slow down before shifting to a lower gear. Otherwise, the lower gear may not be engaged.
- Always use the parking brake. Do not depend on placing the transmission in P (Park) to keep the vehicle from moving.
- Exercise extreme caution when driving on a slippery surface. Be especially careful when braking, accelerating or shifting gears. On a slippery surface, an abrupt change in vehicle speed can cause the drive wheels to lose traction and the vehicle to go out of control.
- Optimum vehicle performance and economy is obtained by smoothly depressing and releasing the accelerator pedal.

⚠ WARNING

- **When driving uphill or downhill, always shift to D (Drive) for driving forward or shift to R (Reverse) for driving backwards, and check the gear position indicated on the cluster before driving.**

  Driving in the opposite direction of the selected gear can lead to a dangerous situation by shutting off the engine and affecting the braking performance.
- **Always buckle-up! In a collision, an unbelted occupant is significantly more likely to be seriously injured or killed than a properly belted occupant.**
- **Avoid high speeds when cornering or turning.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Do not make quick steering wheel movements, such as sharp lane changes or fast, sharp turns.**
- **The risk of a rollover is greatly increased if you lose control of your vehicle at highway speeds.**
- **Losing control often occurs if two or more wheels drop off the roadway and the driver oversteers to reenter the roadway.**
- **In the event your vehicle leaves the roadway, do not steer sharply. Instead, slow down before pulling back into the travel lanes.**
- **Never exceed posted speed limits.**

⚠ WARNING

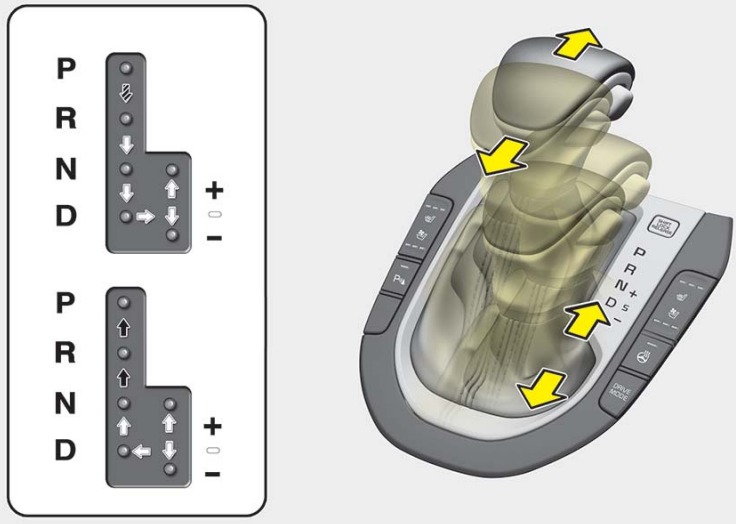
If your vehicle becomes stuck in snow, mud, sand, etc., then you may attempt to rock the vehicle free by moving it forward and backward. Do not attempt this procedure if people or objects are anywhere near the vehicle. During the rocking operation the vehicle may suddenly move forward or backward as it becomes unstuck, causing injury or damage to nearby people or objects.

Moving up a steep grade from a standing start

To move up a steep grade from a standing start, depress the brake pedal, shift the shift lever to D (Drive). Select the appropriate gear depending on load weight and steepness of the grade, and release the parking brake. Depress the accelerator gradually whilst releasing the service brakes.

When accelerating from a stop on a steep hill, the vehicle may have a tendency to roll backwards. Shifting the shift lever into 2 (Second Gear) will help prevent the vehicle from rolling backwards.

DUAL CLUTCH TRANSMISSION (DCT) (IF EQUIPPED)



Depress the brake pedal and the lock release button when shifting.

Press the lock release button when shifting.

The shift lever can be shifted freely.

❊ To move the shift lever from/to P(Parking) or between R(Reverse) and D(Drive), you must depress the brake pedal for the vehicle to stand still.

OBD058005R

Dual clutch transmission operation

The dual clutch transmission has 7 forward speeds and one reverse speed.

The individual speeds are selected automatically in the D (Drive) position.

⚠ WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury or death:

- **ALWAYS check the surrounding areas near your vehicle for people, especially children, before shifting a vehicle into D (Drive) or R (Reverse).**
- **Before leaving the driver's seat, always make sure the shift lever is in the P (Park) position, then set the parking brake, and place the ignition switch in the LOCK/OFF position. Unexpected and sudden vehicle movement can occur if these precautions are not followed.**
- **Do not use engine braking (shifting from a high gear to lower gear) rapidly on slippery roads. The vehicle may slip causing an accident.**

- The Dual Clutch Transmission gives the driving feel of a manual transmission, yet provides the ease of a fully automatic transmission. Unlike a traditional automatic transmission, the gear shifting can be felt (and heard) on the dual clutch transmission
  - Think of it as an automatically shifting manual transmission.
  - Shift into Drive range and get fully automatic shifting, similar to a conventional automatic transmission.
- Dual clutch transmission adopts dry-type dual clutch, which is different from torque converter of automatic transmission, and shows better acceleration performance during driving. But, initial launch might be little bit slower than Automatic Transmission.
- The dry-type clutch transfers torque and provides a direct driving feeling which may feel different from a conventional automatic transmission with a torque converter. This may be more noticeable when starting from a stop or low vehicle speed.
- When rapidly accelerating at low vehicle speed, engine could rev at high rpm depending on vehicle drive condition.
- For smooth launch uphill, press down the accelerator pedal smoothly depending on the current conditions.
- If you release your foot from the accelerator pedal at low vehicle speed, you may feel strong engine brake, which is similar to manual transmission.
- When driving downhill, you may use Sports Mode to downshift to a lower gear in order to control your speed without using the brake pedal excessively.
- When you turn the engine on and off, you may hear clicking sounds as the system goes through a self test. This is a normal sound for the Dual Clutch Transmission.

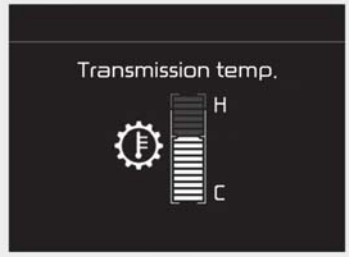
⚠ WARNING

Due to transmission failure, the vehicle may not move and the position indicator (D, R) will blink on the cluster. In this case, have the system checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

LCD display for transmission temperature and warning message (if equipped)

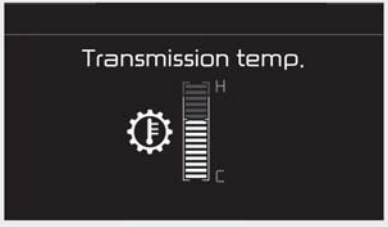
Transmission temperature Gauge

■ Type A



OBD050311R

■ Type B



OBD050304R

■ Type A

OBD050314R

■ Type B

OBD050307R

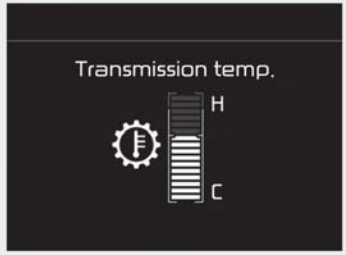
- Select trip computer mode on the LCD display and move to the transmission temperature screen to see the temperature of the dual clutch transmission.

- Try to drive so that the temperature gauge do not show high/overheat. When the transmission is overheated, the warning message will display on the LCD. Follow the displayed message.
- The transmission temperature is displayed in three colours (white, orange and red) as it increases. (if equipped with the colour type cluster) if equipped with the mono type cluster. temperature gauge is displayed in one colour (white).
- Orange temperature gauge is displayed right before the warning message appears on the LCD display. (if equipped)

⚠ CAUTION

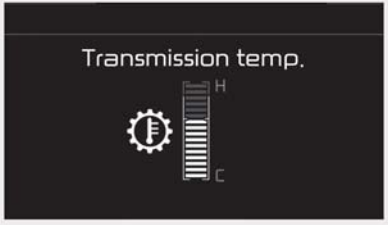
Increase (high temperature) of the transmission temperature gauge usually appears on an incline when the vehicle is stopped for a long time using accelerator pedal, without depressing the brake pedal.

■ Type A



OBD050311R

■ Type B



OBD050304R

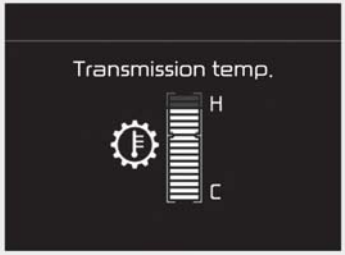
Normal (below marking 10)

- In order to maintain the optimal gear shift performance, drive so that the temperature gauge is below the point **(below marking10).**

✻ NOTICE

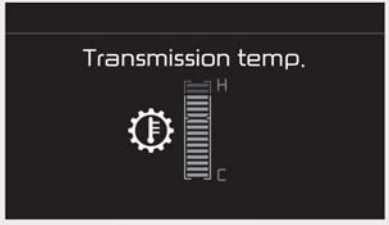
The temperature gauge may increase rapidly if clutch slip occurs excessively due to repeated stop-and-go driving on steep grades and when Hill Hold is maintained for a long time. In order to prevent excessive temperature increase, use the brake during low speed driving or when stopping the vehicle on a hill.

■ Type A



OBD050312R

■ Type B

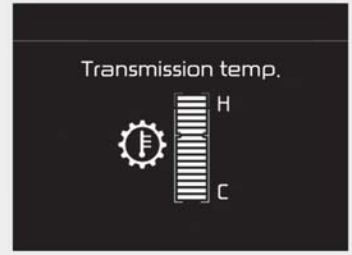


OBD050305R

Before entering High/Overheat (from marking 10 to 14)

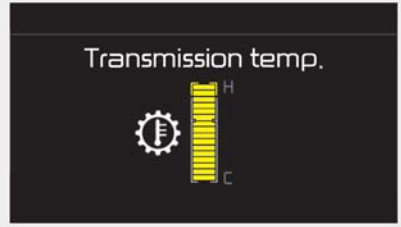
- This zone shows that the dual clutch temperature of the DCT is before entering the high/overheat zone. When the clutch temperature is within this zone (from marking 10 to 14), drive minimizing the clutch slip so that the temperature gauge is below the point **(marking 10).**
- If the dual clutch temperature continues to increase and reaches marking 14, the warning alarm sounds and the temperature gauge pops up on the cluster. The DCT warning message is not displayed.

■ Type A



OBD050313R

■ Type B



OBD050320R

High/Overheat (from marking 15 to 16)

- This zone shows that the dual clutch temperature of the DCT has entered the high/overheat zone.

The DCT warning alarm sounds, warning message is displayed on the cluster and the temperature gauge disappears from the cluster. **Follow the displayed warning message.**

- To check the temperature status of the dual clutch when overheated, move to the temperature gauge screen by selecting the trip computer mode. Then, you can check the temperature status of the dual clutch.

DCT warning messages

■ Type A

OBD050308L

■ Type B

OBD050321L

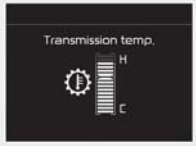
This warning message is displayed when vehicle is driven slowly on a grade and the vehicle detects that the brake pedal is not applied.

Steep grade

Driving up hills or on steep grades:

- To hold the vehicle on an incline use the foot brake or the parking brake.
- When in stop-and-go traffic on an incline, keep some distance ahead before moving the vehicle forward. Then hold the vehicle on the incline with the foot brake.
- If the vehicle is held on a hill by applying the accelerator pedal or by creeping with brake pedal disengaged, the clutch and transmission may overheat which can result in damage. At this time, a warning message will appear on the LCD display.
- If the LCD warning is active, the foot brake must be applied.
- Ignoring the warnings can lead to damage to the transmission.

■ Type A



OBD050312R

■ Type B

OBD050305R

■ Type A

OBD050318R

■ Type B

OBD050319R

Transmission high temperature

- Under certain conditions, such as repeated stop-and-go launches on steep grades, sudden take off or acceleration, or other harsh driving conditions, the transmission clutch temperatures will increase excessively. Finally the clutch in transmission could be overheated.
- When the clutch is overheated, the safe protection mode engages and the gear position indicator on the cluster blinks with a chime. At this time, “Transmission temp. is high! Stop safely” warning message will appear on the LCD display and driving may not be smooth.
- If this occurs, pull over to a safe location, stop the vehicle with the engine running, apply the brakes and shift the vehicle to P (Park), and allow the transmission to cool.
- If you ignore this warning, the driving condition may become worse. You may experience abrupt shifts, frequent shifts, or jerkiness. To return to the normal driving condition, stop the vehicle and apply the foot brake or shift into P (Park).

  Then allow the transmission to cool for a few minutes with engine on, before driving off.
- When possible, drive the vehicle smoothly.

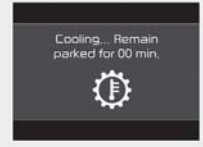
■ Type A

OBD050314R

■ Type B

OBD050307R

■ Type A

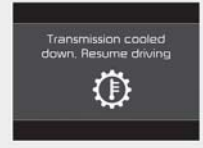


OBD050316R

■ Type B

OBD050309R

■ Type A



OBD050317R

■ Type B

OBD050310R

Transmission overheated

- If the vehicle continues to be driven and the clutch temperatures reach the maximum temperature limit, the " Transmission Hot! Park with engine on" warning will be displayed. When this occurs the clutch is disabled until the clutch cools to normal temperatures.
- The warning will display a time to wait for the transmission to cool.
- If this occurs, pull over to a safe location, stop the vehicle with the engine running, apply the brakes and shift the vehicle to P (Park), and allow the transmission to cool.
- When the message "Trans cooled. Resume driving.“ appears you can continue to drive your vehicle.
- When possible, drive the vehicle smoothly.

If any of the warning messages in the LCD display continue to blink, for your safety, We recommend have the system checked by an authorised Kia dealer.

Transmission ranges

The indicator in the instrument cluster displays the shift lever position when the ignition switch is in the ON position.

P (Park)

Always come to a complete stop before shifting into P (Park).

To shift from P (Park), you must depress firmly on the brake pedal and make sure your foot is off the accelerator pedal.

The shift lever must be in P (Park) before turning the engine off.

⚠ WARNING

- **Shifting into P (Park) whilst the vehicle is in motion may cause you to lose control of the vehicle.**
- **After the vehicle has stopped, always make sure the shift lever is in P (Park), apply the parking brake, and turn the engine off.**
- **Do not use the P (Park) position in place of the parking brake.**

R (Reverse)

Use this position to drive the vehicle backward.

⚠ CAUTION

Always come to a complete stop before shifting into or out of R (Reverse); you may damage the transmission if you shift into R (Reverse) whilst the vehicle is in motion.

N (Neutral)

The wheels and transmission are not engaged.

⚠ WARNING

Do not shift into gear unless your foot is firmly on the brake pedal. Shifting into gear when the engine is running at high speed can cause the vehicle to move very rapidly. You could lose control of the vehicle and hit people or objects.

⚠ WARNING

Do not drive with the shift lever in N (Neutral).

The engine brake will not work and lead to an accident.

- Parking in N (Neutral) gear

Follow below steps when parking and you want the vehicle to move when pushed.

1. After parking your vehicle, step on the brake pedal and move the shift lever to P with the ignition button in ON or whilst the engine is running.
2. If the parking brake is applied unlock the parking brake.
3. Whilst pressing the brake pedal, turn the ignition button OFF.
   - For smart key equipped vehicles, the ignition switch can be moved to OFF only when the shift lever is in P.
4. Change the gear shift lever to N (Neutral) whilst pressing the brake pedal and pushing [SHIFT LOCK RELEASE] button or inserting, pressing down a tool (e.g. flathead screw-driver) into the [SHIFT LOCK RELEASE] access hole at the same time. Then, the vehicle will move when external force is applied.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***With the exception of parking in neutral gear, always park the vehicle in P (Park) for safety and engage the parking brake.***
- ***Before parking in N (Neutral) gear, first make sure the parking ground is level and flat. Do not park in N gear on any slopes or gradients.***

  If parked and left in N, the vehicle may move and cause serious damage and injury.

D (Drive)

This is the normal driving position. The transmission will automatically shift through a 7 gear sequence, providing the best fuel economy and power.

For extra power when passing another vehicle or driving uphill depress the accelerator pedal further until you feel the transmission downshift to a lower gear.

To stop the vehicle during driving,

please press brake pedal fully to prevent unintended movement.

Manual mode

Whether the vehicle is stationary or in motion, manual mode is selected by pushing the shift lever from the D (Drive) position into the manual gate. To return to D (Drive) range operation, push the shift lever back into the main gate.

In manual mode, moving the shift lever backwards and forwards will allow you to select the desired range of gears for the current driving conditions.

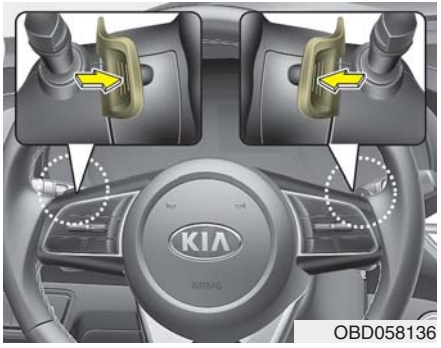
+ (Up) : Push the lever forward once to shift up one gear.

- (Down) : Pull the lever backwards once to shift down one gear.

✻ NOTICE

- **Only the 7 forward gears can be selected. To reverse or park the vehicle, move the shift lever to the R (Reverse) or P (Park) position as required.**
- **Downshifts are made automatically when the vehicle slows down. When the vehicle stops, 1st gear is automatically selected.**
- **When the engine rpm approaches the red zone the transmission will upshift automatically.**
- **If the driver presses the lever to + (Up) or - (Down) position, the transmission may not make the requested gear change if the next gear is outside of the allowable engine rpm range. The driver must execute upshifts in accordance with road conditions, taking care to keep the engine rpms below the red zone.**

Paddle shifter (if equipped)



The paddle shifter is available when the shift lever is in the D (Drive) position or the manual mode.

With the shift lever in the D position

The paddle shifter will operate when the vehicle speed is more than 10 km/h.

Pull the [+] or [-] paddle shifter once to shift up or down one gear and the system changes from automatic mode to manual mode.

When the vehicle speed is lower than 10 km/h, if you depress the accelerator pedal for more than 5 seconds or if you shift the shift lever from D (Drive) to manual mode and shift it from manual mode to D (Drive) again, the system changes from manual mode to automatic mode.

With the shift lever in the manual mode

Pull the [+] or [-] paddle shifter once to shift up or down one gear.

✻ NOTICE

If you pull the [+] and [-] paddle shifters at the same time, you cannot shift the gear.

Shift lock system (if equipped)

For your safety, the Dual clutch transmission has a shift lock system which prevents shifting the transmission from P (Park) into R (Reverse) unless the brake pedal is depressed.

To shift the transmission from P (Park) into R (Reverse):

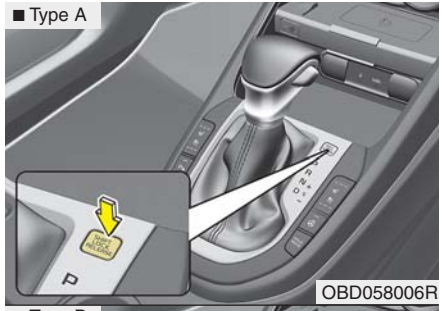
1. Depress and hold the brake pedal.
2. Start the engine or turn the ignition switch to the ON position.
3. Move the shift lever.

If the brake pedal is repeatedly depressed and released with the shift lever in the P (Park) position, a chattering noise & vibration near the shift lever may be heard. This is a normal condition.

⚠ WARNING

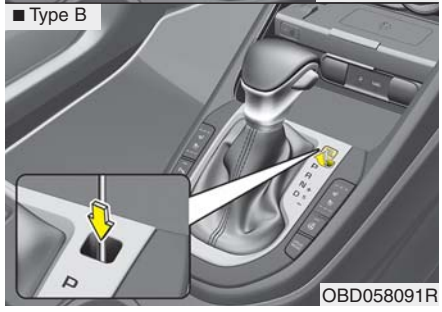
Always fully depress the brake pedal before and whilst shifting out of the P (Park) position into another position to avoid inadvertent motion of the vehicle which could injure persons in or around the car.

■ Type A



OBD058006R

■ Type B



OBD058091R

Shift-lock override

If the shift lever cannot be moved from the P (Park) position into R (Reverse) position with the brake pedal depressed, continue depressing the brake, then do the following:

Type A

1. Press the shift-lock release button.
2. Move the shift lever.
3. Have the system inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

Type B

1. Place the ignition switch in the LOCK/OFF position.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Carefully remove the cap (1) covering the shift-lock release access hole.
4. Insert a tool (e.g. flathead screwdriver) into the access hole and press down on the tool.
5. Move the shift lever.
6. Remove the tool from the shiftlock override access hole then install the cap.
7. Have the system inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

Ignition key interlock system (if equipped)

The ignition key cannot be removed unless the shift lever is in the P (Park) position.

Good driving practices

- Never move the shift lever from P (Park) or N (Neutral) to any other position with the accelerator pedal depressed.
- Never move the shift lever into P (Park) when the vehicle is in motion.
- Be sure the car is completely stopped before you attempt to shift into R (Reverse) or D (Drive).
- Never take the car out of gear and coast down a hill. This may be extremely hazardous. Always leave the car in gear when moving.
- Do not "ride" the brakes. This can cause them to overheat and malfunction. Instead, when you are driving down a long hill, slow down and shift to a lower gear. When you do this, engine braking will help slow the car.
- Slow down before shifting to a lower gear. Otherwise, the lower gear may not be engaged.
- Always use the parking brake. Do not depend on placing the transmission in P (Park) to keep the car from moving.
- Exercise extreme caution when driving on a slippery surface. Be especially careful when braking, accelerating or shifting gears. On a slippery surface, an abrupt change in vehicle speed can cause the drive wheels to lose traction and the vehicle to go out of control.
- Optimum vehicle performance and economy is obtained by smoothly depressing and releasing the accelerator pedal.

⚠ WARNING

- **When driving uphill or downhill, always shift to D (Drive) for driving forward or shift to R (Reverse) for driving backwards, and check the gear position indicated on the cluster before driving.**

  Driving in the opposite direction of the selected gear can lead to a dangerous situation by shutting off the engine and affecting the braking performance.
- **Always buckle-up! In a collision, an unbelted occupant is significantly more likely to be seriously injured or killed than a properly belted occupant.**
- **Avoid high speeds when cornering or turning.**
- **Do not make quick steering wheel movements, such as sharp lane changes or fast, sharp turns.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **The risk of rollover is greatly increased if you lose control of your vehicle at highway speeds.**
- **Loss of control often occurs if two or more wheels drop off the roadway and the driver over-steers to reenter the roadway.**
- **In the event your vehicle leaves the roadway, do not steer sharply. Instead, slow down before pulling back into the travel lanes.**
- **Never exceed posted speed limits.**

⚠ WARNING

If your vehicle becomes stuck in snow, mud, sand, etc., then you may attempt to rock the vehicle free by moving it forward and backward. Do not attempt this procedure if people or objects are anywhere near the vehicle. During the rocking operation the vehicle may suddenly move forward of backward as it becomes unstuck, causing injury or damage to nearby people or objects.

BRAKE SYSTEM

Power brakes

Your vehicle has power-assisted brakes that adjust automatically through normal usage.

In the event that the power-assisted brakes lose power because of a stalled engine or some other reason, you can still stop your vehicle by applying greater force to the brake pedal than you normally would. The stopping distance, however, will be longer.

When the engine is not running, the reserve brake power is partially depleted each time the brake pedal is applied. Do not pump the brake pedal when the power assist has been interrupted.

Pump the brake pedal only when necessary to maintain steering control on slippery surfaces.

⚠ WARNING - Brakes

- **Do not drive with your foot resting on the brake pedal. This will create abnormal high brake temperatures, excessive brake lining and pad wear, and increased stopping distances.**
- **When descending a long or steep hill, shift to a lower gear and avoid continuous application of the brakes. Continuous brake application will cause the brakes to overheat and could result in a temporary loss of braking performance.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Wet brakes may impair the vehicle's ability to safely slow down; the vehicle may also pull to one side when the brakes are applied. Applying the brakes lightly will indicate whether they have been affected in this way. Always test your brakes in this fashion after driving through deep water. To dry the brakes, apply them lightly whilst maintaining a safe forward speed until brake performance returns to normal.**
- **Always, confirm the position of the brake and accelerator pedal before driving. If you don't check the position of the accelerator and brake pedal before driving, you may depress the accelerator instead of the brake pedal. It may cause a serious accident.**

In the event of brake failure

If service brakes fail to operate whilst the vehicle is in motion, you can make an emergency stop with the parking brake. The stopping distance, however, will be much greater than normal.

⚠ WARNING
- Parking brake

Applying the parking brake whilst the vehicle is moving at normal speeds can cause a sudden loss of control of the vehicle. If you must use the parking brake to stop the vehicle, use great caution in applying the brake.

Disc brakes wear indicator

Your vehicle has disc brakes.

When your brake pads are worn and new pads are required, you will hear a high-pitched warning sound from your front brakes or rear brakes. You may hear this sound come and go or it may occur whenever you depress the brake pedal.

Please remember that some driving conditions or climates may cause a brake squeal when you first apply (or lightly apply) the brakes. This is normal and does not indicate a problem with your brakes.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***To avoid costly brake repairs, do not continue to drive with worn brake pads.***
- ***Always replace the front or rear brake pads as pairs.***

⚠ WARNING - Brake wear

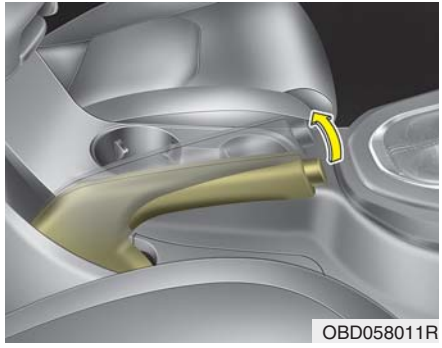
This brake wear warning sound means your vehicle needs service. If you ignore this audible warning, you will eventually lose braking performance, which could lead to a serious accident.

Rear drum brakes (if equipped)

Your rear drum brakes do not have wear indicators. Therefore, have the rear brake linings inspected if you hear a rear brake rubbing noise. Also have your rear brakes inspected each time you change or rotate your tyres and when you have the front brakes replaced.

Parking brake

Applying the parking brake


OBD058011R

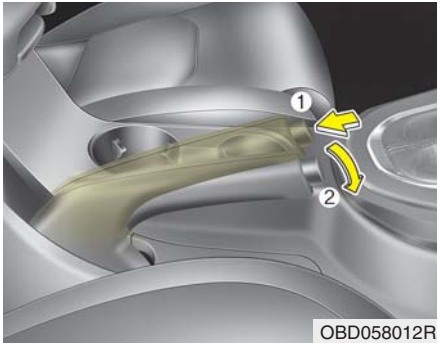
To engage the parking brake, first apply the foot brake and then pull up the parking brake lever as far as possible.

In addition it is recommended that when parking the vehicle on a incline, the shift lever should be in a low gear on manual transmission vehicles.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Driving with the parking brake applied will cause excessive brake pad and brake rotor wear.***
- ***Do not operate the parking brake whilst the vehicle is moving except in an emergency situation. It could damage the vehicle system and make endanger driving safety.***

Releasing the parking brake



To release the parking brake, first apply the foot brake and pull up the parking brake lever slightly. Secondly depress the release button (1) and lower the parking brake lever (2) whilst holding the button.

If the parking brake does not release or does not release all the way, have the system checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

- Be cautious when parking on a hill. Firmly engage the parking brake and place the shift lever in first or reverse gear (manual transmission). If your vehicle is facing downhill, turn the front wheels into the kerb to help keep the vehicle from rolling. If your vehicle is facing uphill, turn the front wheels away from the kerb to help keep the vehicle from rolling. If there is no kerb or if it is required by other conditions to keep the vehicle from rolling, block the wheels.
- Under some conditions your parking brake can freeze in the engaged position. This is most likely to happen when there is an accumulation of snow or ice around or near the rear brakes or if the brakes are wet. If there is a risk that the parking brake may freeze, apply it only temporarily whilst you put the shift lever in first or reverse gear (manual transmission) and block the rear wheels so the vehicle cannot roll. Then release the parking brake.
- Do not hold the vehicle on the upgrade with the accelerator pedal. This can cause the transmission to overheat. Always use the brake pedal or parking brake.

⚠ WARNING

- **Never allow anyone who is unfamiliar with the vehicle to touch the parking brake. If the parking brake is released unintentionally, serious injury may occur.**
- **All vehicles should always have the parking brake fully engaged when parking to avoid inadvertent movement of the vehicle which can injure occupants or pedestrians.**

WK-23

Check the brake warning light by turning the ignition switch ON (do not start the engine). This light will be illuminated when the parking brake is applied with the ignition switch in the START or ON position.

Before driving, be sure the parking brake is fully released and the brake warning light is off.

If the brake warning light remains on after the parking brake is released whilst engine is running, there may be a malfunction in the brake system. Immediate attention is necessary.

If at all possible, cease driving the vehicle immediately. If that is not possible, use extreme caution whilst operating the vehicle and only continue to drive the vehicle until you can reach a safe location or repair shop.

Anti-lock brake system (ABS) (if equipped)

⚠ WARNING

ABS (or ESC) will not prevent accidents due to improper or dangerous driving manoeuvres. Even though vehicle control is improved during emergency braking, always maintain a safe distance between you and objects ahead. Vehicle speeds should always be reduced during extreme road conditions.

The braking distance for cars equipped with an anti-lock braking system (or Electronic Stability Control system) may be longer than for those without it in the following road conditions.

(Continued)

(Continued)

During these conditions the vehicle should be driven at reduced speeds:

- **Rough, gravel or snow-covered roads.**
- **With tyre chains installed.**
- **On roads where the road surface is pitted or has different surface height.**

The safety features of an ABS (or ESC) equipped vehicle should not be tested by high speed driving or cornering. This could endanger the safety of yourself or others.

The ABS continuously senses the speed of the wheels. If the wheels are going to lock, the ABS system repeatedly modulates the hydraulic brake pressure to the wheels.

When you apply your brakes under conditions which may lock the wheels, you may hear a “tik-tik” sound from the brakes, or feel a corresponding sensation in the brake pedal. This is normal and it means your ABS is active.

In order to obtain the maximum benefit from your ABS in an emergency situation, do not attempt to modulate your brake pressure and do not try to pump your brakes. Press your brake pedal as hard as possible or as hard as the situation warrants and allow the ABS to control the force being delivered to the brakes.

✻ NOTICE

A click sound may be heard in the engine compartment when the vehicle begins to move after the engine is started. These conditions are normal and indicate that the anti-lock brake system is functioning properly.

- Even with the anti-lock brake system, your vehicle still requires sufficient stopping distance. Always maintain a safe distance from the vehicle in front of you.
- Always slow down when cornering. The anti-lock brake system cannot prevent accidents resulting from excessive speeds.
- On loose or uneven road surfaces, operation of the anti-lock brake system may result in a longer stopping distance than for vehicles equipped with a conventional brake system.

W-78

⚠ CAUTION

- ***If the ABS warning light is on and stays on, you may have a problem with the ABS. In this case, however, your regular brakes will work normally.***

(Continued)

(Continued)

- ***The ABS warning light will stay on for approximately 3 seconds after the ignition switch is ON. During that time, the ABS will go through self-diagnosis and the light will go off if everything is normal. If the light stays on, you may have a problem with your ABS. In this case, have the system checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.***

⚠ CAUTION

- ***When you drive on a road having poor traction, such as an icy road, and operate your brakes continuously, the ABS will be active continuously and the ABS warning light may illuminate. Pull your car over to a safe place and stop the engine.***
- ***Restart the engine. If the ABS warning light is off, then your ABS system is normal. Otherwise, you may have a problem with the ABS. In this case, have the system checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.***

✻ NOTICE

When you jump start your vehicle because of a drained battery, the engine may not run as smoothly and the ABS warning light may turn on at the same time. This happens because of the low battery voltage. It does not mean your ABS is malfunctioning.

- **Do not pump your brakes!**
- **Have the battery recharged before driving the vehicle.**

Electronic Stability Control (ESC) (if equipped)

The Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system is designed to stabilize the vehicle during cornering manoeuvres. ESC checks where you are steering and where the vehicle is actually going.

ESC applies the brakes at individual wheels and intervenes in the engine management system to stabilize the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

Never drive too fast for the road conditions or too quickly when cornering. Electronic stability Control (ESC) will not prevent accidents. Excessive speed in turns, abrupt manoeuvres and hydroplaning on wet surfaces can still result in serious accidents. Only a safe and attentive driver can prevent accidents by avoiding manoeuvres that cause the vehicle to lose traction. Even with ESC installed, always follow all the normal precautions for driving - including driving at safe speeds for the conditions.

The Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system is an electronic system designed to help the driver maintain vehicle control under adverse conditions. It is not a substitute for safe driving practices. Factors including speed, road conditions and driver steering input can all affect whether ESC will be effective in preventing a loss of control. It is still your responsibility to drive and corner at reasonable speeds and to leave a sufficient margin of safety.

When you apply your brakes under conditions which may lock the wheels, you may hear a “tik-tik” sound from the brakes, or feel a corresponding sensation in the brake pedal. This is normal and it means your ESC is active.

✻ NOTICE

A click sound may be heard in the engine compartment when the vehicle begins to move after the engine is started. These conditions are normal and indicate that the Electronic Stability Control System is functioning properly.

ESC operation

ESC ON condition

-

- When the ignition is turned ON, ESC and ESC OFF indicator lights illuminate for approximately 3 seconds, then ESC is turned on.
- Press the ESC OFF button after turning the ignition ON to turn ESC off. (ESC OFF indicator will illuminate). To turn the ESC on, press the ESC OFF button (ESC OFF indicator light will go off).
- When starting the engine, you may hear a slight ticking sound. This is the ESC performing an automatic system self-check and does not indicate a problem.

When operating

When the ESC is in operation, the ESC indicator light blinks.

- When the Electronic Stability Control is operating properly, you can feel a slight pulsation in the vehicle. This is only the effect of brake control and indicates nothing unusual.
- When moving out of the mud or driving on a slippery road, the engine rpm (revolution per minute) may not be increased even if you press the accelerator pedal deeply. This is to maintain the stability and traction of the vehicle and does not indicate a problem.

ESC OFF condition

To cancel ESC operation :

■ Type A

OJF058384L

■ Type B

OJF058385L

• State 1

Press the ESC OFF button shortly (ESC OFF indicator light and message illuminates). At this state, the engine control function does not operate. In other words, the traction control function does not operate but only the brake control function operates.

■ Type A

OBD058092R

■ Type B

OBD058093R

• State 2

Press the ESC OFF button for more than 3 seconds. ESC OFF indicator light and message illuminates and ESC OFF warning chime will sound. At this state, the engine control function and brake control function does not operate. In other words, the vehicle stability control function does not operate any more.

If the ignition switch is placed to the LOCK/OFF position when ESC is off, ESC remains off. Upon restarting the engine, the ESC will automatically turn on again.

Indicator light

■ ESC indicator light

■ ESC OFF indicator light

When ignition switch is turned to ON, the indicator light illuminates, then goes off if the ESC system is operating normally.

The ESC indicator light blinks whenever ESC is operating or illuminates when ESC fails to operate.

ESC OFF indicator light comes on when the ESC is turned off with the button.

⚠ CAUTION

Driving with varying tyre or wheel sizes may cause the ESC system to malfunction. Make sure they are the same type, size, brand, construction and tread pattern as the original tyres and wheels installed.

⚠ WARNING

The Electronic Stability Control system is only a driving aid; use precautions for safe driving by slowing down on curved, snowy, or icy roads. Drive slowly and don't attempt to accelerate whenever the ESC indicator light is blinking, or when the road surface is slippery.

ESC OFF usage

When driving

- ESC should be turned on for daily driving whenever possible.
- To turn ESC off whilst driving, press the ESC OFF button whilst driving on a flat road surface.

Never press the ESC OFF button whilst ESC is operating (ESC indicator light blinks).

If ESC is turned off whilst ESC is operating, the vehicle may slip out of control.

✻ NOTICE

- **When operating the vehicle on a dynamometer, ensure that the ESC is turned off (ESC OFF light illuminated).**
- **Turning the ESC off does not affect ABS or brake system operation.**

⚠ WARNING

Never press the ESC OFF button whilst ESC is operating.

If the ESC is turned off whilst ESC is operating, the vehicle may go out of control.

To turn ESC off whilst driving, press the ESC OFF button whilst driving on a flat road surface.

Hill-start assist control (HAC) (if equipped)

Hill start Assist Control is a comfort function. The main intend is to prevent the vehicle from rolling backwards whilst driving off uphill on an inclined surface. HAC holds the braking pressure builtup by driver during stopping procedure for 2 seconds after releasing brake pedal.

During the pressure-hold period, the driver has enough time to press the accelerator pedal to drive off.

The braking pressure is reduced as soon as the system detects the driver's intention to drive off.

⚠ WARNING

The HAC is usually activated only for 2 seconds. The driver should be careful from the rolling backward causing the accident with behind objects or human, when the driver may feel the unintended rolling backward whilst driving off on hill due to insufficient brake hold pressure built-up by driver during stopping procedure.

✻ NOTICE

- **The HAC does not operate when the transmission shift lever is in the P (Park) or N (Neutral) position.**
- **The HAC activates even though the ESC is off but it does not activate when the ESC has malfunctioned.**

Vehicle stability management (VSM) (if equipped)

This system provides further enhancements to vehicle stability and steering responses when a vehicle is driving on a slippery road or a vehicle detected changes in coefficient of friction between right wheels and left wheels when braking.

VSM operation

When the VSM is in operation, ESC indicator light ( ) blinks.

When the vehicle stability management is operating properly, you can feel a slight pulsation in the vehicle. This is only the effect of brake control and indicates nothing unusual.

The VSM does not operate when:

- Driving on bank road such as gradient or incline
- Driving rearward
- ESC OFF indicator light ( ) remains on the instrument cluster
- EPS indicator light remains on the instrument cluster

VSM operation off

If you press the ESC OFF button to turn off the ESC, the VSM will also cancel and the ESC OFF indicator light ( ) illuminates.

To turn on the VSM, press the button again. The ESC OFF indicator light goes out.

Malfunction indicator

The VSM can be deactivated even if you don't cancel the VSM operation by pressing the ESC OFF button. It indicates that a malfunction has been detected somewhere in the Electric Power Steering system or VSM system.

If the ESC indicator light ( ) or EPS warning light remains on, have the system checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

✻ NOTICE

- **The VSM is designed to function above approximately 15 km/h (9 mph) on curves.**
- **The VSM is designed to function above approximately 30 km/h (18 mph) when a vehicle is braking on a split-mu road. The split-mu road is made of surfaces which have different friction forces.**

⚠ WARNING

- **The Vehicle Stability Management system is not a substitute for safe driving practices but a supplementary function only. It is the responsibility of the driver to always check the speed and the distance to the vehicle ahead. Always hold the steering wheel firmly whilst driving.**
- **Your vehicle is designed to activate according to the driver's intention, even with installed VSM. Always follow all the normal precautions for driving at safe speeds for the conditions - including driving inclement weather and on a slippery road.**
- **Driving with varying tyre or wheel sizes may cause the VSM system to malfunction. Make sure they are the same type, size, brand, construction and tread pattern as the original tyres and wheels installed.**

ESS : Emergency Stop Signal (if equipped)

The Emergency Stop Signal system alerts the driver behind by blinking the stop light when the vehicle suddenly stops or when the ABS activates in a stop. (The system activates when the vehicle speed is over 55 km/h and the vehicle deceleration is over 7 m/s² or the ABS activates when the vehicle emergency braking.)

When the vehicle speed is under 40 km/h and the ABS deactivates or the sudden stop situation is over, the stop light blinking will stop.

⚠ CAUTION

The Emergency Stop Signal system will not work if the hazard warning flasher is already on.

Good braking practices

⚠ WARNING

- **Whenever leaving vehicle or parking, always set the parking brake as far as possible and fully engage the vehicle's transmission into the park position. Vehicles not fully engaged in park with the parking brake set are at risk for moving inadvertently and injuring yourself or others.**
- **All vehicles should always have the parking brake fully engaged when parking to avoid inadvertent movement of the car which can injure occupants or pedestrians.**

- After parking the vehicle, check to be sure the parking brake is not engaged and that the parking brake indicator light is out before driving away.
- Driving through water may get the brakes wet. They can also get wet when the car is washed. Wet brakes can be dangerous! Your car will not stop as quickly if the brakes are wet. Wet brakes may cause the car to pull to one side.

  To dry the brakes, apply the brakes lightly until the braking action returns to normal, taking care to keep the car under control at all times. If the braking action does not return to normal, stop as soon as it is safe to do so and have your vehicle inspected by a professional workshop.

  Kia recommends to call an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.
- Don't coast down hills with the car out of gear. This is extremely hazardous. Keep the car in gear at all times, use the brakes to slow down, then shift to a lower gear so that engine braking will help you maintain a safe speed.
- Don't "ride" the brake pedal. Resting your foot on the brake pedal whilst driving can be dangerous because it can result in the brakes overheating and losing their effectiveness. It also increases the wear of the brake components.
- If a tyre goes flat whilst you are driving, apply the brakes gently and keep the car pointed straight ahead whilst you slow down. When you are moving slowly enough for it to be safe to do so, pull off the road and stop in a safe place.
- Be cautious when parking on a hill. Firmly engage the parking brake and place the shift lever in P (Park). If your car is facing downhill, turn the front wheels into the kerb to help keep the car from rolling. If your car is facing uphill, turn the front wheels away from the kerb to help keep the car from rolling. If there is no kerb or if it is required by other conditions to keep the car from rolling, block the wheels.
- Under some conditions your parking brake can freeze in the engaged position. This is most likely to happen when there is an accumulation of snow or ice around or near the rear brakes or if the brakes are wet. If there is a risk that the parking brake may freeze, apply it only temporarily whilst you put the shift lever in P (Park) and block the rear wheels so the car cannot roll. Then release the parking brake.
- Do not hold the vehicle on the upgrade with the accelerator pedal. This can cause the transmission to overheat. Always use the brake pedal or parking brake.

FORWARD COLLISION-AVOIDANCE ASSIST (FCA) (FRONG VIEW CAMERA ONLY) (IF EQUIPPED)

FCA is designed to detect and monitor the vehicle ahead in the roadway through camera recognition to warn the driver that a collision is imminent, and if necessary, apply emergency braking.

❈ Camera type FCA does not operate for pedestrians in front.

⚠ WARNING

Take the following precautions when using Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA):

- **This function is only a supplemental function and it is not intended to, nor does it replace the need for extreme care and attention of the driver. The sensing range and objects detectable by the sensors are limited. Pay attention to the road conditions at all times.**
- **NEVER drive too fast in accordance with the road conditions or whilst cornering.**
- **Always drive cautiously to prevent unexpected and sudden situations from occurring. FCA does not stop the vehicle completely and does not avoid collisions.**

Function setting and activation

Function setting

When the ignition switch is turned on, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA) automatically gets activated. The function will come to a stop if the driver release the function from the instrument panel as follows : 'User settings → Driving Assistance → Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist'

The warning light illuminates on the LCD display, when you cancel FCA. The driver can monitor FCA ON/OFF status on the LCD display. Also, the warning light illuminates when the ESC (Electronic Stability Control) is turned off. When the warning light remains ON with FCA activated, have the system checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

The driver can select the initial warning activation time in the User Settings in the instrument cluster LCD display. The options for the initial Forward Collision Warning include the following:

- EARLY - When this condition is selected, the initial Forward Collision Warning is activated earlier than normal. This setting maximizes the amount of distance between the vehicle ahead before the initial warning occurs. If the 'EARLY' condition feels too sensitive, change it into 'NORMAL'. When the vehicle ahead suddenly stops, the warning may seem to activate later even if the 'EARLY' condition was selected.
- NORMAL - When this condition is selected, the initial Forward Collision Warning is activated normally. This setting allows for a nominal amount of distance between the vehicle ahead before the initial warning occurs.
- LATE - When this condition is selected, the initial Forward Collision Warning is activated later than normal. This setting reduces the amount of distance between the vehicle ahead before the initial warning occurs. Select this condition only when traffic is light, and you are driving slowly.

Prerequisite for activation

FCA gets ready to be activated, when FCA is selected on the LCD display, and when the following prerequisites are satisfied.

- The ESC is ON.
- The driving speed is over 10 km/h (6 mph). (However, FCA is activated within certain driving speed.)
- When recognizing the vehicle in front. (However, FCA does not activate according to conditions in front and vehicle systems, but it notices only certain warnings.)

⚠ WARNING

- **FCA automatically activates upon placing the ignition switch to the ON position. The driver can deactivate FCA by canceling the function setting on the LCD display.**
- **FCA automatically deactivates upon canceling the ESC. When the ESC is cancelled, FCA cannot be activated on the LCD display.**

  FCA warning light will illuminate, but it does not indicate a malfunction of the function.
- **Set or cancel FCA with controlling switches on steering wheel after stopping the vehicle in the safe place for your safety.**

FCA warning message and function control

FCA produces warning messages and warning alarms in accordance with the collision risk levels of followings like vehicle's sudden braking in front or lack of vehicle distance. Also, it controls the brakes in accordance with the collision risk levels.

The driver can select the initial warning activation time in the User Settings in the LCD display. The options for the initial Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist include Early, Normal or Late initial warning time.

Collision warning! (1st warning)

OBD058065R

This warning message appears on the LCD display with a warning chime.

Additionally, some vehicle system intervention occurs by the engine management system to help decelerate the vehicle.

- Your vehicle speed may decelerate moderately.
- FCA limitedly controls the brakes to preemptively mitigate impact in a collision.

Emergency braking! (2nd warning)

OBD058066R

This warning message appears on the LCD display with a warning chime.

Additionally, some vehicle system intervention occurs by the engine management system to help decelerate the vehicle.

- FCA limitedly controls the brakes to preemptively mitigate impact in a collision. The brake control is maximized just before a collision.

Brake operation

- In an urgent situation, the braking system enters into the ready status for prompt reaction against the driver's depressing the brake pedal.
- FCA provides additional braking power for optimum braking performance, when the driver depresses the brake pedal.
- The braking control is automatically deactivated, when the driver sharply depresses the accelerator pedal, or when the driver abruptly operates the steering wheel.
- The braking control is automatically cancelled, when risk factors disappear.

⚠ CAUTION

The driver should always pay great caution to vehicle operation, even though there is no warning message or warning alarm.

⚠ WARNING

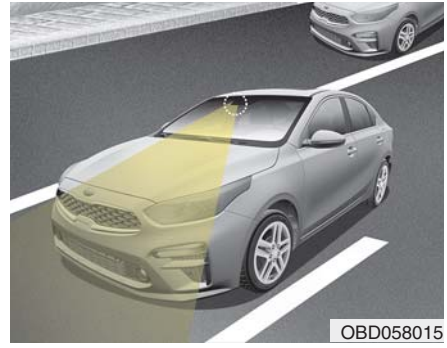
FCA cannot avoid all collisions. FCA might not completely stop the vehicle before collision, due to ambient, weather and road conditions. The driver has the responsibility to drive safely and control the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

FCA operates in accordance with the risk levels, such as the distance from the vehicle in front, the speed of the vehicle in front, and the driver's vehicle operation.

For the function to activate, do not attempt risky driving.

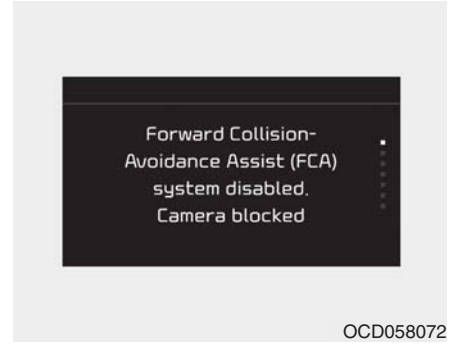
FCA front view camera sensor



The sensor is designed to maintain a certain distance from the front end of the vehicle.

However, the smudged sensor with foreign substances, such as dirt, snow, adversely affects the sensing performance. It may even temporarily cancel the FCA. Always keep the sensor and its external parts clean.

Warning message and warning light



When the sensor lens is smudged with the foreign substances, such as snow or dirt, FCA operation may temporarily stop. In this case, the warning message appears to warn the driver.

This is not a malfunction with FCA. To operate FCA again, remove the foreign substances.

FCA may not properly operate in an area (e.g. open terrain), where any substances are not detected after turning ON the engine.

✻ NOTICE

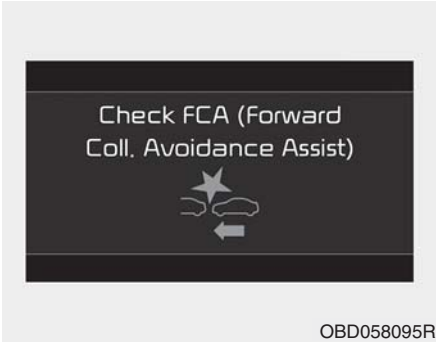
- **Doing so may adversely affect the sensing performance of the sensor.**
- **Always keep the sensor clean and free of dirt and debris.**
- **Be careful not to apply unnecessary force on the sensor. If the sensor is forcibly moved out of proper alignment, FCA may not operate correctly. In this case, a warning message may not be displayed. In this case, have the vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.**
- **Use only genuine parts to repair or replace a damaged**
- **Do not tint the window or install stickers, accessories around the inside mirror where the camera is installed.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Make sure the frontal camera installation point does not get wet.**
- **Do not impact or arbitrarily remove any camera components.**
- **Do not place reflective objects(white paper or mirror etc.) on the crash pad.**
  The function may unnecessarily activate or deactivate due to reflect of the sunlight.
- **Excessive audio volume may disturb the sound of the function warning alarm.**

Function malfunction



OBD058095R

- When FCA is not working properly, FCA warning light ( ) will illuminate and the warning message will appear for a few seconds. After the message disappears, the master warning light ( ) will illuminate. In this case, have the vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

- FCA will get deactivated for the sake of driver's safety when the ESC warning light comes on. FCA warning message will appear at the same time, too. But that doesn't necessarily mean the malfunction of FCA. Both FCA warning light and warning message will disappear once the ESC warning light issue is resolved.

⚠ WARNING

- **FCA is only a supplemental function for the driver's convenience. The driver should hold the responsibility to control the vehicle operation. Do not solely depend on FCA. Rather, maintain a safe braking distance, and, if necessary, depress the brake pedal to lower the driving speed.**
- **FCA may unnecessarily produce the warning message and the warning alarms. Also, due to the sensing limitation, FCA may not produce the warning message and the warning alarm at all.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **When there is a malfunction with FCA, the braking control does not operate upon detecting a collision risk even with other braking functions normally operating.**
- **FCA operates only for the vehicle in front, whilst driving forward. It does not operate for any animals or vehicles in the opposite direction.**
- **FCA does not recognize the vehicle, which horizontally drives across the crossroad, or the vehicle, which is parked in the horizontal direction.**
- **If the vehicle in front stops suddenly, you may have less control of the brake function. Therefore, always keep safe distance between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **FCA may activate during braking and the vehicle may stop suddenly. And the load in the vehicle may endanger passengers. Therefore, always be mindful of the load volume in the vehicle.**
- **FCA may not activate if the driver applies the brake pedal to avoid risk of collision.**
- **FCA does not operate when the vehicle is in reverse. In these cases, you must maintain a safe braking distance, and if necessary, depress the brake pedal to reduce the driving speed in order to maintain a safe dis tance.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **The regular braking function will operate normally even if There is a problem with FCA brake control system or other functions. In this case, the braking control will not operate in the risk of a collision.**
- **FCA may not activate according to driving condition, traffic on the road, weather, road condition, etc.**
- **FCA may not activate to all types of vehicles.**

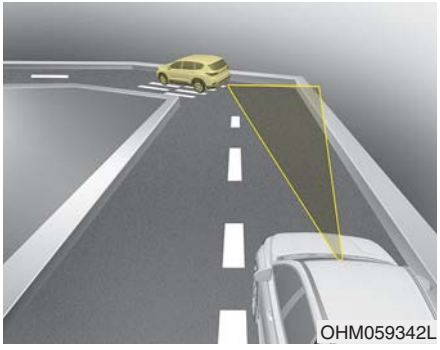
Limitation of the function

FCA is an assistant function for a driver in a certain risky driving condition and it does not take every responsibility for all risks from driving condition.

FCA monitors the driving situations through the camera sensor. Thus, for a situation out of the sensing range, FCA may not normally operate. The driver should pay great caution in the following situations. FCA operation may be limited.

Recognizing vehicles

- The camera is contaminated with foreign substances.
- It heavily rains or snows.
- There is interruption by electric waves.
- The vehicle in front has a narrow body. (i.e. motor cycle and bicycle)
- The driver's view is unclear due to the backlight, the reflected light, or darkness.
- The camera cannot contain the full image of the vehicle in front.
- The vehicle in front is a special vehicle, such as a heavily-loaded truck or a trailer.
- The outside brightness is greatly changed, such as entering/exiting the tunnel.
- The vehicle driving is unstable.
- The camera sensor recognition is limited.
- The driver's field of view is not well illuminated (either too dark or too much reflection or too much backlight that obscures the field of view)
- The vehicle in front is driving erratically
- Backlight is reflected in the direction of the vehicle (including front light from the vehicle ahead)
- Moisture on the windscreen is not completely removed or frozen.
- The weather is misty.
- The vehicle in front does not turn ON the rear lights, does not have rear lights, has asymmetric rear lights, or has rear lights out of angle.
- The vehicle is on unpaved or uneven rough surfaces, or roads with sudden gradient changes
- The vehicle is moving under ground level or inside a building
- If a sudden change in the sensor recognition takes place whilst passing through the speed bump,
- When the vehicle is severely shaken,
- When driving around circular intersection after the vehicle in front,
- If the front of the camera lens is contaminated by front glass tinting, film, water repellent coating, damage on glass, foreign matter (sticker, insect, etc.)
- The camera or camera lens is damaged.
- If the headlights of the vehicle are not used at night or in the tunnel section, or the light is too weak
- If street light or the light of the vehicle coming from the opposite is reflected or when sunlight is reflected by the water on the road surface
- When the back light is projected in the direction of the vehicle's motion (including the headlights of vehicles)
- Road sign, shadow on the road, tunnel entrance, toll gate, partial pavement
- If the windscreen has moisture on its surface or if windscreen freezes,
- Driving in the fog.
- When objects are out of the sensing range of the camera

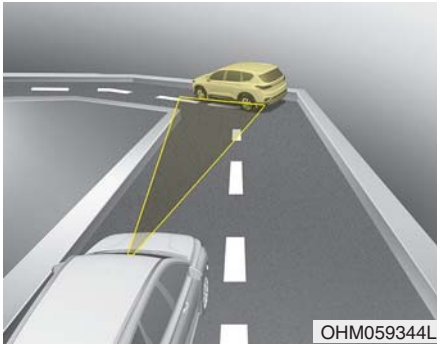

OHM059342L

- Driving on a curve

The performance of Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may be limited when driving on a curved road.

The front camera recognition function may not detect the vehicle travelling in front on a curved road. This may result in no alarm and braking when necessary.

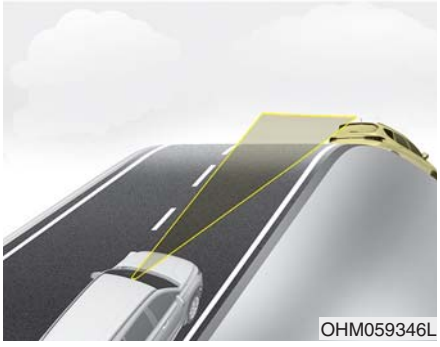
Always pay attention to road and driving conditions, and if necessary, depress the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed in order to maintain a safe distance.


OHM059344L

Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may recognize a vehicle in the next lane or outside the lane when driving on a curved road.

If this occurs, the system may unnecessarily alarm the driver and apply the brake.

Always pay attention to road and driving conditions, whilst driving.

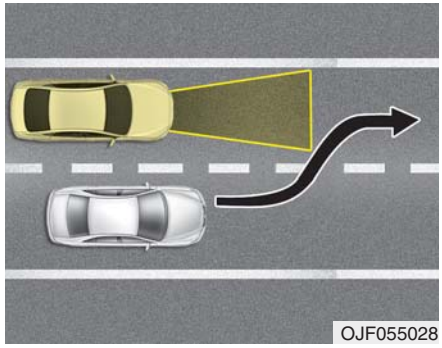

OHM059346L

- Driving on a slope

The performance of Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may be decreased whilst driving upward or downward on a slope. The front camera recognition may not detect the vehicle in front. This may result in unnecessary alarm and braking or no alarm and braking when necessary.

When the function suddenly recognizes the vehicle in front whilst passing over a slope, you may experience sharp deceleration.

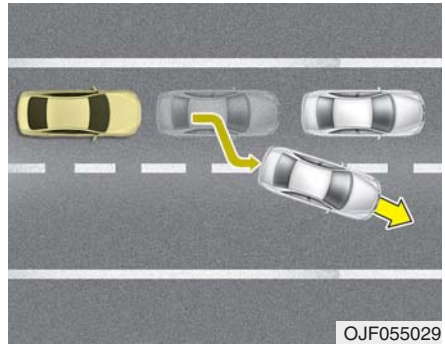
Always keep your eyes forward whilst driving upward or downward on a slope, and, if necessary, depress the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed in order to maintain distance.



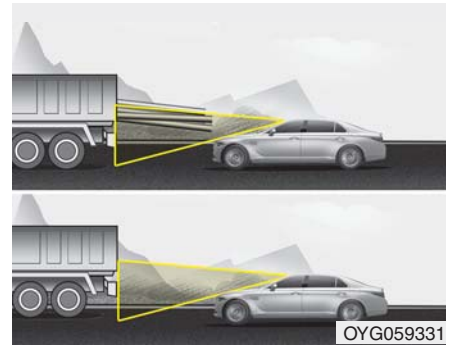
- Changing lanes

Even though the vehicle in the next lane enters into your lane, it may not be recognized by FCA, until it enters FCA sensing range.

Especially when the vehicle in the next lane abruptly enters into your lane, it is more likely not be recognized. Always pay great attention.



When the stopped vehicle in front gets out of the lane, it may not be recognized by your FCA. Always pay great attention.



- Recognizing the vehicle

When the vehicle in front has heavy loading extended rearward, or when the vehicle in front has higher ground clearance, it may induce a hazardous situation. Always pay attention to road and driving conditions, whilst driving and, if necessary, depress the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed in order to maintain distance.

⚠ WARNING

- **Cancel FCA in the User Settings on the LCD display, before towing another vehicle. Whilst towing, the brake application may adversely affect your vehicle safety.**
- **Pay great caution to the vehicle in front, when it has heavy loading extended rearward, or when it has higher ground clearance.**
- **The sensor only detects a vehicle ahead on the road, not carts, bicycles, motorcycles, luggage bags, or strollers.**
- **FCA does not operate in a certain situation. Thus, never test-operate FCA against a person or an object. It may cause a severe injury or even death.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **When replacing or reinstalling the windscreen, or camera after removal, have the vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.**

✻ NOTICE

The function may temporarily cancel due to the strong electric waves.

FORWARD COLLISION-AVOIDANCE ASSIST (FCA) (SENSOR FUSION) (IF EQUIPPED)

The purpose of FCA is to reduce the likelihood of the accident or avoid it. It recognizes the distance from the vehicle ahead or the pedestrian or cycle through the sensors (i.e. radar and camera), and, if necessary, warns the driver of accident risk with the warning message or the warning alarms.

⚠ WARNING

Take the following precautions when using Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA):

- **This function is only a supplemental function and it is not intended to, nor does it replace the need for extreme care and attention of the driver. The sensing range and objects detectable by the sensors are limited. Pay attention to the road conditions at all times.**
- **NEVER drive too fast in accordance with the road conditions or whilst cornering.**
- **Always drive cautiously to prevent unexpected and sudden situations from occurring. FCA does not stop the vehicle completely and does not avoid collisions.**

Function setting and activation

Function setting

When the ignition switch is turned on, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA) automatically gets activated. The function will come to a stop if the driver release the system from the instrument panel as follows : 'User settings → Driving Assistance → Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist'

The warning light illuminates on the LCD display, when you cancel FCA. The driver can monitor FCA ON/OFF status on the LCD display. Also, the warning light illuminates when the ESC (Electronic Stability Control) is turned off. When the warning light remains ON with FCA activated, have the system checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

The driver can select the initial warning activation time in the User Settings in the instrument cluster LCD display. The options for the initial Forward Collision Warning include the following:

- EARLY - When this condition is selected, the initial Forward Collision Warning is activated earlier than normal. This setting maximizes the amount of distance between the vehicle or pedestrian or cycle ahead before the initial warning occurs. If the 'EARLY' condition feels too sensitive, change it into 'NORMAL'. When the vehicle ahead suddenly stops, the warning may seem to activate later even if the 'EARLY' condition was selected.
- NORMAL - When this condition is selected, the initial Forward Collision Warning is activated normally. This setting allows for a nominal amount of distance between the vehicle or pedestrian or cycle ahead before the initial warning occurs.
- LATE - When this condition is selected, the initial Forward Collision Warning is activated later than normal. This setting reduces the amount of distance between the vehicle or pedestrian or cycle ahead before the initial warning occurs. Select this condition only when traffic is light, and you are driving slowly.

Prerequisite for activation

FCA gets ready to be activated, when FCA is selected on the LCD display, and when the following prerequisites are satisfied.

- The ESC is ON.
- The driving speed is over 10 km/h (6 mph). (However, FCA is activated within certain driving speed.)
- When recognizing the vehicle or the pedestrian or cycle in front. (However, FCA does not activate according to conditions in front and vehicle functions, but it notices only certain warnings.)

⚠ WARNING

- **FCA automatically activates upon placing the ignition switch to the ON position. The driver can deactivate FCA by canceling the function setting on the LCD display.**
- **FCA automatically deactivates upon canceling the ESC. When the ESC is cancelled, FCA cannot be activated on the LCD display.**

  FCA warning light will illuminate, but it does not indicate a malfunction of the function.
- **Set or cancel FCA with controlling switches on steering wheel after stopping the vehicle in the safe place for your safety.**

FCA warning message and function control

FCA produces warning messages and warning alarms in accordance with the collision risk levels of followings like vehicle's sudden braking in front or lack of vehicle distance or collision to pedestrians. Also, it controls the brakes in accordance with the collision risk levels.

The driver can select the initial warning activation time in the User Settings in the LCD display. The options for the initial Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist include Early, Normal or Late initial warning time.

Collision warning! (1st warning)

OBD058065R

This warning message appears on the LCD display with a warning chime.

Additionally, some vehicle system intervention occurs by the engine management system to help decelerate the vehicle.

- Your vehicle speed may decelerate moderately.
- FCA limitedly controls the brakes to preemptively mitigate impact in a collision.

Emergency braking! (2nd warning)

OBD058066R

This warning message appears on the LCD display with a warning chime.

Additionally, some vehicle system intervention occurs by the engine management system to help decelerate the vehicle.

- FCA limitedly controls the brakes to preemptively mitigate impact in a collision. The brake control is maximized just before a collision.

Brake operation

- In an urgent situation, the braking system enters into the ready status for prompt reaction against the driver's depressing the brake pedal.
- FCA provides additional braking power for optimum braking performance, when the driver depresses the brake pedal.
- The braking control is automatically deactivated, when the driver sharply depresses the accelerator pedal, or when the driver abruptly operates the steering wheel.
- The braking control is automatically cancelled, when risk factors disappear.

⚠ CAUTION

The driver should always pay great caution to vehicle operation, even though there is no warning message or warning alarm.

⚠ WARNING

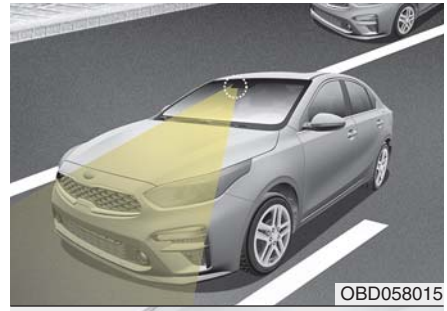
FCA cannot avoid all collisions. FCA might not completely stop the vehicle before collision, due to ambient, weather and road conditions. The driver has the responsibility to drive safely and control the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

FCA operates in accordance with the risk levels, such as the distance from the vehicle/passer-by in front, the speed of the vehicle/passer-by in front, and the driver's vehicle operation.

For the function to activate, do not attempt risky driving.

Sensor to detect the distance from the vehicle in front (front camera/radar)

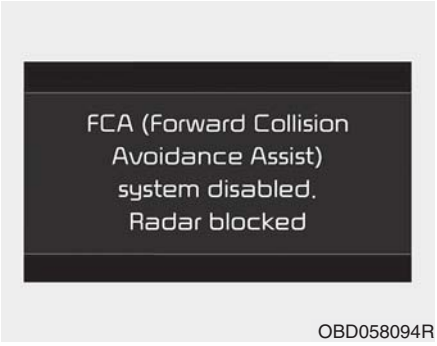

OBD058015

OBD058014

By detecting the vehicle or pedestrian or cycle ahead the vehicle, the sensor helps to operate Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist when the vehicle is at risk of a collision.

In order for FCA to operate properly, always make sure the sensor or sensor cover is clean and free of dirt, snow, and debris. Dirt, snow, or foreign substances on the lens may adversely affect the sensing performance of the sensor.

Warning message and warning light



OBD058094R

When the sensor cover or the sensor lens is smudged with the foreign substances, such as snow or rain, FCA operation may temporarily stop. In this case, the warning message appears to warn the driver.

This is not a malfunction with FCA. To operate FCA again, remove the foreign substances.

FCA may not properly operate in an area (e.g. open terrain), where any substances are not detected after turning ON the engine.

✻ NOTICE

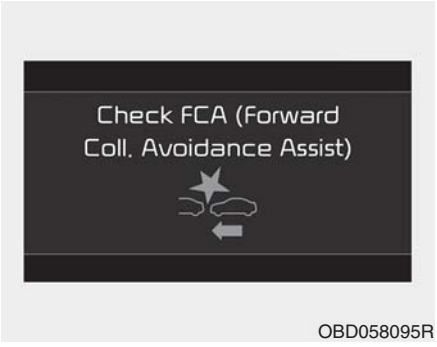
- **Do not install any accessories, such as license plate molding or sticker, on the sensor area. Nor arbitrarily replace the bumper. Those may adversely affect the sensing performance.**
- **Always keep the sensor/bumper area clean.**
- **Use only soft clothes to wash the vehicle. Also, do not spray highly-pressurized water on the sensor installed on the bumper.**
- **Be careful not to apply unnecessary force on the frontal sensor area. When the sensor moves out of the correct position due to external force, the function may not normally operate even without the warning light or message. In this case, have the vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.**
- **Use only the genuine Kia sensor cover. Do not arbitrarily apply paint on the sensor cover.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Do not tint the window or install stickers, accessories around the inside mirror where the camera is installed.**
- **Make sure the frontal camera installation point does not get wet.**
- **Do not impact or arbitrarily remove any camera/radar components.**
- **Do not place reflective objects(white paper or mirror etc.) on the crash pad.**
  The function may unnecessarily activate or deactivate due to reflect of the sunlight.
- **Excessive audio volume may disturb the sound of the function warning alarm.**

Function malfunction



OBD058095R

- When FCA is not working properly, FCA warning light ( ) will illuminate and the warning message will appear for a few seconds. After the message disappears, the master warning light ( ) will illuminate. In this case, have the vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.
- FCA will get deactivated for the sake of driver's safety when the ESC warning light comes on.

FCA warning message will appear at the same time, too. But that doesn't necessarily mean the malfunction of FCA. Both FCA warning light and warning message will disappear once the ESC warning light issue is resolved.

⚠ WARNING

- **FCA is only a supplemental function for the driver's convenience. The driver should hold the responsibility to control the vehicle operation. Do not solely depend on FCA. Rather, maintain a safe braking distance, and, if necessary, depress the brake pedal to lower the driving speed.**
- **FCA may unnecessarily produce the warning message and the warning alarms. Also, due to the sensing limitation, FCA may not produce the warning message and the warning alarm at all.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **When there is a malfunction with FCA, the braking control does not operate upon detecting a collision risk even with other braking functions normally operating.**
- **FCA operates only for the vehicle / pedestrian or cycle in front, whilst driving forward. It does not operate for any animals or vehicles in the opposite direction.**
- **FCA does not recognize the vehicle, which horizontally drives across the crossroad, or the vehicle, which is parked in the horizontal direction.**
- **If the vehicle in front stops suddenly, you may have less control of the brake system. Therefore, always keep safe distance between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **FCA may activate during braking and the vehicle may stop suddenly. And the load in the vehicle may endanger passengers. Therefore, always be mindful of the load volume in the vehicle.**
- **FCA may not activate if the driver applies the brake pedal to avoid risk of collision.**
- **FCA does not operate when the vehicle is in reverse. In these cases, you must maintain a safe braking distance, and if necessary, depress the brake pedal to reduce the driving speed in order to maintain a safe dis tance.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **The regular braking function will operate normally even if There is a problem with FCA brake control function or other functions. In this case, the braking control will not operate in the risk of a collision.**
- **FCA may not activate according to driving condition, traffic on the road, weather, road condition, etc.**
- **FCA may not activate to all types of vehicles.**

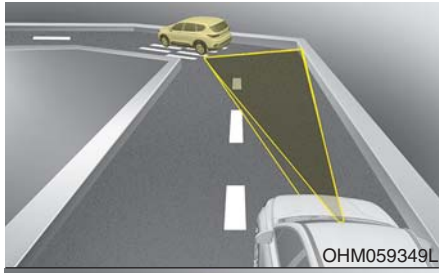
Limitation of the system

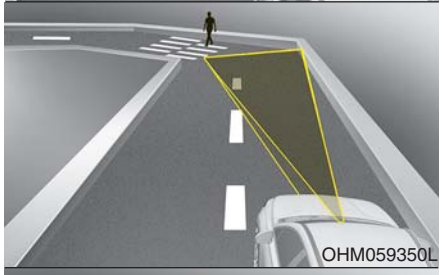
FCA is an assistant function for a driver in a certain risky driving condition and it does not take every responsibility for all risks from driving condition.

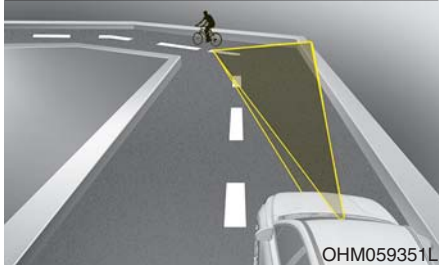
FCA monitors the driving situations through the radar and the camera sensor. Thus, for a situation out of the sensing range, FCA may not normally operate. The driver should pay great caution in the following situations. FCA operation may be limited.

Recognizing vehicles

- The radar or the camera is contaminated with foreign substances.
- It heavily rains or snows.
- There is interruption by electric waves.
- There is severe irregular reflection from the radar.
- The driver's view is unclear due to the backlight, the reflected light, or darkness.
- The camera cannot contain the full image of the vehicle in front.
- The vehicle in front is a special vehicle, such as a heavily-loaded truck or a trailer.
- The outside brightness is greatly changed, such as entering/exiting the tunnel.
- The vehicle driving is unstable.
- The radar/camera sensor recognition is limited.
- The driver's field of view is not well illuminated (either too dark or too much reflection or too much backlight that obscures the field of view)
- There is severe irregular reflection from the radar sensor
- The vehicle in front is driving erratically
- The vehicle is driven near areas containing metal substances such as a construction zone, railroad, etc.
- Backlight is reflected in the direction of the vehicle (including front light from the vehicle ahead)
- Moisture on the windscreen is not completely removed or frozen.
- The weather is misty.
- The vehicle in front does not turn ON the rear lights, does not have rear lights, has asymmetric rear lights, or has rear lights out of angle.


OHM059349L


OHM059350L


OHM059351L

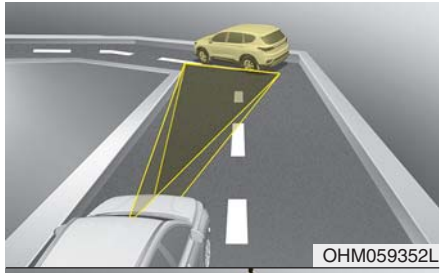
- Driving on a curve

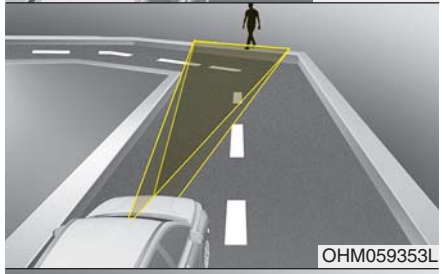
The performance of Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may be limited when driving on a curved road.

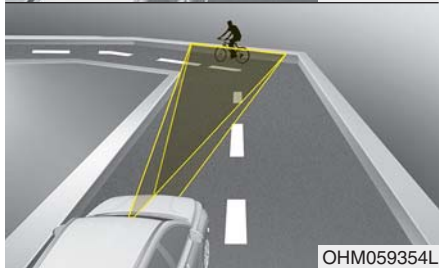
The front camera or radar sensor recognition system may not detect the vehicle, pedestrian or cyclist travelling in front on a curved road.

This may result in no alarm and braking when necessary.

Always pay attention to road and driving conditions, and if necessary, depress the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed in order to maintain a safe distance.


OHM059352L

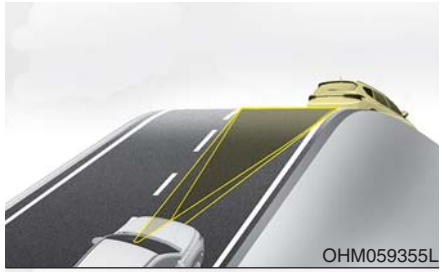

OHM059353L


OHM059354L

Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may recognize a vehicle or pedestrian or cyclist in the next lane or outside the lane when driving on a curved road.

If this occurs, the system may unnecessarily alarm the driver and apply the brake.

Always pay attention to road and driving conditions, whilst driving.



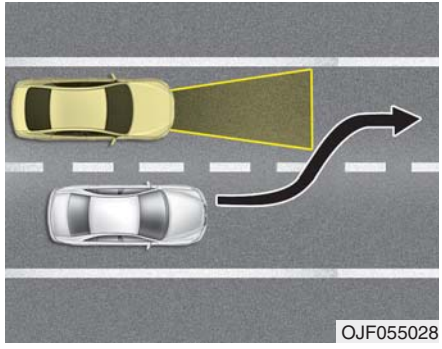
- Driving on a slope

The performance of Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may be decreased whilst driving upward or downward on a slope. The front camera or front radar sensor recognition may not detect the vehicle, pedestrian or cyclist in front.

This may result in unnecessary alarm and braking or no alarm and braking when necessary.

When the function suddenly recognizes the vehicle, pedestrian or cyclist in front whilst passing over a slope, you may experience sharp deceleration.

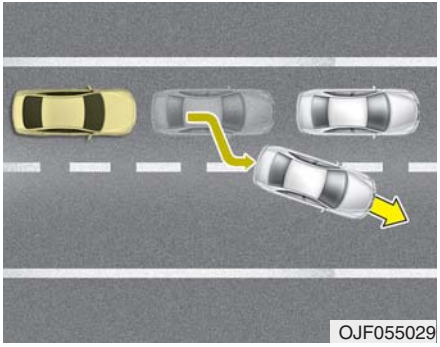
Always keep your eyes forward whilst driving upward or downward on a slope, and, if necessary, depress the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed in order to maintain distance.



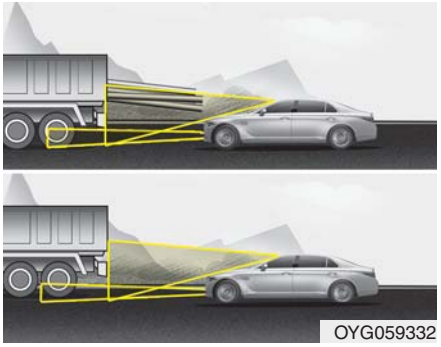
- Changing lanes

Even though the vehicle in the next lane enters into your lane, it may not be recognized by FCA, until it enters FCA sensing range.

Especially when the vehicle in the next lane abruptly enters into your lane, it is more likely not be recognized. Always pay great attention.


OJF055029

When the stopped vehicle in front gets out of the lane, it may not be recognized by your FCA. Always pay great attention.


OYG059332

- Recognizing the vehicle

When the vehicle in front has heavy loading extended rearward, or when the vehicle in front has higher ground clearance, it may induce a hazardous situation. Always pay attention to road and driving conditions, whilst driving and, if necessary, depress the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed in order to maintain distance.

Recognizing pedestrians

- The pedestrian is not fully captured by the camera sensor, or the pedestrian does not walk in the upright position.
- The pedestrian moves very fast.
- The pedestrian abruptly appears in front.
- The pedestrian wears clothes in the colour similar to the background.
- The outside is too bright or too dark.
- The vehicle drives at night or in the darkness.
- There is an item similar to a person's body structure.
- The pedestrian is small.
- The pedestrian has impaired mobility.
- It is difficult to distinguish the pedestrian from the surroundings.
- The sensor recognition is limited.
- There is a group of pedestrians.

- If a sudden change in the sensor recognition takes place whilst passing through the speed bump,
- When the vehicle is severely shaken,
- When driving around circular intersection after the vehicle in front,
- If the front of the camera lens is contaminated by front glass tinting, film, water repellent coating, damage on glass, foreign matter (sticker, insect, etc.)
- The radar or camera or camera lens is damaged.
- If the headlights of the vehicle are not used at night or in the tunnel section, or the light is too weak
- If street light or the light of the vehicle coming from the opposite is reflected or when sunlight is reflected by the water on the road surface
- When the back light is projected in the direction of the vehicle's motion (including the headlights of vehicles)
- Road sign, shadow on the road, tunnel entrance, toll gate, partial pavement
- If the windscreen has moisture on its surface or if windscreen freezes,
- Driving in the fog.
- When objects are out of the sensing range of the sensor or radar.

⚠ WARNING

- **Cancel FCA in the User Settings on the LCD display, before towing another vehicle. Whilst towing, the brake application may adversely affect your vehicle safety.**
- **Pay great caution to the vehicle in front, when it has heavy loading extended rearward, or when it has higher ground clearance.**

(Continued)

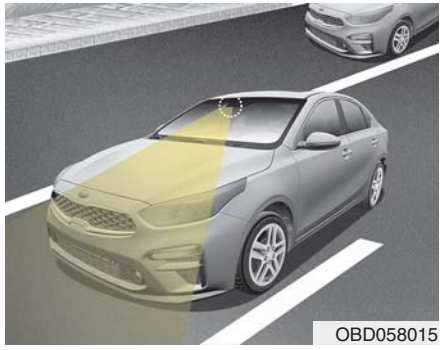
(Continued)

- **The sensor only detects pedestrian, not carts, luggage bags, or strollers.**
- **FCA does not operate in a certain situation. Thus, never test-operate FCA against a person or an object. It may cause a severe injury or even death.**
- **When replacing or reinstalling the windscreen, front bumper or camera/radar after removal, have the vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.**

✻ NOTICE

The system may temporarily cancel due to the strong electric waves.

LANE KEEPING ASSIST (LKA) (IF EQUIPPED)


OBD058015

Lane Keeping Assist (LKA) detects the lane markers and road edge on the road with a front view camera at the front windscreen, and assists the driver's steering to help keep the vehicle in the lanes.

When the function detects the vehicle straying from its lane (or road), it alerts the driver with a visual and audible warning, whilst applying a counter-steering torque, trying to prevent the vehicle from moving out of its lane (or road).

⚠ WARNING

- **Driver is responsible for being aware of surroundings and steering the vehicle for safe driving practices.**
- **Do not steer the steering wheel suddenly when the steering wheel is being assisted by the system.**
- **LKA helps prevent the driver from moving out of the lane (or road) unintentionally by assisting the driver's steering. However, the system is just a convenience function and the steering wheel is not always controlled. Whilst driving, the driver should pay attention to the steering wheel.**
- **The operation of LKA can be cancelled or not work properly according to road condition and surroundings. Always be cautious when driving.**

⚠ WARNING

- **Do not disassemble a front view camera temporarily for tinted window or attaching any types of coatings and accessories. If you disassemble the camera and assemble it again, take your vehicle to an authorised Kia dealer and have the system checked to need a calibration.**
- **When you replace the windscreen glass, front view camera or related parts of the steering, take your vehicle to an authorised Kia dealer and have the system checked to need a calibration.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **The function detects lane markers and road edge. And controls the steering wheel by a front view camera, therefore, if the lane markers (or road edge) are hard to detect, the system may not work properly. Always be cautious when using the system.**
- **When the lane markers (or road edge) are hard to detect, please refer to "Driver's attention".**
- **Do not remove or damage the related parts of LKA.**
- **Do not place objects on the crash pad that reflects light such as mirrors, white paper, etc. it may cause malfunction of LKA if the sunlight is reflected.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **You may not hear warning sound of LKA because of the excessive audio sound.**
- **Whilst other beeps such as the seat belt warning sound are in operation and override the LKA alarming function, LKA beeps may not occur.**
- **If the vehicle speed is high, steering torque for assistance will not be enough to keep your vehicle within the lane. If so, the vehicle may move out of its lane. Obey speed limit when using LKA.**
- **If you attach objects to the steering wheel, the function may not assist steering.**
- **If you attach objects to the steering wheel, hands off alarm may not work properly.**

LKA Operation

To activate/deactivate LKA:

With the ignition switch in the ON position, LKA turns on automatically. The indicator ( ) in the cluster display will initially illuminate white. If you press the Lane Safety button located on the instrument panel on the lower right hand side of the driver, LKA will be turned off and the indicator on the cluster display will go off.

The colour of indicator will change depend on the condition of LKA.

- White : Sensor does not detect the lane marker or vehicle speed is less than 60 km/h.
- Green : Sensor detects the lane marker (or road edge) and function is able to control the steering.

LKA activation

OBD058105R

- To see LKA screen on the LCD display in the cluster, Tab to the ASSIST mode ( ).
- For further details, refer to “User Settings Mode” in chapter 4.
- After LKA is activated, if both lane markers (or road edge) are detected, vehicle speed is over 60 km/h and all the activation conditions are satisfied, a green steering wheel indicator will illuminate and the steering wheel will be controlled.

⚠ WARNING

Lane Keeping Assist (LKA) is a function to help prevent the driver from leaving the lane (or road edge). However, the driver should not solely rely on the function but always check the road conditions when driving.

■ Lane line undetected ■ Lane line detected

OBD058104R/OBD058105R

If the speed of the vehicle is over 60 km/h and the function detects lane markers, the colour changes from gray to white.

Warning

■ Left lane line ■ Right lane line

OBD058106R/OBD058107R

If the vehicle leaves a lane (or road edge), the lane marker (or road edge) you cross will blink on the LCD display and the warning sound is provided.

❊ Haptic specification

If the vehicle leaves a lane, the lane marker you cross will blink on the LCD display with steering wheel vibration warning.

When the conditions below are met, LKA will be enable to assist steering.

- Vehicle speed is above 60 km/h.
- Both lane markers are detected by LKA.
- The vehicle is between the lane markers.

If LKA can assist steering, a green steering wheel indicator will illuminate.

If the vehicle moves out its lane because steering torque for assistance is not enough, the line indicator of deviation direction will blink and the warning sound is provided.

OBD058111R

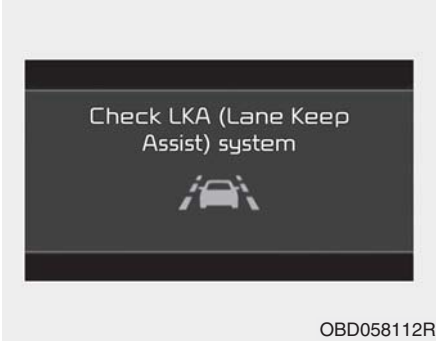
Keep hands on steering wheel (When LKA is activated)

If the driver takes hands off the steering wheel for several seconds whilst LKA is activated, the function will warn the driver.

⚠ WARNING

- **The warning message may appear late according to road conditions. Therefore, always have your hands on the steering wheel whilst driving.**
- **If you hold the steering wheel lightly, the function would generate hands off warning because LKA can treat the situation as you do not grab the wheel.**

Warning light and message



OBD058112R

Check LKA (Lane Keep Assist) system

LKA failure indicator (yellow) will illuminate if LKA is not working properly. In this case, have the function checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

⚠ WARNING

- **The driver is responsible for accurate steering.**
- **Even though the steering is assisted by the function, the driver may control the steering wheel.**
- **Turn off the function and drive the vehicle in below situations.**

- In bad weather

- In bad road condition

- When the steering wheel needs to be controlled by the driver frequently.

- When towing a vehicle or trailer.

- **The steering wheel may feel heavier when the steering wheel is assisted by the function than when it is not.**

The function will be cancelled when:

- You change lanes with the turn signal.
  - Using the turn signal to change lanes.
  - If you change lanes without the turn signal on, the steering wheel might be controlled.
- LKA can transit to steering assist mode when the car is near to middle of the lane after system on or the lane was changed. LKA can not assist steering if the vehicle follows lane marker too close continuously before transition to steering assist mode.
- The control of ESC (Electronic Stability Control) or VSM (Vehicle Stability Management) is activated.
- The steering will not be assisted when your drive fast on a sharp curve.
- The steering will not be assisted when vehicle speed is below 60 km/h and over 180 km/h.
- The steering will not be assisted when you change lanes (or road edge) fast.
- The steering will not be assisted when you brake suddenly.
- The steering will not be assisted when the lane (or road width) is very wide or narrow.
- The steering will not be assisted when only one side lane marker is detected.
- There are more than two lane markers such as a construction area.
- Radius of a curve is too small.
- When you turn steering wheel suddenly, LKA will be disabled temporarily.
- Driving on a steep slope or hill.

Driver's attention

The driver must be cautious in the below situations may not work properly when recognition of the lane marker is poor or limited :

▶ When lane and road condition is poor

- It is difficult to distinguish the lane marker (or road edge) from road when the lane marker (or road edge) is covered with dust or sand.
- It is difficult to distinguish the colour of the lane marker from road.
- There is something looks like a lane marker.
- The lane marker (or road edge) is indistinct or damaged.
- The number of lanes increases/ decreases or the lane lines are crossing (Driving through a toll plaza/toll gate, merged/divided lane.
- There are more than two lane markers.
- The lane marker is very thick or thin.
- The lane marker (or road edge) is not visible due to snow, rain, stain, a puddle or other factors.
- A shadow is on the lane marker (or road edge) because of a median strip, guardrail, noise barriers and others.
- When the lane markers are complicated or a structure substitutes for the lines such as a construction area.
- There are crosswalk signs or other symbols on the road.
- The lane suddenly disappears such as at the intersection.
- The lane marker (or road edge) in a tunnel is covered with dirt or oil and etc.
- The lane(or road width) is very wide or narrow.

▶ When external condition is intervened

- The brightness of outside changes suddenly when entering/existing a tunnel or passing under a bridge.
- The headlamps are not on at night or in a tunnel, or light level is low.
- There is a boundary structure in the roadway.
- The light of street, sun, oncoming vehicle and so on reflects from the water on the road.
- When light shines brightly in the reverse direction you drive.
- Road surface is not evenness.
- The distance from the vehicle ahead is very short or the vehicle ahead drives hiding the lane line (or road edge).
- You drive on a steep grade or a sharp curve.
- The vehicle vibrates heavily.
- The temperature near inside mirror is very high due to direct sun light and etc.

▶ When front visibility is poor

- The lens or windscreen is covered by strange materials.
- The sensor cannot detect the lane because of fog, heavy rain or snow.
- The windscreen is fogged by humid air in the vehicle.
- Putting something on the crash pad and etc.

⚠ WARNING

Lane Keeping Assist (LKA) is a function to help prevent the driver from leaving the lane (or road edge). However, the driver should not solely rely on the function but always take the necessary actions for safe driving practices.

FORWARD COLLISION-AVOIDANCE ASSIST-LANE-CHANGE ONCOMING FUNCTION (IF FCA EQUIPPED)

Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist-Lane-Change Oncoming function detects the oncoming vehicle with a front view camera at the front windscreen. And it assists the driver's steering to help avoiding the collision to oncoming vehicle and keeping the vehicle in the lanes, when the vehicle drives over the centreline.

⚠ WARNING

- **This function is only a supplemental system. So, it does not replace the need for extreme care and attention of the driver. The sensing range of oncoming vehicle is limited. Pay attention to the road conditions at all times.**
- **Always drive cautiously to prevent unexpected and sudden situations from occurring. The function does not steer the vehicle completely and is not a collision avoidance function.**

Function operation

Driver can activate(or deactivate) the function from the User Settings mode:

'User Settings → Driver assistance → Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA)'

For further details, refer to "Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA)" in this chapter.

Warning message and function control

OBD058113R

- After FCA is on, vehicle speed is over 60 km/h and if the vehicle across the centreline even though the oncoming vehicle approaching, this warning message appears on the LCD display with audible warning.
- Additionally, provides steering assist to return vehicle back into lanes.

⚠ WARNING

- **The steering control can not completely avoid the collision to oncoming vehicle.**

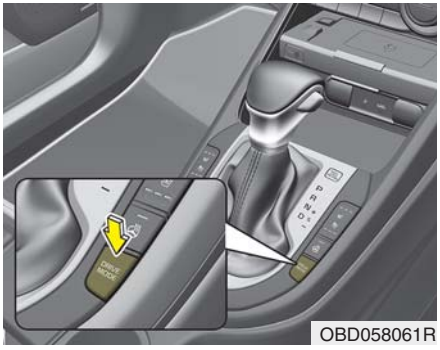
  Driver is responsible for being aware of surroundings and steering the vehicle for safe driving practices.
- **The function operated within certain conditions, such as the distance and speed from the oncoming vehicle, the driver's vehicle speed, etc.**

  The function can be cancelled or not work properly according to road condition and surroundings. Always be cautious when driving.
- **Never drive deliberately and dangerously to activate the function.**

Limitations of the function

- Refer to “Driver’s attention” in this chapter, Lane Keeping Assist (LKA).
- Refer to “Limitation of the system” in this chapter, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA).

DRIVE MODE INTEGRATED CONTROL (IF EQUIPPED)


OBD058061R

The drive mode may be selected according to the driver's preference or road condition.

The mode changes whenever the DRIVE MODE button is pressed.

- SMART mode : SMART mode automatically adjusts the driving mode (ECO ↔ COMFORT ↔ SPORT) in accordance with the driver's driving habits.
- COMFORT mode : COMFORT mode provides soft driving and comfortable riding.
- ECO mode : ECO mode improves fuel efficiency for eco-friendly driving.

The driving mode will be set to COMFORT or ECO mode when the engine is restarted. if it is in SMART/COMFORT mode. COMFORT mode will be set, when the engine is restarted.

If it is in ECO mode, ECO mode will be set when the engine is restarted.

SMART mode

OJF058430R

OJF058431R

OJF058432R

SMART SMART mode selects the proper driving mode among ECO, COMFORT and SPORT by judging the driver's driving habits (i.e. mild or dynamic) from the brake pedal depression or the steering wheel operation.

- Press the DRIVE MODE button to activate SMART mode. When SMART mode is activated, the indicator illuminates on the instrument cluster.
- The indicator illuminates in blue, when the driver's driving is categorized to be mild. It illuminates in white, when the driver's driving is categorized to be normal. It illuminates in red, when the driver's driving is categorized to be dynamic during abrupt braking or sharp curving.
- The vehicle starts in COMFORT mode, when the engine was turned OFF in SMART mode.
- SMART mode automatically controls the vehicle driving, such as gear shifting patterns, engine torque, riding quality (if equipped with the electronic suspension system), and power distribution (if equipped with the All-Wheel Drive (AWD) system), in accordance with the driver's driving habits.

✻ NOTICE

- **When you mildly drive the vehicle in SMART mode, the driving mode changes to ECO mode to improve fuel efficiency. However, the actual fuel efficiency may differ in accordance with your driving situations (i.e. upward/downward slope, vehicle deceleration/acceleration).**
- **When you dynamically drive the vehicle in SMART mode by abruptly decelerating or sharply curving, the driving mode changes to SPORT mode. However, it may adversely affect fuel economy.**

Various driving situations, which you may encounter in SMART mode

- The driving mode automatically changes to ECO mode after a certain period of time, when you gently depress the accelerator pedal (Your driving is categorized to be mild.).
- The driving mode automatically changes from SMART ECO mode to SMART COMFORT mode after a certain period of time, when you sharply or repetitively depress the accelerator pedal.
- The driving mode automatically changes to SMART COMFORT mode with the same driving patterns, when the vehicle starts to drive on an upward slope of a certain angle. The driving mode automatically returns to SMART ECO mode, when the vehicle enters a leveled road.
- The driving mode automatically changes to SMART SPORT, when you abruptly accelerate the vehicle or repetitively operate the steering wheel (Your driving is categorized to be sporty.). In this mode, your vehicle drives in a lower gear for abrupt accelerating/decelerating and increases the engine brake performance.
- You may still sense the engine brake performance, even when you release the accelerator pedal in SMART SPORT mode. It is because your vehicle remains to be in a lower gear over a certain period of time for next acceleration. Thus, it is a normal driving situation, not indicating any malfunction.
- The driving mode automatically changes to SMART SPORT mode only in harsh driving situations. In most of the normal driving situations, the driving mode sets to be either in SMART ECO mode or in SMART COMFORT mode.

Limitation of SMART mode

The SMART mode may be limited in following situations. (The OFF indicator illuminates in those situations.)

- The driver manually moves the shift lever : It deactivates SMART mode. The vehicle drives, as the driver manually moves the shift lever.
- The Cruise Control is activated : The cruise system may deactivate the SMART mode. When a higher system is set by the cruise system, it starts to control vehicle speed and deactivates SMART mode. (SMART mode is not deactivated just by activing the cruise system.)
- The transmission oil temperature is either extremely low or extremely high : The SMART mode can be active in most of the normal driving situations. However, an extremely high/ low transmission oil temperature may temporarily deactivate the SMART mode, because the transmission condition is out of normal operation condition.

ECO mode

ECO When the Drive Mode is set to ECO mode, the engine and transmission control logic are changed to maximize fuel efficiency.

- When ECO mode is selected by pressing the DRIVE MODE button, the ECO indicator (green colour) will illuminate.
- If the vehicle is set to ECO mode, when the engine is turned OFF and restarted the Drive Mode setting will remain in ECO mode.

✻ NOTICE

Fuel efficiency depends on the driver's driving habit and road condition.

When ECO mode is activated:

- The acceleration response may be slightly reduced if the accelerator pedal is depressed moderately.
- The air conditioner performance may be limited.
- The shift pattern of the automatic transmission may change.
- The engine noise may get louder.

The above situations are normal conditions when ECO mode is activated to improve fuel efficiency.

Limitation of ECO mode operation:

If the following conditions occur whilst ECO mode is operating, the system operation is limited even though there is no change in the ECO indicator.

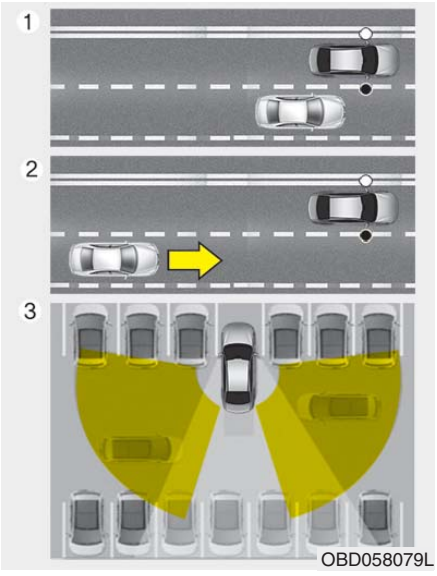
- When the coolant temperature is low:

  The system will be limited until engine performance becomes normal.
- When driving up a hill:

  The system will be limited to gain power when driving uphill because engine torque is restricted.
- When driving the vehicle with the automatic transmission gear shift lever in manual mode.

  The system will be limited according to the shift location.

BLIND-SPOT COLLISION WARNING (BCW) (IF EQUIPPED)



Blind-Spot Collision Warning uses a rear corner radar sensor to warn the driver whilst driving.

It senses the rear side territory of the vehicle and provides information to the driver.

① BCW (Blind-Spot Collision Warning)

- Blind spot area

  Warning range is dependent on your vehicle speed. However, if the speed of your vehicle is faster by 10km/h or more than other nearby vehicles, the warning is not operated.

- Closing at high speed

  When vehicles are approaching to your vehicle at high speed, the warning is operated.

  If the driver activates the turn signal when the function detects an oncoming vehicle, the function sounds an audible warning.

  Distance from the approaching vehicle can be seen differently according to the relative speed.

② RCCW (Rear Cross-Traffic Collision Warning)

When your vehicle moves backward, the sensor detects approaching vehicles to the left or right side direction and warning is operated.

The feature will operate when the vehicle is moving in reverse below about 10 km/h (6 mph). If oncoming cross traffic is detected a warning chime will sound.

Distance from the approaching vehicle can be seen differently according to the relative speed.

BCW (Blind-Spot Collision Warning)

Operating conditions

The indicator on the button will illuminate when Blind-Spot Safety button is pressed with the ignition switch ON. If the vehicle speed exceeds 30 km/h (18.6 mph), the function will activate.

If you press the button again, the switch indicator and function will be turned off.

If the ignition switch is turned OFF and ON the function returns to the previous state.

When the function is not used turn the function off by pressing the button.

When the function is turned on the warning light will illuminate for 3 seconds on the outside rearview mirror.

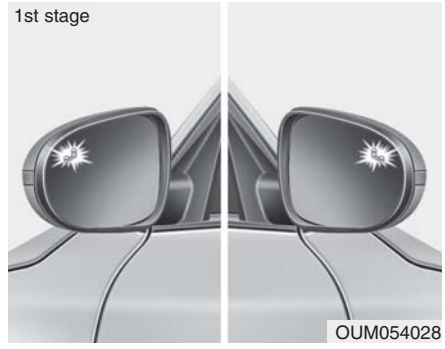
Warning type

The function will activate when:

1. The function is on
2. Vehicle speed is above 30 km/h (20 mph)
3. Other vehicles are detected in the rear side

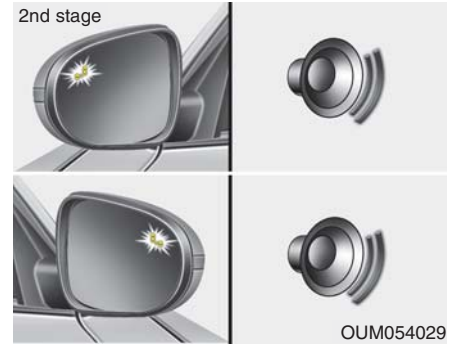
⚠ WARNING

- **Always check the road condition whilst driving for unexpected situations even though Blind-Spot Collision Warning is operating.**
- **Blind-Spot Collision Warning is a supplemental function to assist you. Do not entirely rely on the function. Always pay attention, whilst driving, for your safety.**
- **Blind-Spot Collision Warning is not a substitute for proper and safe driving. Always drive safely and use caution when changing lanes or backing the vehicle up. Blind-Spot Collision Warning may not detect every object alongside the vehicle.**



If a vehicle is detected within the boundary of the function, a yellow warning light will illuminate on the outside rearview mirror.

If the detected vehicle is not in detection range, the warning will be turned off.



The second stage alarm will activate when:

1. The first stage warning is on
2. The turn signal is on to change a lane

When the second stage warning is activated, a warning light will be blinking on the outside rearview mirror and an alarm will sound.

If you move the turn signal switch to origin position, the second stage warning will be deactivated.

- The second stage alarm can be deactivated.

• To activate the alarm:

  Go to the User Settings Mode → Sound and select "BCW" on the LCD display.

• To deactivate the alarm:

  Go to the User Settings Mode → Sound and deselect "BCW" on the LCD display.

⚠ CAUTION

The alarm function helps alert the driver. Deactivate this function only when it is necessary.

Detecting sensor

OBD058039L

The sensors are located inside the rear bumper.

Always keep the rear bumper clean for the function to work properly.

Warning message

OJF058433R

The message will appear to notify the driver if there are foreign substances on the surface or inside the rear bumper or it is hot near the rear bumper. The light on the switch and the function will be turned off automatically.

Remove the foreign substance on the rear bumper.

After the foreign substance is removed, if you drive for approximately 10 minutes, the function will work normally.

If the function does not work normally even though the foreign substance, trailer or carrier, or other equipment is removed, take your vehicle to a professional workshop and have the function checked. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

It is possible to get the message with no foreign substance on the rear bumper, for example, when driving in sparse rural or open area, such as desert, where there is insufficient data for operation.

This message may also activate during heavy rain or due to road spray.

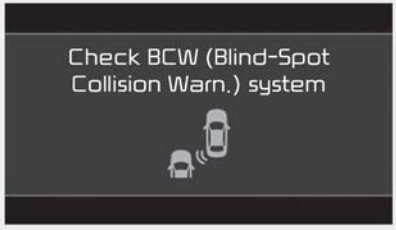
In this case, the vehicle does not need service.

When the cargo area or other equipment is being used, turn all functions of the function [OFF].

■ Type A

OJF058434R

■ Type B



OJF058435R

If the function does not work properly, a warning message will appear and the light on the button will turn off. The function will turn off automatically.

In this case, have the function checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/ service partner.

Rear Cross-Traffic Collision Warning (RCCW)

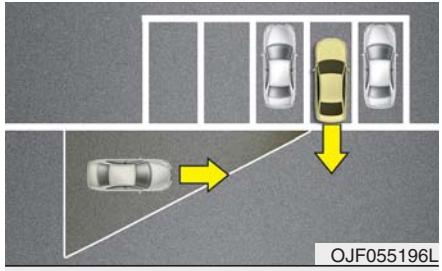
OYG056140

When your vehicle moves backwards from a parking position, the sensor detects approaching vehicles to the left or right side direction and gives information to the driver.

Operating conditions

- Select RCCW (Rear Cross-Traffic Collision Warning) in "User Settings" under "Driving Assist" on the instrument cluster. The function will turn on and stand by to be activated.
- Select RCCW again, to turn the function off.
- If the vehicle is turned off and on again, RCCW will return to the state right before the vehicle was turned off. Turn RCCW off when not in use.
- The function is operated when the vehicle speed is below 10km/h with the shift lever in R (Reverse).
- Rear Cross-Traffic Collision Warning (RCCW) detection range is approximately 0.5 m ~ 20 m based on side direction. If an approaching vehicle speed is 4 ~ 36 km/h in detection range, The warning is on. However, the function sensing range is different based on conditions. Always pay attention to surrounding.

Warning type



OJF055196L

OBD058063

OBD058064

- If an approaching vehicle detected by sensors, the warning is chime and the warning light will blink on the outside rearview mirror.
- If the detected vehicle is out of detection range, moving away in the opposite direction or moving slow, or if the vehicle is right behind your vehicle, if the direction of the other vehicle is not heading towards your vehicle, the warning is cancelled.
- The function may not be operating properly due to other factors or circumstances, so always pay attention to your surrounding.

❊ If the bumper on either side is blocked by a barrier or vehicles, the function sensing ability may be deteriorated.

⚠ WARNING

- **When BCW is being activated, The warning light on the outside rearview mirror will illuminate whenever a vehicle is detected at the rear side by the function.**

  To avoid accidents, do not focus only on the warning light and neglect to see the surrounding of the vehicle.
- **Drive safely even though the vehicle is equipped with Blind-Spot Collision Warning (BCW). Do not solely rely on the function but check for yourself before changing lanes.**

  The function may not warn the driver in some conditions so always check the surroundings whilst driving.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Blind-Spot Collision Warning (BCW) and Rear Cross-Traffic Collision Warning (RCCW) are not a substitute for proper and safe driving practices. Always drive safely and use caution when changing lanes or backing up your vehicle. Blind-Spot Collision Warning (BCW) may not detect every object alongside the vehicle.**

⚠ CAUTION

- ***The function may not work properly if the bumper has been replaced or if a repair work has been done near the sensor.***
- ***The detection area differs according to the roads width. If the road is narrow the function may detect other vehicles in the second next lane.***
- ***On the contrary, if the road is very wide the function may not detect other vehicles in the next lane.***
- ***The function might be turned off due to strong electromagnetic waves.***

Non-operating condition

BCW indicator on the outer side view mirror may not illuminate properly when:

- The outside rearview mirror housing is damaged
- The mirror is covered with dirt, snow, or debris.
- The window is covered with dirt, snow, or debris.
- The window is tinted.

Driver's Attention

The driver must be cautious in the below situations, because the system may not detect other vehicles or objects in certain circumstances

- **When a trailer or carrier is installed.**
- **The vehicle drives in inclement weather such as heavy rain or snow.**
- **The sensor is polluted with rain, snow, mud, etc.**
- **The rear bumper where the sensor is located is covered with a foreign object such as a bumper sticker, a bumper guard, a bike rack, etc.**
- **The rear bumper is damaged, or the sensor is out of the original default position.**
- **The vehicle height gets lower or higher due to heavy loading in the luggage compartment, abnormal tyre pressure, etc.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **When the temperature near the rear bumper area is high or low.**
- **When the sensors are blocked by other vehicles, walls or parking-lot pillars.**
- **The vehicle drives on a curved road or through a tollgate.**
- **The vehicle is driven near areas containing metal substances such as a construction zone, railroad, etc.**
- **There is a fixed object near the vehicle, such as a guardrail, pedestrian, animal, tunnel, etc.**
- **Whilst going down or up a steep road where the height of the lane is different.**
- **When driving through a narrow road with many trees or bushes.**
- **When driving on wet surface.**
- **When the surrounding vehicle or structure is driving in a wide area (desert, field, suburb etc.)**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **A big vehicle is near such as a bus or truck.**
- **When other vehicles are close to your vehicle.**
- **When the other vehicle approaches very close.**
- **When the detected vehicle also moves back, as your vehicle drives back.**
- **Whilst changing lanes.**
- **If the vehicle has started at the same time as the vehicle next to you and has accelerated.**
- **When the other vehicle passes at a very fast speed.**
- **When the vehicle in the next lane moves two lanes away from you OR when the vehicle two lanes away moves to the next lane from you.**

  The vehicle is turning left or right at a crossroads.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **A motorcycle or bicycle is near.**
- **A flat trailer is near.**
- **If there are small objects in the detecting area such as a shopping cart, pedestrians or a baby stroller.**
- **If there is a low height vehicle such as a sports car.**

DRIVER ATTENTION WARNING (DAW) (IF EQUIPPED)

Driver Attention Warning (DAW) displays the condition of the driver's fatigue and inattention.

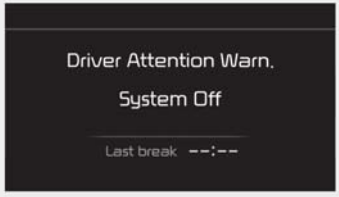
Function setting and activation

Function setting

- To turn ON the Driver Attention Warning (DAW), turn on the engine, and then select 'User Settings → Driving Assistance → Driver Attention Warning → High/Normal' on the LCD display.
- The Driver can select mode of Driver Attention Warning (DAW).
  - High : Driver Attention Warning (DAW) alerts the driver of his/her fatigue level or inattentive driving practices faster than Normal mode.
  - Normal : Driver Attention Warning (DAW) alerts the driver of his/her fatigue level or inattentive driving practices.
  - Off : Driver Attention Warning (DAW) is deactivated.
- The set-up of Driver Attention Warning (DAW) will be maintained, as selected, when the engine is restarted.

Display of the driver's attention level

■ System off



OBD058108R

■ Attentive driving

OBD058109R

■ Inattentive driving

OBD058110R

- The driver can monitor their driving conditions on the LCD display.

  The DAW screen will appear when you select the Assist Mode tab on the LCD display if the system is activated. (For more information, refer to "User Settings Mode" in chapter 4.)
- The driver's attention level is displayed on the scale of 1 to 5. The lower the number is, the more inattentive the driver is.
- The level decreases when the driver does not take a break for a certain period of time.
- The level increases when the driver attentively drives for a certain period of time.
- When the driver turns on the system whilst driving, it displays 'Last break' and level reflected that.

Consider taking a break

OJF058426L

- The "Consider taking a break" message appears on the LCD display and a warning sounds in order to suggest the driver to take a break, when the driver's attention level is below 1.
- Driver Attention Warning (DAW) does not suggest the driver to take a break, when the total driving time is shorter than 10 minutes.

⚠ CAUTION

Whilst other beeps such as the seat belt warning sound are in operation and override the DAW alarming function, DAW beeps may not occur.

Resetting the function

- The last break time is set to 00:00 and the driver's attention level is set to 5 (very attentive) when the driver resets Driver Attention Warning (DAW).
- Driver Attention Warning (DAW) resets in the following situations.
  - The engine is turned OFF.
  - The driver unfastens the seat belt and then opens the driver's door.
  - Stop lasting more than 10 minutes.
- Driver attention Warning (DAW) operates again, when the driver restarts driving.

Function standby

OBD058114R

Driver Attention Warning (DAW) enters the ready status and displays the 'Standby' screen in the following situations.

- The camera sensor keeps failing to detect the lanes.
- Driving speed remains under 60 km/h or over 180 km/h.

Function malfunction

OJF058429L

When the “Check Driver Attention Warning (DAW) system” warning message appears, the function is not working properly. In this case, have the function checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

⚠ WARNING

- **Driver Attention Warning (DAW) is not a substitute for safe driving practices, but a convenience function only. It is the responsibility of the driver to always drive cautiously to prevent unexpected and sudden situations from occurring. Pay attention to the road conditions at all times.**
- **It may suggest a break according to the driver’s driving pattern or habits even if the driver doesn’t feel fatigued.**
- **The driver, who feels fatigued, should take a break, even though there is no break suggestion by the Driver Attention Warning (DAW).**

✻ NOTICE

Driver Attention Warning (DAW) utilizes the camera sensor on the front windscreen for its operation.
To keep the camera sensor in the best condition, you should observe the followings:

- **Do not disassemble camera temporarily for tinted window or attaching any types of coatings and accessories. If you disassemble a camera and assemble it again, take your vehicle to an authorised Kia dealer and have the system checked to need a calibration.**
- **Do not locate any reflective objects (i.e. white paper, mirror) over the dashboard. Any light reflection may cause a mal-function of Driver Attention Warning (DAW).**
- **Pay extreme caution to keep the camera sensor out of water.**
- **Do not arbitrarily disassemble the camera assembly, nor apply any impact on the camera assembly.**
- **Playing the vehicle audio system at high volume may offset Driver Attention Warning (DAW) warning sounds.**

⚠ CAUTION

Driver Attention Warning (DAW) may not properly operate with limited alerting in the following situations:

- ***Not properly recognize lane (Refer to "Lane Keeping Assist (LKA) System" in this chapter.)***
- ***Rough or intentionally evasive driving***
- ***Large tyre pressure deviation, uneven wear, poor wheel alignment, etc.***
- ***Severe winding road***
- ***Uneven road surface condition***
- ***Windy road***
- ***The vehicle drives through a windy area.***

(Continued)

(Continued)

- ***The vehicle is controlled by the following driving assist functions:***
  - ***Lane Keeping Assist (LKA)***
  - ***Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA)***
  - ***Smart Cruise Control (SCC)***

CRUISE CONTROL (CC) (IF EQUIPPED)

Cruise Control allows you to program the vehicle to maintain a constant speed without pressing the accelerator pedal.

This system is designed to function above approximately 30 km/h (20 mph).

⚠ WARNING

- **If Cruise Control is left on, (CRUISE indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminated) Cruise Control can be switched on accidentally. Keep Cruise Control off (CRUISE indicator light OFF) when Cruise Control is not in use, to avoid inadvertently setting a speed.**
- **Use Cruise Control only when travelling on open highways in good weather.**
- **Do not use Cruise Control when it may not be safe to keep the car at a constant speed, for instance, driving in heavy or varying traffic, or on slippery (rainy, icy or snow-covered) or winding roads or over 6% uphill or down-hill roads.**
- **Pay particular attention to the driving conditions whenever using Cruise Control.**

⚠ CAUTION

During cruise-speed driving of a manual transmission vehicle, do not shift into neutral without depressing the clutch pedal, since the engine will be overrevved. If this happens, depress the clutch pedal or release Cruise Control ON-OFF switch.

✻ NOTICE

During normal Cruise Control operation, when the SET- switch is activated or reactivated after applying the brakes, Cruise Control will energize after approximately 3 seconds. This delay is normal.

✻ NOTICE

To activate Cruise Control, depress the brake pedal at least once after turning the ignition switch to the ON position or starting the engine. This is to check if the brake switch which is important part to cancel Cruise Control is in normal condition.

Cruise Control switch

■ Type A

OBD058081L

■ Type B

OBD058082L

O / CANCEL : Cancels Cruise Control operation.

/ CRUISE : Turns Cruise Control on or off.

RES+: Resumes or increases Cruise Control speed.

SET-: Sets or decreases Cruise Control speed.

To set Cruise Control speed:

■ Type A

■ Type B

1. Press the Driving Assist (/ CRUISE) button on the steering wheel, to turn the system on. The cruise status on the LCD screen will appear.
2. Accelerate to the desired speed, which must be more than 30 km/h (20 mph).

✻ NOTICE - Manual transmission

For manual transmission vehicles, you should depress the brake pedal at least once to set the Cruise Control after starting the engine.

■ Type A

■ Type B

3. Move down the SET- switch, and release it at the desired speed. The cruise status on the LCD screen will appear. Release the accelerator pedal at the same time. The desired speed will automatically be maintained.

On a steep grade, the vehicle may slow down or speed up slightly whilst going downhill.

To increase Cruise Control set speed:

■ Type A

OBD058086L

■ Type B

OBD058087L

Follow either of these procedures:

- Move up the RES+ switch and hold it. Your vehicle set speed will increase by 10 km/h (5 mph). Release the lever at the speed you want.
- Move up the RES+ switch and release it immediately. The cruising speed will increase by 1.0 km/h (1.0 mph) each time you move up the RES+ switch in this manner.

To decrease the cruising speed:

■ Type A

■ Type B

Follow either of these procedures:

- Move down the SET- switch and hold it. Your vehicle set speed will decrease by 10 km/h (5 mph). Release the lever at the speed you want to maintain.
- Move down the SET- switch and release it immediately. The cruising speed will decrease by 1.0 km/h (1.0 mph) each time you move down the SET- switch in this manner.

To temporarily accelerate with Cruise Control on:

If you want to speed up temporarily when Cruise Control is on, depress the accelerator pedal. Increased speed will not interfere with Cruise Control operation or change the set speed.

To return to the set speed, take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

To cancel Cruise Control, do one of the following:

■ Type A

■ Type B

- Depress the brake pedal.
- Depress the clutch pedal if equipped with a manual transmission.
- Press the O/CANCEL switch located on the steering wheel.

- Decrease the vehicle speed lower than the memory speed by 20 km/h (12 mph).
- Decrease the vehicle speed to less than approximately 30 km/h (20 mph).

Each of these actions will cancel Cruise Control operation (The cruise set *speed will disappear), but it will not turn the system off. If you wish to resume Cruise Control operation, move up the RES+ switch located on your steering wheel. You will return to your previously preset speed.*

To resume cruising speed at more than approximately 30 km/h (20 mph):

■ Type A

OBD058086L

■ Type B

OBD058087L

If any method other than the Driving Assist (/CRUISE) button was used to cancel cruising speed and the system is still activated, the most recent set speed will automatically resume when you move up the RES+ switch.

It will not resume, however, if the vehicle speed has dropped below approximately 30 km/h (20 mph).

To turn Cruise Control off, do one of the following:

- Press the Driving Assist (/CRUISE) button (The cruise status on the LCD screen will disappear).
- Turn the ignition off.

Both of these actions cancel Cruise Control operation. If you want to resume Cruise Control operation, repeat the steps provided in "To set Cruise Control speed" on the previous page.

SPEED LIMIT CONTROL (IF EQUIPPED)

You can set the speed limit when you do not want to drive over a specific speed.

If you drive over the preset speed limit, the warning function operates (set speed limit will blink and chime will sound) until the vehicle speed returns within the speed limit.

✻ NOTICE

Whilst speed limit control is in operation, Cruise Control cannot be activated.

Speed limit control switch

OBD058082R

O: Cancels set speed limit.

MODE : Turns speed limit control system on or off.

RES+: Resumes or increases speed limit control speed.

SET-: Sets or decreases speed limit control speed.

To set speed limit :

OBD058019R

1. Press the speed limit MODE button twice on the steering wheel, to turn the system on.

The speed limit indicator light will illuminate.

2. Move down the SET- switch.

3. Move up the RES+ switch or down the SET- switch, and release it at the desired speed. Move up the RES+ switch or down the SET- switch and hold it. The speed will increase or decrease by 5 km/h (3 mph).

The set speed limit will be displayed.

OJF058153L

To drive over the preset speed limit you must depress hard on the accelerator pedal (more than approximately 80%) until the kick down mechanism works with a clicking noise. Then the set speed limit will blink and chime will sound until you return the vehicle speed within the speed limit.

✻ NOTICE

- **Depressing the accelerator pedal less than approximately 50%, the vehicle will not speed over the preset speed limit but maintain the vehicle speed within the speed limit.**
- **A clicking noise heard from the kick down mechanism by depressing the accelerator pedal fully is a normal condition.**

To turn off the speed limit control, do one of the following:

OBD058019R

- Press the speed limit MODE switch once again.
- Press the cruise switch (If you press cruise switch, the cruise system will turn on)

If you press the O switch once, the set speed limit will cancel, but it will not turn the system off. If you wish to reset the speed limit, up the RES+ switch or down the SET- switch to the desired speed.

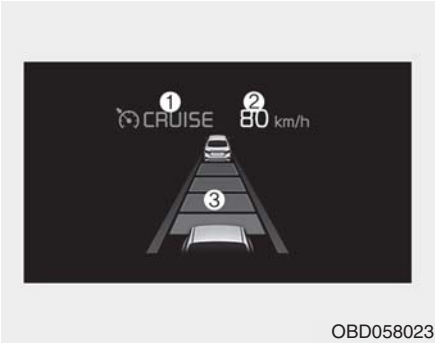
OJF058153L

⚠ CAUTION

The "---" indicator will blink if there is a problem with speed limit control system.

If this occurs, have the system checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

SMART CRUISE CONTROL (SCC) (IF EQUIPPED)



OBD058023

① Cruise indicator
② Set speed
③ Vehicle distance

Smart Cruise Control allows you to program the vehicle to maintain constant speed and distance detecting the vehicle ahead without depressing the accelerator or brake pedal.

⚠ WARNING

For your safety, please read the owner's manual before using Smart Cruise Control.

✻ NOTICE

To activate Smart Cruise Control, depress the brake pedal at least once after turning the ignition switch to the ON position or starting the engine. This is to check if the brake switch which is important part to cancel Smart Cruise Control is in normal condition.

⚠ WARNING

- **If Smart Cruise Control is left on, (cruise indicator in the instrument cluster illuminated) Smart Cruise Control can be activated unintentionally. Keep Smart Cruise Control off (cruise indicator turn off) when Smart Cruise Control is not used.**
- **Use Smart Cruise Control only when travelling on open highways in good weather.**
- **Do not use Smart Cruise Control when it may not be safe to keep the car at a constant speed. For instance.**
  - **Highway interchange and tollgate**
  - **Road surrounded by abnormally multiple steel constructions (subway construction, steel tunnel, etc)**

(Continued)

(Continued)
- Parking lot
- Lanes beside guard rail on a road
- Slippery road with rain, ice, or snow covered
- Abrupt curved road
- Steep hills
- Windy roads
- Off roads
- Rods under construction
- Rumble strip
- When driving near crash barriers
- When driving on a sharp curve
- When the vehicle sensing ability decreases due to vehicle modification resulting level difference of the vehicle's front and rear
- When driving in heavy traffic or when traffic conditions make it difficult to drive at a constant speed

(Continued)

(Continued)
- When driving on rainy, icy, or snow-covered roads
- When driving with limited view (possibly due to bad weather, such as fog, snow, rain or sandstorm)

• Pay particular attention to the driving conditions whenever using Smart Cruise Control.
• Smart Cruise Control is not a substitute for safe driving. It is the responsibility of the driver to always check the speed and distance of the vehicle ahead.
• Be careful when driving downhill using SCC.
• Limited visibility (rain, snow, smog, etc.)
• Cruise function should not be used when the vehicle is being towed to prevent any damage.

(Continued)

(Continued)
• Always set the vehicle speed under the speed limit in your country.
• Unexpected situations may lead to possible accidents. Pay attention continuously to road conditions and driving even when Smart Cruise Control is being operated.

Smart Cruise Control switch

CANCEL / O : Cancels Cruise Control operation.

CRUISE / MODE : Turns Cruise Control on or off.

RES + : Resumes or increases Cruise Control speed.

SET - : Sets or decreases Cruise Control speed.

: Sets vehicle distance

✻ NOTICE

First, switch the mode to Smart Cruise Control by pressing the CRUISE/ MODE button if equipped with the Speed Limit Control.
The mode changes, as below, whenever the CRUISE/ MODE button is pressed.

Smart Cruise Control speed

To set Smart Cruise Control Speed :

OBD058096R

1. Press the CRUISE / MODE button, to turn the function on. The CRUISE / MODE indicator in the instrument cluster will illuminate.
2. Accelerate to the desired speed.

However, the vehicle speed can be set only from 30 km/h (20 mph) to 180 km/h (110 mph) regardless of the preceding vehicle.

OBD058097R

3. Move down the SET- switch, and release it at the desired speed. The set speed and vehicle to vehicle distance on the LCD screen will illuminate.
4. Release the accelerator pedal. The desired speed will automatically be maintained.

If there is a vehicle in front of you, the speed may decrease to maintain the distance to the vehicle ahead.

On a steep grade, the vehicle may slow down or speed up slightly whilst going uphill or downhill.

Vehicle speed may decrease on an upward slope and increase on a ownward slope.

Whether the vehicle is ahead or not, the vehicle speed will be set at a speed of 30 km/h (20 mph) when the vehicle is driving at a speed ranging from 10 km/h (6 mph) to 30 km/h (20 mph).

To increase Cruise Control set speed:

OBD058098R

Follow either of these procedures:

- Move up the RES+ switch, and hold it. Your vehicle set speed will increase by 10 km/h (5 mph). Release the lever at the speed you want.
- Move up the RES+ switch, and release it immediately. The cruising speed will increase by 1.0 km/h (1.0 mph) each time you move up the RES+ switch in this manner.
- You can set the speed to 180 km/h (110 mph).

⚠ CAUTION

Check the driving condition before using the toggle switch. Driving speed sharply increases, when you push up and hold the toggle switch.

To decrease the Cruise Control set speed:

OBD058097R

Follow either of these procedures:

- Move down the SET- switch, and hold it. Your vehicle set speed will decrease by 10 km/h (5 mph). Release the lever at the speed you want.
- Move down the SET- switch, and release it immediately. The cruising speed will decrease by 1.0 km/h (1.0 mph) each time you move down the SET- switch in this manner.
- You can set the speed to 30 km/h (20 mph).

To temporarily accelerate with the Cruise Control on:

If you want to speed up temporarily when the Cruise Control is on, depress the accelerator pedal. Increased speed will not interfere with Cruise Control operation or change the set speed.

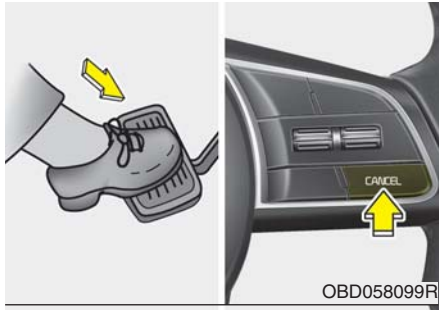
To return to the set speed, take your foot off the accelerator.

If you move down the SET- switch at increased speed, the cruising speed will be set again.

✻ NOTICE

Be careful when accelerating temporarily, because the speed is not controlled automatically at this time even if there is a vehicle in front of you.

Smart Cruise Control will be temporarily cancelled when:



Cancelled manually

Smart Cruise Control is temporarily cancelled when the brake pedal is depressed or the CANCEL/O button is pressed. Depress the brake pedal and press the CANCEL/O button at the same time, when the vehicle is at a standstill. The speed and vehicle distance indicator on the cluster is disappeared and the CRUISE/ MODE indicator is illuminated continuously.

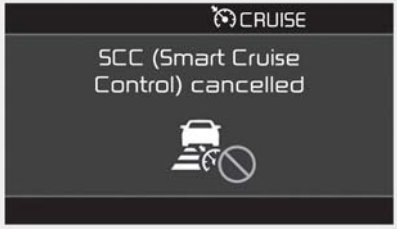
Cancelled automatically

- The driver's door is opened.
- The shift lever is shifted to N (Neutral), R (Reverse) or P (Paking).
- The vehicle speed is over 190 km/h (120 mph)
- The ESC, ABS or TCS is operating.
- The ESC is turned off.
- The sensor or the cover is dirty or blocked with foreign matter.
- The accelerator pedal is continuously depressed for long time.
- The engine speed is in dangerous range.
- Smart Cruise Control has malfunctioned.
- When the braking control is operated for Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist.
- The vehicle stops and goes repeatedly for a long period of time.
- When the parking brake is locked.
- Engine has some problems.
- When the vehicle speed drops below 10 km/h (6 mph).

Each of these actions will cancel the smart Cruise Control operation. (The set speed and vehicle to vehicle distance on the LCD display will go off.) In a condition the smart Cruise Control is cancelled automatically, the smart Cruise Control will not resume even though the RES+ or SET- switch is moved.

⚠ CAUTION

If Smart Cruise Control is cancelled by other than the reasons mentioned, have the system checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.



OJF058397R

⚠ CAUTION

If the function is automatically cancelled, the warning chime will sound and a message will appear for a few seconds.

You must adjust the vehicle speed by depressing the accelerator or brake pedal according to the road condition ahead and driving condition.

Always check the road conditions. Do not rely on the warning chime.

To resume Cruise Control set speed:

OBD058098R

Reset

To use Smart Cruise Control again, operate the "SET -" or "RES +" switch. If you push up the "RES +" switch, then you will drive at the speed previously set. But if you drive at the speed below 10 km/h (6 mph) with the smart Cruise Control mode, Smart Cruise Control will not be resumed.

✻ NOTICE

To reduce the risk of an accident, always check the road conditions when reactivating the smart Cruise Control using the RES+ switch to ensure the road conditions permit safe use of the Cruise Control.

To turn Cruise Control off:

■ Type A

OBD058101R

■ Type B

OBD058102R

Press the CRUISE/ MODE button. (The CRUISE indicator in the instrument cluster will go off).

When Smart Cruise Controll is not needed, press the CRUISE/ MODE switch and deactivate the system.

- Press the CRUISE/ MODE button (The CRUISE indicator light will go off.). (if equipped with Speed Limit Control)
  - With Smart Cruise Control on, pressing the button once will turn off the smart Cruise Control and turn on the speed limit control.
  - With Smart Cruise Control off and speed limit control on, pressing the button will turn off both system.

✻ NOTICE

The mode changes, as below, whenever the button is pressed.

System off → Smart Cruise Control
↑ ↓
Speed Limit Control ←

Vehicle distance setting

To set vehicle distance:

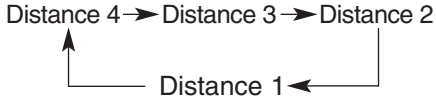
OBD058103R

This function allows you to program the vehicle to maintain relative distance to the vehicle ahead without depressing the accelerator pedal or brake pedal.

The vehicle distance will automatically activate when the smart Cruise Control is on.

Select the appropriate distance according to road conditions and vehicle speed.

Each time the button is pressed, the vehicle distance changes as follows:



For example, if you drive at 90 km/h (56 mph), the distance maintain as follows;

Distance 4 - approximately 52.5 m
Distance 3 - approximately 40 m
Distance 2 - approximately 32.5 m
Distance 1 - approximately 25 m

✻ NOTICE

The distance is set to the last set distance when the function is used for the first time after starting the engine.

When the lane ahead is clear :

OBD058030R

The vehicle speed will maintain the set speed.

When there is a vehicle ahead of you in your lane :

OBD058029

OBD058030

OBD058031

OBD058032

- The vehicle will maintain the set speed, when the lane ahead is clear.
- The vehicle will slow down or speed up to maintain the selected distance, when there is a vehicle ahead of you in the lane. (A vehicle will appear in front of your vehicle in the LCD display only when there is an actual vehicle in front of you)
- If the vehicle ahead speeds up, your vehicle will travel at a steady cruising speed after accelerating to the selected speed.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***The warning chime sounds and LCD display blinks if it is hard to maintain the selected distance to the vehicle ahead.***
- ***If the warning chime sounds, actively adjust the vehicle speed by depressing the brake pedal according to the road condition ahead and driving condition.***
- ***Even if the warning chime is not activated, always pay attention to the driving conditions to prevent dangerous situations from occurring.***
- ***Be alert to road conditions as radio, sound and outside conditions could interrupt a warning sound.***

OJF058401L

⚠ CAUTION

If the vehicle ahead (vehicle speed: less than 30 km/h (20 mph)) disappears to the next lane, the warning chime will sound and a message will appear. Adjust your vehicle speed for vehicles or objects that can suddenly appear in front of you by depressing the brake pedal according to the road condition ahead and driving condition.

Radar to detect distance to the vehicle ahead

OBD058014

The sensor detects the distance to the vehicle ahead.

If the sensor is covered with dirt or other foreign matter, the vehicle distance control may not operate correctly.

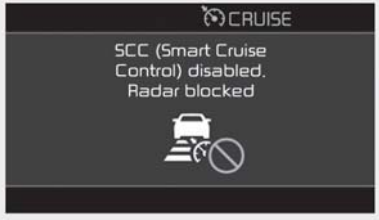
Always keep the area in front of the sensor clean.

Warning message

■ Type A

OJF058403R

■ Type B



OJF058404R

When the sensor lens cover is blocked with dirt, snow, or debris, the smart Cruise Control operation may stop temporarily. If this occurs, a warning message will appear on the LCD display. Remove any dirt, snow, or debris and clean the radar sensor lens cover before operating Smart Cruise Control. Smart Cruise Control may not properly activate, if the radar is totally contaminated, or if any substance is not detected after turning ON the engine (e.g. in an open terrain).

SCC (Smart Cruise Control) malfunction message

■ Type A

OJF058405R

■ Type B

OJF058406R

The message will appear when the vehicle distance Cruise Control is not functioning normally.

In this case, have the system checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Do not install accessories around the sensor and do not replace the bumper by yourself. It may interfere with the sensor performance.***
- ***Always keep the sensor and bumper clean.***
- ***To prevent sensor cover damage from occurring, wash the car with a soft cloth.***

(Continued)

(Continued)

- ***Do not damage the sensor or sensor area by a strong impact. If the sensor moves slightly off position, Smart Cruise Control will not operate correctly without any warning or indicator from the cluster. If this occurs, have the system checked by a professional workshop.***

  Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.
- ***Use only a genuine Kia sensor cover for your vehicle. Do not paint anything on the sensor cover.***
- ***If the front bumper becomes damaged in the area around the radar sensor, Smart Cruise Control may not operate properly.***

To adjust the sensitivity of Smart Cruise Control

The sensitivity of vehicle speed when following the front vehicle to maintain the set distance can be adjusted. Go to the User Settings Mode (Driver Assistance) and select (SCC Reaction). You may select one of the three stages you prefer.

- Slow:

  Vehicle speed following the front vehicle to maintain the set distance is slower than normal speed.
- Normal:

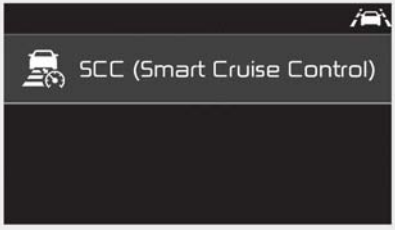
  Vehicle speed following the front vehicle to maintain the set distance is normal
- Fast:

  Vehicle speed following the front vehicle to maintain the set distance is faster than normal speed.

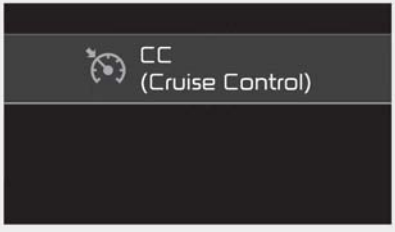
✻ NOTICE

The last selected mode remains in the system.

To convert to Cruise Control mode:



OJF058400R



OJF058399R

The driver may choose to only use the Cruise Control mode (speed control function) by doing as follows:

1. Turn Smart Cruise Control on (the cruise indicator light will be on but the function will not be activated).
2. Push the distance to distance switch for more than 2 seconds.
3. Choose between "SCC (Smart Cruise Control)" and "CC (Cruise Control)".

When the function is cancelled using the CRUISE/ MODE button or the CRUISE/ MODE button is used after the engine is turned on, Smart Cruise Control mode will turn on.

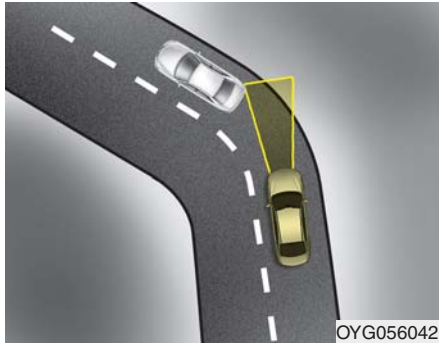
⚠ WARNING

When using Cruise Control mode, you must manually adjust the distance to other vehicles as the function will not automatically brake to slow down for other vehicles.

Limitations of the function

Smart Cruise Control may have limits to its ability to detect distance to the vehicle ahead due to road and traffic conditions.

On curves

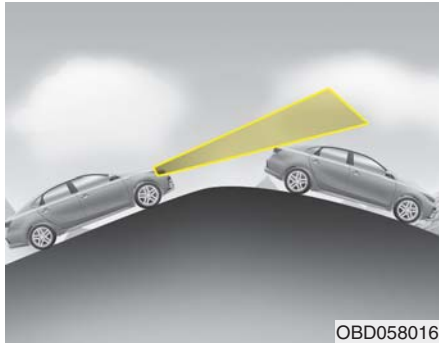

OYG056042

- On curves, Smart Cruise Control may not detect a moving vehicle in your lane, and then your vehicle could accelerate to the set speed. Also, the vehicle speed will rapidly down when the vehicle ahead is recognized suddenly.
- Select the appropriate set speed on curves and adjust your vehicle speed by depressing the accelerator or brake pedal according to the road condition ahead and driving condition.

OYG056043

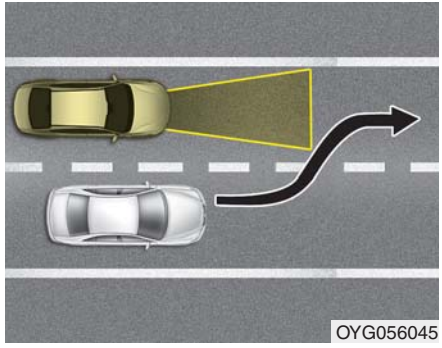
- Your vehicle speed can be reduced due to a vehicle in the adjacent lane. Adjust your vehicle speed by depressing the brake pedal according to the road condition ahead and driving condition. Apply the accelerator pedal and select the appropriate set speed. Check to be sure that the road conditions permit safe operation of Smart Cruise Control.

On inclines

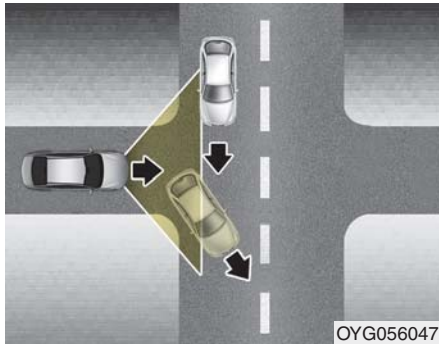

OBD058016

- During uphill or downhill driving, Smart Cruise Control may not detect a moving vehicle in your lane, and cause your vehicle to accelerate to the set speed. Also, the vehicle speed will rapidly down when the vehicle ahead is recognized suddenly.
- Select the appropriate set speed on inclines and adjust your vehicle speed by depressing the accelerator or brake pedal according to the road condition ahead and driving condition.

Lane changing

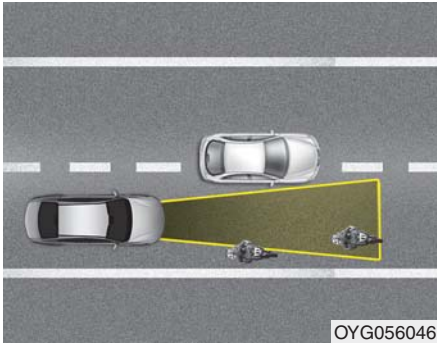


- A vehicle which moves into your lane from an adjacent lane cannot be recognized by the sensor until it is in the sensor's detection range.
- The sensor may not detect immediately when a vehicle cuts in suddenly. Always pay attention to the traffic, road and driving conditions.
- If a vehicle which moves into your lane is slower than your vehicle, your speed may decrease to maintain the distance to the vehicle ahead.
- If a vehicle which moves into your lane is faster than your vehicle, your vehicle will accelerate to the selected speed.



- Your vehicle may accelerate when a vehicle ahead of you disappears.
- When you are warned that the vehicle ahead of you is not detected, drive with caution.

Vehicle recognition


OYG056046

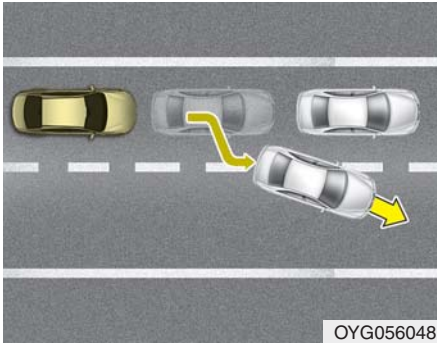
Some vehicles ahead in your lane cannot be recognized by the sensor as follows:

- Narrow vehicles such as motorcycles or bicycles
- Vehicles offset to one side
- Slow-moving vehicles or sudden-decelerating vehicles
- Stopped vehicles
- Vehicles with small rear profile such as trailers with no loads

A vehicle ahead cannot be recognized correctly by the sensor if any of following occurs:

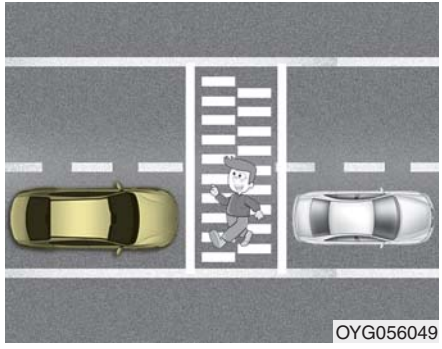
- When the vehicle is pointing upwards due to overloading in the trunk(tailgate)
- Whilst making turns by steering
- When driving to one side of the lane
- When driving on narrow lanes or on curves

Adjust your vehicle speed by depressing the brake pedal according to the road condition ahead and driving condition.

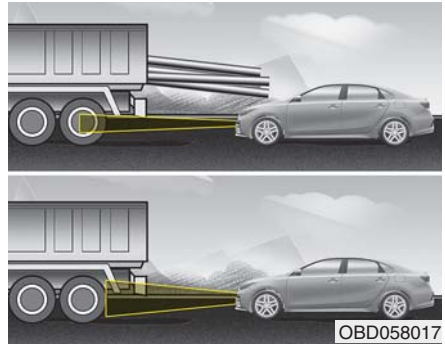

OYG056048

- When vehicles are at a standstill and the vehicle in front of you changes to the next lane, be careful when your vehicle starts to move because it may not recognize the stopped vehicle in front of you.

In this case, you must maintain a safe braking distance, and if necessary, depress the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed in order to maintain a safe distance.



- Always look out for pedestrians when your vehicle is maintaining a distance with the vehicle ahead.



- Always be cautious for vehicles with higher height or vehicles carrying loads that sticks out to the back of the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

- **Smart Cruise Control cannot guarantee the stop for every emergency situation.**

  If an emergency stop is necessary, you must apply the brakes.
- **Keep a safe distance according to road conditions and vehicle speed. If the vehicle distance is too close during a high-speed driving, a serious collision may result.**
- **Smart Cruise Control cannot recognize a stopped vehicle, pedestrians or an oncoming vehicle. Always look ahead cautiously to prevent unexpected and sudden situations from occurring.**
- **SCC may have difficulty in maintaining the correct distance or speed, if the vehicle is driving on a steep incline or towing a trailer.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **When other vehicles are changing lanes in front of you frequently, the smart Cruise Control may not operate appropriately. Always look ahead cautiously to prevent unexpected and sudden situations from occurring.**
- **Smart Cruise Control is not a substitute for safe driving practices but a convenience function only. It is the responsibility of the driver to always check the speed and the distance to the vehicle ahead.**
- **Always be aware of the selected speed and vehicle to vehicle distance.**
- **Always maintain sufficient braking distance and decelerate your vehicle by applying the brakes if necessary.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **As Smart Cruise Control may not recognize complex driving situations, always pay attention to driving conditions and control your vehicle speed.**
- **For safe operation, carefully read and follow the instructions in this manual before use.**
- **After an engine start, please stop for several seconds. If function initialization is not completed, SCC does not normally operate.**
- **After an engine start, if any objects are not detected or the sensor cover is obscured with foreign substances, there is a possibility that SCC may not work.**
- **Below conditions are not allowed: over baggage loading in a trunk(tailgate), suspension remodeling, tyre replacement with unauthorised tyres or tyres with different worn-out and pressure levels.**

⚠ CAUTION

Smart Cruise Control may not operate temporarily due to:

- ***Electrical interference***
- ***Modifying the suspension***
- ***Differences of tyre abrasion or tyre pressure***
- ***Installing different type of tyres***

ECONOMICAL OPERATION

Your vehicle's fuel economy depends mainly on your style of driving, where you drive and when you drive.

Each of these factors affects how many kilometers (miles) you can get from a litre (gallon) of fuel. To operate your vehicle as economically as possible, use the following driving suggestions to help save money in both fuel and repairs:

- Drive smoothly. Accelerate at a moderate rate. Don't make "jackrabbit" starts or full-throttle shifts and maintain a steady cruising speed. Don't race between stoplights. Try to adjust your speed to the traffic so you don't have to change speeds unnecessarily. Avoid heavy traffic whenever possible.

  Always maintain a safe distance from other vehicles so you can avoid unnecessary braking. This also reduces brake wear.
- Drive at a moderate speed. The faster you drive, the more fuel your vehicle uses. Driving at a moderate speed, especially on the highway, is one of the most effective ways to reduce fuel consumption.
- Don't "ride" the brake pedal. This can increase fuel consumption and also increase wear on these components. In addition, driving with your foot resting on the brake pedal may cause the brakes to overheat, which reduces their effectiveness and may lead to more serious consequences.
- Take care of your tyres. Keep them inflated to the recommended pressure. Incorrect inflation, either too much or too little, results in unnecessary tyre wear. Check the tyre pressures at least once a month.
- Be sure that the wheels are aligned correctly. Improper alignment can result from hitting kerbs or driving too fast over irregular surfaces. Poor alignment causes faster tyre wear and may also result in other problems as well as greater fuel consumption.
- Keep your car in good condition. For better fuel economy and reduced maintenance costs, maintain your car in accordance with the maintenance schedule in chapter 8. If you drive your car in severe conditions, more frequent maintenance is required (see chapter 8 for details).
- Keep your car clean. For maximum service, your vehicle should be kept clean and free of corrosive materials. It is especially important that mud, dirt, ice, etc. not be allowed to accumulate on the underside of the car. This extra weight can result in increased fuel consumption and also contribute to corrosion.
- Travel lightly. Don't carry unnecessary weight in your car. Weight reduces fuel economy.
- Don't let the engine idle longer than necessary. If you are waiting (and not in traffic), turn off your engine and restart only when you're ready to go.

- Remember, your vehicle does not require extended warm-up. After the engine has started, allow the engine to run for 10 to 20 seconds prior to placing the vehicle in gear. In very cold weather, however, give your engine a slightly longer warm-up period.
- Don't "lug" or "over-rev" the engine. Lugging is driving too slowly in too high a gear resulting in the engine bucking. If this happens, shift to a lower gear. Over-revving is racing the engine beyond its safe limit. This can be avoided by shifting at the recommended speeds.
- Use your air conditioning sparingly. The air conditioning system is operated by engine power so your fuel economy is reduced when you use it.
- Open windows at high speeds can reduce fuel economy.
- Fuel economy is less in crosswinds and headwinds. To help offset some of this loss, slow down when driving in these conditions.

Keeping a vehicle in good operating condition is important both for economy and safety. Therefore, have the system serviced by a professional workshop.

Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

⚠ WARNING
- Engine off during motion

Never turn the engine off to coast down hills or anytime the vehicle is in motion. The power steering and power brakes will not function properly without the engine running. Instead, keep the engine on and downshift to an appropriate gear for engine braking effect. In addition, turning off the ignition whilst driving could engage the steering wheel lock resulting in loss of vehicle steering which could cause serious injury or death.

SPECIAL DRIVING CONDITIONS

Hazardous driving conditions

When hazardous driving conditions are encountered such as water, snow, ice, mud, sand, or similar hazards, follow these suggestions:

- Drive cautiously and allow extra distance for braking.
- Avoid sudden braking or steering.
- When braking with non-ABS brakes pump the brake pedal with a light up-and-down motion until the vehicle is stopped.

⚠ WARNING - ABS

Do not pump the brake pedal on a vehicle equipped with ABS.

- If stalled in snow, mud, or sand, use second gear. Accelerate slowly to avoid spinning the drive wheels.
- Use sand, rock salt, tyre chains, or other non-slip material under the drive wheels to provide traction when stalled in ice, snow, or mud.

Rocking the vehicle

If it is necessary to rock the vehicle to free it from snow, sand, or mud, first turn the steering wheel right and left to clear the area around your front wheels. Then, shift back and forth between 1st (First) and R (Reverse) in vehicles equipped with a manual transmission. Do not race the engine, and spin the wheels as little as possible. If you are still stuck after a few tries, have the vehicle pulled out by a tow vehicle to avoid engine overheating and possible damage to the transmission.

⚠ CAUTION

Prolonged rocking may cause engine over-heating, transmission damage or failure, and tyre damage.

⚠ WARNING
- Spinning tyres

Do not spin the wheels, especially at speeds more than 56 km/h (35 mph). Spinning the wheels at high speeds when the vehicle is stationary could cause a tyre to overheat which could result in tyre damage that may injure bystanders.

✻ NOTICE

The ESC system should be turned OFF prior to rocking the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

If your vehicle becomes stuck in snow, mud, sand, etc., then you may attempt to rock the vehicle free by moving it forward and backward. Do not attempt this procedure if people or objects are anywhere near the vehicle. During the rocking operation the vehicle may suddenly move forward of backward as it becomes unstuck, causing injury or damage to nearby people or objects.

Smooth cornering

OBD058043L

Avoid braking or gear changing in corners, especially when roads are wet. Ideally, corners should always be taken under gentle acceleration. If you follow these suggestions, tyre wear will be held to a minimum.

Driving at night

OBD058044

Because night driving presents more hazards than driving in the daylight, here are some important tips to remember:

- Slow down and keep more distance between you and other vehicles, as it may be more difficult to see at night, especially in areas where there may not be any street lights.
- Adjust your mirrors to reduce the glare from other driver's headlights.
- Keep your headlights clean and properly aimed on vehicles not equipped with the automatic headlight aiming feature. Dirty or improperly aimed headlights will make it much more difficult to see at night.
- Avoid staring directly at the headlights of oncoming vehicles. You could be temporarily blinded, and it will take several seconds for your eyes to readjust to the darkness.

Driving in the rain

OBD058045L

Rain and wet roads can make driving dangerous, especially if you're not prepared for the slick pavement. Here are a few things to consider when driving in the rain:

- A heavy rainfall will make it harder to see and will increase the distance needed to stop your vehicle, so slow down.
- Keep your windscreen wiping equipment in good shape. Replace your windscreen wiper blades when they show signs of streaking or missing areas on the windscreen.

- If your tyres are not in good condition, making a quick stop on wet pavement can cause a skid and possibly lead to an accident. Be sure your tyres are in good shape.
- Turn on your headlights to make it easier for others to see you.
- Driving too fast through large puddles can affect your brakes. If you must go through puddles, try to drive through them slowly.
- If you believe you may have gotten your brakes wet, apply them lightly whilst driving until normal braking operation returns.

Driving in flooded areas

Avoid driving through flooded areas unless you are sure the water is no higher than the bottom of the wheel hub. Drive through any water slowly. Allow adequate stopping distance because brake performance may be affected.

After driving through water, dry the brakes by gently applying them several times whilst the vehicle is moving slowly.

Driving off-road

Drive carefully off-road because your vehicle may be damaged by rocks of roots of trees. Become familiar with the off-road conditions where you are going to drive before you begin driving.

Highway driving

Tyres

OBD058046

Adjust the tyre inflation pressures to specification. Low tyre inflation pressures will result in overheating and possible failure of the tyres.

Avoid using worn or damaged tyres which may result in reduced traction or tyre failure.

✻ NOTICE

Never exceed the maximum tyre inflation pressure shown on the tyres.

⚠ WARNING

- **Underinflated or overinflated tyres can cause poor handling, loss of vehicle control, and sudden tyre failure leading to accidents, injuries, and even death. Always check tyres for proper inflation before driving. For proper tyre pressures, refer to "Tyres and wheels" in chapter 9.**
- **Driving on tyres with no or insufficient tread is dangerous. Worn-out tyres can result in loss of vehicle control, collisions, injury, and even death. Worn-out tyres should be replaced as soon as possible and should never be used for driving. Always check the tyre tread before driving your car. For further information and tread limits, refer to "Tyres and wheels" in chapter 8.**

Fuel, engine coolant and engine oil

High speed travel consumes more fuel than urban motoring. Do not forget to check both engine coolant and engine oil.

Drive belt

A loose or damaged drive belt may result in overheating of the engine.

WINTER DRIVING

OBD058049

More severe weather conditions of winter result in greater wear and other problems. To minimise winter driving problem, you should follow these suggestions:

Summer tyres

Kia specifies summer tyres on some models to provide superior performance on dry roads. Summer tyre performance is substantially reduced in snow and ice. Summer tyres do not have the tyre traction rating M+S (Mud and Snow) on the tyre side wall. if you plan to operate your vehicle in snowy or icy conditions, Kia recommends the use of snow tyres or all season tyres on all four wheels.

Snowy or icy conditions

To drive your vehicle in deep snow, it may be necessary to use snow tyres or to install tyre chains on your tyres. If snow tyres are needed, it is necessary to select tyres equivalent in size and type of the original equipment tyres. Failure to do so may adversely affect the safety and handling of your car. Furthermore, speeding, rapid acceleration, sudden brake applications, and sharp turns are potentially very hazardous practices.

During deceleration, use engine braking to the fullest extent. Sudden brake applications on snowy or icy roads may cause skids to occur. You need to keep sufficient distance between the vehicle in operation in front and your vehicle. Also, apply the brake gently. It should be noted that installing tyre chains on the tyre will provide a greater driving force, but will not prevent side skids.

✻ NOTICE

Tyre chains are not legal in all countries. Check the country laws before fitting tyre chains.

Snow tyres

If you mount snow tyres on your vehicle, make sure they are radial tyres of the same size and load range as the original tyres. Mount snow tyres on all four wheels to balance your vehicle's handling in all weather conditions. Keep in mind that the traction provided by snow tyres on dry roads may not be as high as your vehicle's original equipment tyres. You should drive cautiously even when the roads are clear. Check with the tyre dealer for maximum speed recommendations.

⚠ WARNING - Snow tyre size

Snow tyres should be equivalent in size and type to the vehicle's standard tyres. Otherwise, the safety and handling of your vehicle may be adversely affected.

Do not install studded tyres without first checking local, state and municipal regulations for possible restrictions against their use.

Tyre chains

OBD058051

Since the sidewalls of radial tyres are thinner, they can be damaged by mounting some types of snow chains on them. Therefore, the use of snow tyres is recommended instead of snow chains. Do not mount tyre chains on vehicles equipped with aluminum wheels; snow chains may cause damage to the wheels. If snow chains must be used, use wire-type chains with a thickness of less than 12 mm (0.47 in). Damage to your vehicle caused by improper snow chain use is not covered by your vehicle manufacturers warranty.

Install tyre chains only on the front tyres.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Make sure the snow chains are the correct size and type for your tyres. Incorrect snow chains can cause damage to the vehicle body and suspension and may not be covered by your vehicle manufacturer warranty. Also, the snow chain connecting hooks may be damaged from contacting vehicle components causing the snow chains to come loose from the tyre. Make sure the snow chains are SAE class "S" certified.***
- ***Always check chain installation for proper mounting after driving approximately 0.5 to 1 km (0.3 to 0.6 miles) to ensure safe mounting. Retighten or remount the chains if they are loose.***

(Continued)

(Continued)

- ***Even with the appropriate chain installed, do not make a full turn(turn the steering wheel fully to one side) when driving the vehicle. (If you are making a full turn, drive with the speed below 10 km/h.)***

Chain installation

When installing chains, follow the manufacturer's instructions and mount them as tightly as you can. Drive slowly with chains installed. If you hear the chains contacting the body or chassis, stop and tighten them. If they still make contact, slow down until it stops. Remove the chains as soon as you begin driving on cleared roads.

⚠ WARNING
- Mounting chains

When mounting snow chains, park the vehicle on level ground away from traffic. Turn on the vehicle Hazard Warning flashers and place a triangular emergency warning device behind the vehicle if available. Always place the vehicle in P (Park), apply the parking brake and turn off the engine before installing snow chains.

⚠ WARNING - Tyre chains

- **The use of chains may adversely affect vehicle handling.**
- **Do not exceed 30 km/h (20 mph) or the chain manufacturer's recommended speed limit, whichever is lower.**
- **Drive carefully and avoid bumps, holes, sharp turns, and other road hazards, which may cause the vehicle to bounce.**
- **Avoid sharp turns or locked-wheel braking.**

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Chains that are the wrong size or improperly installed can damage your vehicle's brake lines, suspension, body and wheels.***
- ***Stop driving and retighten the chains any time you hear them hitting the vehicle.***

Use high quality ethylene glycol coolant

Your vehicle is delivered with high quality ethylene glycol coolant in the cooling system. It is the only type of coolant that should be used because it helps prevent corrosion in the cooling system, lubricates the water pump and prevents freezing. Be sure to replace or replenish your coolant in accordance with the maintenance schedule in chapter 8.

Before winter, have your coolant tested to assure that its freezing point is sufficient for the temperatures anticipated during the winter.

Check battery and cables

Winter puts additional burdens on the battery system. Visually inspect the battery and cables as described in chapter 8. Have the level of charge in your battery checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

Change to "winter weight" oil if necessary

In some climates it is recommended that a lower viscosity "winter weight" oil be used during cold weather. See chapter 9 for recommendations. If you aren't sure what weight oil you should use, Kia recommends to consult an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

Check spark plugs and ignition system

Inspect your spark plugs as described in chapter 8 and replace them if necessary. Also check all ignition wiring and components to be sure they are not cracked, worn or damaged in any way.

To keep locks from freezing

To keep the locks from freezing, squirt an approved de-icer fluid or glycerine into the key opening. If a lock is covered with ice, squirt it with an approved de-icing fluid to remove the ice. If the lock is frozen internally, you may be able to thaw it out by using a heated key. Handle the heated key with care to avoid injury.

Use approved window washer anti-freeze in system

To keep the water in the window washer system from freezing, add an approved window washer anti-freeze solution in accordance with instructions on the container. Window washer anti-freeze is available from an authorised Kia dealer/service partner and most auto parts outlets. Do not use engine coolant or other types of anti-freeze as these may damage the paint finish.

Don't let your parking brake freeze

Under some conditions your parking brake can freeze in the engaged position. This is most likely to happen when there is an accumulation of snow or ice around or near the rear brakes or if the brakes are wet. If there is a risk the parking brake may freeze, apply it only temporarily whilst you put the shift lever in first or reverse gear (manual transmission) and block the rear wheels so the vehicle cannot roll. Then release the parking brake.

Don't let ice and snow accumulate underneath

Under some conditions, snow and ice can build up under the fenders and interfere with the steering. When driving in severe winter conditions where this may happen, you should periodically check underneath the car to be sure the movement of the front wheels and the steering components is not obstructed.

Carry emergency equipment

Depending on the severity of the weather, you should carry appropriate emergency equipment. Some of the items you may want to carry include tyre chains, tow straps or chains, flashlight, emergency flares, sand, shovel, jumper cables, window scraper, gloves, ground cloth, coveralls, blanket, etc.

TRAILER TOWING (FOR AUSTRALIA AND NEW ZEALAND)

If you are considering towing with with your car, you should first check with your country's Department of Motor Vehicles to determine their legal requirements.

Since laws vary the requirements for towing trailers, cars, or other types of vehicles or apparatus may differ. We recommend that you ask an authorised Kia dealer.

⚠ WARNING
- Towing a trailer

If you don't use the correct equipment and drive improperly, you can lose control when you pull a trailer. For example, if the trailer is too heavy, the brakes may not work well - or even at all. You and your passengers could be seriously or fatally injured. Pull a trailer only if you have followed all the steps in this section.

⚠ WARNING - Weight limits

Before towing, make sure the total trailer weight, gross combination weight, gross vehicle weight, gross axle weight and trailer tongue load are all within the limits.

⚠ CAUTION

Any part of the rear number plate or lighting devices of the vehicle must not be obscured by the mechanical coupling device. If the rear number plate and/or lighting devices can be obscured partially by any part of the mechanical coupling device, mechanical coupling devices that can not be easily removed or repositioned without use of any tool, except an easily operated (i.e. an effort not exceeding 20Nm) release key which is supplied by the manufacturer of the coupling device, are not permitted for use. Please note that the mechanical coupling device that is fitted and not in use should always be removed or repositioned if the rear number plate and/or rear lighting devices are obscured by any part of the mechanical coupling device.

✻ NOTICE

- **The technically permissible maximum load on the rear axle(s) may be exceeded by not more than 15 % and the technically permissible maximum laden mass of the vehicle may be exceeded by not more than 10 % or 100 kg (220.4 lbs), whichever value is lower. In this case, do not exceed 100 km/h (62.1 mph) for vehicle of category M1 or 80 km/h (49.7 mph) for vehicle of category N1.**
- **When towing a trailer, the additional load imposed at the trailer coupling device may cause the rear tyre maximum load ratings to be exceeded, but not by more than 15%. In such a case, do not exceed 100km/h, and the rear tyre pressure should be at least 20 kPa(0.2 bar) above the tyre pressure(s) as recommended for normal use (i.e. without a trailer attached).**

⚠ CAUTION

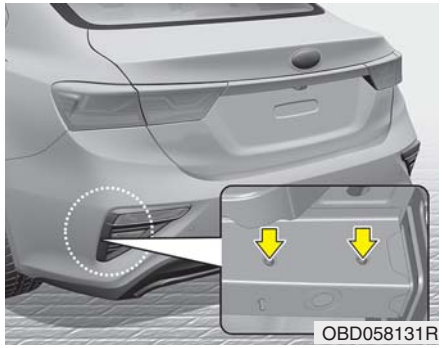
Pulling a trailer improperly can damage your vehicle and result in costly repairs not covered by your warranty. To pull a trailer correctly, follow the advice in this section.

Your vehicle can tow a trailer. To identify what the vehicle towing capacity is for your vehicle, you should read the information in “Weight of the trailer” that appears later in this section.

Remember that towing is different than just driving your vehicle by itself. Towing means changes in handling, durability, and fuel economy. Successful, safe towing requires correct equipment, and it has to be used properly.

This section contains many time-tested, important towing tips and safety rules. Many of these are important for your safety and that of your passengers. Please read this section carefully before you pull a trailer.

Load-pulling components such as the engine, transmission, wheel assemblies, and tyres are forced to work harder against the load of the added weight. The engine is required to operate at relatively higher speeds and under greater loads. This additional burden generates extra heat. The trailer also considerably adds wind resistance, increasing pulling requirements.



✻ **NOTICE - Location of trailer mounting**

The mounting hole for hitches are located on both sides of the underbody behind the rear tyres.

Hitches

It's important to have the correct hitch equipment. Crosswinds, large trucks going by, and rough roads are a few reasons why you'll need the right hitch. Here are some rules to follow:

- Do you have to make any holes in the body of your vehicle when you install a trailer hitch? If you do, then be sure to seal the holes later when you remove the hitch.

  If you don't seal them, deadly carbon monoxide (CO) from your exhaust can get into your vehicle, as well as dirt and water.
- The bumpers on your vehicle are not intended for hitches. Do not attach rental hitches or other bumper-type hitches. Use only a frame-mounted hitch that does not attach to the bumper.
- If you need a trailer hitch accessory, we recommend that you contact to an authorised Kia dealer.

Safety chains

You must always attach chains between your vehicle and your trailer. Cross the safety chains under the tongue of the trailer so that the tongue will not drop to the road if it becomes separated from the hitch.

Instructions about safety chains may be provided by the hitch manufacturer or by the trailer manufacturer. Follow the manufacturer's recommendation for attaching safety chains. Always leave just enough slack so you can turn with your trailer. And, never allow safety chains drag on the ground.

Trailer brakes

If your trailer is equipped with a braking system, make sure it conforms to your country's regulations and that it is properly installed and operating correctly.

If your trailer weighs more than the maximum trailer weight without trailer brakes loaded, then it needs its own brakes and they must be adequate. Be sure to read and follow the instructions for the trailer brakes so you'll be able to install, adjust and maintain them properly.

- Don't tap into your vehicle's brake system.

⚠ WARNING - Trailer brakes

Do not use a trailer with its own brakes unless you are absolutely certain that you have properly set up the brake system. This is not a task for amateurs. Use an experienced, competent trailer shop for this work.

Driving with a trailer

Towing a trailer requires a certain amount of experience. Before setting out for the open road, you must get to know your trailer. Acquaint yourself with the feel of handling and braking with the added weight of the trailer. And always keep in mind that the vehicle you are driving is now much longer and not nearly as responsive as your vehicle is by itself.

Before you start, check the trailer hitch and platform, safety chains, electrical connector(s), lights, tyres and mirror adjustment. If the trailer has electric brakes, start your vehicle and trailer moving and then apply the trailer brake controller by hand to be sure the brakes are working. This lets you check your electrical connection at the same time.

During your trip, check occasionally to be sure that the load is secure, and that the lights and trailer brakes are still working.

Following distance

Stay at least twice as far behind the vehicle ahead as you would when driving your vehicle without a trailer. This can help you avoid situations that require heavy braking and sudden turns.

Passing

You'll need more passing distance up ahead when you're towing a trailer. And, because of the increased vehicle length, you'll need to go much farther beyond the passed vehicle before you can return to your lane.

Backing up

Hold the bottom of the steering wheel with one hand. Then, to move the trailer to the left, just move your hand to the left. To move the trailer to the right, move your hand to the right. Always back up slowly and, if possible, have someone guide you.

Making turns

When you're turning with a trailer, make wider turns than normal. Do this so your trailer won't strike soft shoulders, kerbs, road signs, trees, or other objects. Avoid jerky or sudden manoeuvres. Signal well in advance.

Turn signals when towing a trailer

When you tow a trailer, your vehicle has to have a different turn signal flasher and extra wiring. The green arrows on your instrument panel will flash whenever you signal a turn or lane change. Properly connected, the trailer lights will also flash to alert other drivers you're about to turn, change lanes, or stop.

When towing a trailer, the green arrows on your instrument panel will flash for turns even if the bulbs on the trailer are burned out. Thus, you may think drivers behind you are seeing your signals when, in fact, they are not. It's important to check occasionally to be sure the trailer bulbs are still working. You must also check the lights every time you disconnect and then reconnect the trailer harness connector.

Do not connect a trailer lighting system directly to your vehicle's lighting system. Use only a Kia genuine towbar kit.

For installing the wiring harness, we recommend that you contact to an authorised Kia dealer.

⚠ WARNING

Failure to use a genuine trailer wiring harness could result in damage to the vehicle electrical system and/or personal injury.

Driving on grades

Reduce the speed and shift to a lower gear before you start down a long or steep downgrade. If you don't shift down, you might have to use your brakes so much that they would get hot and no longer operate efficiently.

On a long uphill grade, shift down and reduce your speed to around 70 km/h (45 mph) to reduce the possibility of engine and transmission overheating.

If your trailer weighs more than the maximum trailer weight without trailer brakes and you have an automatic transmission, you should drive in D (Drive) when towing a trailer.

Operating your vehicle in D (Drive) when towing a trailer will minimise heat build up and extend the life of your transmission.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***When towing a trailer on steep grades (in excess of 6%) pay close attention to the engine coolant temperature gauge to ensure the engine does not overheat. If the needle of the coolant temperature gauge moves across the dial towards "H (HOT) (or 130°C / 260°F)", pull over and stop as soon as it is safe to do so, and allow the engine to idle until it cools down. You may proceed once the engine has cooled sufficiently.***
- ***You must decide the driving speed depending on trailer weight and uphill grade to reduce the possibility of engine and transmission overheating.***

Parking on hills

Generally, if you have a trailer attached to your vehicle, you should not park your vehicle on a hill. People can be seriously or fatally injured, and both your vehicle and the trailer can be damaged if it unexpectedly rolls down hill.

⚠ WARNING - Parking on a hill

Parking your vehicle on a hill with a trailer attached could cause serious injury or death, should the trailer break loose.

However, if you ever have to park your trailer on a hill, here's how to do it:

1. Pull the vehicle into the parking space. Turn the steering wheel in the direction of the kerb (left if headed down hill, left if headed up hill).
2. If the vehicle has a manual transmission, place the car in neutral. If the vehicle has an automatic transmission, place the car in P (Park).
3. Set the parking brake and shut off the vehicle.
4. Place chocks under the trailer wheels on the down hill side of the wheels.
5. Start the vehicle, hold the brakes, shift to neutral, release the parking brake and slowly release the brakes until the trailer chocks absorb the load.
6. Reapply the brakes, reapply the parking brake and shift the vehicle to R (Reverse) for manual transmission or P (Park) for automatic transmission.
7. Shut off the vehicle and release the vehicle brakes but leave the parking brake set.

✻ NOTICE

Vehicles equipped with a dual clutch transmission when towing a trailer on steep grades, need to be aware that the clutch in the transmission could over-heat.
When the clutch is overheated, the safe protection mode engages. If the safe protection mode engages, the gear position indicator on the cluster blinks with a chime sound.
At this time, a warning message will appear on the LCD display and driving may not be smooth. If you ignore this warning, the driving condition may become worse. To return to normal driving conditions, stop the vehicle on a flat road and apply the foot brake for a few minutes before driving off.

⚠ WARNING - Parking brake

It can be dangerous to get out of your vehicle if the parking brake is not firmly set.

If you have left the engine running, the vehicle can move suddenly. You or others could be seriously or fatally injured.

When you are ready to leave after parking on a hill

1. With the manual transmission in Neutral or automatic transmission in P (Park), apply your brakes and hold the brake pedal down whilst you:
   - Start your engine;
   - Shift into gear; and
   - Release the parking brake.
2. Slowly remove your foot from the brake pedal.
3. Drive slowly until the trailer is clear of the chocks.
4. Stop and have someone pick up and store the chocks.

Maintenance when trailer towing

Your vehicle will need service more often when you regularly pull a trailer. Important items to pay particular attention to include engine oil, automatic transmission fluid, axle lubricant and cooling system fluid. Brake condition is another important item to frequently check. Each item is covered in this manual, and the Index will help you find them quickly. If you're towing, it's a good idea to review these sections before you start your trip.

Don't forget to also maintain your trailer and hitch. Follow the maintenance schedule that accompanied your trailer and check it periodically. Preferably, conduct the check at the start of each day's driving. Most importantly, all hitch nuts and bolts should be tight.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Due to higher load during trailer usage, overheating might occur in hot days or during uphill driving. If the coolant gauge indicates overheating, switch off the A/C and stop the vehicle in a safe area to cool down the engine.***
- ***When towing, check the transmission fluid more frequently.***
- ***If your vehicle is not equipped with an air conditioner, you should install a condenser fan to improve engine performance when towing a trailer.***

If you do decide to pull a trailer

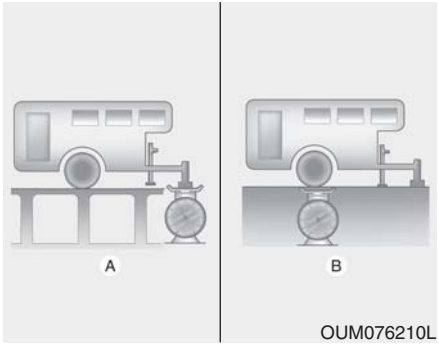
Here are some important points if you decide to pull a trailer:

- Consider using a sway control. You can ask a hitch dealer about sway control.
- Do not do any towing with your car during its first 2,000 km (1,200 miles) in order to allow the engine to properly break in. Failure to heed this caution may result in serious engine or transmission damage.
- When towing a trailer, we recommend that you consult an authorised Kia dealer on additional requirements such as a towing kit, etc.
- Always drive your vehicle at a moderate speed (less than 100 km/h / 60 mph).
- On a long uphill grade, do not exceed 70 km/h (45 mph) or the posted towing speed limit, whichever is lower.
- The chart contains important considerations that have to do with weight:

For Australia and New Zealand

Item		Gamma 1.6L T-GDI		Nu 2.0L MPI	
		6M/T	DCT	6M/T	6A/T
Maximum trailer weight kg (lbs.)	Without brake System	610 (1,344)	610 (1,344)	610 (1,344)	610 (1,344)
	With brake System	1,200 (2,645)	1,100 (2,425)	1,200 (2,645)	1,100 (2,425)
Maximum permissible static vertical load on the coupling device kg (lbs.)		75 (165)			
Recommended distance from rear wheel centre to coupling point mm (inch)		- 4 Door : 1,115 (43.9) - 5 Door : 985 (38.8)			

Weight of the trailer



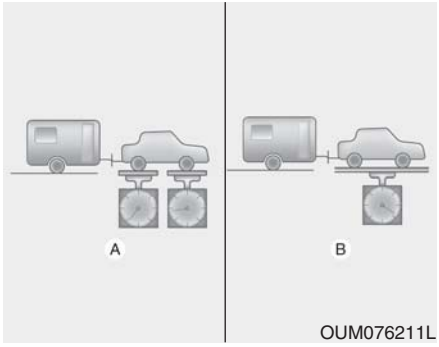
OUM076210L

A : Tongue Load
B : Total Trailer Weight

What is the maximum safe weight of a trailer? It should never weigh more than the maximum trailer weight with trailer brakes. But even that can be too heavy.

It depends on how you plan to use your trailer. For example, speed, altitude, road grades, outside temperature and how often your vehicle is used to pull a trailer are all important. The ideal trailer weight can also depend on any special equipment that you have on your vehicle.

Weight of the trailer tongue



A : Gross Axle Weight
B : Gross Vehicle Weight

The tongue load of any trailer is an important weight to measure because it affects the total gross vehicle weight (GVW) of your vehicle. This weight includes the kerb weight of the vehicle, any cargo you may carry in it, and the people who will be riding in the vehicle. And if you tow a trailer, you must add the tongue load to the GVW because your vehicle will also be carrying that weight.

The trailer tongue should weigh a maximum of 10% of the total loaded trailer weight, within the limits of the maximum trailer tongue load permissible.

After you've loaded your trailer, weigh the trailer and then the tongue, separately, to see if the weights are current. If they aren't, you may be able to correct them simply by moving some items around in the trailer.

⚠ CAUTION

With increasing altitude the engine performance decreases. From 1000 meter above sea level and for every 1000 meter thereafter 10% of vehicle/trailer weight (trailer weight + gross vehicle weight) must be deducted.

⚠ WARNING - Trailer

- **Never load a trailer with more weight in the rear than in the front. The front should be loaded with approximately 60% of the total trailer load; the rear should be loaded with approximately 40% of the total trailer load.**
- **Never exceed the maximum weight limits of the trailer or trailer towing equipment. Improper loading can result in damage to your vehicle and/or personal injury. Check weights and loading at a commercial scale or highway patrol office equipped with scales.**
- **An improperly loaded trailer can cause loss of vehicle control.**

VEHICLE WEIGHT

This section will guide you in the proper loading of your vehicle, to keep your loaded vehicle weight within its design rating capability. Properly loading your vehicle will provide maximum return of the vehicle design performance. Before loading your vehicle, familiarize yourself with the following terms for determining your vehicle's weight ratings, from the vehicle's specifications and the certification label:

Base kerb weight

This is the weight of the vehicle including a full tank of fuel and all standard equipment. It does not include passengers, cargo, or optional equipment.

Vehicle kerb weight

This is the weight of your new vehicle when you picked it up from your dealer plus any aftermarket equipment.

Cargo weight

This figure includes all weight added to the Base Kerb Weight, including cargo and optional equipment.

GAW (Gross axle weight)

This is the total weight placed on each axle (front and rear) - including vehicle kerb weight and all payload.

GAWR (Gross axle weight rating)

This is the maximum allowable weight that can be carried by a single axle (front or rear). These numbers are shown on the certification label.

The total load on each axle must never exceed its GAWR.

GVW (Gross vehicle weight)

This is the Base Kerb Weight plus actual Cargo Weight plus passengers.

GVWR (Gross vehicle weight rating)

This is the maximum allowable weight of the fully loaded vehicle (including all options, equipment, passengers and cargo). The GVWR is shown on the certification label located on the driver's (or front passenger's) door sill.

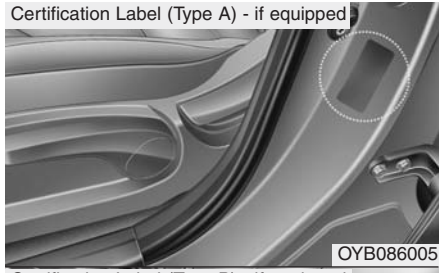
Overloading

⚠ WARNING - Vehicle weight

The gross axle weight rating (GAWR) and the gross vehicle weight rating (GVWR) for your vehicle are on the certification label attached to the driver's (or front passenger's) door. Exceeding these ratings can cause an accident or vehicle damage. You can calculate the weight of your load by weighing the items (and people) before putting them in the vehicle. Be careful not to overload your vehicle.

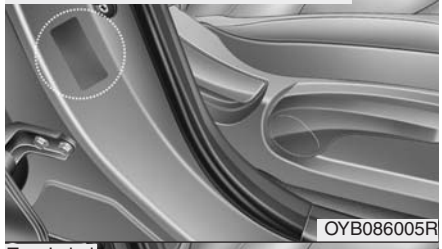
Loading Your Vehicle - For Australia

Certification Label (Type A) - if equipped



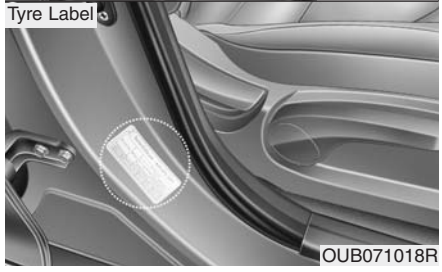
OYB086005

Certification Label (Type B) - if equipped



OYB086005R

Tyre Label



OUB071018R

The Certification/Tyre label is found on the front edge of the RH (or LH) “B” pillar. The label shows the size of your original tyres and inflation pressures needed to obtain the gross weight capacity of your vehicle.

This is called the GVWR (Gross Vehicle Weight Rating). The GVWR includes the weight of the vehicle, all occupants, fuel and cargo. The Certification/Tyre label also tells you the maximum weights for the front and rear axles, called Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR).

Never exceed the GVWR for your vehicle, or the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) for either the front or rear axle. And, if you do have a heavy load, you should spread it out.

✻ NOTICE

Your warranty does not cover parts or components that fail because of overloading.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not load your vehicle any heavier than the GVWR or the maximum front and rear GAWRs. If you do, change to the vehicle may occur, or it can change the way your vehicle handles. These could cause you to lose control. Also, overloading can shorten the life of your vehicle.

What to do in an emergency

Road warning 7-2
- Hazard warning flasher 7-2

In case of an emergency whilst driving 7-3
- If the engine stalls at a crossroad or crossing. 7-3
- If you have a flat tyre whilst driving. 7-3
- If engine stalls whilst driving 7-3

If the engine will not start 7-4
- If engine doesn't turn over or turns over slowly 7-4
- If engine turns over normally but does not start 7-4

Emergency starting 7-5
- Jump starting. 7-5
- Push-starting 7-7

If the engine overheats. 7-8

Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) 7-9

If you have a flat tyre (with spare tyre) 7-15
- Jack and tools 7-15
- Removing and storing the spare tyre 7-16
- Changing tyres. 7-17
- Jack label 7-24
- EC Declaration of Conformity for Jack 7-25

Towing 7-26
- Towing service 7-26
- Removable towing hook 7-27
- Emergency towing. 7-28

Emergency Commodity 7-32
- Fire extinguisher 7-32
- First aid kit 7-32
- Triangle reflector 7-32
- Tyre pressure gauge 7-32

ROAD WARNING

Hazard warning flasher

The hazard warning flasher serves as a warning to other drivers to exercise extreme caution when approaching, overtaking, or passing your vehicle.

It should be used whenever emergency repairs are being made or when the vehicle is stopped near the edge of a roadway.

Depress the flasher switch with the ignition switch in any position. The flasher switch is located in the centre facia switch panel. All turn signal lights will flash simultaneously.

- The hazard warning flasher operates whether your vehicle is running or not.
- The turn signals do not work when the hazard flasher is on.
- Care must be taken when using the hazard warning flasher whilst the vehicle is being towed.

IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY WHILST DRIVING

If the engine stalls at a crossroad or crossing

- If the engine stalls at a crossroad or crossing, set the shift lever in the N (Neutral) position and then push the vehicle to a safe place.
- If your vehicle has a manual transmission not equipped with a ignition lock switch, the vehicle can move forward by shifting to the 2 (second) or 3 (third) gear and then turning the starter without depressing the clutch pedal.

If you have a flat tyre whilst driving

If a tyre goes flat whilst you are driving:

1. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal and let the vehicle slow down whilst driving straight ahead. Do not apply the brakes immediately or attempt to pull off the road as this may cause a loss of control. When the vehicle has slowed down to such a speed that it is safe to do so, brake carefully and pull off the road. Drive off the road as far as possible and park on a firm level ground. If you are on a divided highway, do not park in the median area between the two traffic lanes.
2. When the vehicle is stopped, turn on your emergency hazard flashers, set the parking brake and put the transmission in reverse (manual transmission).
3. Have all passengers get out of the vehicle. Be sure they all get out on the side of the vehicle that is away from traffic.
4. When changing a flat tyre, follow the instruction provided later in this section.

If engine stalls whilst driving

1. Reduce your speed gradually, keeping a straight line. Move cautiously off the road to a safe place.
2. Turn on your emergency flashers.
3. Try to start the engine again. If your vehicle does not start, consult a professional workshop. Kia recommends to consult an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

IF THE ENGINE WILL NOT START

If engine doesn't turn over or turns over slowly

1. If your vehicle has an automatic transmission / dual clutch transmission, be sure the shift lever is in N (Neutral) or P (Park) and the emergency brake is set.
2. Check the battery connections to be sure they are clean and tight.
3. Turn on the interior light. If the light dims or goes out when you operate the starter, the battery is discharged.
4. Check the starter connections to be sure they are securely tightened.
5. Do not push or pull the vehicle to start it. See instructions for "Jump starting".

⚠ WARNING

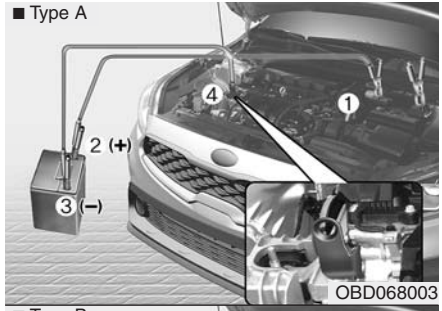
If the engine will not start, do not push or pull the vehicle to start it. This could result in a collision or cause other damage. In addition, push or pull starting may cause the catalytic converter to be overloaded and create a fire hazard.

If engine turns over normally but does not start

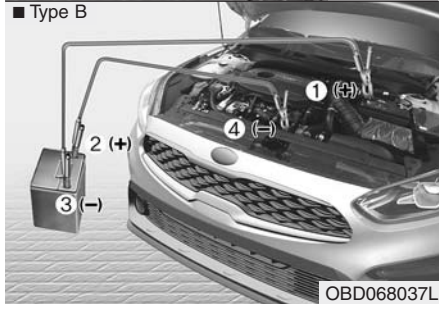
1. Check the fuel level.
2. With the ignition switch in the LOCK position, check all connectors at the ignition coils and spark plugs. Reconnect any that may be disconnected or loose.
3. Check the fuel line in the engine compartment.
4. If the engine still does not start, call a professional workshop. Kia recommends to call an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

EMERGENCY STARTING

■ Type A



■ Type B



Connect cables in numerical order and disconnect in reverse order.

Jump starting

Jump starting can be dangerous if done incorrectly. Therefore, to avoid harm to yourself or damage to your vehicle or battery, follow the jump starting procedures. If in doubt, we strongly recommend that you have a competent technician or towing service jump start your vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION

Use only a 12-volt jumper system. You can damage a 12-volt starting motor, ignition system, and other electrical parts beyond repair by use of a 24-volt power supply (either two 12-volt batteries in series or a 24-volt motor generator set).

⚠ WARNING - Battery

Never attempt to check the electrolyte level of the battery as this may cause the battery to rupture or explode causing serious injury.

⚠ WARNING - Battery

- **Keep all flames or sparks away from the battery. The battery produces hydrogen gas which may explode if exposed to flame or sparks.**

  If these instructions are not followed exactly, serious personal injury and damage to the vehicle may occur! If you are not sure how to follow this procedure, seek qualified assistance. Automobile batteries contain sulfuric acid. This is poisonous and highly corrosive. When jump starting, wear protective glasses and be careful not to get acid on yourself, your clothing or on the vehicle.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Do not attempt to jump start the vehicle if the discharged battery is frozen or if the electrolyte level is low; the battery may rupture or explode.**
- **Do not allow the (+) and (-) jumper cables to touch. It may cause sparks.**
- **The battery may rupture or explode when you jump start with a low or frozen battery.**

Jump starting procedure

1. Make sure the booster battery is 12-volt and that its negative terminal is grounded.
2. If the booster battery is in another vehicle, do not allow the vehicles come in contact.
3. Turn off all unnecessary electrical loads.
4. Connect the jumper cables in the exact sequence shown in the illustration. First connect one end of a jumper cable to the positive terminal of the discharged battery (1), then connect the other end to the positive terminal on the booster battery (2).

   Proceed to connect one end of the other jumper cable to the negative terminal of the booster battery (3), then the other end to a solid, stationary, metallic point (for example, the engine lifting bracket) away from the battery (4). Do not connect it to or near any part that moves when the engine is cranked.

   Do not allow the jumper cables to contact anything except the correct battery terminals or the correct ground. Do not lean over the battery when making connections.

⚠ CAUTION - Battery cables

Do not connect the jumper cable from the negative terminal of the booster battery to the negative terminal of the discharged battery. This can cause the discharged battery to overheat and crack, releasing battery acid.

Make sure to connect one end of the jumper cable to the negative terminal of the booster battery, and the other end to a metallic point, far away from the battery.

5. Start the engine of the vehicle with the booster battery and let it run at 2,000 rpm, then start the engine of the vehicle with the discharged battery.

If the cause of your battery discharging is not apparent, have the system checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

Push-starting

Your manual transmission-equipped vehicle should not be push-started because it might damage the emission control system.

Vehicles equipped with automatic transmission / dual clutch transmission cannot be push-started.

Follow the directions in this section for jump-starting.

⚠ WARNING

Never tow a vehicle to start it because the sudden surge forward when the engine starts could cause a collision with the tow vehicle.

IF THE ENGINE OVERHEATS

If your temperature gauge indicates overheating, you will experience a loss of power, or hear loud pinging or knocking, the engine is probably too hot. If this happens, you should:

1. Pull off the road and stop as soon as it is safe to do so.
2. Place the shift lever in P (for Automatic transmission / Dual clutch transmission) or neutral (manual transmission) and set the parking brake. If the air conditioning is on, turn it off.
3. If engine coolant is running out under the vehicle or steam is coming out from the bonnet, stop the engine. Do not open the bonnet until the coolant has stopped running or the steaming has stopped. If there is no visible loss of engine coolant and no steam, leave the engine running and check to be sure the engine cooling fan is operating. If the fan is not running, turn the engine off.
4. Check to see if the water pump drive belt is missing. If it is not missing, check to see that it is tight.

   If the drive belt seems to be satisfactory, check for coolant leaking from the radiator, hoses or under the vehicle. (If the air conditioning had been in use, it is normal for cold water to be draining from it when you stop).

⚠ WARNING

Whilst the engine is running, keep hair, hands and clothing away from moving parts such as the fan and drive belts to prevent injury.

5. If the water pump drive belt is broken or engine coolant is leaking out, stop the engine immediately and call a professional workshop. Kia recommends to call an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

⚠ WARNING

Do not remove the radiator cap when the engine is hot. This can allow coolant to blow out of the opening and cause serious burns.

6. If you cannot find the cause of the overheating, wait until the engine temperature has returned to normal. Then, if coolant has been lost, carefully add coolant to the reservoir to bring the fluid level in the reservoir up to the halfway mark.
7. Proceed with caution, keeping alert for further signs of overheating. If overheating happens again, call a professional workshop. Kia recommends to call an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Serious loss of coolant indicates there is a leak in the cooling system. In this case, have the system checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.***
- ***When the engine overheats from low engine coolant, suddenly adding engine coolant may cause cracks in the engine. To prevent damage, add engine coolant slowly in small quantities.***

TYRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (TPMS) (IF EQUIPPED)

(1) Low tyre pressure telltale
(2) TPMS SET switch

■ System Overview

The tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS) senses change in radius of the tyre. If the tyre pressure decreases below the recommended pressure, the system warning light will be illuminated.

For the system to function properly, it is the driver's responsibility to set the system by following accurate procedure and set current tyre pressure.

The warning light will illuminate on the cluster when one or more of your tyres is under-inflated after the TPMS is set.

The warning light will also illuminate to warn the driver of system malfunction.

Please refer to the above image (1) for further information.

■ TPMS Setting

The driver can set the TPMS by following procedures below:

1) Inflate all tyres to the recommended pressure.
2) Start the engine, make sure the vehicle is not moving, and press the TPMS switch (2) right side on the driver's seat for over 3 seconds.
3) Check if the ( ) warning indicator blinks for 4 seconds.

OBD068031R

4) Check if following message appears on the cluster (if equipped).

❈ If the warning light does not blink or the message does not pop up, perform the process again from 2).

For recommended tyre pressure of this vehicle, refer to chapter 9 “Tyre and wheels ” or the tyre pressure label on the driver’s door.

For proper function of the TPMS, the driver must set the system in following situations.

❈ Situation requiring TPMS setting

- If the tyre or wheel is repaired or replaced
- If the tyre or wheel is repositioned.
- If the tyre pressure is adjusted.
- If the low pressure light is illuminated.
- If suspension or ABS has been replaced.

⚠ CAUTION

If the system is set without adjusting tyre pressure, false alarm could occur or the telltale will not be displayed even though the vehicle is significantly under-inflated.

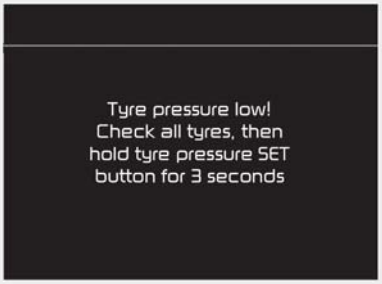
Make sure all tyres are properly adjusted to the recommended pressure when setting.

If the system is not set even in required situations, false alarm could occur or the telltale will not be displayed even though the vehicle is significantly under-inflated.

The system will not be set if you press the SET switch (2) whilst driving. Make sure to stop the vehicle and press the switch (2) for over 3 seconds.

- ***Be sure the tyre is cold before inflating the pressure.***

  A cold tyre means the vehicle has been sitting for 3 hours or driven within 1.6 km (1 mile).



OBD068032R

■ Indication of Low Tyre Pressure

The ( ) warning light will illuminate when an under-inflated tyre is indicated. In certain types, the above message might be displayed on the cluster.

If the warning light illuminates, reduce your speed, avoid hard cornering and rapid braking. Have your vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

Check the pressure of all tyres and inflate to the proper pressure according to procedures, and if required, replace or repair the tyres.

If you cannot reach a close service station, stop the vehicle at a safe place, check all tyres and operate the TPMS setting procedure. If you are unable to adjust the tyre pressure, use the repair tools to repair or change to spare tyre and contact a professional workshop.

Kia recommends to call an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

You may not be able to identify low tyre pressure visually. Use precise tools to measure and adjust tyre pressure.
Please note that a tyre that is hot due to prolonged driving, therefore will have high pressure. We recommend you to measure and adjust the tyre pressure after the vehicle has driven for less than 1.6 km (1 mile) within 3 hours.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***The indicator may remain illuminated after changing to a spare tyre, because radius of spare tyre is different. Be sure to change to a regular tyre.***
- ***For safe driving, please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tyre maintenance. It is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tyre pressure, and all tyres should be checked monthly to maintain the recommended pressure.***
- ***The warning light may illuminate if the system is not set in required situations.***

(Continued)

(Continued)

- *In cold weather, the low tyre pressure warning light may illuminate even if the tyre was adjusted to the proper pressure. It does not mean your TPMS in malfunctioning because the decreased temperature leads to a lowering of tyre pressure. Check the tyres and adjust to the recommended pressure.*
- *System performance may reduce in the following situations.*
  - *Improper system setting*
  - *Using tyres on the market (Original tyre recommended)*
  - *Driving on snowy, slippery, or unpaved roads*
  - *Hard cornering, rapid accelerating and braking repeatedly*
  - *Driving too slow or fast*

(Continued)

(Continued)

  - *If the vehicle is overloaded*
  - *If a spare tyre or snow chain is installed*
- *When filling tyres with more air, conditions to turn off the low tyre pressure telltale may not be met. This is because a tyre inflator has a margin of error in performance. The low tyre pressure telltale will be turned off if the tyre pressure is above the recommended tyre inflation pressure.*

⚠ WARNING

- **Driving with an under-inflated tyre causes the tyre to overheat and lead to tyre failure. It also reduces tyre tread life, handling of the vehicle, braking ability, and fuel efficiency, causing instability of the vehicle. In this case, contact professional workshop to maintain proper tyre pressure. Kia recommends to contact an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.**
- **Sudden damage to the tyre caused by external factors may not be indicated immediately. If the vehicle is unstable, immediately remove your foot off the accelerator pedal, move the vehicle to a safe position for inspection.**

■ Tyre Pressure Monitoring System malfunction

The TPMS malfunction indicator will illuminate ( ) after it blinks for approximately 1 minute when there is a problem with the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

If the indicator remains illuminated or illuminates even after TPMS setting, have the system checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

⚠ WARNING

- **If there is a malfunction with the TPMS, low tyre pressure will not be indicated. In this case, have the system serviced by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.**
- **If the system does not work due to TPMS removal or installation of related parts with different specification, it might be a problem when the vehicle is being regularly inspected.**
- **When repairing TPMS related parts, be sure to replace them to parts with original specification or those which satisfy the TPMS regulation.**
  - **TPMS related parts : tyre, wheel, ABS unit, suspension**

⚠ WARNING - FOR EUROPE

Do not modify the vehicle. It may interfere with the TPMS function.

❋ All vehicles sold in the EUROPE market during below period must be equipped with TPMS.

- **New model vehicle : Nov. 1, 2012 ~**
- **Current model vehicle : Nov. 1, 2014~(Based on vehicle registrations)**

■ Reference : Indicator Light Status

Status	Symbol
Low Pressure	Illuminates
System Malfunction	▶ Illuminates after blinking (60 seconds)
Setting	▶ - Turns off after blinking (4 seconds)

IF YOU HAVE A FLAT TYRE (WITH SPARE TYRE, IF EQUIPPED)

Jack and tools

The jack, jack handle, wheel lug nut wrench are stored in the luggage compartment.

Pull up the luggage box cover to reach this equipment.

(1) Jack handle
(2) Jack
(3) Wheel lug nut wrench
(4) Screw driver (if equipped)
(5) Spanner (if equipped)
(6) Towing hook (if equipped)
(7) Rear towing hook (if equipped)

Jacking instructions

The jack is provided for emergency tyre changing only.

To prevent the jack from “rattling” whilst the vehicle is in motion, store it properly.

Follow jacking instructions to reduce the possibility of personal injury.

⚠ WARNING - Changing tyres

- **Never attempt vehicle repairs in the traffic lanes of a public road or highway.**
- **Always move the vehicle completely off the road and onto the shoulder before trying to change a tyre. The jack should be used on firm level ground. If you cannot find a firm level place off the road, call a towing service company for assistance.**
- **Be sure to use the correct front and rear jacking positions on the vehicle; never use the bumpers or any other part of the vehicle for jacking support.**
- **The vehicle can roll off the jack causing serious injury or death.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Do not get under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.**
- **Do not start or run the engine whilst the vehicle is on the jack.**
- **Do not allow anyone remain in the vehicle whilst it is on the jack.**
- **Make sure any children present are in a secure place away from the road and from the vehicle to be raised with the jack.**

Removing and storing the spare tyre

OBD068033L

Turn the tyre hold-down wing bolt counterclockwise to remove.

Store the tyre in the reverse order of removal.

To prevent the spare tyre and tools from “rattling” whilst the vehicle is in motion, store them properly.

⚠ WARNING

Ensure the spare tyre retainer is properly aligned with the centre of the spare tyre to prevent the spare tyre from “rattling”.

Otherwise, it may cause the spare tyre to fall off the carrier and lead to an accident.

Changing tyres

1. Park on a level surface and apply the parking brake firmly.
2. Shift the shift lever into R (Reverse) with manual transmission or P (Park) with automatic transmission / dual clutch transmission.
3. Activate the hazard warning flasher.

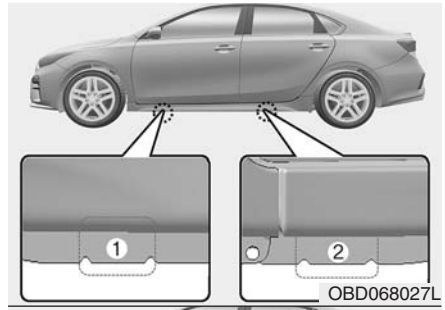
4. Remove the wheel lug nut wrench, jack, jack handle, and spare tyre from the vehicle.
5. Block both the front and rear of wheel that is diagonally opposite the jack position.

⚠ WARNING - Changing a tyre

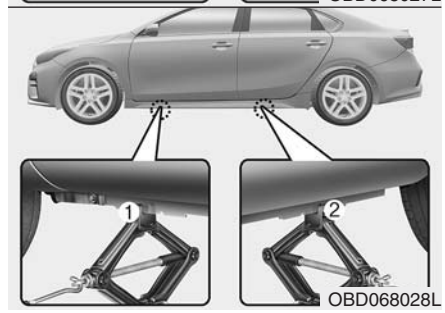
- **To prevent vehicle movement whilst changing a tyre, always set the parking brake fully, and always block the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel being changed.**
- **We recommend that the wheels of the vehicle be chocked, and that no person remain in a vehicle that is being jacked.**

OBD068026L

6. Loosen the wheel lug nuts counterclockwise one turn each, but do not remove any nut until the tyre has been raised off the ground.



OBD068027L



OBD068028L

7. Place the jack at the front (1) or rear (2) jacking position closest to the tyre you are changing. Place the jack at the designated locations under the frame. The jacking positions are plates welded to the frame with two tabs and a raised dot to index with the jack.

⚠ WARNING - Jack location

To reduce the possibility of injury, be sure to use only the jack provided with the vehicle and in the correct jack position; never use any other part of the vehicle for jack support.

OBD068029L

8. Insert the jack handle into the jack and turn it clockwise, raising the vehicle until the tyre just clears the ground. This measurement is approximately 30 mm (1.2 in). Before removing the wheel lug nuts, make sure the vehicle is stable and that there is no chance for movement or slippage.

9. Loosen the wheel nuts and remove them with your fingers. Slide the wheel off the studs and lay it flat so it cannot roll away. To put the wheel on the hub, pick up the spare tyre, line up the holes with the studs and slide the wheel onto them.

   If this is difficult, tip the wheel slightly and get the top hole in the wheel lined up with the top stud. Then jiggle the wheel back and forth until the wheel can be slid over the other studs.

⚠ WARNING

Wheels may have sharp edges. Handle them carefully to avoid possible severe injury. Before putting the wheel into place, be sure that there is nothing on the hub or wheel (such as mud, tar, gravel, etc.) that interferes with the wheel from fitting solidly against the hub.

If there is, remove it. If there is not good contact on the mounting surface between the wheel and hub, the wheel nuts could come loose and cause the loss of a wheel. Loss of a wheel may result in loss of control of the vehicle. This may cause serious injury or death.

10. To reinstall the wheel, hold it on the studs, put the wheel nuts on the studs and tighten them finger tight. Jiggle the tyre to be sure it is completely seated, then tighten the nuts as much as possible with your fingers again.
11. Lower the vehicle to the ground by turning the wheel nut wrench counterclockwise.

OBD068030L

Then position the wrench as shown in the drawing and tighten the wheel nuts. Be sure the socket is seated completely over the nut. Do not stand on the wrench handle or use an extension pipe over the wrench handle. Go around the wheel tightening every other nut until they are all tight. Then double-check each nut for tightness. After changing wheels, have the system checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

Wheel nut tightening torque:
Steel wheel & aluminum alloy wheel:
11~13 kgf·m (79~94 lbf·ft)

If you have a tyre gauge, remove the valve cap and check the air pressure. If the pressure is lower than recommended, drive slowly to the nearest service station and inflate to the correct pressure. If it is too high, adjust it until it is correct. Always reinstall the valve cap after checking or adjusting tyre pressure. If the cap is not replaced, air may leak from the tyre. If you lose a valve cap, buy another and install it as soon as possible.

After you have changed wheels, always secure the flat tyre in its place and return the jack and tools to their proper storage locations.

⚠ CAUTION

Your vehicle has metric threads on the wheel studs and nuts. Make certain during wheel removal that the same nuts that were removed are reinstalled - or, if replaced, that nuts with metric threads and the same chamfer configuration are used. Installation of a non-metric thread nut on a metric stud or vice-versa will not secure the wheel to the hub properly and will damage the stud so that it must be replaced.

Note that most lug nuts do not have metric threads. Be sure to use extreme care in checking for thread style before installing aftermarket lug nuts or wheels. If in doubt, consult a professional workshop. Kia recommends to consult an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

⚠ WARNING - Wheel studs

If the studs are damaged, they may lose their ability to retain the wheel. This could lead to the loss of the wheel and a collision resulting in serious injuries.

To prevent the jack, jack handle, wheel lug nut wrench and spare tyre from rattling whilst the vehicle is in motion, store them properly.

⚠ WARNING - Inadequate spare tyre pressure

Check the inflation pressures as soon as possible after installing the spare tyre. Adjust it to the specified pressure, if necessary. Refer to "Tyres and wheels" in chapter 9.

Important - use of compact spare tyre (if equipped)

Your vehicle is equipped with a compact spare tyre. This compact spare tyre takes up less space than a regular-size tyre. This tyre is smaller than a conventional tyre and is designed for temporary use only.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***You should drive carefully when the compact spare is in use. The compact spare should be replaced by the proper conventional tyre and rim at the first opportunity.***
- ***The operation of this vehicle is not recommended with more than one compact spare tyre in use at the same time.***

⚠ WARNING

The compact spare tyre is for emergency use only. Do not operate your vehicle on this compact spare at the speed over 80 km/h (50 mph). The original tyre should be repaired or replaced as soon as possible to avoid failure of the spare possibly leading to personal injury or death.

The compact spare should be inflated to 420 kPa (60 psi).

✻ NOTICE

Check the inflation pressure after installing the spare tyre. Adjust it to the specified pressure, as necessary.

When using a compact spare tyre, observe the following precautions:

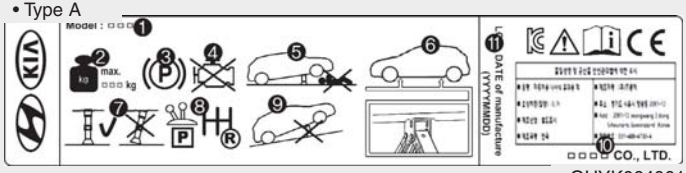
- Under no circumstances should you exceed 80 km/h (50 mph); a higher speed could damage the tyre.
- Ensure that you drive slowly enough to avoid all hazards. Any road hazard, such as a pothole or debris, could seriously damage the compact spare.
- Any continuous road use of this tyre could result in tyre failure, loss of vehicle control, and possible personal injury.
- Do not exceed the vehicle's maximum load rating or the load-carrying capacity shown on the sidewall of the compact spare tyre.

- Avoid driving over obstacles. The compact spare tyre diameter is smaller than the diameter of a conventional tyre and reduces the ground clearance approximately 2.5 cm (1 inch), which could result in damage to the vehicle.
- Do not take the vehicle through an automatic car wash whilst the compact spare tyre is installed.
- Do not use tyre chains on the temporary compact tyre. Because of the smaller size, a tyre chain will not fit properly. This could damage the vehicle and result in loss of the chain.
- Temporary compact tyre should not be installed on the front axle if the vehicle must be driven in snow or on ice.
- Do not use the temporary compact tyre on any other vehicle because this tyre has been designed especially for your vehicle.
- The temporary compact tyre tread life is shorter than a regular tyre. Inspect your temporary compact tyre regularly and replace worn compact spare tyres with the same size and design, mounted on the same wheel.
- The temporary compact tyre should not be used on any other wheels, nor should standard tyres, snow tyres, wheel covers or trim rings be used with the temporary compact spare wheel. If such use is attempted, damage to these items or other car components may occur.
- Do not use more than one temporary compact tyre at a time.
- Do not tow a trailer whilst the temporary compact tyre is installed.

Jack label

■ Example

• Type A

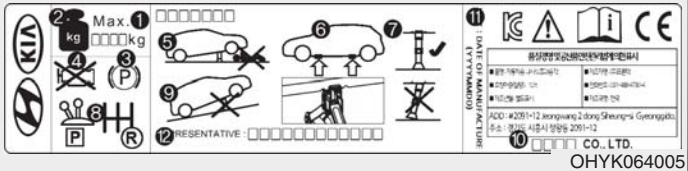


OHYK064001

• Type C

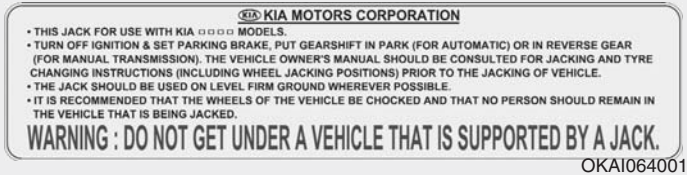
OHYK064002

• Type B



OHYK064005

• Type D (for Australia)



OKAI064001

❊ The actual Jack label in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.
For more detailed specifications, refer to the label attached to the jack.

1. Model Name
2. Maximum allowable load
3. When using the jack, set your parking brake.
4. When using the jack, stop the engine.
5. Do not get under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.
6. The designated locations under the frame
7. When supporting the vehicle, the base plate of jack must be vertical under the lifting point.
8. Shift into Reverse gear on vehicles with manual transmission or move the shift lever to the P position on vehicles with automatic transmission / dual clutch transmission.
9. The jack should be used on firm level ground.
10. Jack manufacturer
11. Production date
12. Representative company and address

EC Declaration of Conformity for Jack

CE

EC Declaration of Conformity
according to EC Machinery Directive 2006/42/EC

We, **FRONTEC CO., LTD.**
2091-12 Jeongwang 2(i)-dong Siheung-si Gyeonggi-d ,Korea
declare under our sole responsibility that the product

Product : **JACK-ASSY**
Type Designation(s) : **1200KG, 1000KG, 800KG, 700KG, 500KG**
Serial No. : **N/A (prototype)**
Year of Manufacture : **2013**
to which this declaration relates is in conformity with the following standard(s) or other normative document(s);

EN ISO12100 (2010)	Safety of machinery - General principles for design – Risk assessment and risk reduction
EN 1494/A1 (2008)	Mobile or movable jacks and associated lifting equipment

following the provisions of Directive(s);

2006/42/EC	Directive on the approximation of the laws of Member States relating to machinery (OJ L157 Jun, 9, 2006)

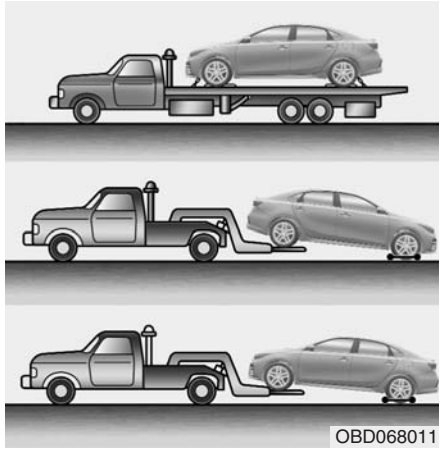
Siheung-si Gyeonggi-d ,Korea / 15.07.2013 SOO HONG, MIN President
(Place and date of issue)(Name and signature or equivalent making of authorized person)

* T.C.F Compiling Location:
- Address: PRIBORSKA 280, 739 42 FRYDEK MISTEK,CHLEBOVICE, CZECH REPUBLIC
- Team: Purchase team
- Company name: HANWHA L&C CZECH s.r.o

OUM074110L

TOWING

Towing service

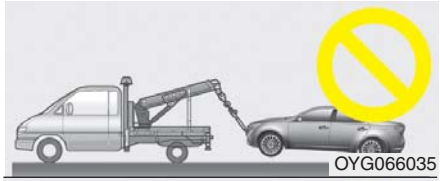

OBD068011

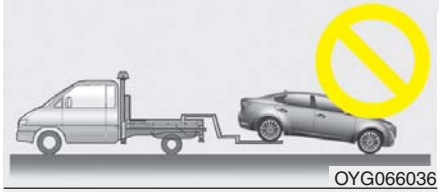
If emergency towing is necessary, we recommend having it done by an authorised Kia dealer or a commercial tow-truck service. Proper lifting and towing procedures are necessary to prevent damage to the vehicle. The use of wheel dollies (1) or flatbed is recommended.

It is acceptable to tow the vehicle with the rear wheels on the ground (without dollies) and the front wheels off the ground.

If any of the loaded wheels or suspension components are damaged or the vehicle is being towed with the front wheels on the ground, use a towing dolly under the front wheels.

When being towed by a commercial tow truck and wheel dollies are not used, the front of the vehicle should always be lifted, not the rear.


OYG066035


OYG066036

OBD068014

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Do not tow the vehicle backwards with the front wheels on the ground as this may cause damage to the vehicle.***

(Continued)

(Continued)

- ***Do not tow with sling-type equipment. Use wheel lift or flatbed equipment.***
- ***Do not tow the vehicle with four wheels in contact with the ground if it is the vehicle equipped with DCT or IVT. Otherwise, the transmission will be seriously damaged. Also, make sure not to tow the vehicle connecting it with other vehicles including camper vans.***

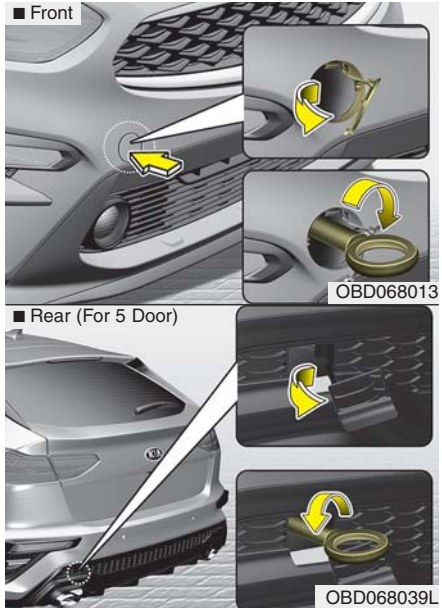
When towing your vehicle in an emergency without wheel dollies :

1. Set the ignition switch in the ACC position.
2. Place the transmission shift lever in N (Neutral).
3. Release the parking brake.

⚠ CAUTION

Failure to place the transmission shift lever in N (Neutral) may cause internal damage to the transmission.

Removable towing hook (if equipped)

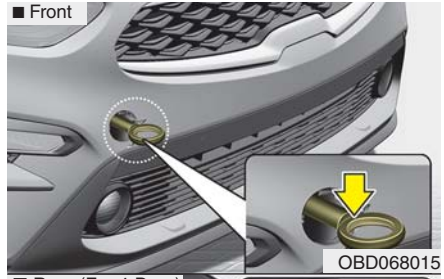


1. Open the trunk/tailgate, and remove the towing hook from the tool case.

2. Remove the hole cover pressing the lower (front) part of the cover on the bumper.
3. Install the towing hook by turning it clockwise into the hole until it is fully secured.
4. Remove the towing hook and install the cover after use.

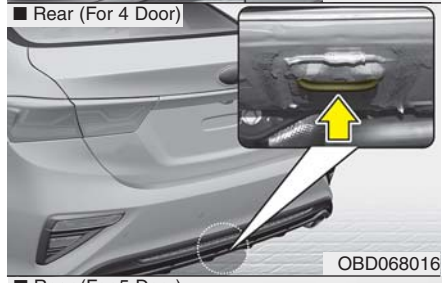
Emergency towing

■ Front



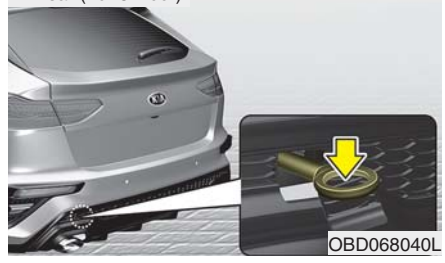
OBD068015

■ Rear (For 4 Door)



OBD068016

■ Rear (For 5 Door)



OBD068040L

If towing is necessary, we recommend you to have it done by an authorised Kia dealer or a commercial tow truck service.

If towing service is not available in an emergency, your vehicle may be temporarily towed using a cable or chain secured to the emergency towing hook under the front (or rear) of the vehicle. Use extreme caution when towing the vehicle. A driver must be in the vehicle to steer it and operate the brakes.

Towing in this manner may be done only on hard-surfaced roads for a short distance and at low speed. Also, the wheels, axles, power train, steering and brakes must all be in good condition.

- Do not use the tow hooks to pull a vehicle out of mud, sand or other conditions from which the vehicle cannot be driven out under its own power.
- Avoid towing a vehicle heavier than the vehicle doing the towing.
- The drivers of both vehicles should communicate with each other frequently.

⚠ CAUTION

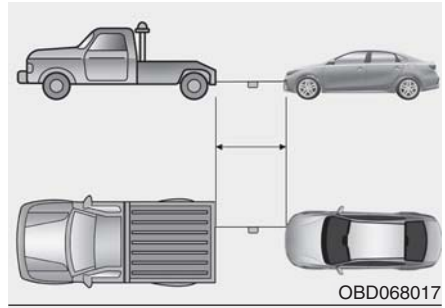
- ***Attach a towing strap to the tow hook.***
- ***Using a portion of the vehicle other than the tow hooks for towing may damage the body of your vehicle.***
- ***Use only a cable or chain specifically intended for use in towing vehicles. Securely fasten the cable or chain to the towing hook provided.***
- ***Accelerate or decelerate the vehicle in a slow and gradual manner whilst maintaining tension on the tow rope or chain to start or drive the vehicle, otherwise tow hooks and the vehicle may be damaged.***

- Before emergency towing, check if the hook is not broken or damaged.
- Fasten the towing cable or chain securely to the hook.
- Do not jerk the hook. Apply it steadily and with even force.
- To avoid damaging the hook, do not pull from the side or at a vertical angle. Always pull straight ahead.

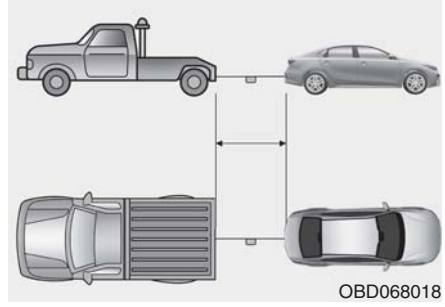
⚠ WARNING

Use extreme caution when towing the vehicle.

- **Avoid sudden starts or erratic driving manoeuvres which would place excessive stress on the emergency towing hook and towing cable or chain. The hook and towing cable or chain may break and cause serious injury or damage.**
- **If the disabled vehicle is unable to be moved, do not forcibly continue the towing. We recommend that you contact an authorised Kia dealer or a commercial tow truck service for assistance.**
- **Tow the vehicle as straight ahead as possible.**
- **Keep away from the vehicle during towing.**



OBD068017



OBD068018

- Use a towing strap less than 5 m (16 feet) long. Attach a white or red cloth (about 30 cm (12 inches) wide) in the middle of the strap for easy visibility.
- Drive carefully so that the towing strap is not loosened during towing.
- The driver must be in the vehicle for steering and braking operations when the vehicle is towed and passengers other than the driver must not be allowed to be on board.

Emergency towing precautions

- Turn the ignition switch to ACC so the steering wheel isn't locked.
- Place the transmission shift lever in N (Neutral).
- Release the parking bake.
- Press the brake pedal with more force than normal since you will have reduced brake performance.
- More steering effort will be required because the power steering system will be disabled.
- The vehicle should be towed at a speed of 25 km/h (16 mph) or less within the distance of 20 km (12 miles).
- If you are driving down a long hill, the brakes may overheat and brake performance will be reduced. Stop often and let the brakes cool off.

⚠ CAUTION

- Automatic transmission / Dual clutch transmission

- ***If the car is being towed with all four wheels on the ground, it can be towed only from the front. Be sure that the transmission is in neutral. Be sure the steering is unlocked by placing the ignition switch in the ACC position. A driver must be in the towed vehicle to operate the steering and brakes.***
- ***To avoid serious damage to the automatic transmission / dual clutch transmission, limit the vehicle speed to 15 km/h (10 mph) and drive less than 1.5 km (1 mile) when towing.***
- ***Before towing, check the automatic transmission / dual clutch transmission for fluid leaks under your vehicle. If the automatic transmission / dual clutch transmission fluid is leaking, flatbed equipment or a towing dolly must be used.***

EMERGENCY COMMODITY (IF EQUIPPED)

There are some emergency commodities in the vehicle to help you respond to the emergency situation.

Fire extinguisher

If there is small fire and you know how to use the fire extinguisher, take the following steps carefully.

1. Pull the pin at the top of the extinguisher that keeps the handle from being accidentally pressed.
2. Aim the nozzle toward the base of the fire.
3. Stand approximately 2.5 m (8 ft) away from the fire and squeeze the handle to discharge the extinguisher. If you release the handle, the discharge will stop.
4. Sweep the nozzle back and forth at the base of the fire. After the fire appears to be out, watch it carefully since it may re-ignite.

First aid kit

There are some items such as scissors, bandage and adhesive tape and etc. in the kit to give first aid to an injured person.

Triangle reflector

Place the triangle reflector on the road to warn oncoming vehicles during emergencies, such as when the vehicle is parked by the roadside due to any problems.

Tyre pressure gauge (If equipped)

Tyres normally lose some air in day-to-day use, and you may have to add a few pounds of air periodically and it is not usually a sign of a leaking tyre, but of normal wear. Always check tyre pressure when the tyres are cold because tyre pressure increases with temperature.

To check the tyre pressure, take the following steps;

1. Unscrew the inflation valve cap that is located on the rim of the tyre.
2. Press and hold the gauge against the tyre valve. Some air will escape as you begin and more will escape if you don't press the gauge in firmly.
3. A firm non-leaking push will activate the gauge.
4. Read the tyre pressure on the gauge to know whether the tyre pressure is low or high.
5. Adjust the tyre pressures to the specified pressure. Refer to “Tyres and wheels” in chapter 9.
6. Reinstall the inflation valve cap.

Maintenance

Engine compartment 8-4
Maintenance services 8-6
• Owner's responsibility 8-6
• Owner maintenanceprecautions 8-6
Owner maintenance 8-8
• Owner maintenance schedule 8-8
Scheduled maintenance service 8-10
• Scheduled maintenance service precaution 8-10
Explanation of scheduled maintenance items . . . 8-38
Engine oil (petrol) 8-42
• Checking the engine oil level 8-42
• Changing the engine oil and filter 8-43
• Checking the engine oil level 8-44
Engine oil (diesel) 8-44
• Changing the engine oil and filter 8-45
Engine coolant 8-46
• Checking the coolant level 8-46
• Changing the coolant 8-50
Brake/clutch fluid 8-51
• Checking the brake/clutch fluid level 8-51
Washer fluid 8-53
• Checking the washer fluid level 8-53
Parking brake 8-54
• Checking the parking brake 8-54
Fuel Filter (For Diesel) 8-55
• Draining water from the fuel filter 8-55
• Fuel filter cartridge replacement 8-55
Air cleaner 8-56
• Filter replacement 8-56
Climate control air filter 8-58
• Filter inspection 8-58
Wiper blades 8-60
• Blade inspection 8-60
• Blade replacement 8-60
Battery 8-63
• For best battery service 8-63
• Battery capacity label 8-65
• Battery recharging 8-65
• Reset items 8-67
Tyres and wheels 8-68
• Tyre care 8-68
• Recommended cold tyre inflation pressures 8-68
• Checking tyre inflation pressure 8-69
• Tyre rotation 8-70
• Wheel alignment and tyre balance 8-71
• Tyre replacement 8-72
• Wheel replacement 8-73
• Tyre traction 8-74
• Tyre maintenance 8-74

• Tyre sidewall labeling 8-74
• Low aspect ratio tyre 8-78

Fuses 8-80
• Inner panel fuse replacement 8-83
• Engine compartment fuse replacement. 8-84
• Fuse/relay panel description. 8-86

Light bulbs 8-100
• Bulb replacement precaution 8-100
• Light bulb position (Front). 8-102
• Light bulb position (Rear) 8-103
• Light bulb position (Side). 8-105
• Headlamp (Low beam) bulb replacement (Headlamp Type A, B) 8-105
• Headlamp (High beam) bulb replacement (Headlamp Type A, B) 8-106
• Position lamp / Day time running lamp (LED type) replacement (Headlamp Type B). 8-108
• Headlamp (LED type) replacement (Headlamp Type C). 8-108
• Front turn signal lamp bulb replacement. 8-108
• Front fog lamp bulb replacement 8-109
• Side repeater lamp (LED type) bulb replacement . . 8-110
• Side repeater lamp (Bulb type) bulb replacement . . 8-110
• Stop and tail lamp (Bulb type) bulb replacement (Rear combination lamp Type A, B, F) 8-111
• Tail lamp (inside) (Bulb type) bulb replacement (Rear combination lamp Type A, B, F) 8-112
• Rear fog lamp (Bulb type) bulb replacement (Rear combination lamp Type B). 8-113
• Stop and tail lamp (LED type) bulb replacement (Rear combination lamp Type C, D, E). 8-114
• Rear fog lamp (LED type) bulb replacement (Rear combination lamp Type D) 8-114
• Rear turn signal lamp bulb replacement 8-115
• Back up lamp bulb replacement 8-116
• High mounted stop lamp (LED type) bulb replacement 8-117
• High mounted stop lamp (bulb type) bulb replacement 8-117
• License plate lamp bulb replacement 8-118
• Map lamp (Bulb type) bulb replacement 8-119
• Map lamp (LED type) bulb replacement 8-119
• Room lamp (Bulb type) bulb replacement 8-120
• Room lamp (LED type) bulb replacement 8-120
• Vanity mirror lamp bulb replacement 8-121
• Glove box lamp replacement 8-121
• Trunk room lamp replacement 8-122
• Tailgate room lamp bulb replacement 8-122
• Headlamp and front fog lamp aiming (for Europe) 8-123
• Exterior care 8-129

Appearance care 8-129
- **Interior care 8-134**

Emission control system 8-137
- **Crankcase emission control system 8-137**
- **Evaporative emission control system 8-137**
- **Exhaust emission control system 8-138**
- **Lean NOx Trap (if equipped) 8-142**
- **Selective Catalytic Reduction (SCR) system 8-142**

ENGINE COMPARTMENT

■ **(Petrol engine) 1.6 MPI**

■ **(Petrol engine) 1.6 T-GDi**

1. Engine coolant reservoir
2. Engine oil filler cap
3. Brake / clutch fluid reservoir
4. Air cleaner
5. Fuse box
6. Negative battery terminal
7. Positive battery terminal
8. Engine oil dipstick
9. Radiator cap
10. Windscreen washer fluid reservoir

❈ The actual engine compartment in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

OBD078100R/OBD078135R

■ **(Petrol engine) 2.0 MPI**

■ **Smartstream D 1.6**

❈ The actual engine room in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

1. Engine coolant reservoir
2. Engine oil filler cap
3. Brake / clutch fluid reservoir
4. Air cleaner
5. Fuse box
6. Negative battery terminal
7. Positive battery terminal
8. Engine oil dipstick
9. Radiator cap
10. Windscreen washer fluid reservoir

OBD078101R/OBD078121R

MAINTENANCE SERVICES

You should exercise the utmost care to prevent damage to your vehicle and injury to yourself whenever performing any maintenance or inspection procedures.

Inadequate, incomplete or insufficient servicing may result in operational problems with your vehicle that could lead to vehicle damage, an accident, or personal injury.

Owner's responsibility

✻ NOTICE

Maintenance Service and Record Retention are the owner's responsibility.

Have your vehicle serviced by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

You should retain documents that show proper maintenance has been performed on your vehicle in accordance with the scheduled maintenance service charts shown on the following pages.

You need this information to establish your compliance with the servicing and maintenance requirements of your vehicle warranties.

Detailed warranty information is provided in your Warranty & Maintenance book.

Repairs and adjustments required as a result of improper maintenance or a lack of required maintenance are not covered when your vehicle is covered by warranty.

Owner maintenance precautions

Improper or incomplete service may result in problems. This section gives instructions only for the maintenance items that are easy to perform.

✻ NOTICE

Improper owner maintenance during the warranty period may affect warranty coverage. For details, read the separate Warranty & Maintenance book provided with the vehicle. If you're unsure about any servicing or maintenance procedure, have the system serviced by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

⚠ WARNING
- Maintenance work

- **Performing maintenance work on a vehicle can be dangerous. You can be seriously injured whilst performing some maintenance procedures. If you lack sufficient knowledge and experience or the proper tools and equipment to do the work, have the system serviced by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.**
- **Working under the bonnet with the engine running is dangerous. It becomes even more dangerous when you wear jewelry or loose clothing. These can become entangled in moving parts and result in injury.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

Therefore, if you must run the engine whilst working under the bonnet, make certain that you remove all jewelry (especially rings, bracelets, watches, and necklaces) and all necktie, scarves, and similar loose clothing before getting near the engine or cooling fans.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Do not put heavy objects or apply excessive force on top of the engine cover (if equipped) or fuel related parts.***
- ***When you inspect the fuel system (fuel lines and fuel injection devices), contact a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.***

(Continued)

(Continued)

- ***Do not drive long time with the engine cover (if equipped) removed.***
- ***When checking the engine room, do not go near fire.***

  Fuel, washer fluid, etc. are flammable oils that may cause fire.
- ***Before touching the battery, ignition cables and electrical wiring, you should disconnect the battery "-" terminal. You may get an electric shock from the electric current.***
- ***When you remove the interior trim cover with a flat bed (-) driver, be careful not to damage the cover.***
- ***Be careful when you replace and clean bulbs to avoid burns or electrical shock.***

OWNER MAINTENANCE

The following lists are vehicle checks and inspections that should be performed at the frequencies indicated to help ensure safe, dependable operation of your vehicle.

Any adverse conditions should be brought to the attention of your dealer as soon as possible.

These Owner Maintenance Checks are generally not covered by warranties and you may be charged for labour, parts and lubricants used.

Owner maintenance schedule

When you stop for fuel:

- Check the engine oil level.
- Check the coolant level in the coolant reservoir.
- Check the windscreen washer fluid level.
- Look for low or under-inflated tyres.

⚠ WARNING

Be careful when checking your engine coolant level when the engine is hot. Scalding hot coolant and steam may blow out under pressure. This could cause burns or other serious injury.

Whilst operating your vehicle:

- Note any changes in the sound of the exhaust or any smell of exhaust fumes in the vehicle.
- Check for vibrations in the steering wheel. Notice any increased steering effort or looseness in the steering wheel, or change in its straight-ahead position.
- Notice if your vehicle constantly turns slightly or “pulls” to one side when travelling on smooth, level road.
- When stopping, listen and check for unusual sounds, pulling to one side, increased brake pedal travel or “hard-to-push” brake pedal.
- If any slipping or changes in the operation of your transmission occurs, check the transmission fluid level.
- Check manual transmission operation, including clutch operation.
- Check the parking brake.
- Check for fluid leaks under your vehicle (water dripping from the air conditioning system during or after use is normal).

At least monthly:

- Check the coolant level in the engine coolant reservoir.
- Check the operation of all exterior lights, including the stoplights, turn signals and hazard warning flashers.
- Check the inflation pressures of all tyres including the spare for tyres that are worn, show uneven wear, or are damaged.
- Check for loose wheel lug nuts.

At least twice a year (i.e., every Spring and Fall):

- Check the radiator, heater and air conditioning hoses for leaks or damage.
- Check the windscreen washer spray and wiper operation. Clean the wiper blades with clean cloth dampened with washer fluid.
- Check the headlight alignment.
- Check the muffler, exhaust pipes, shields and clamps.
- Check the lap/shoulder belts for wear and function.

At least once a year:

- Clean the body and door drain holes.
- Lubricate the door hinges and checks, and bonnet hinges.
- Lubricate the door and bonnet locks and latches.
- Lubricate the door rubber weatherstrips.
- Check the air conditioning system.
- Clean the battery and terminals.
- Check the brake / clutch fluid level.

SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE SERVICE

Scheduled maintenance service precaution

Follow the Normal Maintenance Schedule if the vehicle is usually operated where none of the following conditions apply. If any of the following conditions apply, follow the Maintenance Under Severe Usage Conditions.

- Repeated driving short distance of less than 8 km (5 miles) in normal temperature or less than 16 km(10 miles) in freezing temperature
- Extensive engine idling or low speed driving for long distances
- Driving on rough, dusty, muddy, unpaved, graveled or salt-spread roads
- Driving in areas using salt or other corrosive materials or in very cold weather
- Driving in heavy dust condition
- Driving in heavy traffic area
- Driving on uphill, downhill, or mountain road repeatedly
- Towing a trailer or using a camper, or roof rack
- Driving as a patrol car, taxi, other commercial use of vehicle towing
- Driving over 170 km/h (106 mile/h)
- Frequently driving in stop-and-go condition

If your vehicle is operated under the above conditions, you should inspect, replace or refill more frequently than the following Normal Maintenance Schedule. After the periods or distance shown in the chart, continue to follow the prescribed maintenance intervals.

Normal Maintenance Schedule - For Australia and New Zealand

The following maintenance services must be performed to ensure good emission control and performance. Keep receipts for all vehicle emission services to protect your warranty. Where both mileage and time are shown, the frequency of service is determined by whichever occurs first.

NO.	ITEM	REMARK
*1	Engine oil and engine oil filter	Check the engine oil level and leak every 500 km (350 miles) or before starting a long trip.
*2	Coolant (Engine)	When adding coolant, use only deionized water or soft water for your vehicle and never mix hard water in the coolant filled at the factory. An improper coolant mixture can result in serious malfunction or engine damage.
*3	Drive belts (Engine)	• Adjust alternator, water pump and air conditioner drive belt. Inspect and if necessary repair or replace. • Inspect drive belt tensioner, idler and alternator pulley and if necessary correct or replace.
*4	Valve clearance	Inspect for excessive valve noise and/or engine vibration and adjust if necessary. In this case, have the system checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.
*5	Spark plug	For your convenience, it can be replaced prior to it's interval when you do maintenance of other items.
*6	Manual transmission fluid / Dual clutch transmission (DCT) fluid	Manual transmission fluid (or Dual clutch transmission (DCT) fluid) should be changed anytime it has been submerged in water.

NO.	ITEM	REMARK
*7	Fuel additives (Petrol)	Kia recommends that you use unleaded petrol which has an octane rating of RON (Research Octane Number) 95 / AKI (Anti Knock Index) 91 or higher (for Europe) or Octane Rating of RON (Research Octane Number) 91 / AKI (Anti-Knock Index) 87 or higher (except Europe). For customers who do not use good quality petrols including fuel additives regularly, and have problems starting or the engine does not run smoothly, one bottle of additives added to the fuel tank at every 15,000 km (for Non Turbo Model) / 10,000 km (for Turbo Model). Additives are available from a professional workshop along with information on how to use them. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner. Do not mix other additives.

Normal Maintenance Schedule - Non Turbo Model [For Australia and New Zealand] (Continue)

MAINTENANCE INTERVALS / AINTENANCE ITEM		Number of months or driving distance, whichever comes first							
	Months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96
	Km×1,000	15	30	45	60	75	90	105	120
Engine oil and engine oil filter *1	(Petrol engine) 2.0 MPI	Replace every 15,000 km or 12 months							
Coolant (Engine) *2		At first, Replace 210,000 km or 120 months after that, Replace every 30,000 km or 24 months							
Drive belts (Engine) *3		-	I	-	I	-	I	-	I
Vacuum hoses and crankcase ventilation hoses		-	I	-	I	-	I	-	I
Spark plugs *5	(Petrol engine) 2.0 MPI	Replace every 150,000 km							
Automatic transmission fluid		No check, No service required							
Manual transmission fluid *6		-	-	-	I	-	-	-	I
Dual clutch transmission (DCT) fluid *6		-	-	-	I	-	-	-	I
Drive shaft and boots		-	I	-	I	-	I	-	I
Fuel additives (Petrol) *7		Add every 15,000 km or 12 months							
Fuel lines, hoses and connections		-	-	-	I	-	-	-	I
Fuel tank air filter		-	I	-	R	-	I	-	R
Vapour hose and fuel filler cap		-	-	-	I	-	-	-	I
Air cleaner filter		I	I	R	I	I	R	I	I

I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.
R : Replace or change.

Normal Maintenance Schedule - Non Turbo Model [For Australia and New Zealand]

MAINTENANCE INTERVALS / AINTENANCE ITEM	Number of months or driving distance, whichever comes first							
	Months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96
	Km×1,000	15	30	45	60	75	90	105	120
Exhaust system		-	I	-	I	-	I	-	I
Cooling system		-	-	-	I	-	I	-	I
Air conditioner compressor/refrigerant		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Climate control air filter		I	R	I	R	I	R	I	R
Brake discs and pads		-	I	-	I	-	I	-	I
Brake lines, hoses and connections		-	I	-	I	-	I	-	I
Brake/clutch fluid		I	I	R	I	I	R	I	I
Parking brake (Hand type)		-	I	-	I	-	I	-	I
Steering gear rack, linkage and boots		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Suspension ball joints		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Tyre (pressure & tread wear)		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Battery (12V) condition		-	I	-	I	-	I	-	I

I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.
R : Replace or change.

Maintenance Under Severe Usage Conditions - Non Turbo Model [For Australia and New Zealand]

MAINTENANCE ITEM		MAINTENANCE OPERATION	MAINTENANCE INTERVALS	DRIVING CONDITION
Engine oil and engine oil filter	(Petrol engine) 2.0 MPI	R	Every 7,500 km or 6 months	A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J, K
Spark plugs		R	Replace more frequently depending on the condition	B, H, I, K
Automatic transmission fluid		R	Every 90,000 km	A, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J
Manual transmission fluid		R	Every 120,000 km	C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J
Dual clutch transmission (DCT) fluid		R	Every 120,000 km	C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J
Drive shaft and boots		I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J
Air cleaner filter		R	Replace more frequently depending on the condition	C, E
Climate control air filter		R	Replace more frequently depending on the condition	C, E, G

MAINTENANCE ITEM	MAINTENANCE OPERATION	MAINTENANCE INTERVALS	DRIVING CONDITION
Brake discs and pads, calipers and rotors	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, E, G, H
Parking brake (Hand type)	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, G, H
Steering gear rack, linkage and boots	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, E, F, G
Suspension ball joints	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, E, F, G

Maintenance operation
I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.
R : Replace or change.

SEVERE DRIVING CONDITIONS

A : Repeatedly driving short distance of less than 8 km in normal temperature or less than 16 km in freezing temperature.
B : Extensive engine idling or low speed driving for long distances.
C : Driving on rough, dusty, muddy, unpaved, graveled or salt-spread roads.
D : Driving in areas using salt or other corrosive materials or in very cold weather
E : Driving in heavy dust condition.
F : Driving in heavy traffic area.
G : Driving on uphill, downhill, or mountain roads repeatedly.
H : Towing a trailer or using a camper on roof rack.
I : Driving for patrol car, taxi, other commercial use of vehicle towing.
J : Driving over 170 km/h.
K : Frequently driving in stop-and-go conditions.

Normal Maintenance Schedule - Turbo Model [For Australia and New Zealand] (Continue)

MAINTENANCE INTERVALS / AINTENANCE ITEM	Number of months or driving distance, whichever comes first								
	Months	**12**	**24**	**36**	**48**	**60**	**72**	**84**	**96**
	Km×1,000	**10**	**20**	**30**	**40**	**50**	**60**	**70**	**80**
Engine oil and engine oil filter *1	(Petrol engine) 1.6 T-GDi	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
Coolant (Engine) *2		At first, Replace 210,000 km or 120 months after that, Replace every 30,000 km or 24 months							
Drive belts (Engine) *3		-	I	-	I	-	I	-	I
Valve clearance *4	(Petrol engine) 1.6 T-GDi	-	-	-	-	-	I	-	-
Vacuum hoses and crankcase ventilation hoses		-	I	-	I	-	I	-	I
Spark plugs *5	(Petrol engine) 1.6 T-GDi	Replace every 70,000 km							
Automatic transmission fluid		No check, No service required							
Manual transmission fluid *6		-	-	-	I	-	-	-	I
Dual clutch transmission (DCT) fluid *6		-	-	-	I	-	-	-	I
Drive shaft and boots		-	I	-	I	-	I	-	I
Fuel additives (Petrol) *7		Add every 10,000 km or 12 months							
Fuel lines, hoses and connections		-	-	-	I	-	-	-	I
Fuel tank air filter		-	I	-	R	-	I	-	R
Vapour hose and fuel filler cap		-	-	-	I	-	-	-	I
Air cleaner filter		I	I	R	I	I	R	I	I

I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.
R : Replace or change.

Normal Maintenance Schedule - Turbo Model [For Australia and New Zealand]

MAINTENANCE INTERVALS / AINTENANCE ITEM	Number of months or driving distance, whichever comes first							
	Months	**12**	**24**	**36**	**48**	**60**	**72**	**84**	**96**
	Km×1,000	**10**	**20**	**30**	**40**	**50**	**60**	**70**	**80**
Intercooler, in/out hose, air intake hose	(Petrol engine) 1.6 T-GDi	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Exhaust system		-	I	-	I	-	I	-	I
Cooling system		-	-	-	I	-	I	-	I
Air conditioner compressor/refrigerant		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Climate control air filter		I	R	I	R	I	R	I	R
Brake discs and pads		-	I	-	I	-	I	-	I
Brake lines, hoses and connections		-	I	-	I	-	I	-	I
Brake/clutch fluid		Replace every 45,000 km or 36 months							
Parking brake (Hand type)		-	I	-	I	-	I	-	I
Steering gear rack, linkage and boots		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Suspension ball joints		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Tyre (pressure & tread wear)		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Battery (12V) condition		-	I	-	I	-	I	-	I

I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.
R : Replace or change.

Maintenance Under Severe Usage Conditions - Turbo Model [For Australia and New Zealand]

MAINTENANCE ITEM		MAINTENANCE OPERATION	MAINTENANCE INTERVALS	DRIVING CONDITION
Engine oil and engine oil filter	(Petrol engine) 1.6 T-GDi	R	Every 5,000 km or 6 months	A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J, K
Spark plugs		R	Replace more frequently depending on the condition	B, H, I, K
Automatic transmission fluid		R	Every 90,000 km	A, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J
Manual transmission fluid		R	Every 120,000 km	C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J
Dual clutch transmission (DCT) fluid		R	Every 120,000 km	C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J
Drive shaft and boots		I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J
Air cleaner filter		R	Replace more frequently depending on the condition	C, E
Climate control air filter		R	Replace more frequently depending on the condition	C, E, G

MAINTENANCE ITEM	MAINTENANCE OPERATION	MAINTENANCE INTERVALS	DRIVING CONDITION
Brake discs and pads, calipers and rotors	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, E, G, H
Parking brake (Hand type)	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, G, H
Steering gear rack, linkage and boots	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, E, F, G
Suspension ball joints	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, E, F, G

Maintenance operation
I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.
R : Replace or change.

SEVERE DRIVING CONDITIONS

A : Repeatedly driving short distance of less than 8 km in normal temperature or less than 16 km in freezing temperature.
B : Extensive engine idling or low speed driving for long distances.
C : Driving on rough, dusty, muddy, unpaved, graveled or salt-spread roads.
D : Driving in areas using salt or other corrosive materials or in very cold weather
E : Driving in heavy dust condition.
F : Driving in heavy traffic area.
G : Driving on uphill, downhill, or mountain roads repeatedly.
H : Towing a trailer or using a camper on roof rack.
I : Driving for patrol car, taxi, other commercial use of vehicle towing.
J : Driving over 170 km/h.
K : Frequently driving in stop-and-go conditions.

Normal Maintenance Schedule - For Europe (Except Russia)

The following maintenance services must be performed to ensure good emission control and performance. Keep receipts for all vehicle emission services to protect your warranty. Where both mileage and time are shown, the frequency of service is determined by whichever occurs first.

NO.	ITEM	REMARK
*1	Engine oil and engine oil filter	Check the engine oil level and leak every 500 km (350 miles) or before starting a long trip.
*2	Coolant (Engine)	When adding coolant, use only deionized water or soft water for your vehicle and never mix hard water in the coolant filled at the factory. An improper coolant mixture can result in serious malfunction or engine damage.
*3	Drive belts (Engine)	• Adjust alternator, water pump and air conditioner drive belt. Inspect and if necessary repair or replace. • Inspect drive belt tensioner, idler and alternator pulley and if necessary correct or replace.
*4	Valve clearance	Inspect for excessive valve noise and/or engine vibration and adjust if necessary. In this case, have the system checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.
*5	Spark plug	For your convenience, it can be replaced prior to it's interval when you do maintenance of other items.
*6	Manual transmission fluid / Dual clutch transmission (DCT) fluid	Manual transmission fluid (or Dual clutch transmission (DCT) fluid) should be changed anytime it has been submerged in water.

NO.	ITEM	REMARK
*7	Fuel additives (Petrol)	Kia recommends that you use unleaded petrol which has an octane rating of RON (Research Octane Number) 95 / AKI (Anti Knock Index) 91 or higher (for Europe) or Octane Rating of RON (Research Octane Number) 91 / AKI (Anti-Knock Index) 87 or higher (except Europe). For customers who do not use good quality petrols including fuel additives regularly, and have problems starting or the engine does not run smoothly, one bottle of additives added to the fuel tank at every 15,000 km (10,000 miles) (for Europe) / 10,000 km (6,500 miles) (except Europe, China, Brazil) / 5,000 km (3,000 miles) (for China, Brazil). Additives are available from a professional workshop along with information on how to use them. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner. Do not mix other additives.
*8	Fuel filter cartridge (Diesel)	This maintenance schedule depends on fuel quality. It is applicable only when using a qualified fuel <"EN590 or equivalent">. If the diesel fuel specifications don't meet the EN590, it must be replaced more frequently. If there are some important safety matters like fuel flow restriction, surging, loss of power, hard starting problem etc., replace the fuel filter immediately regardless of maintenance schedule and consult a professional workshop for more details. Kia recommends to consult an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

Normal Maintenance Schedule - For Europe (Except Russia) (Continue)

MAINTENANCE INTERVALS / MAINTENANCE ITEM	Number of months or driving distance, whichever comes first									
	Months		**24**	**48**	**72**	**96**	**120**	**144**	**168**	**192**
	Miles×1,000		**20**	**40**	**60**	**80**	**100**	**120**	**140**	**160**
	Km×1,000		**30**	**60**	**90**	**120**	**150**	**180**	**210**	**240**
Engine oil and engine oil filter *1	Petrol	1.6 MPI / T-GDi	Replace every 15,000 km (10,000 miles) or 12 months							
		2.0 MPI	Replace every 15,000 km (10,000 miles) or 12 months							
	Diesel	Smartstream D 1.6	Replace every 20,000 km (13,000 miles) or 12 months							
Coolant (Engine) *2	Petrol, Diesel		At first, Replace 210,000 km (140,000 miles) or 120 months after that, Replace every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24 months							
Drive belts (Engine) *3	Petrol		-	-	I	I	I	I	I	I
	Diesel		-	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Timing belt system (Timing belt, Oil belt, Tensioner, Idler)	Diesel	Smartstream D 1.6	Inspect Timing belt every 120,000 km (80,000 miles) Replace Timing belt system (Timing belt, Oil belt, Tensioner, Idler) every 240,000 km (160,000 miles)							
Valve clearance *4	Petrol	1.6 MPI / T-GDi	-	-	I	-	-	I	-	-
Vacuum hoses and crankcase ventilation hoses	Petrol		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Spark plugs *5	Petrol	1.6 MPI	Replace every 60,000 km (40,000 miles)							
		1.6 T-GDi	Replace every 75,000 km (50,000 miles)							
		2.0 MPI	Replace every 165,000 km (110,000 miles)							

I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace. R : Replace or change.

Normal Maintenance Schedule - For Europe (Except Russia) (Continue)

MAINTENANCE INTERVALS / MAINTENANCE ITEM	Number of months or driving distance, whichever comes first								
	Months	**24**	**48**	**72**	**96**	**120**	**144**	**168**	**192**
	Miles×1,000	**20**	**40**	**60**	**80**	**100**	**120**	**140**	**160**
	Km×1,000	**30**	**60**	**90**	**120**	**150**	**180**	**210**	**240**
Automatic transmission fluid	Petrol, Diesel	No check, No service required							
Manual transmission fluid *6	Petrol, Diesel	-	I	-	I	-	I	-	I
Dual clutch transmission (DCT) fluid *6	Petrol, Diesel	-	I	-	I	-	I	-	I
Drive shaft and boots	Petrol, Diesel	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Fuel additives (Petrol) *7	Petrol	Add every 15,000 km (10,000 miles) or 12 months							
Fuel lines, hoses and connections	Petrol	-	I	-	I	-	I	-	I
	Diesel	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Fuel tank air filter (Petrol)	Petrol	-	I	-	I	-	I	-	I
Vapour hose and fuel filler cap (Petrol)	Petrol	-	I	-	I	-	I	-	I
Fuel filler cap (Diesel)	Diesel	-	I	-	I	-	I	-	I
Urea solution line & connections (if equipped)	Diesel	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Urea solution filler cap (if equipped)	Diesel	-	I	-	I	-	I	-	I
Fuel filter cartridge (Diesel) *8	Diesel	I	R	I	R	I	R	I	R
Air cleaner filter	Petrol, Diesel	I	R	I	R	I	R	I	R

I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace. R : Replace or change.

Normal Maintenance Schedule - For Europe (Except Russia)

MAINTENANCE INTERVALS / MAINTENANCE ITEM	Number of months or driving distance, whichever comes first								
	Months	**24**	**48**	**72**	**96**	**120**	**144**	**168**	**192**
	Miles×1,000	**20**	**40**	**60**	**80**	**100**	**120**	**140**	**160**
	Km×1,000	**30**	**60**	**90**	**120**	**150**	**180**	**210**	**240**
Intercooler, in/out hose, air intake hose	1.6 T-GDi	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Exhaust system	Petrol, Diesel	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Cooling system	Petrol, Diesel	-	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Air conditioner compressor/refrigerant	Petrol, Diesel	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Climate control air filter	Petrol, Diesel	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
Brake discs and pads	Petrol, Diesel	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Brake lines, hoses and connections	Petrol, Diesel	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Brake fluid	Petrol, Diesel	Inspect every 150,000 km (100,000 miles) and, Replace every 300,000 km (200,000 miles)							
Parking brake (Hand type)	Petrol, Diesel	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Steering gear rack, linkage and boots	Petrol, Diesel	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Suspension ball joints	Petrol, Diesel	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Tyre (pressure & tread wear)	Petrol, Diesel	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Battery (12V) condition	Petrol, Diesel	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I

I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace. R : Replace or change.

Maintenance Under Severe Usage Conditions - For Europe (Except Russia)

MAINTENANCE ITEM			MAINTENANCE OPERATION	MAINTENANCE INTERVALS	DRIVING CONDITION
Engine oil and engine oil filter	Petrol	1.6 MPI / T-GDi	R	Every 7,500 km (5,000 miles) or 6 months	A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J, K
	Petrol	2.0 MPI	R	Every 7,500 km (5,000 miles) or 6 months	
	Diesel	Smartstream D 1.6	R	Every 10,000 km (6,500 miles) or 12 months	
Spark plugs	Petrol		R	Replace more frequently depending on the condition	B, H, I, K
Automatic transmission fluid	Petrol, Diesel		R	Every 90,000 km (60,000 miles)	A, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J
Manual transmission fluid	Petrol, Diesel		R	Every 120,000 km (80,000 miles)	C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J
Dual clutch transmission (DCT) fluid	Petrol, Diesel		R	Every 120,000 km (80,000 miles)	C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J
Drive shaft and boots	Petrol, Diesel		I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J
Air cleaner filter	Petrol, Diesel		R	Replace more frequently depending on the condition	C, E
Climate control air filter	Petrol, Diesel		R	Replace more frequently depending on the condition	C, E, G
Brake discs and pads, calipers and rotors	Petrol, Diesel		I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, E, G, H

MAINTENANCE ITEM		MAINTENANCE OPERATION	MAINTENANCE INTERVALS	DRIVING CONDITION
Parking brake (Hand type)	Petrol, Diesel	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, G, H
Steering gear rack, linkage and boots	Petrol, Diesel	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, E, F, G
Suspension ball joints	Petrol, Diesel	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, E, F, G

Maintenance operation
I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace. R : Replace or change.

SEVERE DRIVING CONDITIONS

A : Repeatedly driving short distance of less than 8 km (5 miles) in normal temperature or less than 16 km (10 miles) in freezing temperature.
B : Extensive engine idling or low speed driving for long distances.
C : Driving on rough, dusty, muddy, unpaved, graveled or salt-spread roads.
D : Driving in areas using salt or other corrosive materials or in very cold weather
E : Driving in heavy dust condition.
F : Driving in heavy traffic area.
G : Driving on uphill, downhill, or mountain roads repeatedly.
H : Towing a trailer or using a camper on roof rack.
I : Driving for patrol car, taxi, other commercial use of vehicle towing.
J : Driving over 170 km/h (106 mile/h).
K : Frequently driving in stop-and-go conditions.

Normal Maintenance Schedule - Except Europe (Including Russia)

The following maintenance services must be performed to ensure good emission control and performance. Keep receipts for all vehicle emission services to protect your warranty. Where both mileage and time are shown, the frequency of service is determined by whichever occurs first.

NO.	ITEM	REMARK
*1	Engine oil and engine oil filter	Check the engine oil level and leak every 500 km (350 miles) or before starting a long trip.
*2	Coolant (Engine)	When adding coolant, use only deionized water or soft water for your vehicle and never mix hard water in the coolant filled at the factory. An improper coolant mixture can result in serious malfunction or engine damage.
*3	Drive belts (Engine)	• Adjust alternator, water pump and air conditioner drive belt. Inspect and if necessary repair or replace. • Inspect drive belt tensioner, idler and alternator pulley and if necessary correct or replace.
*4	Valve clearance	Inspect for excessive valve noise and/or engine vibration and adjust if necessary. In this case, have the system checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.
*5	Spark plug	For your convenience, it can be replaced prior to it's interval when you do maintenance of other items.
*6	Manual transmission fluid / Dual clutch transmission (DCT) fluid	Manual transmission fluid (or Dual clutch transmission (DCT) fluid) should be changed anytime it has been submerged in water.

NO.	ITEM	REMARK
*7	Fuel additives (Petrol)	Kia recommends that you use unleaded petrol which has an octane rating of RON (Research Octane Number) 95 / AKI (Anti Knock Index) 91 or higher (for Europe) or Octane Rating of RON (Research Octane Number) 91 / AKI (Anti-Knock Index) 87 or higher (except Europe). For customers who do not use good quality petrols including fuel additives regularly, and have problems starting or the engine does not run smoothly, one bottle of additives added to the fuel tank at every 15,000 km (10,000 miles) (for Europe) / 10,000 km (6,500 miles) (except Europe, China, Brazil) / 5,000 km (3,000 miles) (for China, Brazil). Additives are available from a professional workshop along with information on how to use them. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner. Do not mix other additives.
*8	Fuel filter cartridge (Diesel)	This maintenance schedule depends on fuel quality. It is applicable only when using a qualified fuel <"EN590 or equivalent">. If the diesel fuel specifications don't meet the EN590, it must be replaced more frequently. If there are some important safety matters like fuel flow restriction, surging, loss of power, hard starting problem etc., replace the fuel filter immediately regardless of maintenance schedule and consult a professional workshop for more details. Kia recommends to consult an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

Normal maintenance schedule - Except Europe (Including Russia) (Continue)

MAINTENANCE INTERVALS / MAINTENANCE ITEM	Number of months or driving distance, whichever comes first									
	Months			12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96
	Miles×1,000			10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80
	Km×1,000			15	30	45	60	75	90	105	120
Engine oil and engine oil filter *1	Petrol	1.6 MPI / T-GDi	Except Middle East, India, Libia, Algeria, Morocco, Tunisia, Sudan, Egypt, Iran, Brazil, Central & South America, China	Replace every 15,000 km (10,000 miles) or 12 months							
			For Middle East, India, Libia, Algeria, Morocco, Tunisia, Sudan, Egypt, Iran, Brazil, Central & South America	Replace every 10,000 km (6,500 miles) or 12 months							
			For China	Replace every 5,000 km (3,000 miles) or 6 months							
	Petrol	2.0 MPI	Except Middle East, India, Libia, Algeria, Morocco, Tunisia, Sudan, Egypt, Iran, Brazil, Central & South America, China	Replace every 15,000 km (10,000 miles) or 12 months							
			For Middle East, India, Libia, Algeria, Morocco, Tunisia, Sudan, Egypt, Iran, Brazil, Central & South America	Replace every 10,000 km (6,500 miles) or 12 months							
			For China	Replace every 5,000 km (3,000 miles) or 6 months							

I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace. R : Replace or change.

Normal maintenance schedule - Except Europe (Including Russia) (Continue)

MAINTENANCE INTERVALS / MAINTENANCE ITEM	Number of months or driving distance, whichever comes first									
	Months			12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96
	Miles×1,000			10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80
	Km×1,000			15	30	45	60	75	90	105	120
Engine oil and engine oil filter *1	Diesel	Smart stream D 1.6	For Russia, Australia, New Zealand and Republic of South Africa	Replace every 15,000 km (10,000 miles) or 12 months							
			Except Russia, Australia, New Zealand and Republic of South Africa	Replace every 10,000 km (6,500 miles) or 12 months							
Coolant (Engine) *2	Petrol, Diesel			At first, Replace 200,000 km (130,000 miles) or 120 months after that, Replace every 30,000 km (20,000 miles) or 24 months							
Drive belts (Engine) *3	Petrol			-	I	-	I	-	I	-	I
	Diesel		For Russia, Australia and New Zealand	-	-	-	I	-	I	-	I
			Except Russia, Australia and New Zealand	-	-	-	I	-	I	-	I
Timing belt system (Timing belt, Oil belt, Tensioner, Idler)	Diesel	Smartstream D 1.6		Inspect Timing belt every 120,000 km (80,000 miles) Replace Timing belt system (Timing belt, Oil belt, Tensioner, Idler) every 240,000 km (160,000 miles)							
Valve clearance *4	Petrol	1.6 MPI / T-GDi		-	-	-	-	-	I	-	-
Vacuum hoses and crankcase ventilation hoses	Petrol			-	I	-	I	-	I	-	I

I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace. R : Replace or change.

Normal maintenance schedule - Except Europe (Including Russia) (Continue)

MAINTENANCE INTERVALS / MAINTENANCE												
	Months			**12**	**24**	**36**	**48**	**60**	**72**	**84**	**96**
	Miles×1,000			**10**	**20**	**30**	**40**	**50**	**60**	**70**	**80**
	Km×1,000			**15**	**30**	**45**	**60**	**75**	**90**	**105**	**120**
Spark plugs *5	Petrol	1.6 MPI	Unleaded	Replace every 60,000 km (40,000 miles)							
	Petrol	2.0 MPI	Unleaded	Replace every 165,000 km (110,000 miles)							
	Petrol	1.6 T-GDi		Replace every 75,000 km (50,000 miles)							
	Petrol	1.6 MPI	Leaded	Replace every 30,000 km (20,000 miles)							
	Petrol	2.0 MPI	Leaded	Replace every 75,000 km (50,000 miles) or Replace every 80,000 km (52,000 miles)							
Automatic transmission fluid	Petrol, Diesel			No check, No service required							
Manual transmission fluid *6	Petrol, Diesel			-	-	-	I	-	-	-	I
Dual clutch transmission (DCT) fluid *6	Petrol, Diesel			-	-	-	I	-	-	-	I
Drive shaft and boots	Petrol, Diesel			-	I	-	I	-	I	-	I
Fuel additives (Petrol) *7	Petrol	Except, China, Brazil		Add every 10,000 km (6,500 miles) or 6 months							
		For China, Brazil		Add every 5,000 km (3,000 miles) or 6 months							
Fuel filter (Petrol)	Petrol	For China, Brazil		-	I	-	R	-	I	-	R
Fuel lines, hoses and connections	Petrol			-	-	-	I	-	-	-	I
	Diesel			-	I	-	I	-	I	-	I

I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace. R : Replace or change.

Normal maintenance schedule - Except Europe (Including Russia) (Continue)

MAINTENANCE INTERVALS / MAINTENANCE ITEM	Number of months or driving distance, whichever comes first									
	Months		12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96
	Miles×1,000		10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80
	Km×1,000		15	30	45	60	75	90	105	120
Fuel tank air filter (Petrol)	Petrol	Except China	-	I	-	R	-	I	-	R
		For China	I	I	R	I	I	R	I	I
Vapour hose and fuel filler cap (Petrol)	Petrol		-	-	-	I	-	-	-	I
Fuel filler cap (Diesel)	Diesel		-	-	-	I	-	-	-	I
Urea solution line & connections (if equipped)	Diesel		-	I	-	I	-	I	-	I
Urea solution filler cap (if equipped)	Diesel		-	-	-	I	-	-	-	I
Fuel filter cartridge (Diesel) *8	Diesel		-	I	-	R	-	I	-	R
Air cleanerWJ 39 filter	Petrol, Diesel	Except China, India, Middle East	I	I	R	I	I	R	I	I
Intercooler, in/out hose, air intake hose	1.6 T-GDi		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Exhaust system	Petrol, Diesel		-	I	-	I	-	I	-	I
Cooling system	Petrol, Diesel		-	-	-	I	-	I	-	I

I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace. R : Replace or change.

Normal maintenance schedule - Except Europe (Including Russia)

MAINTENANCE INTERVALS / MAINTENANCE ITEM	Number of months or driving distance, whichever comes first								
	Months		**12**	**24**	**36**	**48**	**60**	**72**	**84**	**96**
	Miles×1,000		**10**	**20**	**30**	**40**	**50**	**60**	**70**	**80**
	Km×1,000		**15**	**30**	**45**	**60**	**75**	**90**	**105**	**120**
Air conditioner compressor/refrigerant	Petrol, Diesel		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Climate control air filter	Petrol, Diesel	Except Australia and New Zealand	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
		For Australia and New Zealand	I	R	I	R	I	R	I	R
Brake discs and pads	Petrol, Diesel		-	I	-	I	-	I	-	I
Brake lines, hoses and connections	Petrol, Diesel		-	I	-	I	-	I	-	I
Brake fluid	Petrol, Diesel		I	I	R	I	I	R	I	I
Parking brake (Hand type)	Petrol, Diesel		-	I	-	I	-	I	-	I
Steering gear rack, linkage and boots	Petrol, Diesel		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Suspension ball joints	Petrol, Diesel		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Tyre (pressure & tread wear)	Petrol, Diesel		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Battery (12V) condition	Petrol, Diesel	Except Middle East	-	I	-	I	-	I	-	I
		For Middle East	Inspect every 10,000 km (6,500 miles) or 6 months							

I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace. R : Replace or change.

Maintenance Under Severe Usage Conditions - Except Europe (Including Russia)

MAINTENANCE ITEM				MAINTENANCE OPERATION	MAINTENANCE INTERVALS	DRIVING CONDITION
Engine oil and engine oil filter	Petrol	1.6 MPI / T-GDi	Except Middle East, India, Libia, Algeria, Morocco, Tunisia, Sudan, Egypt, Iran, Brazil, Central & South America, China	R	Every 7,500 km (5,000 miles) or 6 months	A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J, K
			For Middle East, India, Libia, Algeria, Morocco, Tunisia, Sudan, Egypt, Iran, Brazil, Central & South America	R	Every 5,000 km (3,000 miles) or 6 months	
			For China	R	Every 5,000 km (3,000 miles) or 3 months	
	Petrol	2.0 MPI	Except Middle East, India, Libia, Algeria, Morocco, Tunisia, Sudan, Egypt, Iran, Brazil, Central & South America, China	R	Every 7,500 km (5,000 miles) or 6 months	
			For Middle East, India, Libia, Algeria, Morocco, Tunisia, Sudan, Egypt, Iran, Brazil, Central & South America	R	Every 5,000 km (3,000 miles) or 6 months	
			For China	R	Every 5,000 km (3,000 miles) or 6 months	
	Diesel	Smart stream D 1.6	For Russia, Australia, New Zealand and Republic of South Africa	R	Every 7,500 km (5,000 miles) or 6 months	
			Except Russia, Australia, New Zealand and Republic of South Africa	R	Every 5,000 km (3,000 miles) or 6 months	

MAINTENANCE ITEM		MAINTENANCE OPERATION	MAINTENANCE INTERVALS	DRIVING CONDITION
Spark plugs	Petrol	R	Replace more frequently depending on the condition	B, H, I, K
Automatic transmission fluid	Petrol, Diesel	R	Every 100,000 km (65,000 miles)	A, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J
Manual transmission fluid	Petrol, Diesel	R	Every 120,000 km (80,000 miles)	C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J
Dual clutch transmission (DCT) fluid	Petrol, Diesel	R	Every 120,000 km (80,000 miles)	C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J
Drive shaft and boots	Petrol, Diesel	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J
Air cleaner filter	Petrol, Diesel	R	Replace more frequently depending on the condition	C, E
Climate control air filter	Petrol, Diesel	R	Replace more frequently depending on the condition	C, E, G
Brake discs and pads, calipers and rotors	Petrol, Diesel	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, E, G, H
Parking brake (Hand type)	Petrol, Diesel	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, G, H
Steering gear rack, linkage and boots	Petrol, Diesel	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, E, F, G
Suspension ball joints	Petrol, Diesel	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, E, F, G

Maintenance operation
I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace. R : Replace or change.

SEVERE DRIVING CONDITIONS

A : Repeatedly driving short distance of less than 8 km (5 miles) in normal temperature or less than 16 km (10 miles) in freezing temperature.

B : Extensive engine idling or low speed driving for long distances.

C : Driving on rough, dusty, muddy, unpaved, graveled or salt-spread roads.

D : Driving in areas using salt or other corrosive materials or in very cold weather

E : Driving in heavy dust condition.

F : Driving in heavy traffic area.

G : Driving on uphill, downhill, or mountain roads repeatedly.

H : Towing a trailer or using a camper on roof rack.

I : Driving for patrol car, taxi, other commercial use of vehicle towing.

J : Driving over 170 km/h (106 mile/h).

K : Frequently driving in stop-and-go conditions.

EXPLANATION OF SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE ITEMS

Engine oil and filter

The engine oil and filter should be changed at the intervals specified in the maintenance schedule. If the vehicle is being driven in severe conditions, more frequent oil and filter changes are required.

Drive belts

Inspect all drive belts for evidence of cuts, cracks, excessive wear or oil saturation and replace if necessary. Drive belts should be checked periodically for proper tension and adjusted as necessary.

⚠ CAUTION

When you are inspecting the belt, place the ignition switch in the LOCK/OFF or ACC position.

Fuel filter cartridge (for diesel)

A clogged filter can limit the speed at which the vehicle may be driven, damage the emission system and cause multiple issues such as hard starting. If an excessive amount of foreign matter accumulates in the fuel tank, the filter may require replacement more frequently.

After installing a new filter, run the engine for several minutes, and check for leaks at the connections. Have the fuel filter replaced by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

Fuel filter (for petrol)

Kia petrol vehicle is equipped a lifetime fuel filter that integrated with the fuel tank. Regular maintenance or replacement is not needed but depends on fuel quality. If there are some important safety matters like fuel flow restriction, surging, loss of power, hard starting problem etc, fuel filter inspection or replace is needed.

Have the fuel filter inspected or replaced by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

Fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections

Check the fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections for leakage and damage. Have the fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections replaced by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

⚠ WARNING - Diesel only

Never work on the injection system with the engine running or within 30 seconds after shutting off the engine. High pressure pump, rail, injectors and high pressure pipes are subject to high pressure even after the engine stops. The fuel jet produced by fuel leaks may cause serious injury, if it touches the body. People using pacemakers should not more move than 30 cm closer to the ECU or wiring harness within the engine room whilst the engine is running, since the high currents in the Common Rail system produce considerable magnetic fields.

Vapour hose (for petrol engine) and fuel filler cap

The vapour hose and fuel filler cap should be inspected at those intervals specified in the maintenance schedule. Make sure that a new vapour hose or fuel filler cap is correctly replaced.

Vacuum crankcase ventilation hoses (if equipped)

Inspect the surface of hoses for evidence of heat and/or mechanical damage. Hard and brittle rubber, cracking, tears, cuts, abrasions, and excessive swelling indicate deterioration. Particular attention should be paid to examine those hose surfaces nearest to high heat sources, such as the exhaust manifold.
Inspect the hose routing to assure that the hoses do not come in contact with any heat source, sharp edges or moving component which might cause heat damage or mechanical wear. Inspect all hose connections, such as clamps and couplings, to make sure they are secure, and that no leaks are present. Hoses should be replaced immediately if there is any evidence of deterioration or damage.

Air cleaner filter

Have the air cleaner filter replaced by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

Spark plugs (for petrol engine)

Make sure to install new spark plugs of the correct heat range.

⚠ WARNING

Do not disconnect and inspect spark plugs when the engine is hot. You may burn yourself.

Valve clearance

Inspect for excessive valve noise and/or engine vibration and adjust if necessary. In this case, have the system serviced by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

Cooling system

Check the cooling system components, such as the radiator, coolant reservoir, hoses and connections for leakage and damage. Replace any damaged parts.

Coolant

The coolant should be changed at the intervals specified in the maintenance schedule.

Manual transmission fluid (if equipped)

Inspect the manual transmission fluid according to the maintenance schedule.

Automatic transmission fluid (if equipped)

Automatic transmission fluid should not be checked under normal usage conditions.
Have the automatic transmission fluid changed by a professional workshop according to the maintenance schedule. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

✻ NOTICE

Automatic transmission fluid colour is basically red.
As the vehicle is driven, the automatic transmission fluid will begin to look darker. It is normal condition and you should not judge the need to replace the fluid based upon the changed colour.

⚠ CAUTION

The use of a non-specified fluid could result in transmission malfunction and failure.

Use only specified automatic transmission fluid. (Refer to "Recommended lubricants and capacities" in chapter 9.)

Brake hoses and lines

Visually check for proper installation, chafing, cracks, deterioration and any leakage. Replace any deteriorated or damaged parts immediately.

Brake/Clutch fluid (if equipped)

Check the brake/clutch fluid level in the brake/clutch fluid reservoir. The level should be between “MIN” and “MAX” marks on the side of the reservoir. Use only hydraulic brake/clutch fluid conforming to DOT 4 specification.

Parking brake

Inspect the parking brake system including the parking brake lever (or pedal) and cables.

Brake discs, pads, calipers and rotors

Check the pads for excessive wear, discs for run out and wear, and calipers for fluid leakage.

For more information on checking the pads or lining wear limit, we recommend to refer to the Kia web site.

(**www.Kia-hotline.com**)

Suspension mounting bolts

Check the suspension connections for looseness or damage. Retighten to the specified torque.

Steering gear box, linkage & boots/lower arm ball joint

With the vehicle stopped and engine off, check for excessive free-play in the steering wheel.

Check the linkage for bends or damage. Check the dust boots and ball joints for deterioration, cracks, or damage. Replace any damaged parts.

Drive shafts and boots

Check the drive shafts, boots and clamps for cracks, deterioration, or damage. Replace any damaged parts and, if necessary, repack the grease.

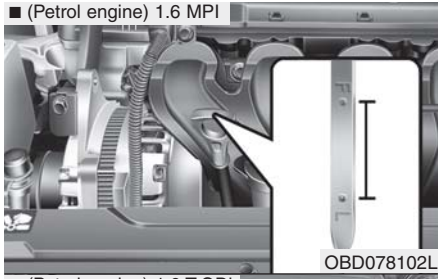
Air conditioning refrigerant (if equipped)

Check the air conditioning lines and connections for leakage and damage.

ENGINE OIL (PETROL)

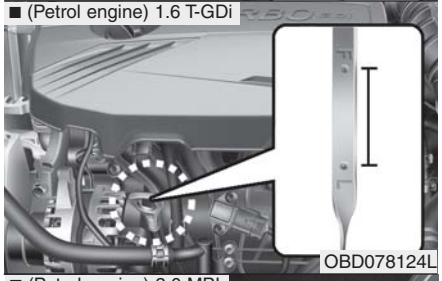
Checking the engine oil level

■ (Petrol engine) 1.6 MPI



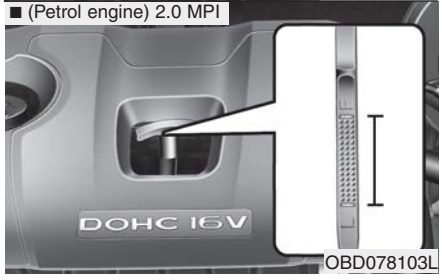
OBD078102L

■ (Petrol engine) 1.6 T-GDi



OBD078124L

■ (Petrol engine) 2.0 MPI



OBD078103L

1. Be sure the vehicle is on level ground.
2. Start the engine and allow it to reach normal operating temperature.
3. Turn the engine off and wait for a few minutes (about 10 minutes) for the oil to return to the oil pan.
4. Pull the dipstick out, wipe it clean, and re-insert it fully.

⚠ WARNING - Radiator hose

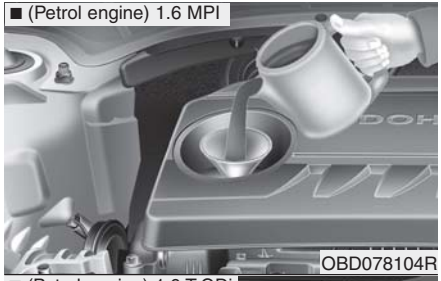
Be very careful not to touch the radiator hose when checking or adding the engine oil as it may be hot enough to burn you.

5. Pull the dipstick out again and check the level. The level should be between F (Full) and L (Low).

⚠ CAUTION

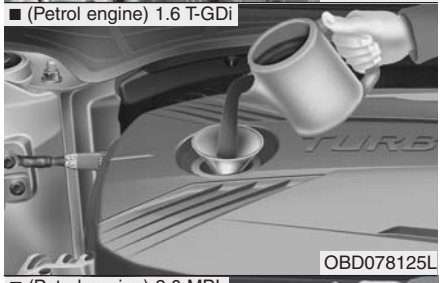
- ***Do not overfill the engine oil. It may damage the engine.***
- ***Do not spill engine oil, when adding or changing engine oil. If you drop the engine oil on the engine room, wipe it off immediately.***
- ***When you wipe the oil level gauge, you should wipe it with a clean cloth. When mixed with debris, it can cause engine damage.***

■ (Petrol engine) 1.6 MPI



OBD078104R

■ (Petrol engine) 1.6 T-GDi



OBD078125L

■ (Petrol engine) 2.0 MPI

OBD078105L

If it is near or at L (Low), add enough oil to bring the level to F (Full). **Do not overfill.**

Use a funnel to help prevent oil from being spilled on engine components.

Use only the specified engine oil. (Refer to "Recommended lubricants and capacities" in chapter 9.)

Changing the engine oil and filter

Have the engine oil and filter replaced by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

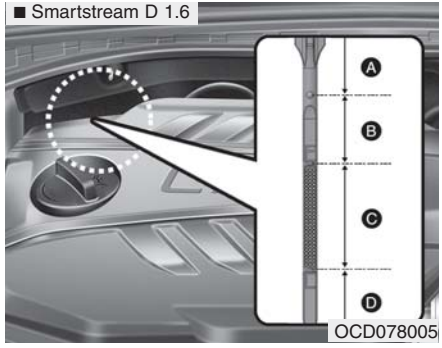
⚠ WARNING

Used engine oil may cause skin irritation or cancer if left in contact with the skin for prolonged periods of time. Used engine oil contains chemicals that have caused cancer in laboratory animals. Always protect your skin by washing your hands thoroughly with soap and warm water as soon as possible after handling used oil.

ENGINE OIL (DIESEL)

Checking the engine oil level

■ Smartstream D 1.6



1. Be sure the vehicle is on level ground.
2. Start the engine and allow it to reach normal operating temperature.
3. Turn the engine off and wait for a few minutes (about 5 minutes) for the oil to return to the oil pan.
4. Pull the dipstick out, wipe it clean, and re-insert it fully.

⚠ WARNING - Radiator hose

Be very careful not to touch the radiator hose when checking or adding the engine oil as it may be hot enough to burn you.

5. Pull the dipstick out again and check the level.
6. The level should be in the C range. If the level is in the D range, add enough engine oil to bring the level up to the C range.

Figure	Required action according to the respective engine oil level
Range (A)	Contact an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.
Range (B)	Do not refill oil.
Range (C)	Normal. You may add oil as long as the oil level does not go above C-range.
Range (D)	You must add oil and make sure that the oil level is in the C-Range.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Do not spill engine oil, when adding or changing engine oil. If you drop the engine oil on the engine room, wipe it off immediately.***
- ***When you wipe the oil level gauge, you should wipe it with a clean cloth. When mixed with debris, it can cause engine damage.***

■ Smartstream D 1.6

If it is near or at L (Low), add enough oil to bring the level to F (Full). **Do not overfill.**

Use only the specified engine oil. (Refer to "Recommended lubricants and capacities" in chapter 9.)

Changing the engine oil and filter

Have the engine oil and filter replaced by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

⚠ WARNING

Used engine oil may cause skin irritation or cancer if left in contact with the skin for prolonged periods of time. Used engine oil contains chemicals that have caused cancer in laboratory animals. Always protect your skin by washing your hands thoroughly with soap and warm water as soon as possible after handling used oil.

ENGINE COOLANT

The high-pressure cooling system has a reservoir filled with year round antifreeze coolant. The reservoir is filled at the factory.

Check the antifreeze protection and coolant level at least once a year, at the beginning of the winter season, and before travelling to a colder climate.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***When the engine overheats from low engine coolant, suddenly adding engine coolant may cause cracks in the engine. To prevent damage, add engine coolant slowly in small quantities.***
- ***Do not drive with no engine coolant. It may cause water pump failure and engine seizure, etc.***

Checking the coolant level

⚠ WARNING

Removing radiator cap

- **Never attempt to remove the radiator cap whilst the engine is operating or hot. Doing so might lead to cooling system and engine damage. Also, hot coolant or steam could cause serious personal injury.**
- **Turn the engine off and wait until it cools down. Use extreme care when removing the radiator cap. Wrap a thick towel around it, and turn it counterclockwise slowly to the first stop. Step back whilst the pressure is released from the cooling system.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

When you are sure all the pressure has been released, press down on the cap, using a thick towel, and continue turning counterclockwise to remove it.

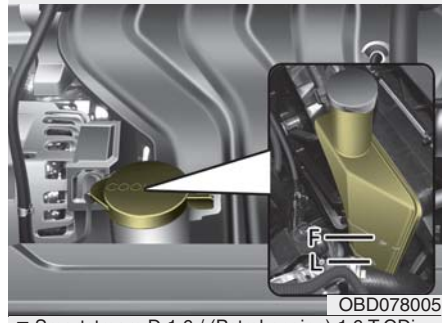
- **Even if the engine is not operating, do not remove the radiator cap or the drain plug whilst the engine and radiator are hot. Hot coolant and steam may still blow out under pressure, causing serious injury.**

⚠ WARNING

The electric motor (cooling fan) is controlled by engine coolant temperature, refrigerant pressure and vehicle speed. It may sometimes operate even when the engine is not running. Use extreme caution when working near the blades of the cooling fan so that you are not injured by a rotating fan blades. As the engine coolant temperature decreases, the electric motor will automatically shut off. This is a normal condition.

The electric motor (cooling fan) may operate until you disconnect the negative battery cable.

■ (Petrol engine) 1.6 MPI / (Petrol engine) 2.0 MPI



OBD078005

■ Smartstream D 1.6 / (Petrol engine) 1.6 T-GDi

OCD078009

Check the condition and connections of all cooling system hoses and heater hoses. Replace any swollen or deteriorated hoses.

The coolant level should be filled between MAX and MIN (F and L) marks on the side of the coolant reservoir when the engine is cool.

If the coolant level is low, add enough distilled (deionized) or soft water. Bring the level to MAX (F), but do not overfill.

If frequent additions are required, have the system inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

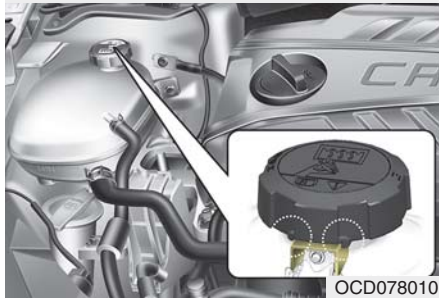
✻ NOTICE

Make sure the coolant cap is properly closed after refill of coolant. Otherwise the engine could be overheated whilst driving.

■ Engine room front view
- Smartstream D 1.6

1. Check if the radiator cap label is straight In front.

■ Engine room rear view
Smartstream D 1.6 / (Petrol engine) 1.6 T-GDi



2. Make sure that the tiny protrusions inside the coolant cap should be securely interlocked.

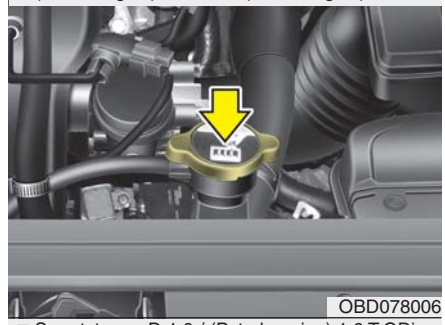
Recommended engine coolant

- When adding coolant, use only deionized water or soft water for your vehicle and never mix hard water in the coolant filled at the factory. An improper coolant mixture can result in serious malfunction or engine damage.
- The engine in your vehicle has aluminum engine parts and must be protected by an ethylene-glycol with phosphate based coolant to prevent corrosion and freezing.
- DO NOT USE alcohol or methanol coolant or mix them with the specified coolant.
- Do not use a solution that contains more than 60% antifreeze or less than 35% antifreeze, which would reduce the effectiveness of the solution.

For mixture percentage, refer to the following table.

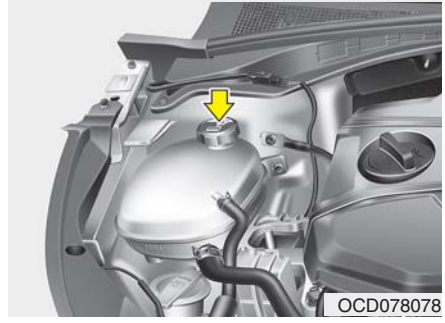
Ambient Temperature	Mixture Percentage (volume)	
	Antifreeze	Water
-15°C (5°F)	35	65
-25°C (-13°F)	40	60
-35°C (-31°F)	50	50
-45°C (-49°F)	60	40

■ (Petrol engine) 1.6 MPI / (Petrol engine) 2.0 MPI



OBD078006

■ Smartstream D 1.6 / (Petrol engine) 1.6 T-GDi



OCD078078

⚠ WARNING

Radiator cap

Do not remove the radiator cap when the engine and radiator are hot. Scalding hot coolant and steam may blow out under pressure causing serious injury.

Changing the coolant

Have the coolant replaced by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

⚠ CAUTION

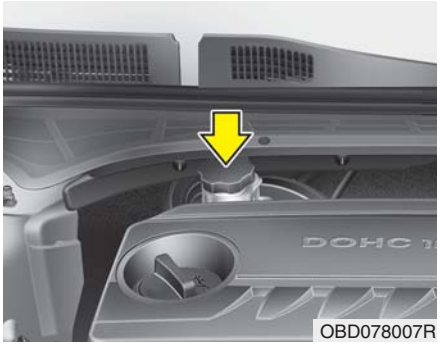
Put a thick cloth around the radiator cap before refilling the coolant in order to prevent the coolant from overflowing into engine parts such as the alternator.

⚠ WARNING - Coolant

- **Do not use radiator coolant or antifreeze in the washer fluid reservoir.**
- **Radiator coolant can severely obscure visibility when sprayed on the windscreen and may cause loss of vehicle control or damage the paint and body trim.**

BRAKE/CLUTCH FLUID (IF EQUIPPED)

Checking the brake/clutch fluid level



Check the fluid level in the reservoir periodically. The fluid level should be between MAX and MIN marks on the side of the reservoir.

Before removing the reservoir cap and adding brake/clutch fluid, clean the area around the reservoir cap thoroughly to prevent brake/clutch fluid contamination.

Periodically check that the fluid level in the brake fluid reservoir is between MIN and MAX. The level will fall with accumulated mileage. This is a normal condition associated with the wear of the brake linings.

If the fluid level is excessively low, have the system checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

Use only the specified brake fluid. (Refer to “Recommended lubricants or capacities” in chapter 9.)

Never mix different types of fluid.

⚠ WARNING
- Loss of brake/clutch fluid

In the event the brake/clutch system requires frequent additions of fluid, have the system Inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

⚠ CAUTION

To maintain your vehicle’s best brake and ABS/ESC performance, use Kia genuine brake fluid as in the specification.

(Classification : SAE J1704 DOT-4 LV, ISO4925 CLASS-6, FMVSS116 DOT-4)

⚠ WARNING - Brake / clutch fluid

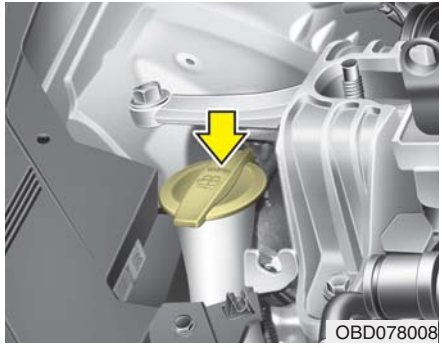
When changing and adding brake/clutch fluid, handle it carefully. Do not let it come in contact with your eyes. If brake/clutch fluid should come in contact with your eyes, immediately flush them with a large quantity of fresh tap water. Have your eyes examined by a doctor as soon as possible.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not allow brake/clutch fluid to contact the vehicle's body paint, as paint damage will result. Brake/clutch fluid, which has been exposed to open air for an extended time should never be used as its quality cannot be guaranteed. It should be properly disposed. Don't put in the wrong kind of fluid. A few drops of mineral-based oil, such as engine oil, in your brake/clutch system can damage brake/clutch system parts.

WASHER FLUID

Checking the washer fluid level



The reservoir is translucent so that you can check the level with a quick visual inspection.

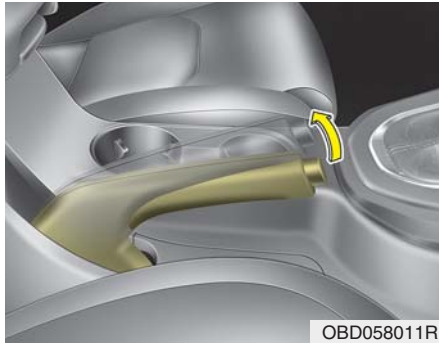
Check the fluid level in the washer fluid reservoir and add fluid if necessary. Plain water may be used if washer fluid is not available. However, use washer solvent with antifreeze characteristics in cold climates to prevent freezing.

⚠ WARNING - Coolant

- **Do not use radiator coolant or antifreeze in the washer fluid reservoir.**
- **Radiator coolant can severely obscure visibility when sprayed on the windscreen and may cause loss of vehicle control or damage to paint and body trim.**
- **Windscreen Washer fluid agents contain some amounts of alcohol and can be flammable under certain circumstances. Do not allow sparks or flame to contact the washer fluid or the washer fluid reservoir. Damage to the vehicle or occupants could occur.**
- **Windscreen washer fluid is poisonous to humans and animals. Do not drink and avoid contacting windscreen washer fluid. Serious injury or death could occur.**

PARKING BRAKE

Checking the parking brake


OBD058011R

Check the stroke of the parking brake by counting the number of “clicks” heard whilst fully applying it from the released position. Also, the parking brake alone should securely hold the vehicle on a fairly steep grade. If the stroke is more or less than specified, have the system serviced by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

Stroke : 5~7 “clicks” at a force of 20 kg (44 lbs, 196 N).

FUEL FILTER (FOR DIESEL)

Draining water from the fuel filter

The fuel filter for diesel engine plays an important role of separating water from fuel and accumulating the water in its bottom.

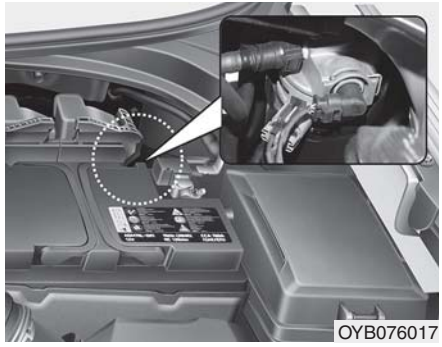
If water accumulates in the fuel filter, the warning light comes on when the ignition switch is in the ON position.

If this warning light illuminates, take your car to a professional workshop and have drain the water and check the system. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

⚠ CAUTION

If the water accumulated in the fuel filter is not drained at proper times, damages to the major parts such as the fuel system can be caused by water permeation in the fuel filter.

Fuel filter cartridge replacement

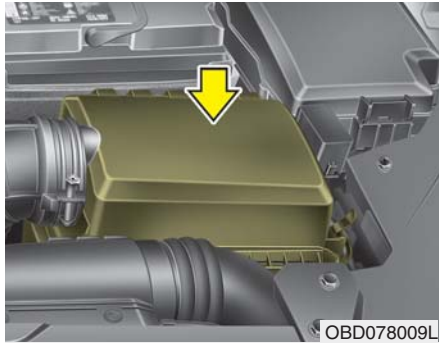


✻ NOTICE

When replacing the fuel filter cartridge, use parts for replacement from a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

AIR CLEANER

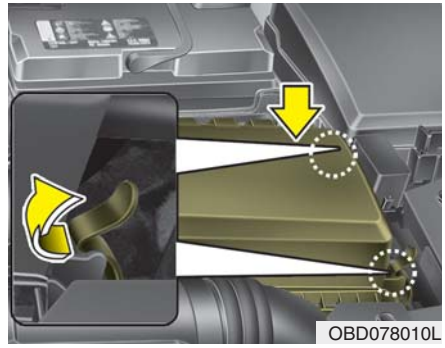
Filter replacement



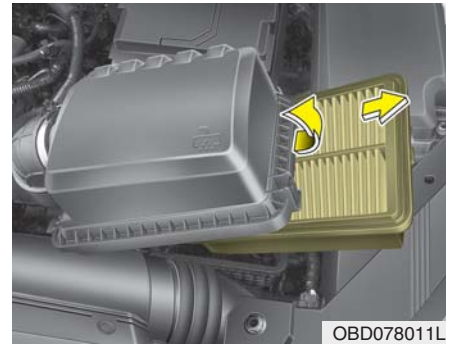
It must be replaced when necessary, and should not be washed.

You can clean the filter when inspecting the air cleaner element.

Clean the filter by using compressed air.



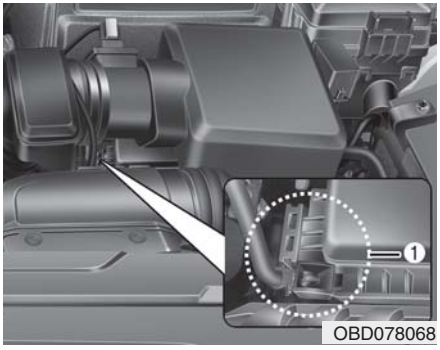
1. Loosen the air cleaner cover attaching clips and open the cover.



2. Wipe the inside of the air cleaner.
3. Replace the air cleaner filter.
4. Lock the cover with the cover attaching clips.

✻ NOTICE

Insert the hinge (1) and engage the clips when mounting the air cleaner cover.



Replace the filter according to the Maintenance Schedule.

If the vehicle is operated in extremely dusty or sandy areas, replace the element more often than the usual recommended intervals. (Refer to “Maintenance under severe usage conditions” in this chapter.)

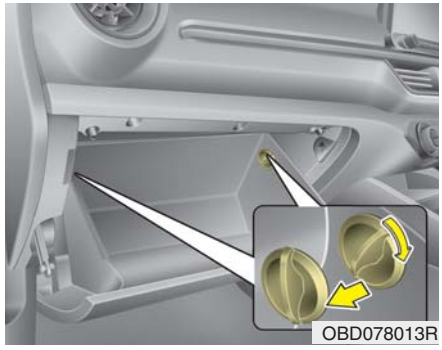
⚠ CAUTION

- ***Do not drive with the air cleaner removed; this will result in excessive engine wear.***
- ***When removing the air cleaner filter, be careful that dust or dirt does not enter the air intake, or damage may result.***
- ***Use parts for replacement from a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.***

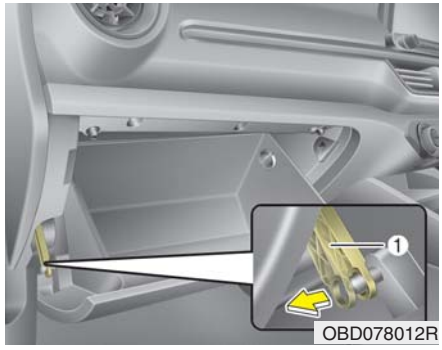
CLIMATE CONTROL AIR FILTER

Filter inspection

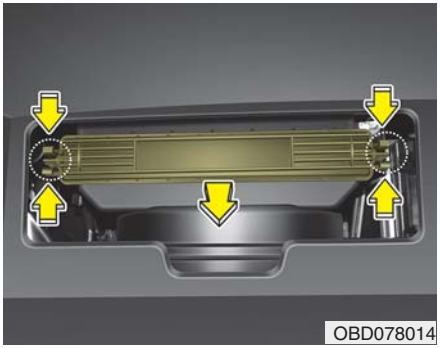
The climate control air filter should be replaced according to the maintenance schedule. If the vehicle is operated in severely air-polluted cities or on dusty rough roads for a long period, it should be inspected more frequently and replaced earlier. When you replace the climate control air filter, replace it performing the following procedure, and be careful to avoid damaging other components.



1. Open the glove box and remove the stoppers on both sides.



2. With the glove box open, pull the support strap (1).


OBD078014

3. Remove the climate control air filter cover by pulling out both sides of the cover.

OQL075021

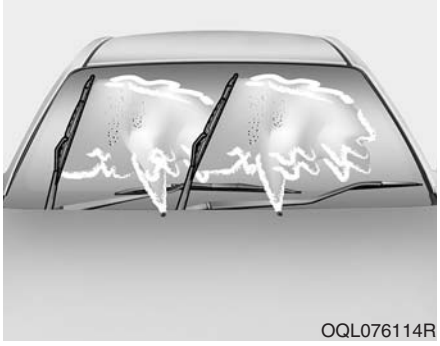
4. Replace the climate control air filter.
5. Reassemble in the reverse order of disassembly.

✻ NOTICE

When replacing the climate control air filter install it properly. Otherwise, the system may produce noise and the effectiveness of the filter may be reduced.

WIPER BLADES

Blade inspection



OQL076114R

✻ NOTICE

Commercial hot waxes applied by automatic car washes have been known to make the windscreen difficult to clean.

Contamination of either the windscreen or the wiper blades with foreign matter can reduce the effectiveness of the windscreen wipers. Common sources of contamination are insects, tree sap, and hot wax treatments used by some commercial car washes. If the blades are not wiping properly, clean both the window and the blades with a good cleaner or mild detergent, and rinse thoroughly with clean water.

⚠ CAUTION

To prevent damage to the wiper blades, do not use petrol, kerosene, paint thinner, or other solvents on or near them.

Blade replacement

When the wipers no longer clean adequately, the blades may be worn or cracked, and require replacement.

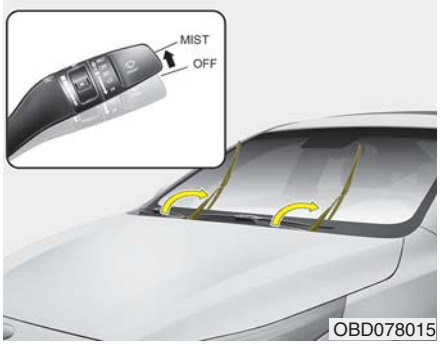
⚠ CAUTION

To prevent damage to the wiper arms or other components, do not attempt to move the wipers manually.

⚠ CAUTION

The use of a non-specified wiper blade could result in wiper malfunction and failure.

Front windscreen wiper blade

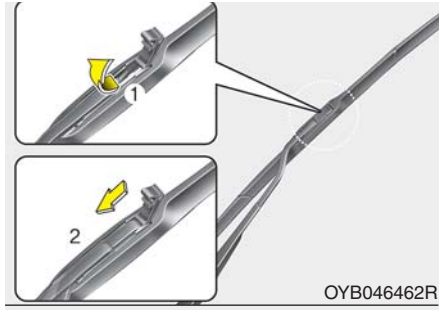


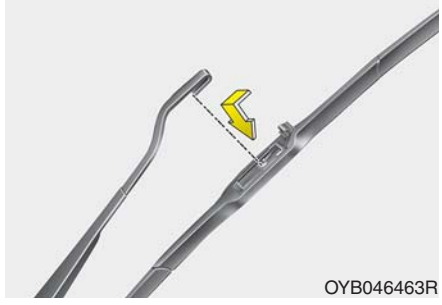
For your convenience, move the windscreen wiper blades to the service position as follows;

After turning off the engine, move the wiper switch to the single wiping (MIST) position within 20 seconds and hold the switch more than 2 seconds until the wiper blade is in the fully up position.

⚠ CAUTION

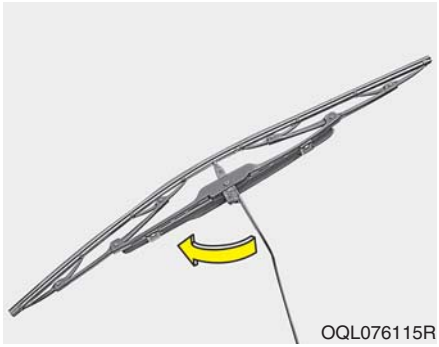
Do not allow the wiper arm to fall against the windscreen, since it may chip or crack the windscreen.





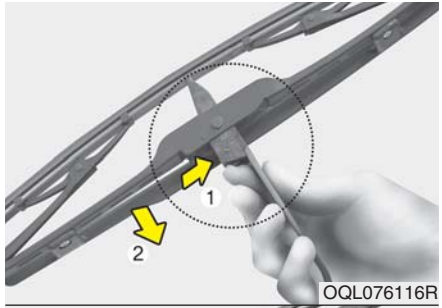
Type A

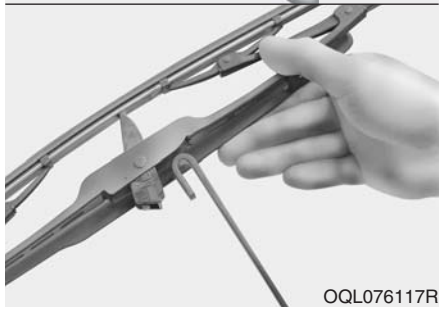
1. Raise the wiper arm.
2. Lift up the wiper blade clip (1). Then pull down the blade assembly (2) and remove it.
3. Install the new blade assembly.
4. Return the wiper arm on the windscreen.
5. Turn ignition to the ON position and wiper arms will return to the normal operating position.



Type B

1. Raise the wiper arm and turn the wiper blade assembly to expose the plastic locking clip.

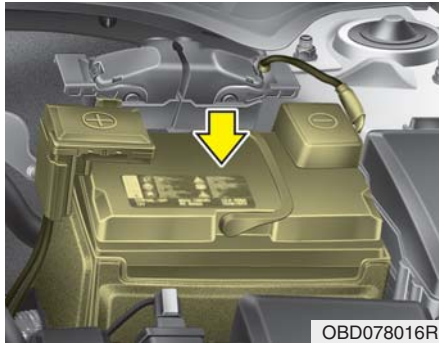




2. Compress the clip (1) and slide the blade assembly downward (2).
3. Lift it off the arm.
4. Install the new blade assembly.
5. Return the wiper arm on the windscreen.
6. Turn ignition to the ON position and wiper arms will return to the normal operating position.

BATTERY

For best battery service


OBD078016R

- Keep the battery securely mounted.
- Keep the battery top clean and dry.
- Keep the terminals and connections clean, tight, and coated with petroleum jelly or terminal grease.
- Rinse any spilled electrolyte from the battery immediately with a solution of water and baking soda.
- If the vehicle is not going to be used for an extended time, disconnect the battery cables.

✻ NOTICE

Basically equipped battery is maintenance free type. If your vehicle is equipped with the battery marked with LOWER and UPPER on the side, you can check the electrolyte level. The electrolyte level should be between LOWER and UPPER. If the electrolyte level is low, it needs to add distilled (demineralized) water (Never add sulfuric acid or other electrolyte). When refill, be careful not to splash the battery and adjacent components. And do not overfill the battery cells. It can cause corrosion on other parts. After then ensure that tighten the cell caps. Contact a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

⚠ WARNING - Battery dangers

Always read the following instructions carefully when handling a battery.

Keep lighted cigarettes and all other flames or sparks away from the battery.

Hydrogen, a highly combustible gas, is always present in battery cells and may explode if ignited.

Keep batteries out of the reach of children because batteries contain highly corrosive SULFURIC ACID. Do not allow battery acid to contact your skin, eyes, clothing or paint finish.

(Continued)

(Continued)

If any electrolyte gets into your eyes, flush your eyes with clean water for at least 15 minutes and get immediate medical attention.

If electrolyte gets on your skin, thoroughly wash the contacted area. If you feel pain or burning sensation, get medical attention immediately.

Wear eye protection when charging or working near a battery. Always provide ventilation when working in an enclosed space.

An inappropriately disposed battery can be harmful to the environment and human health. Dispose the battery according to your local law(s) or regulation.

(Continued)

(Continued)

The battery contains lead. Do not dispose of it after use. Contact a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

- **When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the case may cause battery acid to leak, resulting in personal injury. Lift with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.**
- **Never attempt to recharge the battery when the battery cables are connected.**
- **The electrical ignition system works with high voltage. Never touch these components with the engine running or the ignition switched on.**

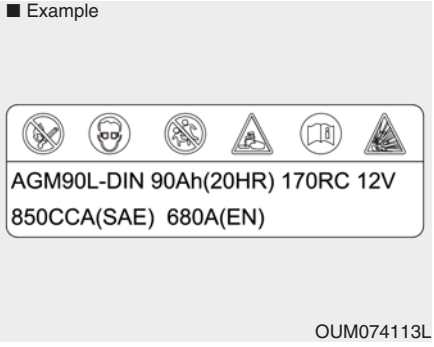
Failure to follow the above warnings can result in serious bodily injury or death.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***When you don't use the vehicle for a long time in the low temperature area, separate the battery and keep it indoors.***
- ***Always charge the battery fully to prevent battery case damage in low temperature area.***
- ***If you connect unauthorised electronic devices to the battery, the battery may be discharged. Never use unauthorised devices.***

Battery capacity label

■ Example



❈ The actual battery label in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

1. AGM90L-DIN : The Kia model name of battery
2. 90Ah(20HR) : The nominal capacity (in Ampere hours)
3. 170RC : The nominal reserve capacity (in min.)
4. 12V : The nominal voltage
5. 850CCA (SAE) : The cold-test current in amperes by SAE
6. 680A : The cold-test current in amperes by EN

Battery recharging

Your vehicle has a maintenance-free, calcium-based battery.

- If the battery becomes discharged in a short time (because, for example, the headlights or interior lights were left on whilst the vehicle was not in use), recharge it by slow charging (trickle) for 10 hours.
- If the battery gradually discharges because of high electric load whilst the vehicle is being used, recharge it at 20-30A for two hours.

⚠ WARNING - Recharging battery

When recharging the battery, observe the following precautions:

- **The battery must be removed from the vehicle and placed in an area with good ventilation.**
- **Do not allow cigarettes, sparks, or flame near the battery.**
- **Watch the battery during charging, and stop or reduce the charging rate if the battery cells begin gassing (boiling) violently or if the temperature of the electrolyte of any cell exceeds 49°C (120°F).**
- **Wear eye protection when checking the battery during charging.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Disconnect the battery charger in the following order.**
  1. **Turn off the battery charger main switch.**
  2. **Unhook the negative clamp from the negative battery terminal.**
  3. **Unhook the positive clamp from the positive battery terminal.**

⚠ WARNING

- **Before performing maintenance or recharging the battery, turn off all accessories and stop the engine.**
- **The negative battery cable must be removed first and installed last when the battery is disconnected.**
- **Operation related to the battery is recommended to be done by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.**

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Keep the battery away from water or any liquid.***
- ***For your safety, use parts for replacement from a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.***

⚠ **CAUTION - AGM battery (if equipped)**

- ***Absorbent Glass Matt (AGM) batteries are maintenance free and have the AGM battery serviced by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.***

  For charging your AGM battery, use only fully automatic battery chargers that are specially developed for AGM batteries.
- ***When replacing the AGM battery, use parts for replacement from a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.***
- ***Do not open or remove the cap on top of the battery. This may cause leaks of internal electrolyte that could result in severe injury.***

Reset items

Items should be reset after the battery has been discharged or the battery has been disconnected.

- Auto up/down window
- Sunroof
- Trip computer
- Climate control system
- Integrated Memory System
- Audio

TYRES AND WHEELS

Tyre care

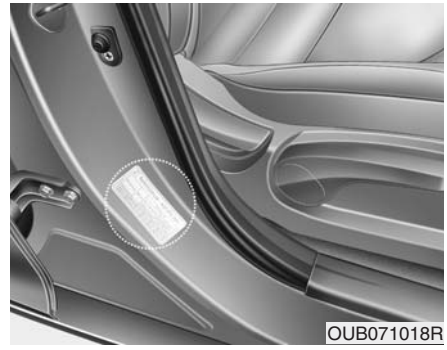
For proper maintenance, safety, and maximum fuel economy, you must always maintain recommended tyre inflation pressures and stay within the load limits and weight distribution recommended for your vehicle.

Recommended cold tyre inflation pressures

All tyre pressures (including the spare) should be checked when the tyres are cold. “Cold Tyres” means the vehicle has not been driven for at least three hours or driven less than 1.6 km (one mile).

Recommended pressures must be maintained for the best ride, top vehicle handling, and minimum tyre wear.

For recommended inflation pressure, refer to “Tyre and wheels” in chapter 9.



All specifications (sizes and pressures) can be found on a label attached to the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING - Tyre underinflation

Severe underinflation (70 kPa (10 psi) or more) can lead to severe heat build-up, causing blowouts, tread separation and other tyre failures that can result in the loss of vehicle control leading to severe injury or death. This risk is much higher on hot days and when driving for long periods at high speeds.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Underinflation also results in excessive wear, poor handling and reduced fuel economy. Wheel deformation also is possible. Keep your tyre pressures at the proper levels. If a tyre frequently needs refilling, have the system checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.***
- ***Overinflation produces a harsh ride, excessive wear at the centre of the tyre tread, and a greater possibility of damage from road hazards.***

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Warm tyres normally exceed recommended cold tyre pressures by 28 to 41 kPa (4 to 6 psi). Do not release air from warm tyres to adjust the pressure or the tyres will be underinflated.***
- ***Be sure to reinstall the tyre inflation valve caps. Without the valve cap, dirt or moisture could get into the valve core and cause air leakage. If a valve cap is missing, install a new one as soon as possible.***

⚠ WARNING - Tyre Inflation

Overinflation or underinflation can reduce tyre life, adversely affect vehicle handling, and lead to sudden tyre failure. This could result in loss of vehicle control and potential injury.

⚠ CAUTION - Tyre pressure

Always observe the following:

- ***Check tyre pressure when the tyres are cold. (After vehicle has been parked for at least three hours or hasn't been driven more than 1.6 km (1 mile) since startup.)***
- ***Check the pressure of your spare tyre each time you check the pressure of other tyres.***
- ***Never overload your vehicle. Be careful not to overload a vehicle luggage rack if your vehicle is equipped with one.***
- ***Worn, old tyres can cause accidents. If your tread is badly worn, or if your tyres have been damaged, replace them.***

Checking tyre inflation pressure

Check your tyres once a month or more.

Also, check the tyre pressure of the spare tyre.

How to check

Use a good quality gauge to check tyre pressure. You can not tell if your tyres are properly inflated simply by looking at them. Radial tyres may look properly inflated even when they're underinflated.

Check the tyre's inflation pressure when the tyres are cold. - "Cold" means your vehicle has been sitting for at least three hours or driven no more than 1.6 km (1 mile).

Remove the valve cap from the tyre valve stem. Press the tyre gauge firmly onto the valve to get a pressure measurement. If the cold tyre inflation pressure matches the recommended pressure on the tyre and loading information label, no further adjustment is necessary. If the pressure is low, add air until you reach the recommended amount.

If you overfill the tyre, release air by pushing on the metal stem in the centre of the tyre valve. Recheck the tyre pressure with the tyre gauge. Be sure to put the valve caps back on the valve stems. They help prevent leaks by keeping out dirt and moisture.

⚠ WARNING

- **Inspect your tyres frequently for proper inflation as well as wear and damage. Always use a tyre pressure gauge.**
- **Tyres with too much or too little pressure wear unevenly causing poor handling, loss of vehicle control, and sudden tyre failure leading to accidents, injuries, and even death. The recommended cold tyre pressure for your vehicle can be found in this manual and on the tyre label located on the driver's side centre pillar.**
- **Worn tyres can cause accidents. Replace tyres that are worn, show uneven wear, or are damaged.**
- **Remember to check the pressure of your spare tyre. Kia recommends that you check the spare every time you check the pressure of the other tyres on your vehicle.**

Tyre rotation

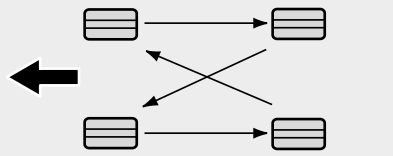
To equalize tread wear, it is recommended that the tyres be rotated every 10,000 km (6,500 miles) or sooner if irregular wear develops.

During rotation, check the tyres for correct balance.

When rotating tyres, check for uneven wear and damage. Abnormal wear is usually caused by incorrect tyre pressure, improper wheel alignment, out-of-balance wheels, severe braking or severe cornering. Look for bumps or bulges in the tread or side of tyre. Replace the tyre if you find either of these conditions. Replace the tyre if fabric or cord is visible. After rotation, be sure to bring the front and rear tyre pressures to specification and check lug nut tightness.

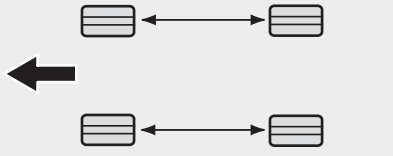
Refer to “Tyre and wheels” in chapter 9.

Without a spare tyre



S2BLA790A

Directional tyres (if equipped)



CBGQ0707A

Disc brake pads should be inspected for wear whenever tyres are rotated.

✻ NOTICE

Rotate radial tyres that have an asymmetric tread pattern only from front to rear and not from right to left.

⚠ WARNING

- **Do not use the compact spare tyre for tyre rotation.**
- **Do not mix bias ply and radial ply tyres under any circumstances. This may cause unusual handling characteristics that could result in death, severe injury, or property damage.**

Wheel alignment and tyre balance

The wheels on your vehicle were aligned and balanced carefully at the factory to give you the longest tyre life and best overall performance.

In most cases, you will not need to have your wheels aligned again. However, if you notice unusual tyre wear or your vehicle pulling one way or the other, the alignment may need to be reset.

If you notice your vehicle vibrating when driving on a smooth road, your wheels may need to be rebalanced.

⚠ CAUTION

Improper wheel weights can damage your vehicle's aluminum wheels. Use only approved wheel weights.

Tyre replacement

If the tyre is worn evenly, a tread wear Indicator (A) will appear as a solid band across the tread. This shows there is less than 1.6 mm (1/16 in.) of tread left on the tyre. Replace the tyre when this happens.

Do not wait for the band to appear across the entire tread before replacing the tyre.

✻ NOTICE

We recommend that when replacing tyres, use the same originally supplied with the vehicles.
If not, that affects driving performance.

⚠ CAUTION

When replacing the tyres, recheck and tighten the wheel nuts after driving about 50km (31miles) and recheck after driving about 1,000km (620miles). If the steering wheel shakes or the vehicle vibrates whilst driving, the tyre is out of balance. Align the tyre balance. If the problem is not solved, contact a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

⚠ WARNING - Replacing tyres

To reduce the chance of serious or fatal injuries from an accident caused by tyre failure or loss of vehicle control:

- **Replace tyres that are worn, show uneven wear, or are damaged. Worn tyres can cause loss of braking effectiveness, steering control, and traction.**
- **Do not drive your vehicle with too little or too much pressure in your tyres. This can lead to uneven wear and tyre failure.**
- **When replacing tyres, never mix radial and bias-ply tyres on the same car. You must replace all tyres (including the spare) if moving from radial to bias-ply tyres.**
- **It is best to replace all four tyres at the same time. If that is not possible, or necessary, then replace the two front or two rear tyres as a pair.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

Replacing just one tyre can seriously affect your vehicle's handling.

- **Using tyres and wheels other than the recommended sizes could cause unusual handling characteristics and poor vehicle control, resulting in a serious accident.**
- **Wheels that do not meet Kia's specifications may fit poorly and result in damage to the vehicle or unusual handling and poor vehicle control.**
- **The ABS works by comparing the speed of the wheels. The tyre size affects wheel speed. When replacing tyres, all 4 tyres must use the same size originally supplied with the vehicle. Using tyres of a different size can cause the ABS (Anti-lock Brake System) and ESC (Electronic Stability Control) to work irregularly.**

Compact spare tyre replacement (if equipped)

A compact spare tyre has a shorter tread life than a regular size tyre. Replace it when you can see the tread wear indicator bars on the tyre. The replacement compact spare tyre should be the same size and design tyre as the one provided with your new vehicle and should be mounted on the same compact spare tyre wheel. The compact spare tyre is not designed to be mounted on a regular size wheel, and the compact spare tyre wheel is not designed for mounting a regular size tyre.

Wheel replacement

When replacing the metal wheels for any reason, make sure the new wheels are equivalent to the original factory units in diameter, rim width and offset.

⚠ WARNING

A wheel that is not the correct size may adversely affect wheel and bearing life, braking and stopping abilities, handling characteristics, ground clearance, body-to-tyre clearance, snow chain clearance, speedometer and odometer calibration, headlight aim and bumper height.

Tyre traction

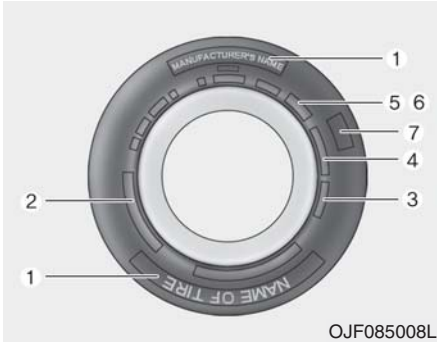
Tyre traction can be reduced if you drive on worn tyres, tyres that are improperly inflated or on slippery road surfaces. Tyres should be replaced when tread wear indicators appear. Slow down whenever there is rain, snow or ice on the road to reduce the possibility of losing control of the vehicle.

Tyre maintenance

In addition to proper inflation, correct wheel alignment helps to decrease tyre wear. If you find a tyre is worn unevenly, have a professional workshop check the wheel alignment. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

When you have new tyres installed, make sure they are balanced. This will increase vehicle ride comfort and tyre life. Additionally, a tyre should always be rebalanced if it is removed from the wheel.

Tyre sidewall labeling



OJF085008L

This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tyre and also provides the tyre identification number (TIN) for safety standard certification. The TIN can be used to identify the tyre in case of a recall.

1. Manufacturer or brand name

Manufacturer or Brand name is shown.

2. Tyre size designation

A tyre's sidewall is marked with a tyre size designation. You will need this information when selecting replacement tyres for your vehicle. The following explains what the letters and numbers in the tyre size designation mean.

Example tyre size designation:

(These numbers are provided as an example only; your tyre size designator could vary depending on your vehicle.)

P235/55R19 108T

P - Applicable vehicle type (tyres marked with the prefix "P" are intended for use on passenger vehicles or light trucks; however, not all tyres have this marking).

235 - Tyre width in millimeters.

55 - Aspect ratio. The tyre's section height as a percentage of its width.

R - Tyre construction code (Radial).

19 - Rim diameter in inches.

108 - Load Index, a numerical code associated with the maximum load the tyre can carry.

T - Speed Rating Symbol. See the speed rating chart in this section for additional information.

Wheel size designation

Wheels are also marked with important information that you need if you ever have to replace one. The following explains what the letters and numbers in the wheel size designation mean.

Example wheel size designation:

7.5JX19

7.5 - Rim width in inches.

J - Rim contour designation.

19 - Rim diameter in inches.

Tyre speed ratings

The chart below lists many of the different speed ratings currently being used for passenger car tyres. The speed rating is part of the tyre size designation on the sidewall of the tyre. This symbol corresponds to that tyre's designed maximum safe operating speed.

Speed Rating Symbol	Maximum Speed
S	180 km/h (112 mph)
T	190 km/h (118 mph)
H	210 km/h (130 mph)
V	240 km/h (149 mph)
W	270 km/h (168 mph)
Y	300 km/h (186 mph)

3. Checking tyre life (TIN : Tyre Identification Number)

Any tyres that are over 6 years old, based on the manufacturing date, (including the spare tyre) should be replaced by new ones. You can find the manufacturing date on the tyre sidewall (possibly on the inside of the wheel), displaying the DOT Code. The DOT Code is a series of numbers on a tyre consisting of numbers and English letters. The manufacturing date is designated by the last four digits (characters) of the DOT code.

DOT : XXXX XXXX OOOO

The front part of the DOT means a plant code number, tyre size and tread pattern and the last four numbers indicate week and year manufactured.

For example:

DOT XXXX XXXX 1620 represents that the tyre was produced in the 16th week of 2020.

⚠ WARNING - Tyre age

Tyres degrade over time, even when they are not being used.

Regardless of the remaining tread, we recommend that tyres be replaced after approximately six (6) years of normal service. Heat caused by hot climates or frequent high loading conditions can accelerate the aging process. Failure to follow this warning can result in sudden tyre failure, which could lead to a loss of control and an accident involving serious injury or death.

4. Tyre ply composition and material

The number of layers or plies of rubber-coated fabric in the tyre. Tyre manufacturers also must indicate the materials in the tyre, which include steel, nylon, polyester, and others. The letter "R" means radial ply construction; the letter "D" means diagonal or bias ply construction; and the letter "B" means belted-bias ply construction.

5. Maximum permissible inflation pressure

This number is the greatest amount of air pressure that should be put in the tyre. Do not exceed the maximum permissible inflation pressure. Refer to the Tyre and Loading Information label for recommended inflation pressure.

6. Maximum load rating

This number indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that can be carried by the tyre. When replacing the tyres on the vehicle, always use a tyre that has the same load rating as the factory installed tyre.

7. Uniform tyre quality grading

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tyre sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width.

For example:

TREADWEAR 200

TRACTION AA

TEMPERATURE A

Tread wear

The tread wear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tyre when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tyre graded 150 would wear one-and-a-half times (1½) as well on the government course as a tyre graded 100.

The relative performance of tyres depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

These grades are molded on the side-walls of passenger vehicle tyres. The tyres available as standard or optional equipment on your vehicle may vary with respect to grade.

Traction - AA, A, B & C

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B and C. Those grades represent the tyre's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tyre marked C may have poor traction performance.

Temperature -A, B & C

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tyre's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tyre to degenerate and reduce tyre life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tyre failure. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

⚠ WARNING

The traction grade assigned to this tyre is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

⚠ WARNING - Tyre temperature

The temperature grade for this tyre is established for a tyre that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat build-up and possible sudden tyre failure. This can cause loss of vehicle control and serious injury or death.

Low aspect ratio tyre (if equipped)

Low aspect ratio tyres, whose aspect ratio is lower than 50, are provided for sporty looks.

Because the low aspect ratio tyres are optimized for handling and braking, it may be more uncomfortable to ride in and there is more noise compare with normal tyres.

⚠ CAUTION

Because the sidewall of the low aspect ratio tyre is shorter than the normal, the wheel and tyre of the low aspect ratio tyre is easier to be damaged. So, follow the instructions below.

- ***When driving on a rough road or off road, drive cautiously because tyres and wheels may be damaged. And after driving, inspect tyres and wheels.***
- ***When passing over a pothole, speed bump, manhole, or kerb stone, drive slowly so that the tyres and wheels are not damaged.***
- ***If the tyre is impacted, inspect the tyre condition or contact a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.***
- ***To prevent damage to the tyre, inspect the tyre condition and pressure every 3,000km.***

⚠ CAUTION

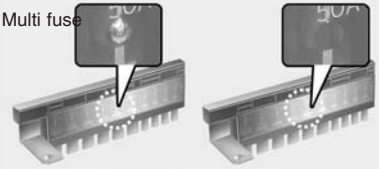
- ***It is not easy to recognize the tyre damage with your own eyes. But if there is the slightest hint of tyre damage, even though you cannot see the tyre damage with your own eyes, have the tyre checked or replaced because the tyre damage may cause air leakage from the tyre.***
- ***If the tyre is damaged by driving on a rough road, off road, pothole, manhole, or kerb stone, it will not be covered by the warranty.***
- ***You can find out the tyre information on the tyre sidewall.***

FUSES

■ Blade type

■ Cartridge type

■ Multi fuse



■ BFT

OJF075021

❊ Left side : Normal
Right side : Blown

A vehicle's electrical system is protected from electrical overload damage by fuses.

This vehicle has 2 (or 3) fuse panels, one located in the driver's side panel bolster, the others in the engine compartment near the battery.

If any of your vehicle's lights, accessories, or controls do not work, check the appropriate circuit fuse. If a fuse has blown, the element inside the fuse will melt.

If the electrical system does not work, first check the driver's side fuse panel.

Before replacing a blown fuse, disconnect the negative battery cable.

Always replace a blown fuse with one of the same rating.

If the replacement fuse blows, this indicates an electrical problem. Avoid using the system involved and immediately consult a professional workshop. Kia recommends to consult an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

Three kinds of fuses are used: blade type for lower amperage rating, cartridge type, and multi fuse for higher amperage ratings.

⚠ WARNING - Fuse replacement

- **Never replace a fuse with anything but another fuse of the same rating.**
- **A higher capacity fuse could cause damage and possibly a fire.**
- **Never install a wire or aluminum foil instead of the proper fuse even as a temporary repair. It may cause extensive wiring damage and a possible fire.**
- **Do not arbitrarily modify or add-on electric wiring of the vehicle.**

⚠ CAUTION

Do not use a screwdriver or any other metal object to remove fuses because it may cause a short circuit and damage the system.

✻ NOTICE

- **When replacing fuse, turn the ignition "OFF" and turn off switches of all electrical devices then remove battery (-) terminal.**
- **The actual fuse/relay panel label may differ from equipped items.**

⚠ CAUTION

- ***When replacing a blown fuse or relay with a new one, make sure the new fuse or relay fits tightly into the clips. The incomplete fastening fuse or relay may cause the vehicle wiring and electric systems damage and a possible fire.***
- ***Do not remove fuses, relays and terminals fastened with bolts or nuts. The fuses, relays and terminals may be fastened incompletely, and it may cause a possible fire. If fuses, relays and terminals fastened with bolts or nuts are blown, consult a professional workshop. Kia recommends to consult an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.***
- ***Do not input any other objects except fuses or relays into fuse/relay terminals such as a driver or wiring. It may cause contact failure and system malfunction.***

(Continued)

⚠ CAUTION

(Continued)

- ***Do not plug in screwdrivers or aftermarket wiring into the terminal originally designed for fuse and relays only. The electrical system and wiring of the vehicle interior may be damaged or burned due to contact failure.***
- ***If you directly connect the wire on the taillight or replace the bulb which is over the regulated capacity to install trailers etc., the inner junction block can get burned.***

⚠ CAUTION

Visually inspect the battery cap to ensure it is securely closed. If the battery cap is not securely closed, moisture may enter the system and damage the electrical components.

✻ NOTICE - Random wiring prohibited when retrofitting equipment

Use of random wiring in the vehicle might cause danger due to failure and damage of the vehicle's performance.
Using random wires especially when retrofitting Infotainment system or theft alarm system, remote engine control, car phone or radio might damage the vehicle or cause fire.

✻ NOTICE - Remodeling Prohibited

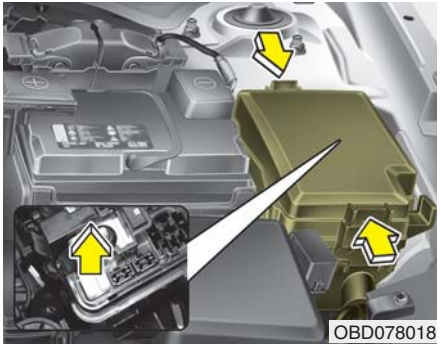
Do not try remodeling the vehicle in any way. It is illegal, and may affect the vehicle's performance, durability, and safety. Warranty is also not provided for problems caused by remodeling.
Be aware of safety problems caused by remodeling the vehicle with unauthorised electrical devices(lamp, black box, electrical equipment, diagnostic device, communication device, etc.). It might cause malfunction of the vehicle, wiring damage, battery discharge, connector damage, or fire. the vehicle or cause fire.

✻ NOTICE - Window tinting precaution

Window tint(especially metallic film) might cause communication disorder or poor radio reception, and malfunction of the automatic lighting system due to excessive change of illumination inside the vehicle. The solution used might also flow into electric, electronic devices causing disorder and failure.

Inner panel fuse replacement

1. Turn the ignition switch and all other switches off.
2. Open the fuse panel cover.



3. Pull the suspected fuse straight out. Use the removal tool provided in the main fuse box in the engine compartment.
4. Check the removed fuse; replace it if it is blown.

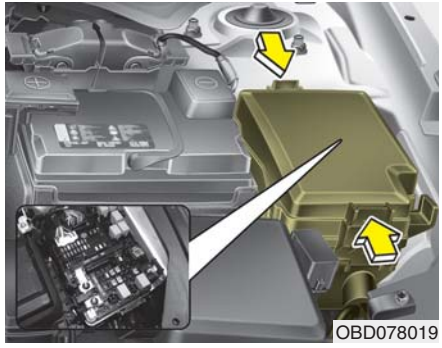
   Spare fuses are provided in the instrument panel fuse panel (or in the engine compartment fuse panel).
5. Push in a new fuse of the same rating, and make sure it fits tightly in the clips.

If it fits loosely, consult a professional workshop. Kia recommends to consult an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

If you do not have a spare, use a fuse of the same rating from a circuit you may not need for operating the vehicle, such as the cigarette lighter fuse.

If the headlights or taillights, stoplights, courtesy lamp, day time running lights (D.R.L) do not work and the fuses are OK, check the fuse panel in the engine compartment. If a fuse is blown, it must be replaced.

Engine compartment fuse replacement


OBD078019

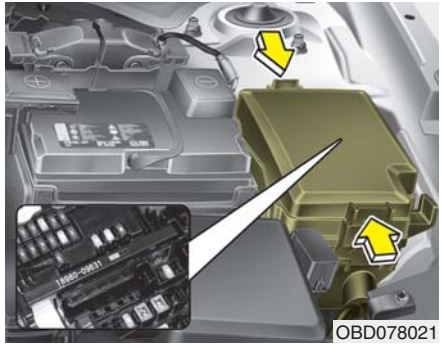
1. Turn the ignition switch and all other switches off.
2. Remove the fuse panel cover by pressing the tab and pulling the cover up. When the blade type fuse is disconnected, remove it by using the clip designed for changing fuses located in the engine room fuse box. Upon removal, securely insert reserve fuse of equal quantity.
3. Check the removed fuse; replace it if it is blown. To remove or insert the fuse, use the fuse puller in the engine compartment fuse panel.
4. Push in a new fuse of the same rating, and make sure it fits tightly in the clips. If it fits loosely, consult a professional workshop. Kia recommends to consult an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

⚠ CAUTION

After checking the fuse panel in the engine compartment, securely install the fuse panel cover through the audible clicking sound.

If not, electrical failures may occur from water contact.

Multi fuse


OBD078021

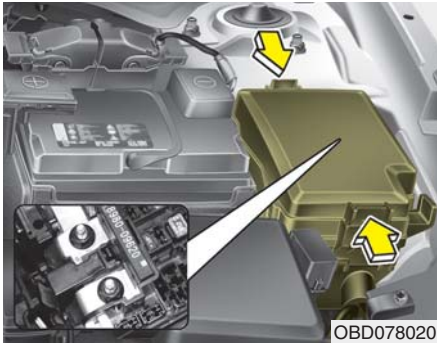
If the multi fuse is blown, it must be removed as follows:

1. Disconnect the negative battery cable.
2. Remove the nuts shown in the picture above.
3. Replace the fuse with a new one of the same rating.
4. Reinstall in the reverse order of removal.

✻ NOTICE

If the multi fuse is blown, consult a professional workshop. Kia recommends to consult an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

Main fuse

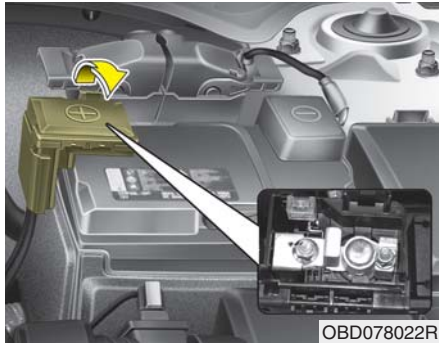


If the main fuse is blown, it must be removed as follows:

1. Turn off the engine.
2. Disconnect the negative battery cable.
3. Remove the nuts shown in the picture above.
4. Replace the fuse with a new one of the same rating.
5. Reinstall in the reverse order of removal

If the main fuse is blown, even though the engine compartment panel fuse and inner fuse are not blown, if the electrical system is not operated, the main fuse may be blown. The main fuse is connected with other parts and system. Contact a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

Battery fuse


OBD078022R

If the battery fuse is blown, it must be removed as follows:

1. Disconnect the negative battery cable.
2. Remove the nuts shown in the picture above.
3. Replace the fuse with a new one of the same rating.
4. Reinstall in the reverse order of removal.

✻ NOTICE

If the battery fuse is blown, consult a professional workshop. Kia recommends to consult an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

⚠ CAUTION

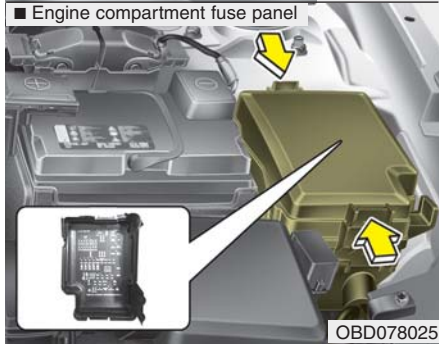
Visually inspect the battery cap for secure closing. If the battery cap is not securely latched, the electrical system may be damaged to due influx of moisture into the system.

Fuse/relay panel description

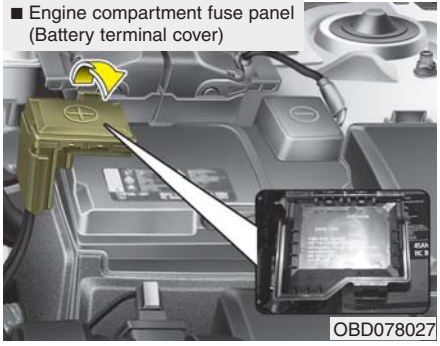
■ Driver's side fuse panel

OBD078023R

■ Engine compartment fuse panel


OBD078025

■ Engine compartment fuse panel (Battery terminal cover)

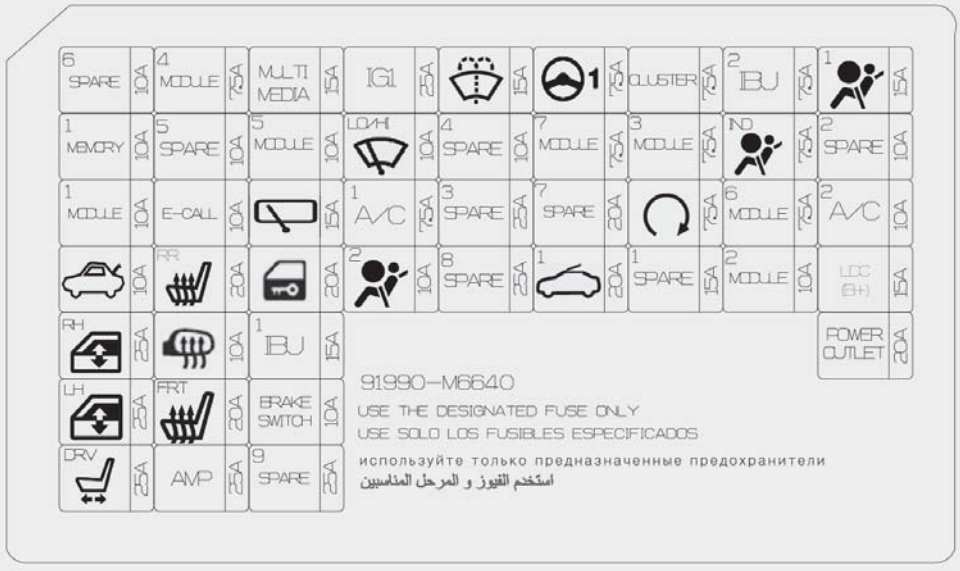


Inside the fuse/relay panel covers, you can find the fuse/relay label describing fuse/relay name and capacity.

✻ NOTICE

Not all fuse panel descriptions in this manual may be applicable to your vehicle. It is accurate at the time of printing. When you inspect the fuse panel in your vehicle, refer to the fuse panel label.

Driver's side fuse panel



OBD078024L

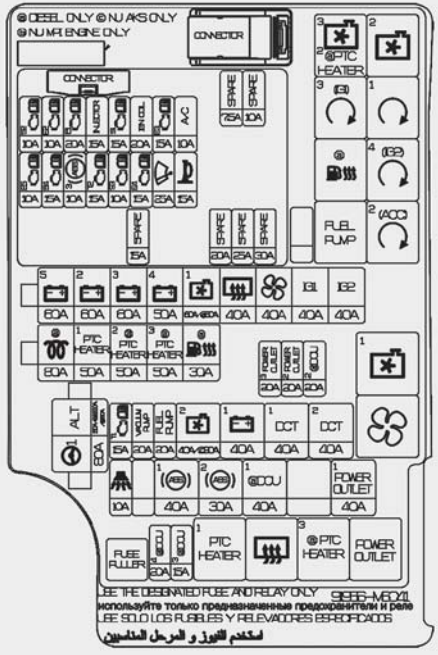
Instrument panel (Driver's side fuse panel)

Description	Symbol	Fuse rating	Circuit Protected
MEMORY 1	1 MEMORY	10A	Driver IMS (Integrated memory system) Module, Air Conditioner Control Module, Instrument Cluster, Auto Light & Photo Sensor
MODULE 1	1 MODULE	10A	Key Interlock Switch, Multipurpose Check Connector, Data Link Connector, ICM (Integrated Circuit Module) Relay Box (Outside Mirror Folding/Unfolding Relay), Console Switch Right Handle side, Hazard Switch, Driver/Passenger Smart Key Outside Handle, Mood Lamp Control Unit
TRUNK		10A	Trunk Relay
POWER WINDOW RH	RH	25A	Power Window Right Handle side Relay
POWER WINDOW LH	LH	25A	Power Window Left Handle side Relay, Driver Safety Power Window Module
POWER SEAT DRIVER	DRV	25A	Driver IMS (Integrated memory system) Module, Driver Seat Manual Switch
MODULE 4	4 MODULE	7.5A	Dosing Control Module, Lane Keeping Assist Unit, IBU (Integrated Body Control Unit), Forward Collision Avoidance Assist Unit, Blind-Spot Collision Warning Unit Left Handle side/Right Handle side
E-CALL	E-CALL	10A	MTS (Mozen Telematics System) E-Call Module
SEAT HEATER REAR	RR	20A	Rear Seat Warmer Control Module
HEATED MIRROR		10A	Driver/Passenger Power Outside Mirror, Air Conditioner Control Module, ECM (Engine Control Module)/PCM (Power train Control Module)
SEAT HEATER FRONT	FRT	20A	Front Seat Warmer Control Module, Front Air Ventilation Seat Control Module

Description	Symbol	Fuse rating	Circuit Protected
AMP	AMP	25A	Low DC (Direct Current)-DC (Direct Current) Converter, AMP (Amplifier)
MULTI MEDIA	MULTI MEDIA	15A	Low DC (Direct Current)-DC (Direct Current) Converter, Audio, Audio/Video & Navigation Head Unit
MODULE 5	5 MODULE	10A	MTS (Mozen Telematics System) E-Call Module, Crash Pad Switch, Low DC (Direct Current)-DC (Direct Current) Converter, Electro Chromic Mirror, Audio/Video & Navigation Head Unit, Audio, Air Conditioner Control Module, Rear Seat Warmer Control Module, Front Seat Warmer Control Module, Front Air Ventilation Seat Control Module, Driver IMS (Integrated memory system) Module, Head Lamp Left Handle side/Right Handle side, Auto Transmission Shift Lever Indicator
DOOR LOCK		20A	Door Lock/Unlock Relay
IBU 1	1 IBU	15A	IBU (Integrated Body Control Unit)
BRAKE SWITCH	BRAKE SWITCH	10A	IBU (Integrated Body Control Unit), Stop Lamp Switch
IG 1	IG1	25A	Engine Room Junction Block (Fuse - ABS, ECU, TCU, SENEOR)
WIPER	LO/HI	10A	Engine Room Junction Block (Front Wiper (Low) Relay), Front Wiper Motor, ECM (Engine Control Module)/PCM (Power train Control Module), IBU (Intergrated Body Control Unit)
AIR CONDITIONER 1	1 A/C	7.5A	Engine Room Junction Block (PTC HEATER 2 Relay, BLOWER Relay, PTC HEATER 1 Relay, PTC HEATER 3 Relay), Air Conditioner Control Module
AIR BAG 2	2	10A	SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) Control Module
WASHER		15A	Multifunction Switch
WASHER (RR)		15A	Rear Wiper Motor, ICM (Integrated Circuit Module), Relay BOX (RR Wiper Relay)

Description	Symbol	Fuse rating	Circuit Protected
MDPS		7.5A	MDPS (Motor Driven Power Steering) Unit
MODULE 7		7.5A	Rear Seat Warmer Control Module, Front Seat Warmer Control Module, Front Air Ventilation Seat Control Module, ESG_Unit, Heated_Nozzle
SUNROOF1		20A	Sunroof Motor
CLUSTER		7.5A	Instrument Cluster
MODULE 3		7.5A	Sport Mode Switch, Stop Lamp Switch
START		7.5A	ICM (Integrated Circuit Module) Relay Box (Burglar Alarm Relay), Transmission Range Switch, Engine Room Junction Block (PDM 3 (IG1) Relay), IBU (Integrated Body Control Unit), ECM (Engine Control Module), PCM (Power train Control Module)
IBU 2		7.5A	IBU (Integrated Body Control Unit)
AIR BAG INDICATOR		7.5A	Instrument Cluster, Air Conditioner Control Module
MODULE 6		7.5A	IBU (Integrated Body Control Unit)
MODULE 2		10A	Audio, Audio/Video & Navigation Head Unit, IBU (Integrated Body Control Unit), MTS (Mozen Telematics System) E-Call Module, Rear Usb Charger, Wireless Charger, Power Outside Mirror Switch, Engine Room Junction Block (Power Outlet), Low DC (Direct Current)-DC (Direct Current) Converter, AMP
AIR BAG 1		15A	SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) Control Module
AIR CONDITIONER 2		10A	Engine Room Junction Block (BLOWER Relay), Air Conditioner Control Module, Blower Resistor, Blower Motor
LDC (B+)		15A	Audio, Audio/Video & Navigation Head Unit, Instrument Cluster, Air Conditioner Control Module, Low DC (Direct Current)-DC (Direct Current) Converter
POWER OUTLET		20A	Cigarette Lighter

Engine compartment fuse panel



OBD070026L

Engine compartment fuse panel (Battery terminal cover)

OBD078063

Engine room compartment fuse panel

Fuse Name	Symbol	Fuse rating	Circuit Protected
ALTERNATOR	**ALT**	150/180/200A	Fuse : BURGLAR ALARM, ABS1, ABS2, DCU1, POWER OUTLET1, Alternator
MDPS 1	1	80A	MDPS (Motor Driven Power Steering) Unit
BATTERY 5	5	60A	Fuse : ECU3, A/CON, ECU4, WIPER, HORN, Engine Control Relay
BATTERY 2	2	60A	Instrument Panel Junction Block
BATTERY 3	3	60A	Instrument Panel Junction Block
BATTERY 4	4	50A	Instrument Panel Junction Block (Fuse :TRUNK, POWER WINDOW RH, POWER WINDOW LH, POWER SEAT DRIVER, SEAT HEATER FRONT, AMP, SUNROOF1)
COOLING FAN 1	1	60(50)A	COOLING FAN 2 Relay, COOLING FAN 1 Relay
REAR HEATED		40A	REAR HEATED Relay
BLOWER		40A	BLOWER Relay
IG1	**IG1**	40A	Ignition Switch, PDM 3 (IG1) Relay, PDM 2 (ACC) Relay
IG2	**IG2**	40A	Ignition Switch, START Relay, PDM 4 (IG2) Relay
GLOW		80A	Glow Unit
VACUUM PUMP	**VACUUM PUMP**	20A	Vacuum pump

Fuse Name	Symbol	Fuse rating	Circuit Protected
PTC HEATER 1	1 PTC HEATER	50A	PTC HEATER 1 Relay
PTC HEATER 2	2 PTC HEATER	50A	PTC HEATER 2 Relay
PTC HEATER 3	3 PTC HEATER	50A	PTC HEATER 3 Relay
FUEL HEATER		30A	FUEL HEATER Relay
POWER OUTLET2	2 POWER OUTLET	20A	Front Power Outlet
DCU 2	2 DCU	20A	Dosing Control Module
TCU 1	T1	15A	TCM (Transmission Control Module)
FUEL PUMP	FUEL PUMP	20A	FUEL PUMP Relay
COOLING FAN 2	2	40A/©30A	COOLING FAN 3 Relay, COOLING FAN 2 Relay
BATTERY 1	1	40A	Instrument Panel Junction Block (LONG TERM LOAD LATCH RELAY, Fuse : MODULE1, SEAT HEATER REAR, DOOR LOCK, IBU1, BRAKE SWITCH, AIR BAG2)
DCT 1	1 DCT	40A	TCM (Transmission Control Module)
DCT 2	2 DCT	40A	TCM (Transmission Control Module)

Fuse Name	Symbol	Fuse rating	Circuit Protected
BURGLAR ALARM		10A	ICM Relay Box (Burglar Alarm Relay)
ABS 1		40A	ABS (Anti-lock brake system) Control Module, ESC (Electronic Stability Control) Control Module
ABS 2		30A	ABS (Anti-lock brake system) Control Module, ESC (Electronic Stability Control) Control Module
DCU 1		40A	DCU (Dosing Control Unit) Relay
POWER OUTLET 1		40A	POWER OUTLET Relay
DCU 4		20A	Dosing Control Module
DCU 3		15A	Dosing Control Module
SENSOR 2		10A	[(Petrol engine) 1.6 MPI, 2.0 MPI] Purge Control Solenoid Valve, Variable Intake Solenoid Valve, COOLING FAN 3 Relay, COOLING FAN 2 Relay, Oil Control Valve #1/#2, A/CON Relay, CCV, Air Flow Sensor, OCV #3 [(Petrol engine) 1.6 T-GDi] Oil Control Valve #1/#2, CCV, Cooling Fan 1 Relay, PCSV, RCV [Smartstream D 1.6] PM Sensor, Electronic VGT Actuator, A/Con Relay, COOLING FAN 2 Relay, COOLING FAN 1 Relay, PTC HEATER 1 Relay
ECU 2		10A	[(Petrol engine) 1.6 MPI] ECM (Engine Control Module)/PCM (Power train Control Module) [(Petrol engine) 1.6 T-GDi] ECM (Engine Control Module [(Petrol engine) 2.0 MPI] PCM (Power train Control Module)

Fuse Name	Symbol	Fuse rating	Circuit Protected
ECU 1		20A	[(Petrol engine) 1.6 MPI] ECM (Engine Control Module)/PCM (Power train Control Module) [(Petrol engine) 1.6 T-GDi] ECM (Engine Control Module) [Smartstream D 1.6] ECM (Engine Control Module)
INJECTOR		15A	[(Petrol engine) 1.6 MPI, 2.0 MPI] INJECTOR #1~#4
SENSOR 1		15A	[(Petrol engine) 1.6 MPI] Oxygen Sensor (UP/Down) [(Petrol engine) 1.6 T-GDi] Oxygen Sensor (UP/Down) [(Petrol engine) 2.0 MPI] Oxygen Sensor (UP/Down) [Smartstream D 1.6] LAMBDA SNSR (UP/Down), Air Flow Sensor, Oil Pump Valve
IGNITION COIL		20A	[(Petrol engine) 1.6 MPI/T-GDi, 2.0 MPI] Ignition Coil #1~#4, Condenser [Smartstream D 1.6] Rear Nox Sensor, Front Nox Sensor
ECU 3		15A	[(Petrol engine) 1.6 MPI] ECM (Engine Control Module)/PCM (Power train Control Module) [(Petrol engine) 1.6 T-GDi] ECM (Engine Control Module) [(Petrol engine) 2.0 MPI] PCM (Power train Control Module) [Smartstream D 1.6] ECM (Engine Control Module)
AIR CONDITIONER		10A	Air Conditioner Relay
ECU 5		10A	[(Petrol engine) 1.6 MPI] ECM (Engine Control Module)/PCM (Power train Control Module) [(Petrol engine) 1.6 T-GDi] ECM (Engine Control Module) [(Petrol engine) 2.0 MPI] PCM (Power train Control Module) [Smartstream D 1.6] ECM (Engine Control Module)

Fuse Name	Symbol	Fuse rating	Circuit Protected
SENSOR 4		15A	[Smartstream D 1.6] Glow Unit, Fuel Filter Warning Sensor [(Petrol engine) 1.6 T-GDi] Electric Vacuum Pump
ABS 3		10A	ABS (Anti-lock brake system)/ESC (Electronic Stability Control) Control Module, Multipurpose Check Connector
TCU 2		15A	[(Petrol engine) 1.6 MPI, 2.0 MPI] Vehicle Speed Sensor, Transmission Range Switch [Smartstream D 1.6, (Petrol engine) 1.6 T-GDi] Vehicle Speed Sensor, Transmission Range Switch, TCM (Transmission Control Module)
SENSOR 3		10A	FUEL PUMP Relay, [Smartstream D 1.6] Fuel HTR Relay
ECU 4		15A	[(Petrol engine) 1.6 MPI] ECM (Engine Control Module)/PCM (Power train Control Module) [(Petrol engine) 1.6 T-GDi] ECM (Engine Control Module) [(Petrol engine) 2.0 MPI] PCM (Power train Control Module) [Smartstream D 1.6] ECM (Engine Control Module)
WIPER		25A	Wiper Relay
HORN		15A	Horn Relay

Relay

Relay Name	Symbol	Type
COOLING FAN 3 Relay		MICRO
PTC HEATER 2 Relay		MICRO
COOLING FAN 2 Relay		MICRO
PDM 3 (IG1) Relay		MICRO
START Relay		MICRO
FUEL HEATER Relay		MICRO
PDM 4 (IG2) Relay		MICRO
FUEL PUMP Relay		MICRO
PDM 2 (ACC) Relay		MICRO
COOLING FAN 1 Relay		MINI
BLOWER Relay		MINI
PTC HEATER 1 Relay		MICRO
REAR HEATED Relay		MICRO
PTC HEATER 3 Relay		MICRO
POWER OUTLET Relay		MICRO

LIGHT BULBS

Bulb replacement precaution

Please prepare bulbs with appropriate standards in case of emergencies. Refer to “Bulb Wattage” in chapter 9.

When changing bulbs and sorts, first turn off the engine at a safe place, firmly apply the side brake and take out the battery's negative (-) terminal.

⚠ WARNING - Working on the lights

Prior to working on the light, firmly apply the parking brake, ensure that the ignition switch is turned to the LOCK position and turn off the lights to avoid sudden movement of the vehicle and burning your fingers or receiving an electric shock.

Use only the bulbs of the specified wattage.

⚠ WARNING

Be sure to replace the burned-out bulb with one of the same wattage rating. Otherwise, it may cause extensive wiring damage and possible fire.

⚠ CAUTION

If you don't have necessary tools, the correct bulbs and the expertise, consult a professional workshop. Kia recommends to consult an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

In many cases, it is difficult to replace vehicle light bulbs because other parts of the vehicle must be removed before you can get to the bulb. This is especially true if you have to remove the headlight assembly to get to the bulb(s). Removing/ installing the headlight assembly can result in damage to the vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***If unauthentic parts or substandard lights are used when changing lights, it may lead to fuse disconnection and malfunction, and other wiring damages.***
- ***Do not install extra lamps or LED to the vehicle. If supplementary lights are installed, it may lead to lamp malfunction and flickering of the lights. In addition, the fuse box and other writing may be damaged.***

• Lamp part malfunction due to net-work failure

The headlamp, taillight, and fog light may lit up when the head lamp switch is turned ON, and not light up when the taillight or for light switch is turned ON. This may be cause by network failure or vehicle electrical control system malfunction. If there is a problem, have the system serviced by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

• Lamp part malfunction due to electrical control system stabilization

A normally functioning lamp may flicker momentarily. This momentary occurrence is due to stabilization function of the vehicle's electrical control system. If the lamp soon returns to normal, the vehicle does not require service.

However, if the lamp goes out after the momentary flickering, or the flickering continues, have the system serviced by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

✻ NOTICE

- **If the light bulb or lamp connector is removed from an operating lamp activated by electricity, the fuse box's electronic device may scan it as a malfunction. Therefore, a lamp malfunction history may be recorded in Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) in the fuse box.**
- **It is normal for an operating lamp may blink temporarily. Since this occurrence is due stabilization function of the vehicle's electronic control device, if the lamp lights up normally after temporary blinking, there is no problem in the vehicle.**
  However, if the lamp continues to blink several times or turn off completely, there may be an error in the vehicle's electronic control device. In this case, have the vehicle checked by a professional workshop immediately. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

✻ NOTICE

After an accident or after the headlight assembly is reinstalled, have the headlight aiming adjusted by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

✻ NOTICE

You can find moisture inside the lens of lamps after a car wash or driving in the rain. It is a natural event caused by the temperature difference between the inside and the outside of the lamp and does not mean a problem with its functions. The moisture inside the lamp would disappear if you drive the vehicle with the headlamp turned on, however, the level at which the moisture is removed may differ depending on the size / location / condition of the lamp. If the moisture continues to stay inside the lamp, Kia recommends visiting an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

Light bulb position (Front)

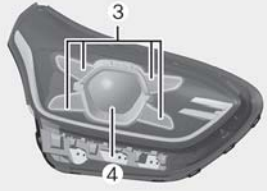
■ Head lamp - Type A

OBD078028

■ Head lamp - Type B

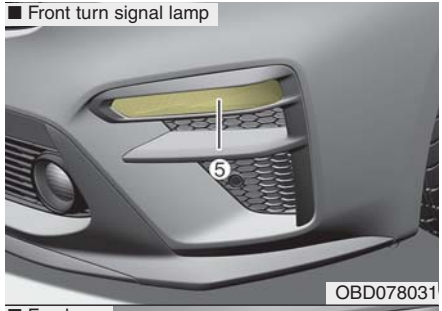
OBD078029

■ Head lamp – Type C



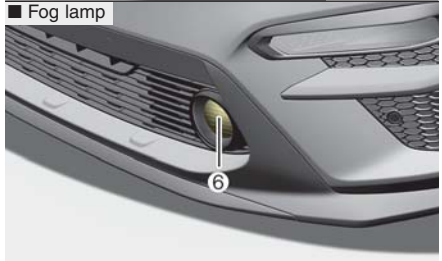
OBD078030

■ Front turn signal lamp



OBD078031

■ Fog lamp

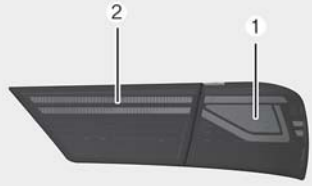


OBD078032

(1) Headlamp (Low) (Bulb type)
(2) Headlamp (High) (Bulb type)
(3) Position lamp / Day time running lamp (LED type)
(4) Headlamp (Low/High) (LED type)
(5) Front turn signal lamp (Bulb type)
(6) Front fog lamp (Bulb type)

Light bulb position (Rear)

■ Rear combination lamp - Type A

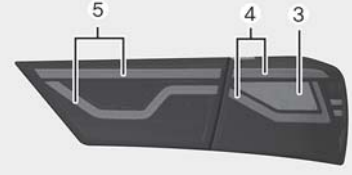


OBD078033

■ Rear combination lamp - Type B

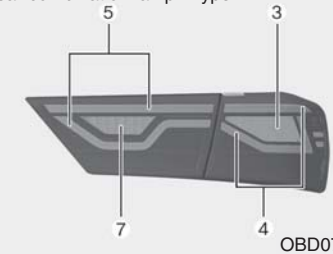
OBD078033L

■ Rear combination lamp - Type C



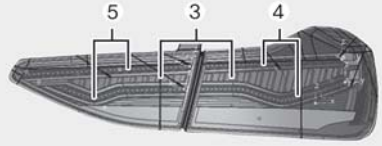
OBD078034

■ Rear combination lamp - Type D



OBD078034L

■ Rear combination lamp - Type E

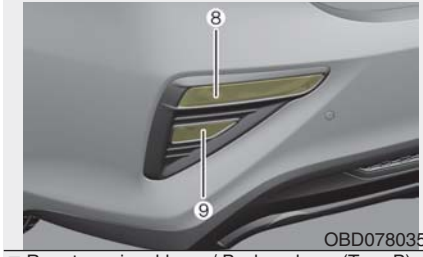


OBD078130L

■ Rear combination lamp - Type F

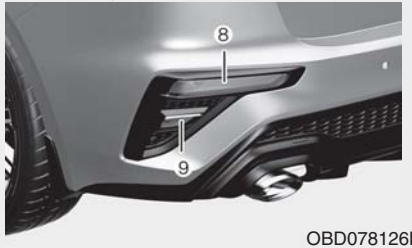
OBD070196L

■ Rear turn signal lamp / Back up lamp (Type A)



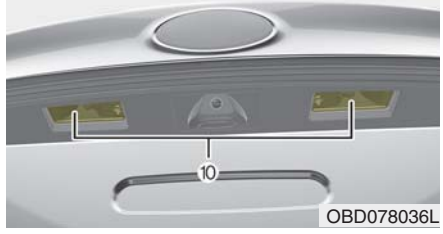
OBD078035L

■ Rear turn signal lamp / Back up lamp (Type B)



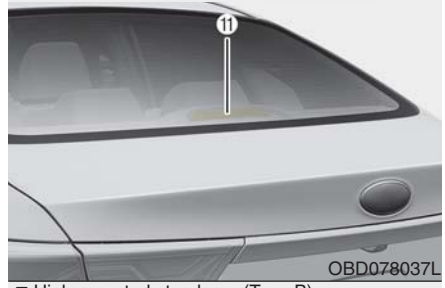
OBD078126L

■ License plate lamp



OBD078036L

■ High mounted stop lamp (Type A)



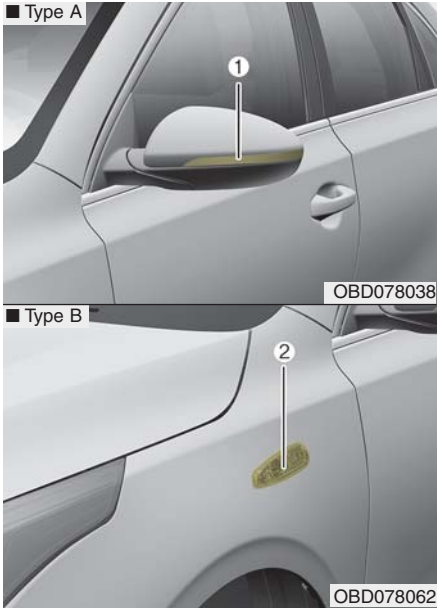
OBD078037L

■ High mounted stop lamp (Type B)

OBD078129L

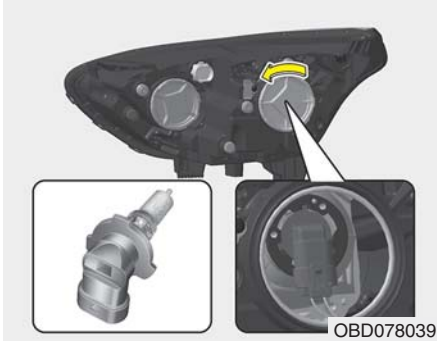
(1) Stop and tail lamp (Bulb type)
(2) Tail lamp (Bulb type)
(3) Stop lamp (LED type)
(4,5) Tail lamp (LED type)
(6) Rear fog lamp (Bulb type)
(7) Rear fog lamp (LED type)
(8) Rear turn signal lamp (Bulb type)
(9) Back Up lamp (Bulb type)
(10) License plate lamp (Bulb type)
(11) High mounted stop lamp (Bulb or LED type)

Light bulb position (Side)



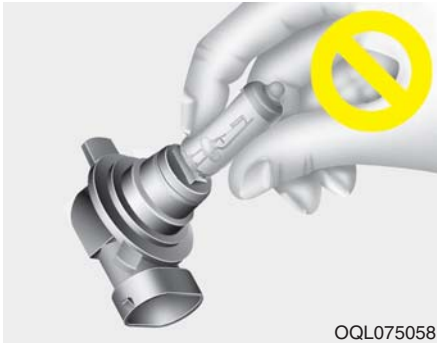
(1) Side repeater lamp (LED type)
(2) Side repeater lamp (bulb type)

Headlamp (Low beam) bulb replacement (Headlamp Type A, B)



1. Open the bonnet.
2. Remove the headlamp bulb cover by turning it counterclockwise.
3. Disconnect the headlamp bulb socket-connector.
4. Remove the bulb-socket from the headlamp assembly by turning the bulb-socket counterclockwise until the tabs on the bulb-socket align with the slots on the headlamp assembly.
5. Install a new bulb-socket assembly in the headlamp assembly by aligning the tabs on the bulb-socket with the slots in the headlamp assembly. Push the bulb-socket into the headlamp assembly and turn the bulb-socket clockwise.
6. Connect the headlamp bulb socket-connector.
7. Install the headlamp bulb cover by turning it clockwise.

Headlamp bulb



⚠ WARNING - Halogen bulbs

- **Halogen bulbs contain pressurized gas that will produce flying pieces of glass if broken.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Always handle them carefully, and avoid scratches and abrasions. If the bulbs are lit, avoid contact with liquids. Never touch the glass with bare hands. Residual oil may cause the bulb to overheat and burst when lit.**

  A bulb should be operated only when installed in a headlight.
- **If a bulb becomes damaged or cracked, replace it immediately and carefully dispose of it.**
- **Wear eye protection when changing a bulb. Allow the bulb to cool down before handling it.**

Headlamp (High beam) bulb replacement (Headlamp Type A, B)

1. Open the bonnet.
2. Remove the headlamp bulb cover by turning it counterclockwise.
3. Remove the bulb-socket from the headlamp assembly by turning the bulb-socket counterclockwise until the tabs on the bulb-socket align with the slots on the headlamp assembly.

4. Remove the bulb from bulb-socket by pulling it out.
5. Insert a new bulb by inserting it into the bulb-socket.
6. Install the bulb-socket in the headlamp assembly by aligning the tabs on the bulb-socket with the slots in the headlamp assembly. Push the bulb-socket into the headlamp assembly and turn the bulb-socket clockwise.
7. Install the headlamp bulb cover by turning it clockwise.

Headlamp bulb

OHD076046

⚠ WARNING - Halogen bulbs

- **Halogen bulbs contain pressurized gas that will produce flying pieces of glass if broken.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Always handle them carefully, and avoid scratches and abrasions. If the bulbs are lit, avoid contact with liquids. Never touch the glass with bare hands. Residual oil may cause the bulb to overheat and burst when lit.**

  A bulb should be operated only when installed in a headlight.
- **If a bulb becomes damaged or cracked, replace it immediately and carefully dispose of it.**
- **Wear eye protection when changing a bulb. Allow the bulb to cool down before handling it.**

Position lamp / Day time running lamp (LED type) replacement (Headlamp Type B)

OBD078041

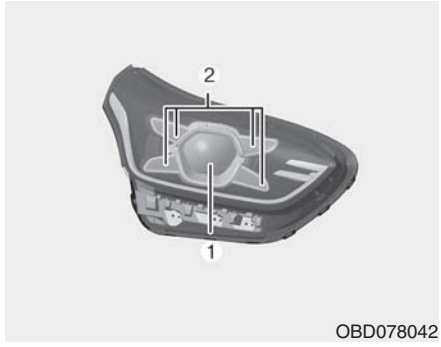
If the position lamp + DRL (LED) (1) does not operate, have your vehicle checked by a professional workshop.

Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

The LED lamps cannot be replaced as a single unit because it is an integrated unit. The LED lamps has to be replaced with the unit.

A skilled technician should check or repair the position lamp + DRL (LED), for it may damage related parts of the vehicle.

Headlamp (LED type) replacement (Headlamp Type C)



OBD078042

If the Low/High beam lamp (1), Day time running lamp/Position lamp (2) does not operate, have your vehicle checked by a professional workshop.

Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

The LED lamps cannot be replaced as a single unit because it is an integrated unit. The LED lamps has to be replaced with the unit.

A skilled technician should check or repair the head lamp (LED), for it may damage related parts of the vehicle.

Front turn signal lamp bulb replacement

OBD078043

1. Disconnect the negative (-) battery terminal.
2. Remove the engine under cover.
3. Disconnect the front turn signal lamp connector.
4. Remove the socket from the assembly by turning the socket counterclockwise until the tabs on the socket align with the slots on the assembly.

5. Remove the bulb from the socket by pressing it in and rotating it counter-clockwise until the tabs on the bulb align with the slots in the socket. Pull the bulb out of the socket.
6. Insert a new bulb by inserting it into the socket and rotating it until it locks into place.
7. Install the socket in the assembly by aligning the tabs on the socket with the slots in the assembly. Push the socket into the assembly and turn the socket clockwise.
8. Connect the front turn signal lamp connector.
9. Install the engine under cover assembly to the body of the vehicle.

Front fog lamp bulb replacement

OBD078044

1. Disconnect the negative (-) battery terminal.
2. Remove the engine under cover.
3. Disconnect the front fog lamp connector.
4. Remove the socket from the assembly by turning the socket counterclockwise until the tabs on the socket align with the slots on the assembly.
5. Remove the bulb from the socket by pressing it in and rotating it counter-clockwise until the tabs on the bulb align with the slots in the socket. Pull the bulb out of the socket.
6. Insert a new bulb by inserting it into the socket and rotating it until it locks into place.
7. Install the socket in the assembly by aligning the tabs on the socket with the slots in the assembly. Push the socket into the assembly and turn the socket clockwise.
8. Connect the front fog lamp connector.
9. Install the engine under cover assembly to the body of the vehicle.

Side repeater lamp (LED type) bulb replacement

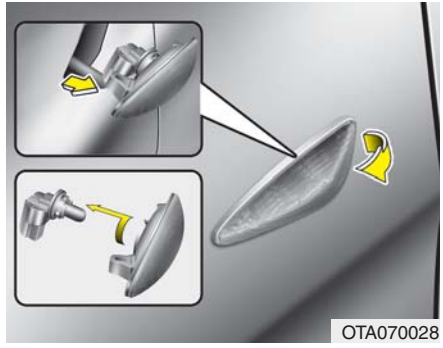
If the side repeater lamp (LED) does not operate, have your vehicle checked by a professional workshop.

Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

The LED lamps cannot be replaced as a single unit because it is an integrated unit. The LED lamps has to be replaced with the unit.

A skilled technician should check or repair the side repeater lamp (LED), for it may damage related parts of the vehicle.

Side repeater lamp (Bulb type) bulb replacement



1. Remove the lamp assembly from the vehicle by prying the lens and pulling the assembly out.
2. Disconnect the bulb electrical connector.
3. Separate the socket and the lens parts by turning the socket counterclockwise until the tabs on the socket align with the slots on the lens part.
4. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.
5. Insert a new bulb in the socket.
6. Reassemble the socket and the lens part.
7. Connect the bulb electrical connector.
8. Reinstall the lamp assembly to the body of the vehicle.

Stop and tail lamp (Bulb type) bulb replacement (Rear combination lamp Type A, B, F)

1. Open the trunk lid.
2. Open the service cover.
3. Remove the nuts from the vehicle.

4. Remove the rear combination lamp assembly from the body of the vehicle.
5. Remove the socket from the assembly by turning the socket counterclockwise until the tabs on the socket align with the slots on the assembly.
6. Remove the bulb from the socket by pressing it in and rotating it counterclockwise until the tabs on the bulb align with the slots in the socket. Pull the bulb out of the socket.
7. Insert a new bulb by inserting it into the socket and rotating it until it locks into place.
8. Install the socket in the assembly by aligning the tabs on the socket with the slots in the assembly. Push the socket into the assembly and turn the socket clockwise.
9. Install the rear combination lamp assembly to the body of the vehicle.
10. Install the service cover.

Tail lamp (inside) (Bulb type) bulb replacement (Rear combination lamp Type A, B, F)

1. Open the trunk lid.
2. Loosen the retaining screw of the trunk lid cover and then remove the cover.

3. Remove the socket from the assembly by turning the socket counterclockwise until the tabs on the socket align with the slots on the assembly.
4. Remove the bulb from the socket by pressing it in and rotating it counterclockwise until the tabs on the bulb align with the slots in the socket. Pull the bulb out of the socket.
5. Insert a new bulb by inserting it into the socket and rotating it until it locks into place.
6. Install the socket in the assembly by aligning the tabs on the socket with the slots in the assembly. Push the socket into the assembly and turn the socket clockwise.
7. Install the trunk lid cover.

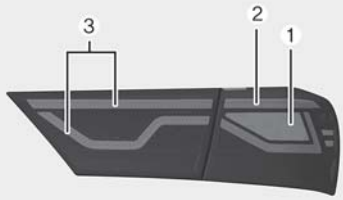
Rear fog lamp (Bulb type) bulb replacement (Rear combination lamp Type B)

1. Open the trunk lid.
2. Loosen the retaining screw of the trunk lid cover and then remove the cover.

3. Remove the socket from the assembly by turning the socket counterclockwise until the tabs on the socket align with the slots on the assembly.
4. Remove the bulb from the socket by pressing it in and rotating it counterclockwise until the tabs on the bulb align with the slots in the socket. Pull the bulb out of the socket.
5. Insert a new bulb by inserting it into the socket and rotating it until it locks into place.
6. Install the socket in the assembly by aligning the tabs on the socket with the slots in the assembly. Push the socket into the assembly and turn the socket clockwise.
7. Install the trunk lid cover.

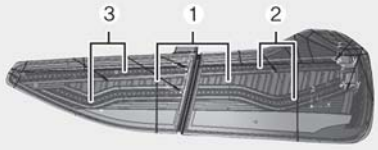
Stop and tail lamp (LED type) bulb replacement (Rear combination lamp Type C, D, E)

■ Type C, D



OBD078051

■ Type E



OBD078131L

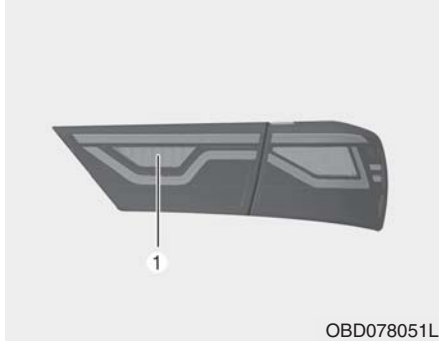
If the stop and tail lamp (LED) (1,2,3) does not operate, have your vehicle checked by a professional workshop.

Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

The LED lamps cannot be replaced as a single unit because it is an integrated unit. The LED lamps has to be replaced with the unit.

A skilled technician should check or repair the stop and tail lamp (LED), for it may damage related parts of the vehicle.

Rear fog lamp (LED type) bulb replacement (Rear combination lamp Type D)



OBD078051L

If the rear fog lamp (LED) (1) does not operate, have your vehicle checked by a professional workshop.

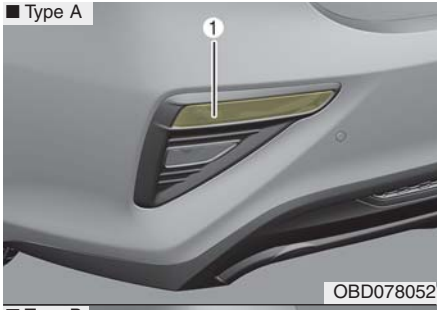
Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

The LED lamps cannot be replaced as a single unit because it is an integrated unit. The LED lamps has to be replaced with the unit.

A skilled technician should check or repair the rear fog lamp (LED), for it may damage related parts of the vehicle.

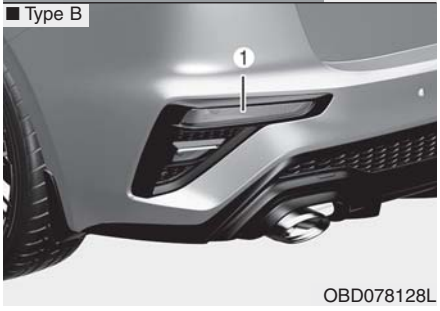
Rear turn signal lamp bulb replacement

■ Type A



OBD078052

■ Type B

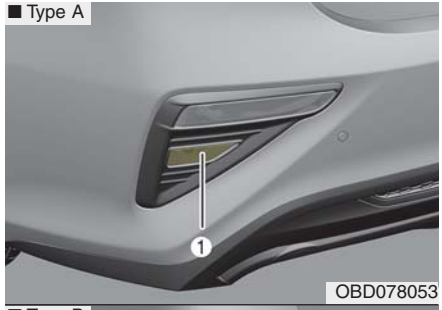


OBD078128L

1. Disconnect the negative (-) battery terminal.
2. Remove the plastic tabs with a flat-tip screw driver.
3. Loosen the plastic retaining screws and remove the under panel cover.
4. Disconnect the rear turn signal lamp connector (A).
5. Remove the socket from the assembly by turning the socket counterclockwise until the tabs on the socket align with the slots on the assembly.
6. Remove the bulb from the socket by pressing it in and rotating it counterclockwise until the tabs on the bulb align with the slots in the socket. Pull the bulb out of the socket.
7. Insert a new bulb by inserting it into the socket and rotating it until it locks into place.
8. Install the socket in the assembly by aligning the tabs on the socket with the slots in the assembly. Push the socket into the assembly and turn the socket clockwise.
9. Connect the rear turn signal lamp connector.
10. Tighten the plastic retaining screws.
11. Install the plastic tabs and the under panel cover.

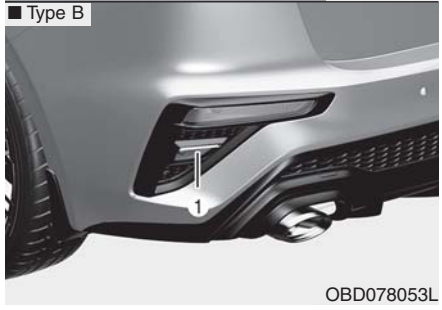
Back up lamp bulb replacement

■ Type A



OBD078053

■ Type B

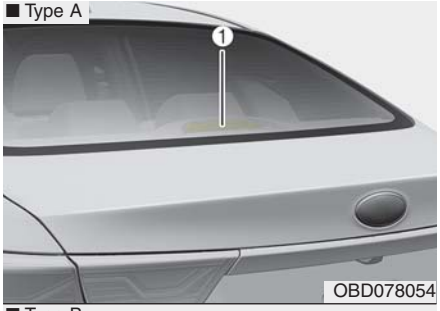


OBD078053L

1. Disconnect the negative (-) battery terminal.
2. Remove the plastic tabs with a flat-tip screw driver.
3. Loosen the plastic retaining screws and remove the under panel cover.
4. Disconnect the rear back up lamp connector (A).
5. Remove the socket from the assembly by turning the socket counterclockwise until the tabs on the socket align with the slots on the assembly.
6. Remove the bulb from the socket by pressing it in and rotating it counterclockwise until the tabs on the bulb align with the slots in the socket. Pull the bulb out of the socket.
7. Insert a new bulb by inserting it into the socket and rotating it until it locks into place.
8. Install the socket in the assembly by aligning the tabs on the socket with the slots in the assembly. Push the socket into the assembly and turn the socket clockwise.
9. Connect the rear back up lamp connector.
10. Tighten the plastic retaining screws.
11. Install the plastic tabs and the under panel cover.

High mounted stop lamp (LED type) bulb replacement

■ Type A



■ Type B

If the high mounted stop lamp (LED) (1) does not operate, have your vehicle checked by a professional workshop.

Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

The LED lamps cannot be replaced as a single unit because it is an integrated unit. The LED lamps has to be replaced with the unit.

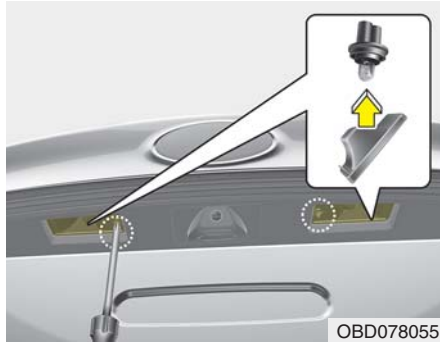
A skilled technician should check or repair the high mounted stop lamp (LED), for it may damage related parts of the vehicle.

High mounted stop lamp (bulb type) bulb replacement

1. Open the trunk lid.
2. Remove the socket from the assembly by turning the socket counterclockwise until the tabs on the socket align with the slots on the assembly.
3. Remove the bulb from the socket by pressing it in and rotating it counterclockwise until the tabs on the bulb align with the slots in the socket. Pull the bulb out of the socket.

4. Insert a new bulb by inserting it into the socket and rotating it until it locks into place.
5. Install the socket in the assembly by aligning the tabs on the socket with the slots in the assembly. Push the socket into the assembly and turn the socket clockwise.

License plate lamp bulb replacement


OBD078055

1. Remove the lamp assembly by using a flat-blade screwdriver.
2. Remove the socket from the assembly by turning the socket counterclockwise until the tabs on the socket align with the slots on the assembly.
3. Remove the bulb from bulb-socket by pulling it out.
4. Insert a new bulb by inserting it into the bulb-socket.
5. Install the socket in the assembly by aligning the tabs on the socket with the slots in the assembly. Push the socket into the assembly and turn the socket clockwise.
6. Install the lamp assembly to the body of the vehicle.

Map lamp (Bulb type) bulb replacement

OBD078119L

⚠ WARNING

Prior to working on the Interior lamps, ensure that the "OFF" button is depressed to avoid burning your fingers or receiving an electric shock.

1. Using a flat-blade screwdriver, gently pry the lens cover from lamp housing.
2. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.
3. Install a new bulb in the socket.
4. Align the lens cover tabs with the lamp housing notches and snap the lens into place.

⚠ CAUTION

Be careful not to dirty or damage the lens, lens tab, and plastic housings.

Map lamp (LED type) bulb replacement

OBD078057

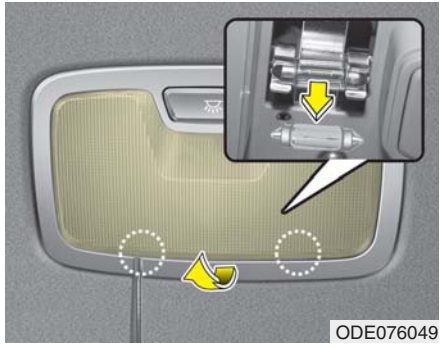
If the map lamp (LED) (1) does not operate, have your vehicle checked by a professional workshop.

Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

The LED lamps cannot be replaced as a single unit because it is an integrated unit. The LED lamps has to be replaced with the unit.

A skilled technician should check or repair the map lamp (LED), for it may damage related parts of the vehicle.

Room lamp (Bulb type) bulb replacement


ODE076049

⚠ WARNING

Prior to working on the Interior lamps, ensure that the "OFF" button is depressed to avoid burning your fingers or receiving an electric shock.

1. Using a flat-blade screwdriver, gently pry the lens cover from lamp housing.
2. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.
3. Install a new bulb in the socket.
4. Align the lens cover tabs with the lamp housing notches and snap the lens into place.

⚠ CAUTION

Be careful not to dirty or damage the lens, lens tab, and plastic housings.

Room lamp (LED type) bulb replacement

ODEP077070

If the room lamp (LED) (1) does not operate, have your vehicle checked by a professional workshop.

Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

The LED lamps cannot be replaced as a single unit because it is an integrated unit. The LED lamps has to be replaced with the unit.

A skilled technician should check or repair the room lamp (LED), for it may damage related parts of the vehicle.

Vanity mirror lamp bulb replacement

OYB077106K

⚠ WARNING

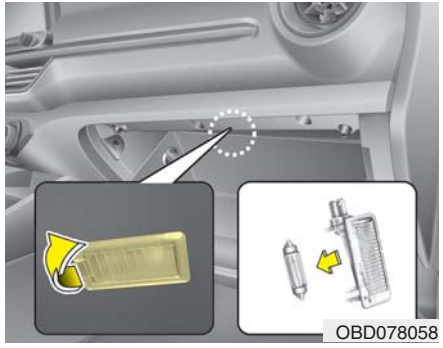
Prior to working on the Interior lamps, ensure that the "OFF" button is depressed to avoid burning your fingers or receiving an electric shock.

1. Using a flat-blade screwdriver, gently pry the lamp assembly from interior.
2. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.
3. Install a new bulb in the socket.
4. Install the lamp assembly to interior.

⚠ CAUTION

Be careful not to dirty or damage the lens, lens tab, and plastic housings.

Glove box lamp replacement


OBD078058

1. Using a flat-blade screwdriver, gently pry the lamp assembly from interior.
2. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.
3. Install a new bulb in the socket.
4. Install the lamp assembly to interior.

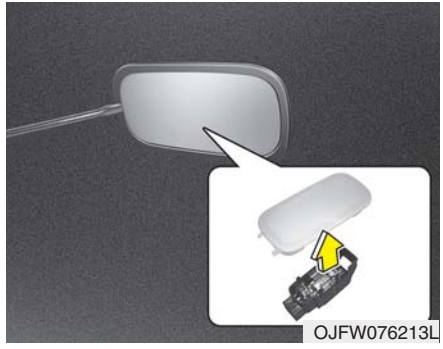
⚠ CAUTION

Be careful not to dirty or damage the lens, lens tab, and plastic housings.

Trunk room lamp replacement

1. Open the trunk lid.
2. Remove the lamp assembly by using a flat-blade screwdriver.
3. Remove the cover from the lamp assembly.
4. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.
5. Install a new bulb in the socket.
6. Install the cover to the lamp assembly.
7. Install the lamp assembly to the body of the vehicle.

Tailgate room lamp bulb replacement



1. Using a flat-blade screwdriver, gently pry the lens cover from lamp housing.
2. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.
3. Install a new bulb in the socket.
4. Align the lens cover tabs with the lamp housing notches and snap the lens into place.

⚠ CAUTION

Be careful not to dirty or damage the lens, lens tab, and plastic housings.

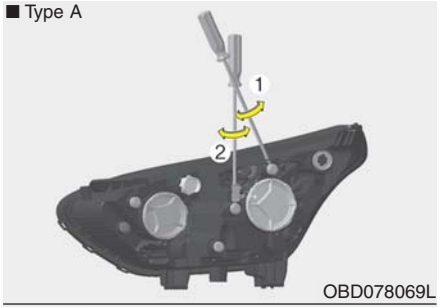
✻ NOTICE

If the LED lamp does not operate, have your vehicle checked by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

Headlamp and front fog lamp aiming (for Europe)

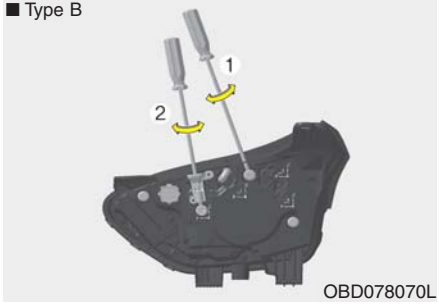
Headlamp aiming

■ Type A



OBD078069L

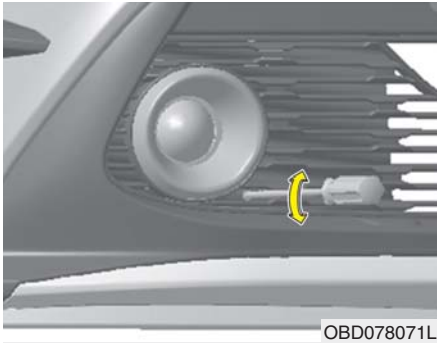
■ Type B



OBD078070L

1. Inflate the tyres to the specified pressure and remove any loads from the vehicle except the driver, spare tyre, and tools.
2. The vehicle should be placed on a flat floor.
3. Draw vertical lines (Vertical lines passing through respective head lamp centres) and a horizontal line (Horizontal line passing through centre of head lamps) on the screen.
4. With the head lamp and battery in normal condition, aim the head lamps so the brightest portion falls on the horizontal and vertical lines.
5. To aim the low and high beams left or right, turn the driver (1) clockwise or counterclockwise. To aim the low and high beams up or down, turn the driver (2) clockwise or counterclockwise.

Front fog lamp aiming



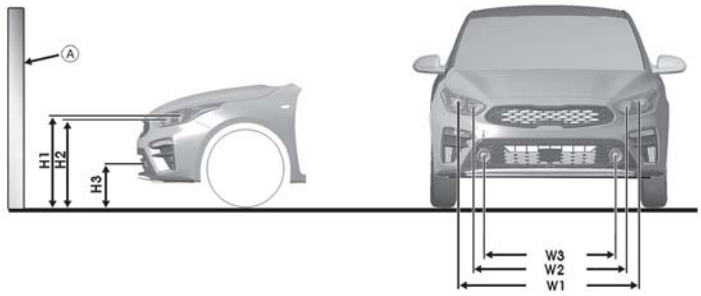
OBD078071L

The front fog lamp can be aimed as the same manner of the head lamps aiming.

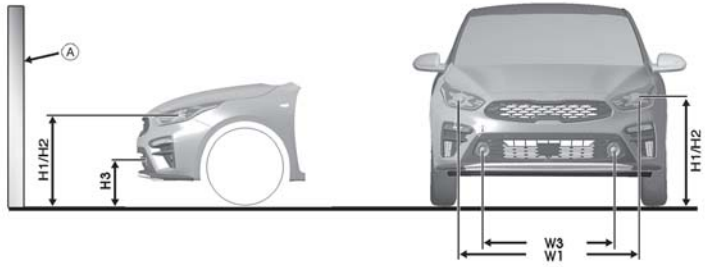
With the front fog lamps and battery normal condition, aim the front fog lamps.

To aim the front fog lamp up or down, turn the driver clockwise or counterclockwise.

Aiming point



OBD078072L



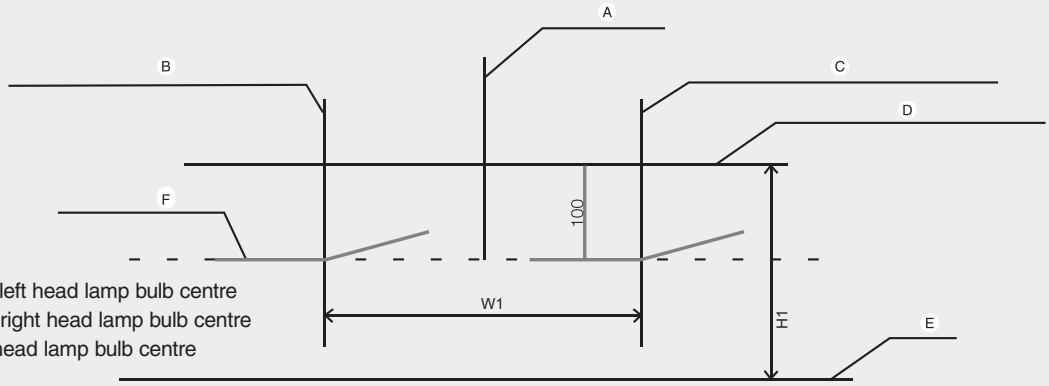
OBD078073L

* A : Screen

Vehicle condition	Head lamp (Halogen type)				Head lamp (LED type)			
	Ground Height		Distance between lamps		Ground Height		Distance between lamps	
	Lowbeam	High beam	Lowbeam	High beam	Lowbeam	High beam	Lowbeam	High beam
	H1	H2	W1	W2	H1'	H2'	W1'	W2'
Without driver [mm(in)]	715.5 (28.2)	691.3 (27.2)	1376 (54.2)	1104 (43.5)	710.5 (28.0)	710.5 (28.0)	1314.4 (51.7)	1314.4 (51.7)
With driver [mm(in)]	710.5 (28.0)	686.3 (27.0)	1376 (54.2)	1104 (43.5)	705.5 (27.8)	705.5 (27.8)	1314.4 (51.7)	1314.4 (51.7)

Vehicle condition	Front Fog lamp (Bulb type)	
	Ground Height	Distance between lamps
	H3	W3
Without driver [mm(in)]	329.5 (13)	981.8 (38.7)
With driver [mm(in)]	324.5 (12.8)	981.8 (38.7)

■ Based on 10m screen



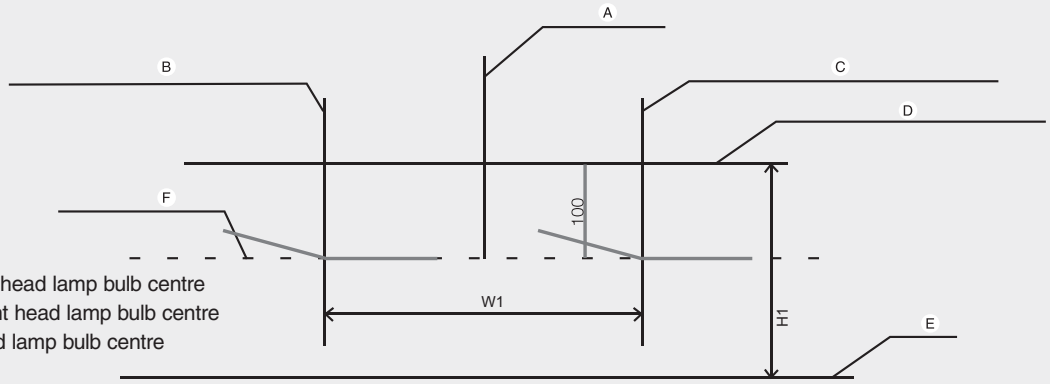
A : Vehicle axis
B : Vertical line of the left head lamp bulb centre
C : Vertical line of the right head lamp bulb centre
D : Horizontal line of head lamp bulb centre
E : Ground
F : Cut-Off line

OJF075107L

Head lamp low beam (LHD Vehicle)

1. Turn the low beam on without driver aboard.
2. The cut-off line should be projected in the cut-off line shown in the picture.
3. When aiming the low beam, vertical aiming should be adjusted after adjusting the horizontal aiming.
4. If head lamp levelling device is equipped, adjust the head lamp levelling device switch with 0 positions.

■ Based on 10m screen

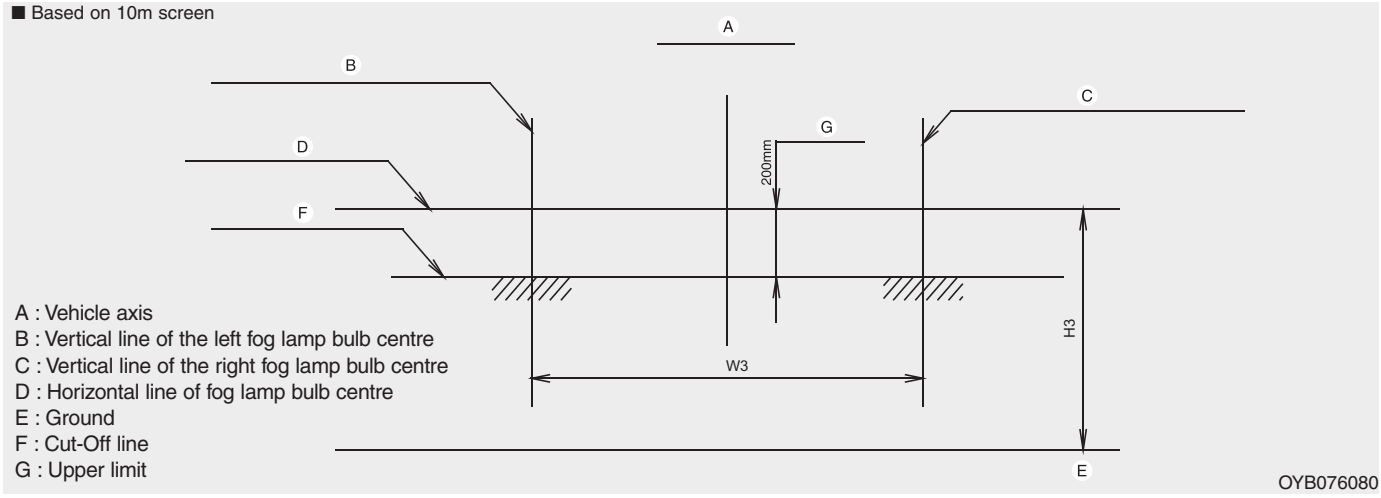


A : Vehicle axis
B : Vertical line of the left head lamp bulb centre
C : Vertical line of the right head lamp bulb centre
D : Horizontal line of head lamp bulb centre
E : Ground
F : Cut-Off line

OJF075108L

Head lamp low beam (RHD Vehicle)

1. Turn the low beam on without driver aboard.
2. The cut-off line should be projected in the cut-off line shown in the picture.
3. When aiming the low beam, vertical aiming should be adjusted after adjusting the horizontal aiming.
4. If head lamp levelling device is equipped, adjust the head lamp levelling device switch with 0 positions.



Front fog lamp

1. Turn the front fog lamp on without the driver aboard.
2. The cut-off line should be projected in the allowable range (shaded region).

APPEARANCE CARE

Exterior care

Exterior general caution

It is very important to follow the label directions when using any chemical cleaner or polish. Read all warning and caution statements that appear on the label.

Finish maintenance

Washing

To help protect your vehicle's finish from rust and deterioration, wash it thoroughly and frequently at least once a month with lukewarm or cold water.

If you use your vehicle for off-road driving, you should wash it after each off-road trip. Pay special attention to the removal of any accumulation of salt, dirt, mud, and other foreign materials. Make sure the drain holes in the lower edges of the doors and rocker panels are kept clear and clean.

Insects, tar, tree sap, bird droppings, industrial pollution and similar deposits can damage your vehicle's finish if not removed immediately.

Even prompt washing with plain water may not completely remove all these deposits. A mild soap, safe for use on painted surfaces, may be used.

After washing, rinse the vehicle thoroughly with lukewarm or cold water. Do not allow soap to dry on the finish.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Do not use strong soap, chemical detergents or hot water, and do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight or when the body of the vehicle is warm.***
- ***Be careful when washing the side windows of your vehicle.***

  Especially, with high-pressure water, water may leak through the windows and wet the interior.
- ***To prevent damage to the plastic parts and lamps, do not clean with chemical solvents or strong detergents.***

⚠ WARNING - Wet brakes

After washing the vehicle, test the brakes whilst driving slowly to see if they have been affected by water. If braking performance is impaired, dry the brakes by applying them lightly whilst maintaining a slow forward speed.

High-pressure washing

- When using high-pressure washers, make sure to maintain sufficient distance from the vehicle.

  Insufficient clearance or excessive pressure can lead to component damage or water penetration.
- Do not spray the camera, sensors or its surrounding area directly with a high pressure washer. Shock applied from high pressure water may cause the device to not operate normally.
- Do not bring the nozzle tip close to boots (rubber or plastic covers) or connectors as they may be damaged if they come into contact with high pressure water.

OBD078060

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Water washing in the engine compartment including high pressure water washing may cause the failure of electrical circuits located in the engine compartment.***
- ***Never allow water or other liquids to come in contact with electrical/electronic components inside the vehicle as this may damage them.***

Waxing

Wax the vehicle when water will no longer bead on the paint.
Always wash and dry the vehicle before waxing. Use a good quality liquid or paste wax, and follow the manufacturer's instructions. Wax all metal trim to protect it and to maintain its luster.
Removing oil, tar, and similar materials with a spot remover will usually strip the wax from the finish. Be sure to re-wax these areas even if the rest of the vehicle does not yet need waxing.
Do not apply wax on embossed unpainted unit, as it may tarnish the unit.

⚠ CAUTION

- ***Wiping dust or dirt off the body with a dry cloth will scratch the finish.***
- ***Do not use steel wool, abrasive cleaners, acid detergents or strong detergents containing high alkaline or caustic agents on chrome-plated or anodized aluminum parts. This may result in damage to the protective coating and cause discoloration or paint deterioration.***

Finish damage repair

Deep scratches or stone chips in the painted surface must be repaired promptly. Exposed metal will quickly rust and may develop into a major repair expense.

✻ NOTICE

If your vehicle is damaged and requires any metal repair or replacement, be sure the body shop applies anti-corrosion materials to the parts repaired or replaced.

Bright-metal maintenance

- To remove road tar and insects, use a tar remover, not a scraper or other sharp object.
- To protect the surfaces of bright-metal parts from corrosion, apply a coating of wax or chrome preservative and rub to a high luster.
- During winter weather or in coastal areas, cover the bright metal parts with a heavier coating of wax or preservative. If necessary, coat the parts with non-corrosive petroleum jelly or other protective compound.

Underbody maintenance

Corrosive materials used for ice and snow removal and dust control may collect on the underbody. If these materials are not removed, accelerated rusting can occur on underbody parts such as the fuel lines, frame, floor pan and exhaust system, even though they have been treated with rust protection.

Thoroughly flush the vehicle underbody and wheel openings with lukewarm or cold water once a month, after off-road driving and at the end of each winter. Pay special attention to these areas because it is difficult to see all the mud and dirt. It will do more harm than good to wet down the road grime without removing it. The lower edges of the doors, rocker panels, and frame members have drain holes that should not clog with dirt; trapped water in these areas can cause rusting.

⚠ WARNING

After washing the vehicle, test the brakes whilst driving slowly to see if they have been affected by water. If braking performance is impaired, dry the brakes by applying them lightly whilst maintaining a slow forward speed.

Aluminum wheel maintenance

The aluminum wheels are coated with a clear protective finish.

- Do not use any abrasive cleaner, polishing compound, solvent, or wire brushes on aluminum wheels. They may scratch or damage the finish.
- Clean the wheel when it has cooled.
- Use only a mild soap or neutral detergent, and rinse thoroughly with water. Also, be sure to clean the wheels after driving on salted roads. This helps prevent corrosion.
- Avoid washing the wheels with high-speed car wash brushes.
- Do not use any alkaline or acid detergent. It may damage and corrode the aluminum wheels coated with a clear protective finish.

Corrosion protection

Protecting your vehicle from corrosion

By using the most advanced design and construction practices to combat corrosion, we produce vehicles of the highest quality. However, this is only part of the job. To achieve the long-term corrosion resistance your vehicle can deliver, the owner's cooperation and assistance is also required.

Common causes of corrosion

The most common causes of corrosion on your vehicle are:

- Road salt, dirt and moisture that is allowed to accumulate underneath the vehicle.
- Removal of paint or protective coatings by stones, gravel, abrasion or minor scrapes and dents which leave unprotected metal exposed to corrosion.

High-corrosion areas

If you live in an area where your vehicle is regularly exposed to corrosive materials, corrosion protection is particularly important. Some of the common causes of accelerated corrosion are road salts, dust control chemicals, ocean air and industrial pollution.

Moisture breeds corrosion

Moisture creates the conditions in which corrosion is most likely to occur. For example, corrosion is accelerated by high humidity, particularly when temperatures are just above freezing. In such conditions, the corrosive material is kept in contact with the vehicle's surface by moisture that evaporate slowly.
Mud is particularly corrosive because it dries slowly and holds moisture in contact with the vehicle. Although the mud appears to be dry, it can still retain moisture and promote corrosion.
High temperatures can also accelerate corrosion of parts that are not properly ventilated so the moisture can be dispersed.

For all these reasons, it is particularly important to keep your vehicle clean and free of mud or accumulations of other materials. This applies not only to the visible surfaces but particularly to the underside of the vehicle.

To help prevent corrosion

You can help prevent corrosion from getting started by observing the following:

Keep your vehicle clean

The best way to prevent corrosion is to keep your vehicle clean and free of corrosive materials. Attention to the underside of the vehicle is particularly important.

- If you live in a high-corrosion area — where road salts are used, near the ocean, areas with industrial pollution, acid rain, etc.—, you should take extra care to prevent corrosion. In winter, hose off the underside of your vehicle at least once a month and be sure to clean the underside thoroughly when winter is over.
- When cleaning underneath the vehicle, give particular attention to the components under the fenders and other areas that are hidden from view. Do a thorough job; just dampening the accumulated mud rather than washing it away will accelerate corrosion rather than prevent it. Water under high pressure and steam are particularly effective in removing accumulated mud and corrosive materials.

- When cleaning lower door panels, rocker panels and frame members, be sure that drain holes are kept open so that moisture can escape and not be trapped inside to accelerate corrosion.

Keep your garage dry

Don't park your vehicle in a damp, poorly ventilated garage. This creates a favorable environment for corrosion. This is particularly true if you wash your vehicle in the garage or drive it into the garage when it is still wet or covered with snow, ice or mud. Even a heated garage can contribute to corrosion unless it is well ventilated so moisture is dispersed.

Keep paint and trim in good condition

Scratches or chips in the finish should be covered with "touch-up" paint as soon as possible to reduce the possibility of corrosion. If bare metal is showing through, the attention of a qualified body and paint shop is recommended.

Bird droppings : Bird droppings are highly corrosive and may damage painted surfaces in just a few hours. Always remove bird droppings as soon as possible.

Don't neglect the interior

Moisture can collect under the floor mats and carpeting and cause corrosion. Check under the mats periodically to be sure the carpeting is dry. Use particular care if you carry fertilizers, cleaning materials or chemicals in the vehicle.

These should be carried only in proper containers and any spills or leaks should be cleaned up, flushed with clean water and thoroughly dried.

Interior care

Interior general precautions

Prevent chemicals such as perfume, cosmetic oil, sun cream, hand cleaner, and air freshener from contacting the interior parts because they may cause damage or discoloration. If they do contact the interior parts, wipe them off immediately. If necessary, use a vinyle cleaner, see instructions for correct usage.

⚠ CAUTION

Never allow water or other liquids to come in contact with electrical/electronic components inside the vehicle as this may damage them.

⚠ CAUTION

When cleaning leather products (steering wheel, seats etc.), use neutral detergents or low alcohol content solutions. If you use high alcohol content solutions or acid/alkaline detergents, the colour of the leather may fade or the surface may get stripped off.

Taking care of leather seats

- Vacuum the seat periodically to remove dust and sand on the seat. It will prevent abrasion or damage of the leather and maintain its quality.
- Wipe the natural leather seat cover often with dry or soft cloth.
- Sufficient use of a leather protective may prevent abrasion of the cover and helps maintain the colour.

  Be sure to read the instructions and consult a specialist when using leather coating or protective agents.
- Leather with bright colours (beige, cream beige) is easily contaminated and clear in appearance. Clean the seats frequently.
- Avoid wiping with wet cloth. It may cause the surface to crack.

Cleaning the leather seats

- Remove all contaminations instantly. Refer to instructions below for removal of each contaminant.
- Cosmetic products(sunscreen, foundation, etc.)
  - Apply cleansing cream on a cloth and wipe the contaminated point. Wipe off the cream with a wet cloth and remove water with a dry cloth.
- Beverages(coffee, soft drink, etc.)
  - Apply a small amount of neutral detergent and wipe until contaminations do not smear.
- Oil
  - Remove oil instantly with absorbable cloth and wipe with stain remover for natural leather only.
- Chewing gum
  - Harden the gum with ice and remove gradually.

Fabric seat cover using precautions (If equipped)

Please clean the fabric seats regularly with a vacuum cleaner in consideration of fabric material characteristics. If they are heavily soiled with beverage stains, etc., use a suitable interior cleaner. To prevent damage to seat covers, wipe off the seat covers down to the seams with a large wiping motion and moderate pressure using a soft sponge or microfiber cloth.

Velcro closures on clothing or sharp objects may cause snagging or scratches on the surface of the seats. Make sure not to rub such objects against the surface.

Cleaning the upholstery and interior trim

Vinyl

Remove dust and loose dirt from vinyl with a whisk broom or vacuum cleaner. Clean vinyl surfaces with a vinyl cleaner.

Fabric

Remove dust and loose dirt from fabric with a whisk broom or vacuum cleaner. Clean with a mild soap solution recommended for upholstery or carpets. Remove fresh spots immediately with a fabric spot cleaner. If fresh spots do not receive immediate attention, the fabric can be stained and its colour can be affected. Also, its fire-resistant properties can be reduced if the material is not properly maintained.

⚠ CAUTION

Using anything but recommended cleaners and procedures may affect the fabric's appearance and fire-resistant properties.

Cleaning the lap/shoulder belt webbing

Clean the belt webbing with any mild soap solution recommended for cleaning upholstery or carpet. Follow the instructions provided with the soap. Do not bleach or re-dye the webbing because this may weaken it.

Cleaning the interior window glass

If the interior glass surfaces of the vehicle become fogged (that is, covered with an oily, greasy or waxy film), they should be cleaned with a glass cleaner. Follow the directions on the glass cleaner container.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not scrape or scratch the inside of the rear window. This may result in damage of the rear window defroster grid.

EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

The emission control system of your vehicle is covered by a written limited warranty. Please see the warranty information contained in the Warranty & Maintenance book in your vehicle.

Your vehicle is equipped with an emission control system to meet all applicable emission regulations.

There are three emission control systems, as follows.

(1) Crankcase emission control system
(2) Evaporative emission control system
(3) Exhaust emission control system

In order to assure the proper function of the emission control systems, have your vehicle inspected and maintained by a professional workshop in accordance with the maintenance schedule in this manual. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

Caution for the Inspection and Maintenance Test (With Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system)

- **To prevent the vehicle from misfiring during dynamometer testing, turn the Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system off by pressing the ESC switch.**
- **After dynamometer testing is completed, turn the ESC system back on by pressing the ESC switch again.**

1. Crankcase emission control system

The positive crankcase ventilation system is employed to prevent air pollution caused by blow-by gases being emitted from the crankcase. This system supplies fresh filtered air to the crankcase through the air intake hose. Inside the crankcase, the fresh air mixes with blow-by gases, which then pass through the PCV valve into the induction system.

2. Evaporative emission control system

The Evaporative Emission Control System is designed to prevent fuel vapours from escaping into the atmosphere.

Canister

Fuel vapours generated inside the fuel tank are absorbed and stored in the onboard canister. When the engine is running, the fuel vapours absorbed in the canister are drawn into the surge tank through the purge control solenoid valve.

Purge Control Solenoid Valve (PCSV)

The purge control solenoid valve is controlled by the Engine Control Module (ECM); when the engine coolant temperature is low during idling, the PCSV closes so that evaporated fuel is not taken into the engine. After the engine warms up during ordinary driving, the PCSV opens to introduce evaporated fuel to the engine.

3. Exhaust emission control system

The Exhaust Emission Control System is a highly effective system which controls exhaust emissions whilst maintaining good vehicle performance.

Engine exhaust gas precautions (carbon monoxide)

- Carbon monoxide can be present with other exhaust fumes. Therefore, if you smell exhaust fumes of any kind inside your vehicle, have it inspected and repaired immediately. If you ever suspect exhaust fumes are coming into your vehicle, drive it only with all the windows fully open. Have your vehicle checked and repaired immediately.

⚠ WARNING - Exhaust

Engine exhaust gases contain carbon monoxide (CO). Though colourless and odourless, it is dangerous and could be lethal if inhaled. Follow the instructions on this page to avoid CO poisoning.

- Do not operate the engine in confined or closed areas (such as garages) any more than what is necessary to move the vehicle in or out of the area.
- When the vehicle is stopped in an open area for more than a short time with the engine running, adjust the ventilation system (as needed) to draw outside air into the vehicle.
- Never sit in a parked or stopped vehicle for any extended time with the engine running.
- When the engine stalls or fails to start, excessive attempts to restart the engine may cause damage to the emission control system.

Operating precautions for catalytic converters (if equipped)

⚠ WARNING - Fire

- **A hot exhaust system can ignite flammable items under your vehicle. Do not park the vehicle over or near flammable objects, such as grass, vegetation, paper, leaves, etc.**
- **The exhaust system and catalytic system are very hot whilst the engine is running or immediately after the engine is turned off. Keep away from the exhaust system and catalytic, you may get burned.**

  Also, do not remove the heat sink around the exhaust system, do not seal the bottom of the vehicle or do not coat the vehicle for corrosion control. It may present a fire risk under certain conditions.

Your vehicle is equipped with a catalytic converter emission control device.

Therefore, the following precautions must be observed:

- Make sure to refuel your vehicle according to the "Fuel requirements" suggested in chapter 1.
- Do not operate the vehicle when there are signs of engine malfunction, such as misfire or a noticeable loss of performance.
- Do not misuse or abuse the engine. Examples of misuse are coasting with the ignition off and descending steep grades in gear with the ignition off.
- Do not operate the engine at high idle speed for extended periods (5 minutes or more).
- Do not modify or tamper with any part of the engine or emission control system. All inspections and adjustments must be made by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service centre.

- Avoid driving with an extremely low fuel level. Running out of fuel could cause the engine to misfire, damaging the catalytic converter.

Failure to observe these precautions could result in damage to the catalytic converter and to your vehicle.

Additionally, such actions could void your warranties.

Gasoline (petrol) Particulate Filter (GPF) (if equipped)

The Gasoline (petrol) Particulate Filter (GPF) is the system that removes the soot from the exhaust gas. Unlike a disposable air filter, the GPF system automatically burns (oxidizes) and removes the accumulated soot whilst driving.

However, repeated short-distance driving or long-distance driving at a low speed can stop the accumulated soot from automatically being removed by the GPF system. If the accumulated soot reaches a certain amount, the GPF warning light ( ) will illuminate. To re-operate the GPF system, the vehicle should be driven for more than 30 minutes at a speed of 80km/h (50 mph) and faster. Ensure the following conditions are met: safe road conditions, transmission 3 or above, and engine speed of 1,500-4,000 rpm. Driving at 80 km/h (50 mph) or faster for recommended hours will get the GPF system back to work and stop the GPF warning light.

If the GPF warning light stays on or the warning message “Check exhaust system” pops up even after driving at recommended speed and for recommended hours, visit a professional workshop and check the GPF system. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner. Constant driving with the GPF warning light on can damage the GPF system and undermine fuel economy.

Diesel Particulate Filter (if equipped)

The Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) system removes the soot in the exhaust gas.
Unlike a disposable air filter, the DPF system automatically burns (oxidizes) and removes the accumulated soot according to the driving condition. In other words, the active burning by engine control system and high exhaust gas temperature caused by normal/high driving condition burns and removes the accumulated soot.
However, if the vehicle continues to be driven at repeated short distance or driven at low speed for a long time, the accumulated soot may not be automatically removed because of low exhaust gas temperature. More than a certain amount of soot deposited, the malfunction indicator light ( ) illuminates.

When the malfunction indicator light blinks, it may stop blinking by driving the vehicle at more than 60 km/h (37 mph) or at more than second gear with 1,500 ~ 2,500 engine rpm for a certain time (for about 25 minutes).

If the malfunction indicator light () continues to be blinked or the warning massage "Check exhaust system" illuminates in spite of the procedure, visit a professional workshop and check the DPF system. Kia recommends to visit an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

If you continue to drive with the malfunction indicator light blinking for a long time, the DPF system can be damaged and fuel consumption can be worsen and engine durability can be worsen by oil dilution.

⚠ CAUTION - Diesel Fuel (if equipped with DPF)

It is recommended to use the regulated automotive diesel fuel for diesel vehicle equipped with the DPF system.

If you use diesel fuel including high sulfur (more than 50 ppm sulfur) and unspecified additives, it can cause the DPF system to be damaged and white smoke can be emitted.

Lean NOx Trap (if equipped)

The Lean NOx Trap (LNT) system removes the nitrogen oxide in the exhaust gas. The smell can occur in the exhaust gas depending on the quality of the fuel and it can degrade NOx reduction performance, please use the regulated automotive diesel fuel.

Selective Catalytic Reduction (SCR) system (if equipped)

The Selective Catalytic Reduction (SCR) system is to catalytically convert NOx to Nitrogen and Water by using the reduction agent, the urea solution.

⚠ WARNING

- **It may be a criminal offence to use a vehicle that does not consume any urea solution.**
- **Use of, and refilling of, a required urea solution of the correct specifications is mandatory for the vehicle to comply with the certificate of conformity issued for that vehicle type.**

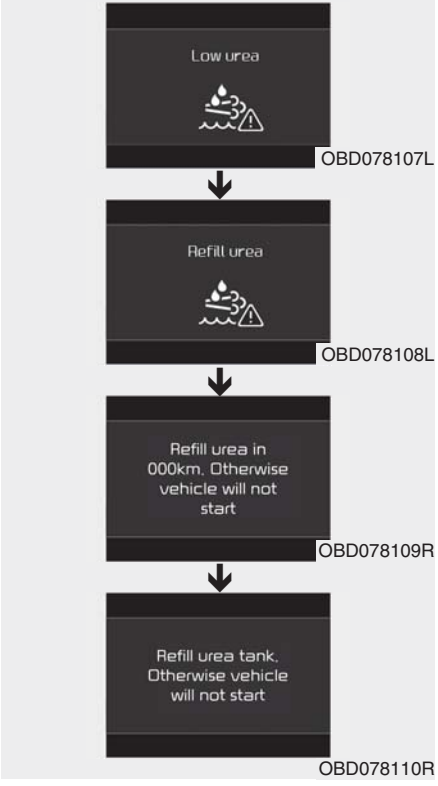
Urea solution level gauge (if equipped)

OBD078106L

The urea solution level gauge indicates the approximate amount of remaining urea solution inside the urea solution tank.

❈ The urea level gauge image pops up, whenever the engine start/stop button is ON position.

Low urea solution warning message (if equipped)



The lack warning messages of Urea solution appear below Urea solution approximately 3.6 L.

When the warning message "Low Urea" is displayed with SCR warning lamp (), the urea solution tank needs to be refilled. If not refilled for a considerable mileage, visual warning system will escalate the intensity by displaying the message "Refill Urea" with SCR warning lamp ().

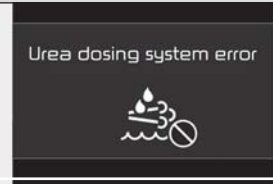
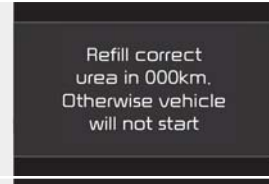
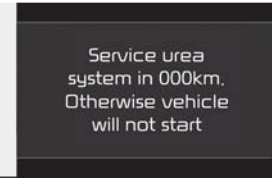
In this case, the urea solution tank soon needs to be refilled. The remaining urea solution in the urea solution tank approaches to too low level the warning message "Refill urea in 000km. Otherwise vehicle will not start" with SCR warning lamp (). "xxx km(mile)" represents the remaining travel distance allowed, so do not continue driving to the limit of the remaining travel distance without refilling.

Otherwise, the vehicle can't be restarted once the engine is turned off by the engine start/stop button. Based on the driving pattern, environmental condition and road profile, the deducted remaining mileage may differ from the actual travel distance.

When "Low Urea" or "Refill Urea" message is displayed, a sufficient amount of urea solution must be added. When "Refill urea in 000km. Otherwise vehicle will not start" message is displayed, fill sufficient amount of urea solution.

When "Refill urea tank. Otherwise vehicle will not start" message is displayed with SCR warning lamp (), the vehicle can't be restarted once the engine is turned off by the engine start/stop button. For the above cases, full replenishment is always recommended.

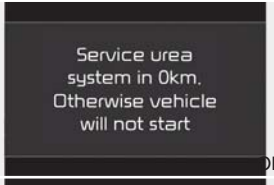
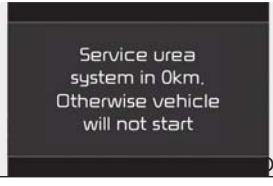
Malfunction with the SCR system (if equipped)

	Upon detecting a malfunction	Driving 50 km after detecting a malfunction
Urea solution system failure (= no urea solution injection)	 OBD078111R	OBD078114R
Incorrect urea solution detected (= abnormal urea solution)	OBD078112L	 OBD078115R
Abnormal urea-solution consumption (= post treatment failure)	OBD078113R	 OBD078114R

SCR system has malfunction due to disconnected electrical components, incorrect urea solution and so on.

"xxx km (mile)" represents the remaining travel distance allowed, so do not continue driving to the limit of the remaining travel distance without fixing the source of the malfunction. Otherwise, the vehicle can't be restarted once the engine is turned off by the engine start/stop button. In this case, have your vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to contact an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

Clearing the vehicle-restarting restriction (if equipped)

No restart		
Low urea solution level		OBD078110R
Urea solution system failure (= no urea solution injection)		 OBD078117R
Incorrect urea solution detected (= abnormal urea solution)		OBD078118R
Abnormal urea-solution consumption (= post treatment failure)		 OBD078117R

Once the inducement system reached to final status and disabled the vehicle restart, it will only be deactivated in case the urea solution tank is replenished or the malfunctions have been rectified.

If the vehicle can't be restarted with "Refill urea tank. Otherwise vehicle will not start" message, refill a sufficient amount of urea solution, wait for minutes and try vehicle starting again. If vehicle starting is not possible regardless of urea solution level, have your vehicle inspected by a professional workshop.

Kia recommends to contact an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

Adding the urea solution

To refill the urea solution from the refill hose

1. Press the engine start/stop button to the OFF position.
2. Turn the urea solution tank cap in a counterclockwise direction to open it.
3. Fully insert the refill hose to add the ISO 22241-specified urea solution. Fill a sufficient amount of urea solution.
   - ❊ Pay the great caution not to add the urea solution into the fuel tank. If not, it surely applies adverse impact on the vehicle performance, causing various malfunctions.
   - ❊ Never use the urea solution mixture with additives or water. It may allow foreign substances to enter the urea solution tank. If so, it surely applies adverse impact on the vehicle performance, causing various malfunctions.
   - ❊ Use only the ISO 22241-specified urea solution. Any unauthorised urea solution surely applies adverse impacts on the vehicle performance, causing various malfunctions.
4. Turn the urea solution tank cap in a clockwise direction to securely close it.

To refill the urea solution from the refill bottle

1. Press the engine start/stop button to the OFF position
2. Turn the urea solution tank cap in a counterclockwise direction to open it.
3. Add the ISO 22241-specified urea solution. Fill a sufficient amount of urea solution.
   - ❊ Pay the great caution not to add the urea solution into the fuel tank. If not, it surely applies adverse impact on the vehicle performance, causing various malfunctions.
   - ❊ Pay the great caution not to overfill the (completely) fulfilled urea solution tank by force whilst refilling the urea solution from the refill bottle. The over-filled urea solution tank will be expanded when it becomes frozen and this can cause a serious malfunction of the urea solution tank or urea solution system.

❈ Never use the urea solution mixture with additives or water. It may allow foreign substances to enter the urea solution tank. If so, it surely applies adverse impact on the vehicle performance, causing various malfunctions.

❈ Use only the ISO 22241-specified urea solution. Any unauthorised urea solution surely applies adverse impacts on the vehicle performance, causing various malfunctions.

4. Turn the urea solution tank cap in a clockwise direction to securely close it.

Adding the urea solution: Every approximately 5,600 km (The urea solution consumption is dependent on the road profile, driving pattern and environmental condition)

❈ It takes some time to update the cluster gauges after the UREA solution injection.

⚠ WARNING

- **Do not apply any external impact on the DPF system. It may damage the catalyst, which is equipped inside the DPF system.**
- **Do not arbitrarily modify or manipulate the DPF system by redirecting or lengthen the exhaust pipe. It may adversely impact the DPF system.**
- **Avoid contact with the drained water from the exhaust pipe. The water is slightly acid and harmful to skin. If contacted, thoroughly wash it.**
- **Any arbitrary manipulation or modification of the DPF system may cause a system malfunction. The DPF system is controlled by the complex device.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **Wait for the DPF system to cool down before the maintenance service, as it is hot due to the heat generation. Otherwise, it may case a skin burn.**
- **Add only the specified urea solution, when your vehicle is equipped with the urea solution system.**
- **The urea solution system (i.e. urea solution nozzle, urea solution pump, and DCU) operates for approximately 2 minutes more to eliminate the remaining urea solution inside, even after the engine start/stop button is pressed to the OFF position. Before the maintenance service, make sure that the urea solution system is completely turned OFF.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- The poor urea solution or the unauthorised liquids may damage the vehicle components, including the DPF system. Any unverified additives in the urea solution may clog the SCR catalyst and cause other malfunctions, which require the expensive DPF system to be replaced.
- When the urea solution contacts with the eyes or the skin, you should thoroughly wash the contaminated skin area.
- When you swallow the urea solution, thoroughly rinse your mouth and drink a lot of fresh water. Then, immediately consult a doctor.
- When your cloth is contaminated with the urea solution, immediately change your cloth.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- When you have an allergic reaction to the urea solution, immediately consult a doctor.
- Do not allow a child to contact the urea solution.
- Wipe off any urea solution spillage with water or cloth. When the urea solution is crystalized, wipe it off with the sponge or the cloth, which is dampened in the cold water. When the urea solution spillage is exposed in the air for an extended period of time, it is crystalized in white, damaging the vehicle surface.
- The urea solution is not the fuel additives. Thus, it should not be injected to the fuel tank. Otherwise, it may damage the engine.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- The urea solution is the aqueous solution, which is inflammable, non-toxic, colourless and odourless.
- Store the urea solution tank only in the well-ventilated locations. When the urea solution is exposed to the hot temperature at approximately 50°C for an extended period of time (i.e. under the direct sunlight), the chemical decomposition may occur, emitting the ammonia vapour.

Storing the urea solution

- It is improper to store the urea solution in the containers made with the certain materials (i.e. aluminum, copper, copper alloy, non-alloyed still, and galvanized steel). The urea solution dissolves the metal materials, severely damaging the exhaust purification system to be non-repairable.
- Store the urea solution only in the containers made with the following materials.

  (DIN EN 10 088-1-/-2-/-3-specified CR-Ni steel, Mo-Cr-Ni steel, polypropylene, and polyethylene)

Urea solution purity

- The following situations may damage the DPF system.
  - Fuels or any unauthorised liquids are added into the urea solution tank.
  - Additives are mixed in the urea solution.
  - Water is added to dilute the urea solution.
- Use only the ISO 22241- or DIN70070-specified urea solution. When any unauthorised urea solution is added to the urea solution tank, have your vehicle inspected by a professional workshop. Kia recommends to contact an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.
- When any unauthorised impurities enter the urea solution tank, it may occur the following problems.
  - Increased emission
  - Malfunction with the DPF system
  - Engine failure

Never add the used urea solution, which is drained from the urea solution tank (i.e. whilst maintaining the vehicle). Its purity cannot be guaranteed. Always add the new urea solution.

Specification of the tandard urea solution	Liquid such as diesel, petrol and alcohol shall never be used for SCR system. Any fluid other than recommended urea solution (conform to ISO22241 or DIN70070) can damage SCR system hardware and deteriorate vehicle emission.

⚠ WARNING

- **When opening the urea solution tank cap at high outside temperatures, ammonia vapours may escape. Ammonia vapours have a pungent smell and primarily cause irritation of the:**
  - **Skin**
  - **Mucous membranes**
  - **Eyes**

  You may experience a burning sensation in your eyes, nose and throat, as well as coughing and watering of the eyes. Do not inhale ammonia vapours. Do not allow urea solution to come in direct contact with your skin. It is hazardous to your health. Wash any affected areas off with plenty of clean water. If necessary, consult a doctor.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **When handling with urea solution in closed space, ensure good ventilation. When the bottle of urea solution container is opened, pungent smelling fumes may escape.**
- **Keep urea solution out of reach of children.**
- **When urea solution overflows into vehicle surface, wash out vehicle surface with clean water to prohibit corrosion from occurring.**
- **When replenishing, be careful lest the urea solution should overflow.**

(Continued)

(Continued)

- **In case the vehicle was parked at very low ambient temperature (below -11 dagree Celcius) for a long time, the urea solution will be frozen in the urea solution tank. With frozen urea solution, the urea solution tank level may not be detected correctly until the urea solution will be defrosted by activated heater. Incorrect urea solution or diluted urea solution can increase the freezing point, and thus defrosting may not be properly done by the heater which is activated below certain temperatures. This phenomenon may cause malfunction of the SCR system which can lead to the prohibition of engine restarting.**
- **The time to defrost the urea solution varies in accordance with driving conditions and outside temperatures.**

⚠ CAUTION

- ***If defective urea solution or liquid that is not recommended is supplied, there may be damage on the parts of the vehicle such as processing device. If defective fuel is used, foreign objects will be accumulated to SCR catalyst and cause catalyst pushed away or breaking.***

  After adding the incorrect urea solution, please visit the closest service centre as early as possible.
- ***Liquid that are not recommended such as diesel, petrol, and alcohol shall never be used other than the recommended urea solution that satisfy ISO22241 or DIN70070.***

(Continued)

(Continued)

- ***If defective urea solution or liquid that is not recommended is supplied, there may be damage on the parts of the vehicle such as processing device. If defective fuel is used, foreign objects will be accumulated to SCR catalyst and cause catalyst pushed away or breaking.***

Specifications & Consumer information

Engine 9-2
Dimensions 9-3
Bulb wattage 9-4
Tyres and wheels 9-6
Weight/volume 9-7
Air conditioning system 9-7
Recommended lubricants and capacities 9-8
• **Recommended SAE viscosity number.** 9-10
Vehicle identification number (VIN) 9-13
Vehicle certification label. 9-13
Tyre specification and pressure label 9-14
Engine number 9-14
Air conditioner compressor label 9-15
Refrigerant label. 9-15
Declaration of conformity 9-15
Fuel label 9-16
• **Petrol (Gasoline) engine** 9-16
• **Diesel engine.** 9-16

ENGINE

Item	(Petrol engine) 1.6 MPI	(Petrol engine) 2.0 MPI	Smartstream D 1.6	(Petrol engine) 1.6 T-GDi
Displacement [cc(cu.in)]	1,591 (97.08)	1,999 (121.9)	1,598 (97.51)	1,591 (97.08)
Bore x Stroke [mm(in)]	77 x 85.44 (3.03 x 3.36)	81 x 97 (3.19 x 3.82)	77 x 85.8 (3.03 x 3.37)	77 x 85.44 (3.03 x 3.36)
Firing order	1-3-4-2	1-3-4-2	1-3-4-2	1-3-4-2
No. of cylinders	4, In-line	4, In-line	4, In-line	4, In-line

DIMENSIONS

• 4 Door

Item		mm (in)
Overall length		4,640 (182.7)
Overall width		1,800 (70.9)
Overall height		Except Australia : 1,450 (57.1)
		For Australia : 1,440 (56.7)
Front tread	195/65R15	1,563 (61.5)
	205/55R16	1,555 (61.2)
	225/45R17	1,549 (61.0)
	225/40R18 (GT) (For Australia)	1,549 (61.0)
Rear tread	195/65R15	1,572 (61.9)
	205/55R16	1,564 (61.6)
	225/45R17	1,558 (61.3)
	225/45R17 (GT)	1,563 (61.5)
	225/40R18 (GT) (For Australia)	1,558 (61.3)
Wheelbase		2,700 (106.3)

• 5 Door

Item		mm (in)
Overall length		4,510 (177.6)
Overall width		1,800 (70.9)
Overall height		Except Australia : 1,455 (57.3)
		For Australia : 1,445 (56.9)
Front tread	195/65R15	1,563 (61.5)
	205/55R16	1,555 (61.2)
	225/45R17	1,549 (61.0)
	225/40R18 (GT) (For Australia)	1,549 (61.0)
Rear tread	195/65R15	1,572 (61.9)
	205/55R16	1,564 (61.6)
	225/45R17	1,558 (61.3)
	225/45R17 (GT)	1,563 (61.5)
	225/40R18 (GT) (For Australia)	1,558 (61.3)
Wheelbase		2,700 (106.3)

BULB WATTAGE

Light Bulb			Wattage (W)	Bulb type
Front	Head lamp	Low	60W	HB3
		High	55W	H7
	Daytime running light *	Bulb type	21W	P21/5W
		LED type	LED	LED
	Position lamp *	Bulb type	5W	P21/5W
		LED type	LED	LED
	Turn signal lamp		21W	PY21W
	Front fog lamp *		51W	HB4
Rear	Tail lamp	Inside	5W or LED	P21/5W or LED
		Outside	5W or LED	P21/5W or LED
	Stop lamp	Outside	21W or LED	P21/5W or LED
	Turn signal lamp		21W	PY21W
	Back up lamp		16W	W16W
	Rear fog light *	Bulb type	21W	P21W
		LED type	LED	LED
	High mounted stop lamp *	Bulb type	21W	P21W
		LED type	LED	LED
	License plate lamp		5W X 2EA	W5W

(Continued)

* If equipped

(Continued)

Light Bulb			Wattage (W)	Bulb type
Interior	Map lamps	Bulb type	10W X 2EA	W10W
		LED type	LED	LED
	Room lamp	Bulb type	10W	FESTOON
		LED type	LED	LED
	Luggage lamp		5W	FESTOON
	Glove box lamp *		8W	FESTOON
	Vanity mirror lamps *		5W	FESTOON

* If equipped

TYRES AND WHEELS

Item	Tyre size	Wheel size	Load Capacity		Speed capacity		Inflation pressure [bar(psi, kPa)]				Wheel lug nut torque Kgf·m (lbf·ft, N·m)
							Normal load		Maximum load		
			LI *1	Kg	SS *2	Km/h	Front	Rear	Front	Rear	
Full size tyre	195/65R15	6.0J×15	91	615	H	210	2.3 (33,230)	2.3 (33,230)	2.3 (33,230)	2.3 (33,230)	11 ~ 13 (79 ~ 94, 107 ~ 127)
	205/55R16	6.5J×16	91	615	H	210	2.3 (33,230)	2.3 (33,230)	2.3 (33,230)	2.3 (33,230)	
	225/45R17	7.0J×17	91	615	W	270	2.3 (33,230)	2.3 (33,230)	2.3 (33,230)	2.3 (33,230)	
	225/40R18	7.5Jx18	92	630	Y	300	2.4 (35,240)	2.4 (35,240)	2.4 (35,240)	2.4 (35,240)	
Compact spare tyre	T125/80D15	4.0T×15	95	690	M	130	4.2 (60, 420)				
	T125/80D16	4.0T×16	97	730	M	130					

*1 : Load Index

*2 : Speed Symbol

✻ NOTICE

- **We recommend that when replacing tyres, use the same originally supplied with the vehicles. If not, that affects driving performance.**
- **When driving in high altitude grades, it is natural for the atmospheric pressure to decrease. Therefore, please check the tyre pressure and add more air when necessary. Additionally required tyre air pressure per km above sea level: 1.5psi/km**

⚠ CAUTION

When replacing tyres, use the same size originally supplied with the vehicle.
Using tyres of a different size can damage the related parts or make it work irregularly.

WEIGHT/VOLUME

Item		(Petrol engine) 1.6 MPI		(Petrol engine) 2.0 MPI		Smartstream D 1.6		(Petrol engine) 1.6 T-GDi	
		6M/T	6A/T	6M/T	6A/T	6M/T	7 DCT	6M/T	7 DCT
Gross vehicle weight kg (lbs.)	For Europe	1,660 (3,660)	1,680 (3,704)	-	1,720 (3,792)	1,790 (3,946)	1,820 (4,012)	1,750 (3,858)	1,780 (3,924)
	For Australia	-	-	1,750 (3,858)	1,770 (3,902)	-	-	4 Door : 1,790 (3,946) 5 Door : 1,820 (4,012)	4 Door : 1,820 (4,012) 5 Door : 1,850 (4,079)
	Except Europe and Australia	4 Door : 1,670 (3,682) 5 Door : 1,700 (3,748)	4 Door : 1,690 (3,726) 5 Door : 1,720 (3,792)	4 Door : 1,700 (3,748) 5 Door : 1,730 (3,814)	4 Door : 1,730 (3,814) 5 Door : 1,750 (3,858)	4 Door : 1,760 (3,880) 5 Door : 1,780 (3,924)	4 Door : 1,790 (3,946) 5 Door : 1,820 (4,012)	4 Door : 1,760 (3,880) 5 Door : 1,790 (3,946)	4 Door : 1,800 (3,968) 5 Door : 1,830 (4,304)
Luggage volume : VDA / SAE *l* (cu ft)		4 Door : 502 (17.7) / 434 (15.3) 5 Door : 428 (15.1) / 741 (26.2)							

AIR CONDITIONING SYSTEM

ITEM	Weight of volume	Classification
Refrigerant	500 ± 25g	R-1234yf
		R-134a
Compressor lubricant	110 ±10cc	PAG 46

Please contact a professional workshop for more details.
Kia recommends to contact an authorised Kia dealer/service partner.

RECOMMENDED LUBRICANTS AND CAPACITIES

To help achieve proper engine and powertrain performance and durability, use only lubricants of the proper quality. The correct lubricants also help promote engine efficiency that results in improved fuel economy.
These lubricants and fluids are recommended for use in your vehicle.

<table>
<tr><th colspan="5">Lubricant</th><th>Volume</th><th>Classification</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="8">Engine oil *1 *2
(drain and refill)

Recommends
TOTAL QUARTZ</td><td rowspan="6">Petrol Engine</td><td colspan="2" rowspan="2">1.6 MPI</td><td rowspan="2">3.5 l (3.7 US qt.)</td><td>ACEA A5/B5 *4</td></tr>
<tr><td>API Latest (ILSAC Latest) *5</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2" rowspan="2">2.0 MPI</td><td rowspan="2">4.0 l (4.2 US qt.)</td><td>SAE 5W20 / API Latest (ILSAC Latest) *6</td></tr>
<tr><td>SAE 5W30 / ACEA A5/B5 *7</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">1.6 T-GDi</td><td>For Middle East, India, Libia, Algeria, Morocco, Tunisia, Sudan, Egypt, Iran etc.</td><td rowspan="2">4.5 l
(4.75 US qt.)</td><td>SAE 5W-40, API Latest(ILSAC Latest)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Except Middle East, India, Libia, Algeria, Morocco, Tunisia, Sudan, Egypt, Iran etc.</td><td>SAE 5W-30, API Latest(ILSAC Latest)</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">Diesel Engine</td><td rowspan="2">Smartstream D 1.6L</td><td>with DPF *3</td><td>4.4 l (4.6 US qt.)</td><td>ACEA C5 or C2 or C3</td></tr>
<tr><td>without DPF *3</td><td>4.4 l (4.6 US qt.)</td><td>ACEA C5 or C2 or C3 or A3/B4</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">Manual transmission fluid</td><td colspan="2" rowspan="3">Petrol Engine</td><td>Gamma 1.6L MPI</td><td rowspan="2">1.5 ~ 1.6 l
(1.4 ~ 1.5 US qt.)</td><td rowspan="4">API Service GL-4 SAE 70W
- HK SYN MTF 70W
- SPIRAX S6 GHME 70W MTF
- GS MTF HD 70W</td></tr>
<tr><td>Gamma 1.6L T-GDI</td></tr>
<tr><td>Nu 2.0L MPI</td><td>1.7 ~ 1.8 l
(1.6 ~ 1.7 US qt.)</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Diesel Engine</td><td>Smartstream D 1.6L</td><td>1.7 ~ 1.8 l
(1.6 ~ 1.7 US qt.)</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">Automatic transmission fluid</td><td>6.7 l (7.1 US qt.)</td><td>ATF SP-IV (Recommended SK, MICHANG, NOCA, Kia genuine)</td></tr>
</table>

Lubricant				Volume	Classification
Dual clutch Transmission fluid	Diesel Engine	Smartstream D 1.6		1.9~2.0 *l* (1.8~1.9 US qt.)	API GL-4, SAE 70W HK D DCTF TGO-10 (SK) SPIRAX S6 GHDE 70W DCTF (H.K.SHELL) 7 DCTF HKM (S-OIL)
Coolant	Petrol Engine	1.6 MPI	M/T	5.5 *l* (5.8 US qt.)	Mixture of antifreeze and water (Ethylene-glycol with phosphate based coolant for aluminum radiator)
			A/T	5.3 *l* (5.6 US qt.)	
		2.0 MPI	M/T	5.6 *l* (5.9 US qt.)	
			A/T	5.4 *l* ((5.7 US qt.)	
		1.6 T-GDi	M/T	6.9 *l* (7.3 US qt.)	
			DCT	6.9 *l* (7.3 US qt.)	
	Diesel Engine	Smartstream D 1.6	M/T	6.9 *l* (7.3 US qt.)	
			DCT	6.9 *l* (7.3 US qt.)	
Brake / clutch fluid *9				0.7 ~ 0.8 *l* (0.7 ~ 0.8 US qt.)	SAE J1704 DOT-4 LV, ISO4925 CLASS-6, FMVSS116 DOT-4
Urea solution				12 *l* (12.7 US qt.)	ISO22241 DIN70070
Fuel				50 *l* (13.2 US gal.)	-

*1 : Refer to the recommended SAE viscosity numbers on the next page.
*2 : Engine oils labeled Energy Conserving Oil are now available. Along with other additional benefits, they contribute to fuel economy by reducing the amount of fuel necessary to overcome engine friction. Often, these improvements are difficult to measure in everyday driving, but in a year's time, they can offer significant cost and energy savings.
*3 : Diesel Particulate Filter
*4 : FOR INDIA, MIDDLE EAST, IRAN, LIBIA, ALGERIA, SUDAN, MOROCCO, TUNISIA, EGYPT
*5 : EXCEPT INDIA, MIDDLE EAST, IRAN, LIBIA, ALGERIA, SUDAN, MOROCCO, TUNISIA, EGYPT
*6 : For Europe, CENTRAL&SOUTH AMERICA, AUSTRALIA AND NEW ZEALAND
*7 : For INDIA, MIDDLE EAST, IRAN, LIBIA, ALGERIA, SUDAN, MOROCCO, TUNISIA, EGYPT
*8 : Gasoline Particulate Filter
*9 : To maintain your vehicle's best brake and ABS/ESC performance, use Kia genuine brake fluid as in the specification.

Recommended SAE viscosity number

⚠ CAUTION

Always be sure to clean the area around any filler plug, drain plug, or dipstick before checking or draining any lubricant. This is especially important in dusty or sandy areas and when the vehicle is used on unpaved roads. Cleaning the plug and dipstick areas will prevent dirt and grit from entering the engine and other mechanisms that could be damaged.

Engine oil viscosity (thickness) has an effect on fuel economy and cold weather operating (engine start and engine oil flowability). Lower viscosity engine oils can provide better fuel economy and cold weather performance, however, higher viscosity engine oils are required for satisfactory lubrication in hot weather. Using oils of any viscosity other than those recommended could result in engine damage.

When choosing an oil, consider the range of temperature your vehicle will be operated in before the next oil change. Proceed to select the recommended oil viscosity from the chart.

Temperature Range for SAE Viscosity Numbers

Temperature		°C	-30	-20	-10	0	10	20	30	40	50
		(°F)	-10	0	20	40	60	80		100	120
Petrol Engine Oil	1.6 MPI *1										
							20W-50				
							15W-40				
							10W-30				
							0W-20, 5W-20, 5W-30				
	1.6 MPI *2										
							20W-50				
							15W-40				
							10W-30				
							5W-30, 5W-40				

*1 : Except INDIA, MIDDLE EAST, IRAN, LIBIA, ALGERIA, SUDAN, MOROCCO, TUNISIA, EGYPT
For Fuel economy, it is recommended to use the engine oil of a viscosity grade SAE 5W-20 (API Latest (ILSAC Latest)). However, if the engine oil is not available in your country, select the proper engine oil using the engine oil viscosity chart.

*2 : For INDIA, MIDDLE EAST, IRAN, LIBIA, ALGERIA, SUDAN, MOROCCO, TUNISIA, EGYPT
For Fuel economy, it is recommended to use the engine oil of viscosity grade SAE 5W-30 (ACEA A5/B5). However, if the engine oil is not available in your country, select the proper engine oil using the engine oil viscosity chart.

Temperature Range for SAE Viscosity Numbers										
Temperature	°C	-30	-20	-10	0	10	20	30	40	50
	(°F)	-10	0	20	40	60	80	100	120	
Petrol Engine Oil	1.6 T-GDi *3	20W-50								
		15W-40								
		10W-30								
		5W-30, 5W-40								

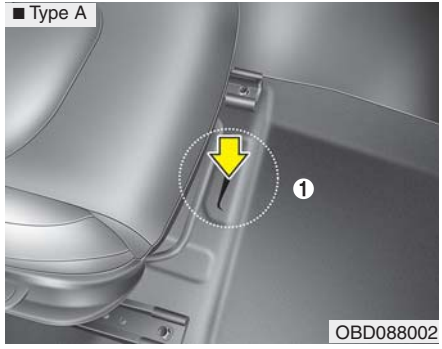
*3 ALL Region : For Fuel economy, it is recommended to use the engine oil of a viscosity grade SAE 5W-30 (API Latest(ILSAC Latest)). However, if the engine oil is not available in your country, select the proper engine oil using the engine oil viscosity chart.

Temperature Range for SAE Viscosity Numbers			
Temperature		°C	-30 -20 -10 0 10 20 30 40 50
		(°F)	-10 0 20 40 60 80 100 120
Petrol Engine Oil	2.0 MPI	For Europe	0W-40, 5W-20, 5W-30, 5W-40
		For CENTRAL & SOUTH AMERICA, AUSTRALIA AND NEW ZEALAND	20W-50 15W-40 10W-30 5W-20, 5W-30
		For INDIA, MIDDLE EAST, IRAN, LIBIA, ALGERIA, SUDAN, MOROCCO, TUNISIA, EGYPT	20W-50 15W-40 10W-30 5W-30, 5W-40

Temperature Range for SAE Viscosity Numbers		
Temperature	°C	-30 -20 -10 0 10 20 30 40
	(°F)	-10 0 20 40 60 80 100
Diesel Engine Oil		10W-30/40 5W-30/40 0W-30 0W-20

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER (VIN)

■ Type A

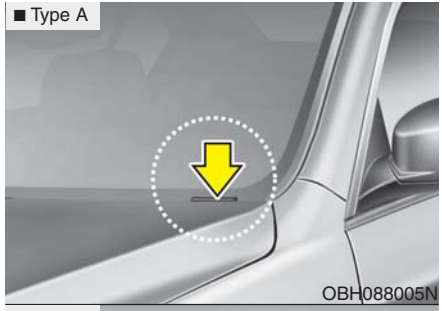


The vehicle identification number (VIN) is the number used in registering your car and in all legal matters pertaining to its ownership, etc.

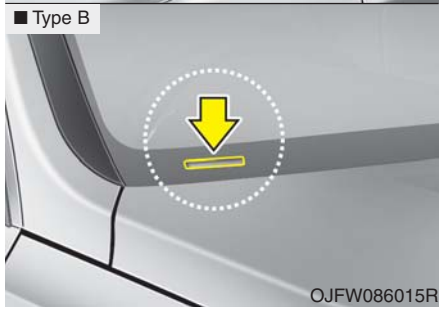
The number is punched on the floor under the driver or passenger seat. To check the number, remove the cover (1).

VIN label (if equipped)

■ Type A



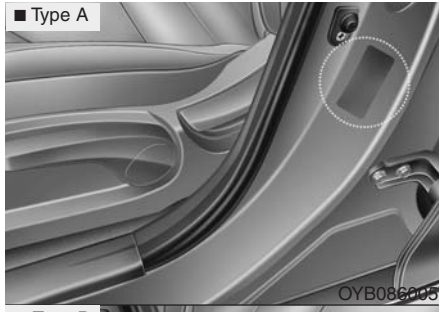
■ Type B



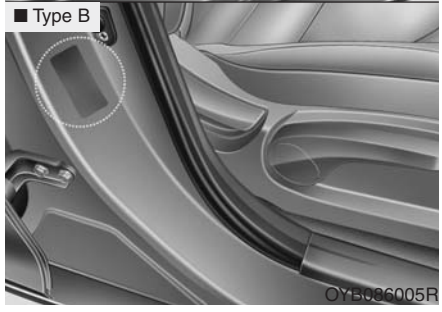
The VIN is also on a plate attached to the top of the dashboard. The number on the plate can easily be seen through the windscreen from outside.

VEHICLE CERTIFICATION LABEL (IF EQUIPPED)

■ Type A

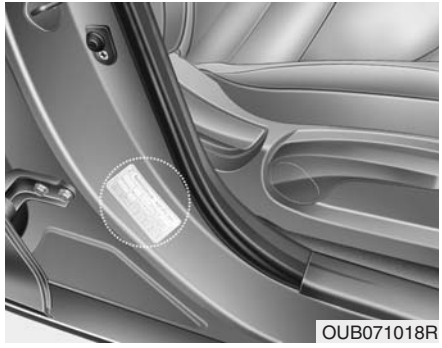


■ Type B



The vehicle certification label attached on the driver's (or front passenger's) side centre pillar gives the vehicle identification number (VIN).

TYRE SPECIFICATION AND PRESSURE LABEL

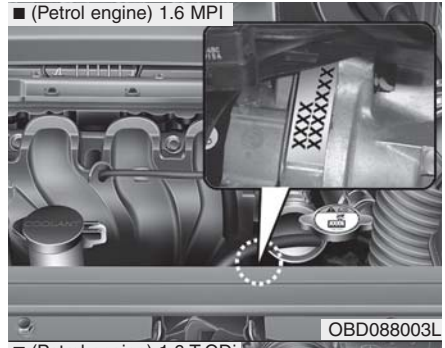

OUB071018R

The tyres supplied on your new vehicle are chosen to provide the best performance for normal driving.

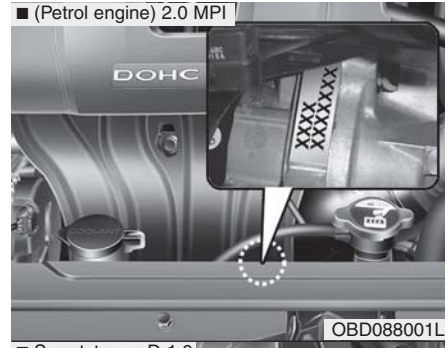
The tyre label located on the driver's side centre pillar gives the tyre pressures recommended for your car.

ENGINE NUMBER

■ (Petrol engine) 1.6 MPI

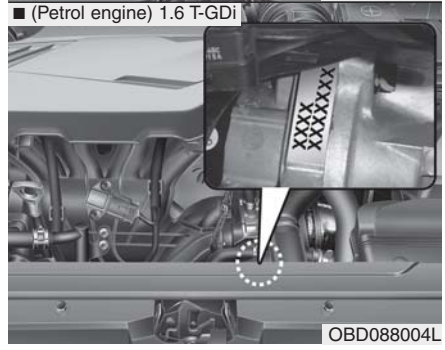

OBD088003L

■ (Petrol engine) 2.0 MPI

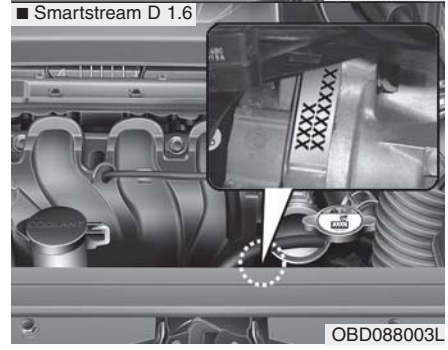


OBD088001L

■ (Petrol engine) 1.6 T-GDi

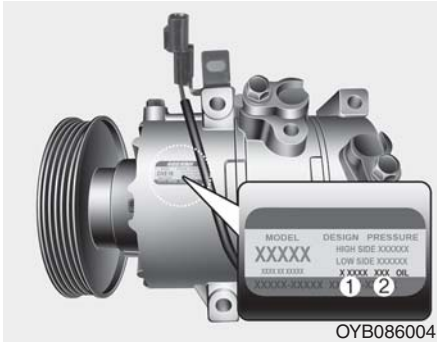

OBD088004L

■ Smartstream D 1.6


OBD088003L

The engine number is stamped on the engine block as shown in the drawing.

AIR CONDITIONER COMPRESSOR LABEL



OYB086004

A compressor label informs you the type of compressor your vehicle is equipped with such as model, supplier part number, production number, refrigerant (1) and refrigerant oil (2).

REFRIGERANT LABEL (IF EQUIPPED)

OBD048082

The refrigerant label is located on the underside of the bonnet.

DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY

■ Example

CE CE 0678

CE0678

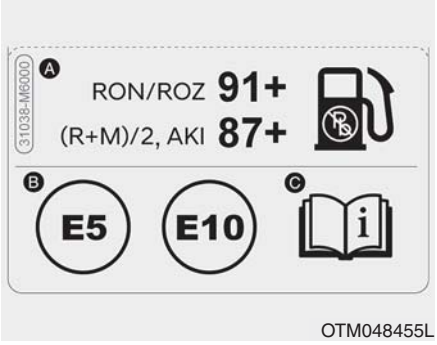
The radio frequency components of the vehicle comply with requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1995/5/EC.

Further information including the manufacturer's declaration of conformity is available on Kia web site as follows;

http://www.kia-hotline.com

FUEL LABEL (IF EQUIPPED)

Petrol (Gasoline) engine



OTM048455L

The fuel label is attached on the fuel filler door.

A. Octane rating of unleaded Petrol (Gasoline)
   1) RON/ROZ : Research Octane Number
   2) (R+M)/2, AKI : Anti Knock Index
B. Identifiers for Petrol-type fuels
   ❊ This symbol means usable fuel. Do not use any other fuel.
C. For further details, refer to the “Fuel Requirement” in the chapter 1.

Diesel engine

OTM048456L

The fuel label is attached on the fuel filler door.

A. Fuel : Diesel
B. Identifiers for FAME containing Diesel-type Fuels
   ❊ This symbol means usable fuel. Do not use any other fuel.
C. For further details, refer to the “Fuel Requirement” in the chapter 1.

Index

A

Air bag - supplemental restraint system 3-58
Additional safety precautions 3-84
Air bag warning label 3-85
Air bag warning light 3-62
Curtain air bag 3-75
Driver's and passenger's front air bag 3-67
How does the air bag system operate 3-59
Inflation and non-inflation conditions of the airbag 3-77
Side air bag 3-73
SRS Care 3-82
SRS components and functions 3-64
Air cleaner 8-56
Filter replacement 8-56
Air conditioner compressor label 9-15
Air conditioning system 9-7
Appearance care 8-129
Interior care 8-134
Audio (Without Touch Screen) 5-8
Feature of Your Audio 5-9
Media 5-15
Phone 5-23
Radio 5-14
Setup 5-31
Audio system 5-2
Antenna 5-2
AUX, USB port 5-3
How vehicle audio works 5-4
Automatic climate control system 4-151
Air Conditioning refrigerant label 4-162
Automatic heating and air conditioning 4-152
Automatic ventilation 4-158
Checking the amount of air conditioner refrigerant and compressor lubricant 4-162
Climate control air filter 4-161
Manual heating and air conditioning 4-153
Sunroof inside air recirculation 4-159
System operation 4-159
Automatic transmission 6-28
Automatic transmission operation 6-28
Good driving practices 6-35

B

Battery 8-63
Battery capacity label 8-65
Battery recharging 8-65
For best battery service 8-63
Reset items 8-67
Before driving 6-5
Before entering vehicle 6-5
Before starting 6-5
Necessary inspections 6-5
Blind-spot collision warning (BCW) 6-107
BCW (Blind-Spot Collision Warning) 6-108

Driver's Attention 6-114
Rear Cross-Traffic Collision Warning (RCCW) 6-112
Bonnet 4-41
Bonnet open warning 4-42
Closing the bonnet 4-42
Opening the bonnet 4-41
Brake system 6-52
Anti-lock brake system (ABS) 6-57
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) 6-59
ESS : Emergency Stop Signal 6-66
Function setting and activation 6-68
Good braking practices 6-66
Hill-start assist control (HAC) 6-64
Parking brake 6-54
Power brakes 6-52
Vehicle stability management (VSM) 6-64
Brake/clutch fluid 8-51
Checking the brake/clutch fluid level 8-51
Bulb wattage 9-4

C

Child restraint system (CRS) 3-39
Installing a Child Restraint System (CRS) 3-42
ISOFIX anchorage and top-tether anchorage (ISOFIX anchorage system) for children 3-44
Our recommendation: Children always in the rear 3-39
Selecting a Child Restraint System (CRS) 3-40
Climate control air filter 8-58
Filter inspection 8-58
Cruise Control (CC) 6-121
Cruise Control switch 6-122
Speed limit control switch 6-127
To cancel Cruise Control, do one of the following 6-125
To decrease the cruising speed 6-125
To increase Cruise Control set speed 6-124
To resume cruising speed at more than approximately 30 km/h (20 mph) 6-126
To set Cruise Control speed 6-123
To set speed limit 6-127
To temporarily accelerate with Cruise Control on 6-125
To turn Cruise Control off, do one of the following 6-126

D

Declaration of Conformity 5-34, 9-15
RCM for Australia 5-34
Defroster 4-139
Rear window defroster 4-139
Dimensions 9-3
Door locks 4-19
Child-protector rear door lock 4-23
Door lock/unlock features 4-22
Operating door locks from inside the vehicle 4-20
Operating door locks from outside the vehicle 4-19
Drive mode integrated control 6-103

Driver attention warning (DAW) 6-116
Function malfunction.....6-119
Function setting and activation 6-116
Function standby 6-118
Resetting the function 6-118
Dual clutch transmission operation 6-37
Dual clutch transmission operation 6-37
Good driving practices.....6-50
LCD display for transmission temperature and warning message 6-39

E

Economical operation 6-150
Hazardous driving conditions 6-152
Rocking the vehicle 6-152
Emergency Commodity 7-32
Fire extinguisher 7-32
First aid kit 7-32
Triangle reflector 7-32
Tyre pressure gauge 7-32
Emergency starting 7-5
Jump starting 7-5
Push-starting 7-7
Emission control system.....8-137
Crankcase emission control system.....8-137
Evaporative emission control system.....8-137
Exhaust emission control system.....8-138
Lean NOx Trap (if equipped) 8-142
Selective Catalytic Reduction (SCR) system 8-142
Engine 9-2
Engine compartment 2-7, 8-4
Engine coolant 8-46
Changing the coolant 8-50
Checking the coolant level.....8-46
Engine number 9-14
Engine oil (diesel).....8-44
Changing the engine oil and filter 8-45
Engine oil (petrol).....8-42
Changing the engine oil and filter 8-43
Checking the engine oil level 8-42
Checking the engine oil level 8-44
ENGINE START/STOP button 6-12
Engine start/stop button position 6-12
Illuminated engine start/stop button 6-12
Starting the engine 6-15
Stopping the petrol engine/ diesel engine (Manual Transmission) 6-18
Explanation of scheduled maintenance items 8-38
Exterior overview 2-2

F

Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA) (Camera type) 6-68
Brake operation 6-71

FCA front view camera sensor 6-72
FCA warning message and function control 6-70
Function malfunction.....6-73
Function setting and activation 6-80
Limitation of the function 6-75
Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA) (Sensor fusion) 6-80
Brake operation 6-83
FCA warning message and function control 6-82
Function malfunction.....6-86
Limitation of the system 6-87
Recognizing pedestrians 6-91
Sensor to detect the distance from the vehicle in front (front camera/radar).....6-84
Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist-lane-change oncoming function (FCA) 6-101
Function operation.....6-101
Limitations of the function 6-102
Warning message and function control 6-102
Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning (PDW) ..4-113
Non-operational conditions of Forward/ Reverse Parking Distance Warning 4-116
Operation of Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning.....4-114
Self-diagnosis.....4-118
Fuel filler door 4-44
Closing the fuel filler door.....4-45
Opening the fuel filler door 4-44
Fuel Filter (For Diesel).....8-55
Draining water from the fuel filter 8-55
Fuel filter cartridge replacement 8-55
Fuel label 9-16
Diesel engine 9-16
Petrol (Gasoline) engine 9-16
Fuel requirements 1-3
Diesel engine 1-6
Petrol engine 1-3
Fuses 8-80
Engine compartment fuse replacement 8-84
Fuse/relay panel description 8-86
Inner panel fuse replacement.....8-83

H

How to use this manual 1-2

I

If the engine overheats 7-8
If the engine will not start 7-4
If engine doesn't turn over or turns over slowly 7-4
If engine turns over normally but does not start 7-4
If you have a flat tyre (with spare tyre) 7-15
Changing tyres.....7-17
EC Declaration of Conformity for Jack 7-25
Jack and tools.....7-15

Jack label 7-24
Removing and storing the spare tyre 7-16
In case of an emergency whilst driving 7-3
If engine stalls whilst driving 7-3
If the engine stalls at a crossroad or crossing 7-3
If you have a flat tyre whilst driving 7-3
Instrument cluster 4-60
Gauges 4-63
Instrument Cluster Control 4-62
LCD Window Control 4-63
transmission Shift Indicator 4-67
Instrument panel overview 2-6
Interior features 4-173
Ashtray 4-173
Cargo area cover 4-185
Cigarette lighter 4-173
Clothes hanger 4-184
Cup holder 4-174
Power outlet 4-178
Seat cooler (Air ventilation seat) 4-178
Seat warmer 4-176
Shopping bag holder 4-186
Sliding armrest 4-175
Sun visor 4-175
USB charger 4-180
Wireless smart phone charging system 4-181
Interior light 4-135
Glove box lamp 4-138
Map lamp 4-135
Room lamp 4-136
Trunk/luggage room lamp 4-136
Vanity mirror lamp 4-137
Interior overview 2-5
ISG (Idle Stop and Go) system 6-19
Auto start 6-20
Auto stop 6-19
Condition of ISG system operation 6-21
ISG system deactivation 6-22
ISG system malfunction 6-22

K

Key positions 6-7
Ignition switch position 6-7
Starting the engine 6-8
Stopping the petrol engine/ diesel engine (Manual Transmission) 6-11
Keys 4-4
Immobiliser system 4-5
Key operations 4-4
Record your key number 4-4

L

Lane Keeping Assist (LKA) 6-93
Driver's attention 6-99

LKA Operation 6-94
Warning light and message 6-97
LCD windows.....4-69
Distance to empty 4-69
LCD Modes (For type B, C, E, F cluster) 4-77
Over view 4-69
Service Mode 4-78
Trip information (Trip computer) 4-69
User Settings Mode (For type B, C, E, F cluster) 4-79
Warning messages 4-84
Light bulbs 8-100
Back up lamp bulb replacement 8-116
Bulb replacement precaution 8-100
Exterior care.....8-129
Front fog lamp bulb replacement.....8-109
Front turn signal lamp bulb replacement.....8-108
Glove box lamp replacement 8-121
Headlamp (High beam) bulb replacement (Headlamp Type A, B).....8-106
Headlamp (LED type) replacement (Headlamp Type C) 8-108
Headlamp (Low beam) bulb replacement (Headlamp Type A, B).....8-105
Headlamp and front fog lamp aiming (for Europe)..8-123
High mounted stop lamp (bulb type) bulb replacement 8-117
High mounted stop lamp (LED type) bulb replacement 8-117
License plate lamp bulb replacement 8-118
Light bulb position (Front) 8-102
Light bulb position (Rear) 8-103
Light bulb position (Side) 8-105
Map lamp (Bulb type) bulb replacement.....8-119
Map lamp (LED type) bulb replacement.....8-119
Position lamp / Day time running lamp (LED type) replacement (Headlamp Type B).....8-108
Rear fog lamp (Bulb type) bulb replacement (Rear combination lamp Type B) 8-113
Rear fog lamp (LED type) bulb replacement (Rear combination lamp Type D) 8-114
Rear turn signal lamp bulb replacement 8-115
Room lamp (Bulb type) bulb replacement 8-120
Room lamp (LED type) bulb replacement 8-120
Side repeater lamp (Bulb type) bulb replacement 8-110
Side repeater lamp (LED type) bulb replacement 8-110
Stop and tail lamp (Bulb type) bulb replacement (Rear combination lamp Type A, B, F) 8-111
Stop and tail lamp (LED type) bulb replacement (Rear combination lamp Type C, D, E).....8-114
Tail lamp (inside) (Bulb type) bulb replacement (Rear combination lamp Type A, B, F) 8-112
Tailgate room lamp bulb replacement 8-122
Trunk room lamp replacement.....8-122
Vanity mirror lamp bulb replacement 8-121
Lighting.....4-119
Battery saver function 4-119

Daytime running light 4-129
Front fog light 4-128
Headlight escort function.....4-119
Headlight levelling device 4-129
Headlight welcome function 4-119
High Beam Assist 4-123
High beam operation 4-122
Lighting control 4-120
Rear fog light 4-128
Turn signals and lane change signals.....4-127

M

Maintenance services 8-6
Owner maintenanceprecautions.....8-6
Owner's responsibility 8-6
Manual climate control system.....4-140
Air Conditioning refrigerant label 4-149
Automatic ventilation.....4-145
Checking the amount of air conditioner refrigerant and compressor lubricant.....4-149
Climate control air filter 4-148
Heating and air conditioning 4-141
Sunroof inside air recirculation 4-146
System operation 4-146
Manual Transmission 6-24
Good driving practices.....6-26
Manual transmission operation 6-24
Mirrors 4-55
Inside rearview mirror 4-55
Outside rearview mirror.....4-57

O

Owner maintenance 8-8
Owner maintenance schedule 8-8

P

Parking brake 8-54
Checking the parking brake.....8-54

R

Rear View Monitor 4-108
Recommended lubricants and capacities 9-8
Recommended sae viscosity number.....9-10
Refrigerant label 9-15
Remote keyless entry 4-8
Battery replacement 4-10
Remote keyless entry system operations 4-8
Transmitter precautions 4-9
Reverse Parking Distance Warning (PDW) 4-109
Non-operational conditions of Reverse Parking Distance Warning.....4-110
Operation of Reverse Parking Distance Warning 4-109

Reverse Parking Distance Warning precautions 4-111
Self-diagnosis.....4-112
Risk of burns when parking or stopping vehicle 1-9
Road warning 7-2
Hazard warning flasher 7-2

S

Scheduled maintenance service 8-10
Scheduled maintenance service precaution 8-10
Seat belts.....3-21
Care of seat belts 3-37
Pre-tensioner seat belt 3-31
Seat belt precautions 3-34
Seat belt restraint system 3-21
Seats 3-2
Driver position memory system (for power seat) 3-9
Front seat adjustment - manual 3-6
Front seat adjustment - power 3-7
Headrest (for front seat).....3-11
Rear seat adjustment 3-15
Seatback pocket 3-15
Smart Cruise Control (SCC).....6-131
Limitations of the function 6-144
Smart Cruise Control speed.....6-133
Smart Cruise Control switch 6-133
To adjust the sensitivity of Smart Cruise Control 6-143
To convert to Cruise Control mode 6-144
Vehicle distance setting 6-139
Smart key 4-12
Smart key functions 4-12
Smart key precautions 4-13
Smart trunk (For 4 Door) 4-31
Detecting area 4-34
How to deactivate the Smart Trunk function using the smart key 4-33
How to use the Smart Trunk 4-31
Special driving conditions 6-152
Driving at night 6-154
Driving in flooded areas 6-155
Driving in the rain 6-154
Driving off-road.....6-155
Highway driving 6-155
Smooth cornering.....6-153
Speed limit control 6-127
To turn off the speed limit control, do one of the following 6-129
Steering wheel 4-52
Electronic power steering 4-52
Heated steering wheel 4-53
Horn 4-54
Tilt & telescopic steering 4-53
Storage compartments 4-169
Centre console storage.....4-169
Glove box.....4-170
Luggage net holder 4-171

Luggage tray 4-172
Sunglass holder 4-170
Sunroof 4-47
Resetting the sunroof 4-51
Sliding the sunroof 4-48
Sunroof open warning 4-51
Sunshade 4-50
Tilting the sunroof 4-49

T

Tailgate (For 5 Door) 4-27
Emergency tailgate safety release 4-29
Closing the tailgate 4-28
Opening the tailgate 4-27
Theft-alarm system 4-15
Armed stage 4-15
Disarmed stage 4-17
Theft-alarm stage 4-17
Towing 7-26
Emergency towing 7-28
Removable towing hook 7-27
Towing service 7-26
Trailer Towing (For Australia and New Zealand) 6-162
Driving with a trailer 6-165
Hitches 6-164
If you do decide to pull a trailer 6-170
Maintenance when trailer towing 6-169
Safety chains 6-164
Trailer brakes 6-165
Trunk (For 4 door) 4-24
Emergency trunk safety release 4-25
Closing the trunk 4-25
Opening the trunk 4-24
Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) 7-9
Tyre specification and pressure label 9-14
Tyres and wheels 8-68, 9-6
Checking tyre inflation pressure 8-69
Low aspect ratio tyre 8-78
Recommended cold tyre inflation pressures 8-68
Tyre care 8-68
Tyre maintenance 8-74
Tyre replacement 8-72
Tyre rotation 8-70
Tyre sidewall labeling 8-74
Tyre traction 8-74
Wheel alignment and tyre balance 8-71
Wheel replacement 8-73

V

Vehicle break-In process 1-9
Vehicle certification label 9-13
Vehicle identification number (VIN) 9-13
Vehicle weight 6-173
Base kerb weight 6-173

Cargo weight 6-173
GAW (Gross axle weight) 6-173
GAWR (Gross axle weight rating) 6-173
GVW (Gross vehicle weight) 6-173
GVWR (Gross vehicle weight rating) 6-173
Loading Your Vehicle - For Australia 6-174
Overloading 6-173
Vehicle kerb weight 6-173

W

Warning and indicator lights.....4-90
Indicator lights 4-102
Warning lights 4-90
Washer fluid 8-53
Checking the washer fluid level.....8-53
Weight/volume 9-7
Windows 4-35
Power windows 4-36
Windscreen defrosting and defogging 4-164
Automatic climate control system 4-165
Defogging logic 4-166
Manual climate control system 4-164
Winter driving.....6-157
Carry emergency equipment 6-161
Change to "winter weight" oil if necessary 6-160
Check battery and cables 6-160
Check spark plugs and ignition system 6-160
Don't let ice and snow accumulate underneath 6-161
Don't let your parking brake freeze 6-161
Snowy or icy conditions 6-157
Summer tyres 6-157
To keep locks from freezing 6-161
Use approved window washer anti-freeze in system 6-161
Use high quality ethylene glycol coolant 6-160
Wiper blades 8-60
Blade inspection.....8-60
Blade replacement 8-60
Wipers and washers 4-131
Rear window wiper and washer switch 4-134
Windscreen washers (front) 4-132
Windscreen wipers (front) 4-132